A GUIDE TO NEW HORIZON COLLEGE ENGLISH

新视野大学英语全程辅导

主编 ◎ 郭艳玲　王倩



大连海事大学出版社
DALIAN MARITIME UNIVERSITY PRESS

A GUIDE TO NEW HORIZON COLLEGE ENGLISH

新视野大学英语全程辅导（第三版）

- 新视野大学英语全程辅导 读写教程 1
- 新视野大学英语全程辅导 读写教程 2
- 新视野大学英语全程辅导 读写教程 3
- 新视野大学英语全程辅导 读写教程 4

策　　划：徐华东
责任编辑：陈　亮
封面设计：解瑶瑶



定价：33.00元

A GUIDE TO NEW HORIZON COLLEGE ENGLISH

新视野大学英语全程辅导

主　编　郭艳玲　王　倩

副主编　闫　军　张宁光　杨德宏　韩国崇

编　委　宋　影　张　彤　张　博　刘　芳

祝　宏　张艺玲　王　艳　苍巍巍

耿光旭　张　俭　赵延学　李　涛

顾兴明　李　宁　袁　媛

READING AND WRITING

（第三版）读写教程 1

大连海事大学出版社

DALIAN MARITIME UNIVERSITY PRESS

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

新视野大学英语全程辅导读写教程. 1 / 郭艳玲，王倩主编. — 大连 ：大连海事大学出版社，2016.10
ISBN 978-7-5632-3391-5

Ⅰ.①新…　Ⅱ.①郭…　②王…　Ⅲ.①英语—阅读教学—高等学校—教学参考资料　②英语—写作—高等学校—教学参考资料　Ⅳ.①H319.39

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2016)第 252761 号

出 版 人：徐华东
策　　划：徐华东
责任编辑：陈　亮
封面设计：解瑶瑶
版式设计：万点书艺
责任校对：阮琳涵　杨　洋

出 版 者：大连海事大学出版社
地址：大连市凌海路 1 号
邮编：116026
电话：0411—84728394
传真：0411—84727996
网址：www.dmupress.com
邮箱：cbs@dmupress.com
印 刷 者：大连住友彩色印刷有限公司
发 行 者：大连海事大学出版社

幅面尺寸：178mm×230mm
印　　张：23.5
字　　数：618 千字

出版时间：2016 年 10 月第 1 版
印刷时间：2016 年 10 月第 1 次印刷
印　　数：1—5000 册
书　　号：ISBN 978-7-5632-3391-5
定　　价：33.00 元

前言

《新视野大学英语读写教程》(第三版)(外语教学与研究出版社)是为通用英语阶段设计的教材，由郑树棠教授担任总主编。全国二十余所高校几十名资深教授和中青年骨干教师本着严谨、务实的态度，全面设计、全新编写了这套教材。第三版保持一、二版的优势与特色，编写严谨，体现了高度的科学性、合理性和实用性；题材广泛，内容丰富，涉及社会生活的方方面面。

为了帮助广大师生及英语自学者更好地学习和理解这套教材，我们组织了数所高校具有丰富教学经验的教师精心编写了这套《新视野大学英语全程辅导读写教程》(1～4册)。本套辅导用书的编写是在透彻理解和准确把握国家教育部《大学英语课程教学要求》(修订版)精神的基础上进行的，力求全方位、多角度、大容量地诠释教材中的词汇、句型、课文、练习等内容。本套辅导用书讲解细致、透彻、准确，设计科学、合理，使用方便。

本套辅导用书根据《新视野大学英语(读写教程)》(第三版)编写，与教材同步，每个单元包括以下五部分：

一、课文导读

(一) 内容介绍：从全局的角度简洁概述课文大意，剖析作者的观点和写作目的，以帮助学生学习和理解课文。

(二) 背景知识：介绍与课文相关的典型背景知识，帮助学生透过语言材料了解与课文有关的人物、事件、地理、文化、政治、社会等知识，拓展知识面。

(三) 课文分析：划分了课文的段落，给出了每个段落的大意，最后归纳了课文采用的写作方法，供学生借鉴。

二、词汇与短语

(一) 词汇：注有音标、词性、英汉释义，以帮助学生更好地理解词义。对于重要词汇列出其常用的词义，并在每个义项后配以例句及译文，还配有同(近)义词、反义词、派生词以及常见的搭配等。

(二) 短语：对课文中出现的重要短语给以英汉释义及例句，以帮助学生加深对短语要点的理解。

三、课文注释

对课文中出现的语言要点加以解释，对典型语言点加以归纳总结，对语言理论加以简洁、实效地介绍，对难句加以结构分析，以帮助学生更好地理解语言

背景、修辞方法、写作意图、写作风格等。

四、课文译文

给出课文的参考译文，便于学生理解文章、认清结构、明确主题，从中学到语言知识，提高理解与运用的能力。

五、练习答案及详解

对阅读、理解、词汇、语法等进行准确的详解、总结及示例，帮助学生准确掌握知识，突破难点。

本套辅导用书对语法进行了分册讲解。每册书后还附加了词汇便携记忆卡，方便学生记忆单词使用。

在本套辅导用书的编写中，我们得到了有关专家的热情指导和大力帮助，在此深表谢意。

我们相信，本套书对学生准确把握教材内容，提高自身英语素养会大有裨益，希望本套辅导用书能成为广大师生的良师益友，也希望广大读者提出宝贵的意见和建议。

编　者

2016.9

Contents

Unit 1
Fresh start

Section A
Toward a brighter future for all

一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文是一篇大学校长的欢迎词,校长给大学新生们提出了宝贵的建议,并表达了对他们的殷切期望。演讲开篇,校长祝贺学生们所取得的成就,当前的这一成就是学生和父母们多年努力的结果,他们未来的成就则要建立在过去扎实的基础上。随后在演讲的主体部分,校长对于如何充分利用四年的大学时光提出了全面的建议,他鼓励新生们充分利用大学这一独特的经历,挑战自我,乐观面对全新的体验,从而收获大学生活所带来的丰硕成果。同时,机遇与责任并存,学生们也应该意识到大学的期望,承担起传承的责任。在最后的结束语中,校长号召学生们珍惜机遇,作为社区、国家乃至世界的公民铭记自己的责任。

(二)背景知识

王薇薇

王薇薇(Vera Wang,1949—),著名华裔设计师,被称为婚纱女王。她出生于纽约曼哈顿,高中时曾是花样滑冰运动员,1971年毕业于莎拉劳伦斯学院艺术史专业,但从事时装事业才是她的梦想。她在VOGUE杂志做了15年的资深时装编辑,1985年跳槽到世界著名时装品牌拉夫·劳伦(Ralph Lauren)公司,担任了两年时装设计总监,1990年在纽约开设了第一间自己的专卖店,专门定做高价位新娘婚纱礼服。许多公众人物和社会名流的婚纱礼服都出自王薇薇之手,如詹妮弗·洛佩兹(Jennifer Lopez)、莎朗·斯通(Sharon Stone)和切尔西·克林顿(Chelsea Clinton)。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Paras. 1 - 3 The president congratulates students on their achievement and reminds students of the fact that their current success was due to their own and their parents' efforts, and that their future

success is built on a solid foundation of the past. 校长祝贺学生们所取得的成就，当前的这一成就是学生和父母们多年努力的结果，他们未来的成就则要建立在过去扎实的基础上。

Paras. 4 - 7 The president offers students comprehensive advice on how to make the most of their four college years and makes them realize the university's expectations and their own responsibilities. 校长对于如何充分利用四年的大学时光提出了全面的建议，让学生们意识到大学的期望和自己的责任。

Para. 8 The students are called upon to cherish the opportunity and to bear in mind their responsibilities as citizens of their communities, their country and the world. 校长号召学生们珍惜机遇，作为社区、国家乃至世界的公民铭记自己的责任。

2. 写作特点

本文是一篇典型的演讲。演讲者直面听众，较其他文体更多使用第一、二人称代词"我""我们""你们"，以期激励听众，并获得他们的支持和理解。演讲者可采用比喻、对比、排比、重复等多种修辞手法，使演讲更加生动有力。本文中，校长使用了很多排比句，使演讲更有说服力、发人深省，甚至产生幽默的效果。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 triumph /ˈtraɪʌmf/ *n.*

[C] an important victory or success after a difficult struggle (尤指苦战后获得的)胜利，成功，成就

—These laws represent a historic triumph for non-smoking activists. 这些法令代表了无烟维权人士的历史性胜利。

【派生】triumphant *adj.* 成功的，胜利的

【近义】victory, conquest, success

2 pledge /pledʒ/ *vt.*

make a formal, usu. public, promise that you will do sth. 发誓；作保证

—On UN Day, let us pledge to join as one human family to create a better world for all. 在联合国日，让我们承诺凝聚成一个人类大家庭，为所有人创造一个更好的世界。

n. [C] (*fml.*) a serious promise or agreement, esp. one made publicly or officially (尤指公开或正式做出的)誓言，誓约；保证

—All the candidates have given pledges not to raise taxes if they are elected. 所有的候选人都保证如果他们当选，他们不会提高税收。

【搭配】pledge to sth. /to do sth. 保证做某事

【近义】promise, guarantee

3 pose /pəʊz/ *vi.*

sit or stand somewhere so that sb. can take a photograph of you or paint a picture of you (为照相或画像而)摆姿势

—The leaders posed briefly for photographs before entering the conference room. 领导们进入会议室之前匆匆地摆个姿势拍照。

vt. create a difficult or dangerous situation 造成，导致(困难或危险)

—Large consumption of fuel would definitely pose a threat to the supply and demand of energy

resources. 大量燃料的消耗会对能源的供给造成威胁。

4 routine /ruːˈtiːn/ *n.*

[C, U] your usual way of doing things, esp. when you do them in a fixed order at the same time 例行公事;常规;惯例

—Martin found the hospital routine slightly dull. 马丁感到医院的日常工作有点单调乏味。

/ˌruːˈtiːn/ *a.*

happening as a normal part of a job or process 常规的;例行的;惯常的

—The disease was detected during a routine check-up. 这个病是在做常规体检时查出来的。

【词缀】后缀-ine 表示形容词"……的"或表示名词"状态,药物"等。route 路线,路程＋ine……的→routine 常规的,例行的;mari 海＋ine……的→marine 海的,海事的

5 attain /əˈteɪn/ *vt.*

(*fml.*) succeed in achieving sth. after trying for a long time 得到;获得;赢得

—Yoga is one way to attain peace in life. 瑜伽是生活中获得平静的一种方法。

【派生】attainable *adj.* 可获得的;可达到的 attainment *n.* 实现;成就;造诣

【近义】gain, achieve, accomplish

6 foundation /faʊnˈdeɪʃn/ *n.*

[C] the most basic part of sth. from which the rest of it develops 基础

—The course gives students a solid foundation in English writing skills. 这门课为学生的英语写作能力打下了坚实的基础。

【近义】base, basis, ground

7 resource /rɪˈzɔːs/ *n.*

(1) [C] sth. you can use to help you to achieve sth., esp. in your work or study 资源

—Museums are important resources for teaching history. 博物馆为历史教学提供重要资料来源。

(2) [C, usu. pl.] things such as coal, trees, and oil that exist in nature and can be used by people 自然资源

—Water is becoming an increasingly precious resource. 水正成为日益珍贵的资源。

【派生】resourceful *adj.* 随机应变的;机敏的

8 faculty /ˈfækltі/ *n.*

(1) [U] (*AmE*) all the teachers in a university, college, or school 全体教员

—All faculty members should be devoted to the pursuit of academic excellence and the positive development of personal values. 凡是教学人员,都必须力争学术上出色,积极发展个人的价值。

(2) [C, usu. pl.] a natural physical or mental ability that most people have 天赋;能力;本领

—She had her mental faculties even in her 90s. 她九十多岁了,但仍然思维清晰。

9 comprehensive /ˌkɒmprɪˈhensɪv/ *a.*

including many details or aspects of sth. 综合的;多方面的

—All the products are labeled with comprehensive instructions. 所有产品均标有详尽的使用说明。

【反义】incomprehensive

10 facility /fəˈsɪləti/ *n.*

(~ies) [pl.] rooms, equipment, or services that are provided for a particular purpose (为某种目的而提供的)设施,设备

—The college has excellent sporting facilities. 这所大学有极好的体育设备。

11 **community** /kə'mjuːnəti/ *n.*

(1) [C] the people who live in the same area, town, etc. (同住一地的人所构成的)社区

—He was sentenced to 140 hours community service. 他被判 140 小时社区服务。

(2) [C] a group of people who have the same interests, religion, race, etc. 群体;团体

—Are you accountable to the broader community of customers, employees, and investors? 你会对更广泛的客户、员工与投资者群体负责吗?

12 **explore** /ɪk'splɔː/ *vt.*

examine or discuss a subject, idea, etc. thoroughly 探讨,研究(主题、思想等)

—We are exploring the possibility of taking legal action against the company. 我们正在探讨对这家公司采取法律行动的可能性。

v. travel around an area in order to learn about it or to search for sth. valuable such as oil 勘探;探测;考察

—A group of experts have set out to explore for minerals in this area. 一组专家已经出发前往该地区勘探矿物。

【派生】exploration *n.* 探究;探测;探索 explorer *n.* 探险家

13 **fascinating** /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/ *a.*

making you very interested or attracted 吸引人的;迷人的;使人神魂颠倒的

—The plot of the novel is intricate and fascinating. 小说的情节错综复杂,引人入胜。

14 **pursue** /pə'sjuː/ *vt.*

(1) try to achieve sth. 追求;致力于

—He wanted to pursue a bachelor's degree after working for two years. 他想工作两年以后再去读学士学位。

(2) chase sb. or sth. in order to catch them 追赶;追逐

—She pursued the man who had stolen a woman's bag. 她追赶那个偷了一个妇女提包的男人。

【派生】pursuit *n.* 追求

【近义】chase, seek, achieve

15 **passion** /'pæʃn/ *n.*

(1) [C] a very strong liking for sth. 强烈的爱好;热爱

—For Marx, work had become a passion, and he was so absorbed in it that he often forgot his meals. 对马克思来说,工作已经成了一种爱好。他往往埋头工作,把吃饭都忘了。

(2) [C, U] a very strong belief or feeling about sth. 强烈的情感;激情

—One of my friends went from wanting to be a lawyer, to discovering a true passion for teaching. 我的一个朋友原来想做律师,后来却发现自己真正有激情的事业是教学事业。

【搭配】passion for sth. 酷爱、热爱某事

【近义】enthusiasm, affection

16 **unique** /juː'niːk/ *a.*

(1) very special, unusual, or good 特别的;极不寻常的;极好的

—You will be given a unique opportunity to interview the CEO of the company. 你将获得一个难得的机会去采访那家公司的首席执行官。

(2) not the same as anything or anyone else 不同的;独特的

—Each person's fingerprints are unique, so you won't find two people with the same fingerprints.

每个人的指纹都是不一样的，所以你找不到指纹相同的两个人。

17 **enthusiasm** /ɪnˈθjuːziˌæzəm/ *n.*

[U] the feeling of being very interested in sth. or excited by it 热爱；热情；热心

—She radiates an infectious enthusiasm for everything she does. 她做任何事情都充满一种极富感染力的热情。

【搭配】enthusiasm for/about sth. 热爱某事

【派生】enthusiastic *adj.* 热情的；热心的

18 **reap** /riːp/ *vt.*

get sth. as a result of sth. you have done 收获；获得

—This product will reap rich rewards for its manufacturers. 这种产品将会给它的生产者带来丰厚的回报。

v. cut and gather a crop such as wheat 收割(庄稼)

—The peasants are reaping a field of barley. 农民们正在收割大麦。

19 **benefit** /ˈbenɪfɪt/ *n.*

[C, U] an advantage, improvement, or help that you get from sth. 好处；益处；裨益

—I hope what I have written will be of benefit to someone else who may feel the same way. 我希望我所写的内容能对其他和我有同感的人有所裨益。

vi. get help or an advantage from sth. 受益；得到好处

—People would benefit greatly from a pollution-free vehicle. 人们将享受到无污染汽车的诸多好处。

【搭配】benefit from/by sth. 从……中得益

【派生】beneficial *adj.* 有益的；有好处的

【近义】advantage, help, profit

20 **opportunity** /ˌɒpəˈtjuːnəti/ *n.*

[C, U] a chance to do sth. or an occasion when it is easy for you to do sth. 机会；时机

—Now we should seize the opportunity to counterattack. 现在，我们应乘机反攻。

【搭配】take the opportunity to do sth. /of doing sth. 趁机做某事

21 **overwhelm** /ˌəʊvəˈwelm/ *vt.*

(*usu. passive*) exist in such great amounts that sb. or sth. cannot deal with them (数量大得)使无法对付

—We were overwhelmed by the number of applications for this position. 这个职位的求职申请多得让我们应接不暇。

【派生】overwhelming *adj.* 极大的；压倒一切的

22 **available** /əˈveɪləbl/ *a.*

(*often after noun*) able to be obtained, taken, or used 可获得的；可利用的；现成的

—There are three small boats available for hire. 有三艘小船可供出租。

【反义】unavailable

23 **sample** /ˈsɑːmpl/ *vt.*

(1) try an activity, go to a place, etc. in order to see what it is like 体验

—They can learn English and sample the British way of life. 他们可学习英语并体验英国人的生活方式。

(2) test a small amount of sth. in order to get information about the whole thing 对……作抽样检验

—They sampled the population to find out the state of public opinion. 他们从人口中抽样以了解民意状况。

n. [C] a small part or amount of sth. that is examined in order to find out sth. about the whole 样本;样品;货样

—The salesman brought some samples of his firm's products. 推销员带来了一些他公司的产品货样。

24 assume /ə'sjuːm/ *vt.*

think that sth. is true, although you do not have definite proof 假定;假设;认为

—If the package is wrapped well, we assume the contents are also wonderful. 如果包装精美,我们就会认为里面装的也是好东西。

【派生】assumption *n.* 假定;假设

【近义】suppose, presume

【词根】sume=take,表示"拿,取"。as 加强动作+sume 拿,取→拿住→assume 认为是,假定;con 共同+sume 拿,取→全拿完→consume 消耗(完);pre 预先+sume 拿,取→预先拿住→presume 假定;re 再+sume 拿,取→重新拿起→resume 再用,恢复

25 emerge /i'mɜːdʒ/ *vi.*

(1) appear or become recognized 出现;为……所公认

—No new leader has emerged to take his place. 还没有新领导来接替他。

(2) come out of sth. or out from behind sth. 出现;露出

—The sun emerged from behind the clouds. 太阳从云层后面露出脸来。

【搭配】emerge from sth. 从……中出现、露出

【派生】emergence *n.* 出现;显现

【反义】submerge

26 giant /'dʒaɪənt/ *a.*

(*only before noun*) extremely big, and much bigger than other things of the same type 巨大的;特大的

—Fewer than a thousand giant pandas still live in the wild. 只有不到一千只大熊猫仍然在野外生活。

【近义】huge, enormous, gigantic, massive, tremendous

27 mate /meɪt/ *n.*

[C] sb. you work with, do an activity with, or share sth. with 同事;同伴

—A mate of mine used to play soccer for Liverpool. 我的一个朋友在利物浦队踢过球。

28 roommate /'ruːmˌmeɪt/ *n.*

[C] sb. who you share a room with, esp. at college (尤指大学里的)室友

—I learned from his roommate that he had been in hospital for over a week. 从他的室友那里,我知道他已经进医院一个多星期了。

29 owl /aʊl/ *n.*

[C] a bird with a flat face, large eyes, and a small sharp beak 猫头鹰

—Are you a night owl or an early bird? 你是夜猫子型的,还是习惯早起的人呢?

30 virtual /'vɜːtʃʊəl/ *a.*

(1) (*only before noun*) almost the same as the thing that is mentioned 几乎相同的;实质上的

—When her husband had a stroke, she was given virtual control of the business. 她丈夫中风之后,生意几乎全部交给她掌管。

(2) (*only before noun*) made, done, seen, etc. on the Internet or on a computer, rather than in the real

world 虚拟的；模拟的

—Up to four players can compete in a virtual world of role playing. 最多可以有四个玩家在一个虚拟世界中扮演角色互相拼杀。

31 virtually /ˈvɜːtʃuəli/ *ad.*

(1) almost 实际上；几乎；差不多

—It would have been virtually impossible to research all the information. 要对所有的信息进行分析研究几乎是不可能的。

(2) on a computer, rather than in the real world 虚拟地；模拟地

32 enrich /ɪnˈrɪtʃ/ *vt.*

improve the quality of sth., esp. by adding things to it 使丰富；充实；强化

—People with disabilities are now doing many things to enrich their lives. 残疾人士如今做很多事情来丰富他们的生活。

【派生】enrichment *n.* 丰富；富裕

【词缀】动词前缀 en-表示"进入状态，使……成为"。en 使……进入状态＋rich 富的→enrich 使富足；en 使……进入状态＋large 大的→enlarge 扩大，放大；en 进入……之中，成为＋title 标题，头衔→entitle 给……命名，授权

33 glow /gləʊ/ *n.*

(1) [sing.] a strong pleasant feeling (某种)强烈的情感

—Exercise will give you a glow of satisfaction at having achieved something. 运动将让你体会到一种有所成就的无比喜悦感。

(2) [sing.] a soft steady light 柔和稳定的光

—He turned on the table lamp and the room was filled with a soft glow. 他打开台灯，房间里充满了柔和的光。

vi. produce or reflect a soft steady light 发出柔和稳定的光

—The night lantern glowed softly in the darkness. 晚上点亮的灯笼在黑暗中发出柔和的光。

34 confidence /ˈkɒnfɪd(ə)ns/ *n.*

(1) [U] the belief that sb. or sth. is good and that you can trust them 信心；信赖；信任

—Public confidence in the government is at an all-time high. 公众对政府的信心达到历史最高水平。

(2) [U] the belief that you are able to do things well 自信心

—He gained confidence in his abilities after he passed the difficult exam. 通过那次艰难的考试后，他对自己的能力更加有信心了。

【派生】confident *adj.* 有信心的；自信的

35 yield /jiːld/ *vt.*

(1) produce a result, answer, or piece of information 产生(结果等)

—Our research has only recently begun to yield important results. 我们的研究最近才取得重要成果。

(2) produce crops, profits, etc. 出产；产生

—The tourist industry yielded an estimated $20 million for the area last year. 去年旅游业为这一地区带来了估计两千万美元的收益。

vi. finally agree to do what sb. else wants you to do 屈从；让步

—Will she yield to growing pressure for her to retire? 面对要求其隐退的压力越来越大，她会屈服吗？

【搭配】yield to sb./sth. 屈服于……

36 abundant /ə'bʌndənt/ *a.*

(*fml.*) existing or available in large quantities 大量的;丰富的;充裕的

—There is an abundant supply of cheap labour. 廉价劳动力供应充足。

【派生】abundance *n.* 丰富;充裕

37 responsibility /rɪˌspɒnsə'bɪləti/ *n.*

(1) [C] sth. that you ought to do because it is morally or socially right (道德、社会)责任,义务

—What is the individual's responsibility to others in modern society? 在现代社会中,个人对他人的责任是什么?

(2) [U] a duty to be in charge of sb. or sth., so that you make decisions and can be blamed if sth. bad happens 责任

—Someone had to give orders and take responsibility for mistakes. 必须得有人下令,并为错误负责。

(3) [C] sth. that you must do as part of your job or duty 职责;任务;义务

—However skilled he may be, he is unable to do his work well without a sense of responsibility. 单是技术好,不一定能做好工作,还要有认真负责的工作态度。

【近义】duty, obligation

38 inherit /ɪn'herɪt/ *vt.*

receive a belief, tradition, or way of life from people who lived before you 沿袭,秉承(信仰、传统或生活方式)

—Many countries have inherited traditions of public service. 许多国家沿袭了公共服务的传统。

v. receive property or money from sb. who has died 继承(财产)

—He has no son to inherit his land. 他没有儿子来继承田产。

【搭配】inherit sth. from sb. 从某人处继承某物

39 inheritor /ɪn'herɪtə/ *n.*

(1) [C] sb. who follows an established way of life or thinking (生活或思想方式的)后继者,继承人

—The old man was the proud inheritors of the Prussian military tradition. 那位老人是普鲁士军事传统的自豪的继承者。

(2) [C] sb. who receives money, property, etc. from sb. who has just died 遗产继承人

—Two-thirds of inheritors promptly sold the houses they were left. 三分之二的继承人会把他们继承得到的房产迅速变卖。

40 transmit /trænz'mɪt/ *vt.*

(*fml.*) send or pass sth. from one person, place or thing to another 传送;传递;传播

—The information is electronically transmitted to schools and colleges. 信息通过电子方式传送到各所学校和学院。

【派生】transmission *n.* 传送;传递;传播

【词缀】前缀 trans-表示"横过,越过;变换,改变,转移"。trans 横过,越过+par 看见+ent……的→横穿过去看得一样清楚→transparent 透明的;trans 变换,改变,转移+form 形状→transform 改变形状;trans 变换,改变,转移+plant 种→转移过去→transplant 移植

41 acquire /ə'kwaɪə/ *vt.*

(1) gain knowledge or learn a skill 学到,获得(知识、技能)

—He acquired a good knowledge of English. 他英语学得很好。

(2) get or gain sth. 取得;获得

—We should acquire more first-hand information. 我们应当取得更多的第一手资料。
【派生】acquired *adj.* 后天习得的 acquisition *n.* 获得；得到
【近义】obtain, gain, get, win, earn, secure
【词根】quir=seek/search，表示“寻求，询问”。ac 加强动作+quir 寻求，询问+e→acquire 获得，学到(知识等)，养成(习惯)；en 进入……之中+quir 寻求，询问+e→进入询问之中→enquire 询问；in 进入+quir 寻求，询问+e→问进去→inquire 打听，盘问，调查；re 再+quir 寻求，询问+e→再寻求→require 请求，需要

42 **prosperous** /ˈprɒsp(ə)rəs/ *a.*
(*fml.*) rich and successful 富裕的；繁荣的；兴旺的
—The place looks more prosperous than ever. 这地方显得空前繁荣。
【派生】prosperity *n.* 富裕；繁荣；兴旺

(二)短语

1 **remind sb. of sb./sth.**
(1) make sb. remember sb. that they know or sth. that happened in the past 使某人想起某人或某事
—The photos remind me of my schooldays. 这些照片使我回想起我的学生时代。
(2) be very similar to sb. or sth. else 使某人想起(相似的)人或事
—She was tall and slim, and reminded me of my cousin Mary. 她身材高挑，让我想起了我的表妹玛丽。

2 **get by**
have just enough of sth. such as money or knowledge so that you can do what you need to do 过活；过得去；勉强应付
—Melville managed to get by on a small amount of money. 梅尔维尔仅靠一点点钱勉强度日。

3 **make the most of sth.**
gain the greatest possible advantage from sth. 最大限度地利用某物
—Since the Internet is a very useful tool, we should make the most of it in our study. 既然互联网是很有用的工具，我们就应该在学习中最大限度地利用它。

4 **reap the benefits (of sth.)**
enjoy the advantages of sth. 得享(某事物的)好处
—We are determined that our children continue to reap the benefits of those measures. 我们决心让儿童继续享受这些措施的益处。

5 **in advance**
before sth. happens or is expected to happen 预先；提前
—It is a good idea to place your order well in advance. 早早就提前下单是个好主意。

6 **stand a chance (of doing sth.)**
have the possibility of succeeding or achieving sth. 有(做成某事的)希望
—They both stand a chance of winning first prize. 他们俩都有希望得到第一名。

7 **over time**
gradually 逐渐地；慢慢地
—For good or bad, things will change over time. 不管是好是坏，事情慢慢都是会变的。

8 **turn (sb./sth.) into sth.**
become sth. different, or make sb. or sth. do this (使某人/某物)变成
—Her bitter experience has turned her into a stronger person. 痛苦的经历使她变得更坚强了。

9 all at once

(1) at the same time 同时

—She had two projects at hand, three classes to teach, and a baby to take care of all at once. 她同时有两个项目要做,三个班级要教,还有一个婴儿要照顾。

(2) suddenly and unexpectedly 一下子;突然

—All at once there was someone knocking on the door. 突然有人敲门。

10 take pleasure in (doing) sth.

enjoy (doing) sth. very much 乐于做某事

—I took great pleasure in being with family and friends. 我从与家人及朋友的相处中得到了很大乐趣。

11 open the door to sth.

make an opportunity for sth. to happen 给……以机会;给……敞开方便之门

—Research on genes should open the door to new medical treatments. 基因研究应该会为新医疗方法的诞生创造机会。

12 take delight in (doing) sth.

enjoy (doing) sth. very much 以(做)某事为乐

—He seemed to take delight in embarrassing me. 他似乎以让我难堪为乐。

三、课文注释

1 Your achievement is the triumph of years of hard work, both of your own and of your parents and teachers. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】Your entering this university is an important success. This success is due to many years of your hard work, and many years of your parents' and teachers' hard work.

【解　析】本句为简单句,后置定语"多年的努力"形容"所取得的成就",同时"多年的努力"也有后置定语"你们自己的"和"父母老师的"。

2 Here at the university, we pledge to make your educational experience as rewarding as possible. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】Here at the university, we promise to make your educational experience as worthwhile as possible.

【解　析】rewarding 意为"值得的;有意义的;有回报的",-ing 加在某些及物动词后,构成形容词,主要用于表示事物的性质或特征,或某物某事给人的感觉、情感、印象等。这类词包括 welcoming, charming, discouraging, disgusting, frightening, alarming, surprising 等。

3 You will miss your old routines and your parents' reminders to work hard and attain your best. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】You will miss your usual life patterns and your parents' reminding words that you should work hard and achieve the best you can.

【解　析】attain 是正式用语词汇,指经过不懈的努力取得结果,常用于表示达到某一目标。acquire 多指经过努力逐步获得才能、知识等,也可用于表示获得财物。该词强调"一经获得就会长期持有"的含义。

4 You may have cried tears of joy to be finally finished with high school, and your parents may have cried tears of joy to be finally finished with doing your laundry! (Para. 3)

【Meaning】Perhaps you were so happy that you cried because at last you finished high school, and perhaps your parents were so happy that they cried because eventually they wouldn't have to do your laundry any more!

【解　析】本句中校长表达幽默风趣，孩子们和父母都喜极而泣，但却是因为不同的原因。do 是最常见的表示"做"的动词，说明某人进行某项行动、活动或任务，常和事情或工作搭配，也常常和表示锻炼或劳动等方面的名词或动名词连用，表示做与家务有关的事情。

5 Here you are surrounded by great resources: interesting students from all over the country, a learned and caring faculty, a comprehensive library, great sports facilities, and student organizations covering every possible interest—from the arts to science, to community service and so on. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】Here are many resources available on campus: interesting schoolmates, knowledgeable and helpful teachers, a big library, great sports equipment, various student organizations, etc.

【解　析】本句为被动句，介词 by 后列举了五个并列的名词短语，"来自全国各地的有趣的学生，学识渊博又充满爱心的老师，综合性图书馆，完备的运动设施，针对不同兴趣的学生社团"，这些都将有助于使学生的校园生活充实又丰富多彩。

6 I want to encourage you to make the most of this unique experience, and to use your energy and enthusiasm to reap the benefits of this opportunity. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】I want to encourage you to do all you can to take advantage of this special experience, and to use your energy and passion to gain rewards / good results from this chance.

【解　析】本句为简单句，不定式 to use 后接目的状语 to reap。

7 You may feel overwhelmed by the wealth of courses available to you. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】When facing the large number of courses that you can take at college, you may not know how to choose.

【解　析】本句中 wealth 做不可数名词，意为"大量；众多；丰富"，通常用固定表达 the wealth of sth.。有这么多课程可供选择，你可能会不知所措。

8 You will not be able to experience them all, but sample them widely! (Para. 5)

【Meaning】You will not be able to take all the courses, but try as many different courses as possible to see what they are about.

【解　析】动词 sample 通常用作名词"样本；样品"或动词"抽样检验"，本句中意为"体验"。你不可能选修所有的课程，但是要尽可能体验更多的课程。

9 Don't assume that you know in advance what fields will interest you the most. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】Don't think that you already know what fields will be most interesting to you.

【解　析】assume 指把一件尚未证实的事作为事实或真相，含有较强的武断成分。凡肯定与事实或真相不同的情况下，一般用 assume。suppose 表示有一定根据的猜想。在口语中，I suppose 和 I guess 用法相同，但 suppose 更常见于英国英语，guess 更常见于美国英语。

10 You will not only emerge as a more broadly educated person, but you will also stand a better chance of discovering an unsuspected passion that will help to shape your future. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】You will not only grow and develop into a more broadly educated person, but you will also be more likely to find a passion you don't know you have, which will help you to shape your future.

【解　析】在大学里，学生积累各种各样的经验，进而成长和发展，之后有脱胎换骨的变化，就像毛毛虫蜕变为美丽的蝴蝶。emerge 虽然字面上没有 evolve(进化)的意思，但这里却有变化发展的内在含义。

11 A wonderful example of this is the fashion designer, Vera Wang, who originally studied art history. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】A very good example to show the importance of trying something you have never tried before is the fashion designer, Vera Wang, who at first studied art history.

【解　析】本句中，校长援引王薇薇为实例，表明尝试新事物和挑战自己的重要性，这可能会带来意想不到的好处。

12 Over time, Wang paired her studies in art history with her love of fashion and turned it into a passion for design, which made her a famous designer around the world. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】Gradually, Wang combined her studies in art history with her love of fashion and developed it into a passion for design, which made her a famous designer around the world.

【解　析】本句中 pair 做及物动词，意为"使成对；配对"，通常用固定表达 pair sb. /sth. with sb. /sth.。随着时间的推移，王薇薇把艺术史研究和对时装的热爱结合起来。

13 You may be an early bird while your roommate is a night owl! (Para. 6)

【Meaning】You may be a person who gets up early in the morning but your roommate is a person who does not go to bed until it is late.

【解　析】本句中 while 用作并列连词。用作并列连词时，while 有两个意思，一是表示"但是；而"，表示两种情况之间的差别；另一个意思是"虽然；尽管"，相当于 although。

14 Don't worry if you become a little uncomfortable with some of your new experiences. I promise you that the happy experiences will outweigh the unpleasant ones. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Don't worry if you don't feel very happy with some of your new experiences. I promise you that there will be more happy experiences than unpleasant ones.

【解　析】句中 outweigh 做及物动词，意为"比……更重要；比……更有价值"。……我保证快乐的经历会多于不快的经历。

15 And I promise that virtually all of them will provide you with valuable lessons which will enrich your life. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】And I promise that almost all of your experiences, pleasant or unpleasant, will give you valuable lessons that will make your life better and more enjoyable.

【解　析】本句为复合句，包含一个 that 引导的宾语从句，宾语从句中又包含一个 which 引导的定语从句。

16 So, with a glow in your eye and a song in your heart, step forward to meet these new experiences! (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Therefore, with the excitement and enthusiasm that I know you must have in your heart, I encourage you to go forward from here and face this new part of your life!

【解　析】本句中校长使用了比喻的修辞手法，眼中的热切和心中的歌体现了学生们的兴奋和热情。

17 We have confidence that your journey toward self-discovery and your progress toward finding your own passion will yield more than personal advancement. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】We firmly believe that this educational process will help you learn a great deal about yourself. And it will help you find your own passion. This will not only bring about personal advancement, such as a prestigious job and better position, but also help you become a complete person.

【解　析】本句中名词 advancement 意为"进步；进展"。获得提升或更好的职位当然是个人进步，但大学教育不仅仅局限与此，它更会使你成为一个完整的人。

18 We believe that as you become members of our community of scholars, you will soon come to recognize that with the abundant opportunities for self-enrichment provided by the university, there also come responsibilities. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】We believe that once you join our group of scholars, you will soon come to realize that while the university offers you so many chances for personal development, there come duties as well.

【解　析】本句中校长在阐述了大学教育给学生带来的机遇和好处之后，又提出了另一个话题：大学生应该承担的责任。

19 You are the inheritors of the hard work of your families and the hard work of many countless others who came before you. They built and transmitted the knowledge you will need to succeed. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】You inherit the fruit of the hard work of your families and of many other people who were before you. They built and passed on to you the knowledge which you will need in order to succeed.

【解　析】本句为复句，其中包含两个定语从句，分别是 others 后 who 引导的定语从句和 knowledge 后的定语从句。

20 We take great pleasure in opening the door to this great step in your journey. We take delight in the many opportunities which you will find, and in the responsibilities that you will carry as citizens of your communities, your country, and the world. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】We are very happy to open the door to this next great step in your journey. We are delighted that you will find many different opportunities and many responsibilities, which you will shoulder as citizens of your communities, your country, and the world.

【解　析】两句话为意义相近、结构相似的排比句，在结尾处增强了表达效果和气势，深化了中心。

四、课文译文

奔向更加光明的未来

1. 下午好！作为校长，我非常自豪地欢迎你们来到这所大学。你们所取得的成就是你们自己多年努力的结果，也是你们的父母和老师们多年努力的结果。在这所大学里，我们承诺将使你们学有所成。

2. 在欢迎你们到来的这一刻，我想起自己高中毕业时的情景，还有妈妈为我和爸爸拍的合影。妈妈吩咐我们："姿势自然点。""等一等，"爸爸说，"把我递给他闹钟的情景拍下来。"在大学期间，那个闹钟每天早晨叫醒我。至今它还放在我办公室的桌子上。

3. 让我来告诉你们一些你们未必预料得到的事情。你们将会怀念以前的生活习惯，怀念父母曾经提醒你们要刻苦学习、取得佳绩。你们可能因为高中生活终于结束而喜极而泣，你们的父母也可能因为终于不用再给你们洗衣服而喜极而泣！但是要记住：未来是建立在过去扎实的基础上的。

4. 对你们而言，接下来的四年将会是无与伦比的一段时光。在这里，你们拥有丰富的资源：有来自全国各地的有趣的学生，有学识渊博又充满爱心的老师，有综合性图书馆，有完备的运动设施，还有针对不同兴趣的学生社团——从文科社团到理科社团、到社区服务等等。你们将自由地探索、学习新科目。你们要学着习惯点灯熬油，学着结交充满魅力的人，学着去追求新的爱好。我想鼓励你们充分利用这一特殊的经历，并用你们的干劲和热情去收获这一机会所带来的丰硕成果。

5. 有这么多课程可供选择，你可能会不知所措。你不可能选修所有的课程，但是要尽可能体验更多的课程！大学里有很多事情可做可学，每件事情都会为你提供不同视角来审视世界。如果我只能给你们一条选课建议的话，那就是：挑战自己！不要认为你早就了解自己对什么样的领域最感兴趣。选择一些你从未接触过的领域的课程。这样，你不仅会变得更加博学，而且更有可能发现一个你未曾想到的、能成就你未来的爱好。一个绝佳的例子就是时装设计师王薇薇，她最初学的是艺术史。随着时间的推移，王薇薇把艺术史研究和对时装的热爱结合起来，并将其转化为对设计的热情，从而使她成为全球闻名的设计师。

6. 在大学里,一下子拥有这么多新鲜体验可能不会总是令人愉快的。在你的宿舍楼里,住在你隔壁寝室的同学可能会反复播放同一首歌,令你头痛欲裂!你可能喜欢早起,而你的室友却是个夜猫子!尽管如此,你和你的室友仍然可能成为最要好的朋友。如果有些新的经历让你感觉不那么舒心,不要担心。我保证快乐的经历会多于不快的经历。而且我保证几乎所有这些经历都会给你带来宝贵的经验教训,从而使你的生活更加丰富多彩。所以,带着热切的目光和欢乐的心情,去拥抱这些新的体验吧!

7. 我们相信,你们的自我发现之旅和对爱好的寻求带给你们的将不仅仅是个人的进步。我们相信,当你们成为我们的学者群体中的一员时,你们很快就会认识到,大学不仅提供大量自我充实的机会,同时也带来了责任。一位智者说过:"教育代代相传,它就是社会的灵魂。"你们是你们家庭辛勤劳动成果的传承者,也是无数前辈辛勤劳动成果的传承者。他们积累了知识,并把知识传递给你们,而这些知识正是你们取得成功所必需的。现在轮到你们了。你们会获取什么样的知识?你们会发现什么样的兴趣爱好?你们怎样做才能为你们的子孙后代创造一个强大昌盛的未来?

8. 我们很高兴能为你们人生旅途中这一重大阶段开启大门。我们很高兴你们将获得许多机会,也很高兴你们将作为社区、国家乃至世界的公民承担起应有的责任。欢迎你们!

五、练习答案及详解

Pre-reading activities

Scripts:

Sarah: Hi I'm Sarah. I'm a student advisor at a university. I know the first year of college is always difficult. You have to adapt to a new environment, and learn to do everything on your own. To help make your transition just a little easier, I'm going to interview some senior students on campus. Let's see what advice they can give you.

Sarah: Hi Jennifer. What do you think is important to a freshman?

Jennifer: I think it is very important to go to class regularly. It sounds easy, but oversleeping and missing that 8 o'clock morning class is very common. Try to go to class on time and regularly. You will learn the material in class, get to know the professors, and make friends with your classmates. You will also get important information from the professors about tests and exams.

Sarah: Mark, do you agree with Jennifer?

Mark: Absolutely. My advice is: Find a good place to study. It may be your dorm room or a corner of the library or a quiet classroom, but find a place that works best for you to get your work done. If you have trouble concentrating in your dorm, you need to find another place.

Sarah: Nancy, what is your advice for freshmen?

Nancy: "All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy." My advice is to get involved on campus. A big problem for a lot of new students is that they miss home and they don't have a sense of belonging. The solution is to join a student organization, or a club, or a sports team. You will make new friends, learn new skills, and feel more connected to your school.

Sarah: Excellent advice, Nancy. Simon, it seems you have something to say.

Simon: Yes, I do. Well, I want to say you should keep a balance. College life is a mixture of social life and academic life. Don't join too many student organizations or go to too many activities. Otherwise, you won't have enough time to study. Of course, you should not become a

bookworm. The key is to keep a balance between fun and study.

Sarah: They all give very useful tips. But let me add a few more. Take responsibility for yourself and your actions; take advantage of the learning resources on campus; stay healthy and eat right. I hope you will get the most out of your college experience.

1 Listen to an interview about tips for freshman students. Match the name of the person in the left column with the tip given by the person in the right column.

1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. E

2 Listen to the interview again and check your answer.

3 Answer the following questions.

1. In fact all the pieces of advice mentioned in the interview are very useful. But if I have to choose one as the most useful, I'd choose "keep a balance". When we were in high school, we spent almost all our time studying. There lacked a balance between social life and academic life in high school. It's important to keep a balance between life and work because it will give us a sound mind in a sound body. Now we have much more free time, so we can join student organizations or go to different activities.
2. Before I left for college my parents did have a talk with me. They told me how important college experience would be in my life. They told me about the opportunities that college education would open up to me. They told me to try to develop more interests and join some student clubs. The most impressive advice they gave me was that I should not only read books about my major; instead, they advised me to read as widely as possible. All these are very valuable pieces of advice.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

1 Answer the following questions.

1. The parents reminded their children to work hard and achieve the best they could.
2. The president calls on the students to make the most of the great resources on campus: to explore new subjects, to meet fascinating people, and to pursue new passions.
3. By saying "sample them widely", the president mean students should try many different courses and try something new to see what it is like.
4. If we don't challenge ourselves, we will not become broadly educated people, and we may not find the passion that will help us shape our future.
5. We can learn from the example of Vera Wang that we should challenge ourselves and by challenging ourselves, we are more likely to find an interest we don't know we have, and this interest may help us build a prosperous future.
6. We should not worry, and we should learn to face this new part of our life with enthusiasm. College experiences, pleasant or unpleasant, will provide us with valuable lessons which will enrich our life.
7. The expression "Now it is your turn" means that now it is time for you to acquire knowledge and to pass it on.
8. The president's welcoming speech is really impressive. He mentions many important things about college life, the resources available on campus, as well as the opportunities we have and the responsibilities we should take. The speech is very inspiring.

Critical thinking

2 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. A university education will play a very important role in my life, and it will benefit me in a number of ways. In the university I can acquire specialized knowledge about my major, and develop critical thinking and research skills. I will have the opportunities to meet and share ideas with people of different minds. I can gain a broader view of the world by meeting people from diverse backgrounds and cultures. And I will start my life journey of self-discovery, self-improvement, and self-fulfillment.
2. Yes, absolutely. With a university education, a person will have more freedom and therefore more choices. This education experience provides unlimited potential. Moreover, a university education provides the means for one to succeed. Not only will a person obtain knowledge and skills essential for his career development, but he will also develop an independent mind and be able to make right decisions on his own.
3. I admire those who dropped out of university and yet have made fame for themselves by achieving big goals. Some people use those successful college dropouts as counterexamples to show their belief that a person can succeed even without a university education. Chances are that most people do not have the same mind, talent, determination, or opportunities as Bill Gates, Steve Jobs, and Mark Zuckerberg did; therefore, they might not be able to achieve success without having a university education. In fact, a university education will equip them with the necessary knowledge and skills which will help them to succeed.
4. Nowadays education is getting more and more expensive, especially college education. And there are people who choose to give up education because of the high cost. But without education, one would not be able to acquire knowledge that an education will offer. In other words, they would be "ignorant". The result would be that ignorant people will suffer even more or pay even more for being so. It is true that education is expensive, but if you try "ignorance", the cost would be even higher.
5. To sample widely and challenge myself, I am going to venture out of my comfort zone and do what I have not had the courage to do. For instance, I will make friends with people from diverse backgrounds and cultures. I will take a swimming class and learn how to swim. I will attend unconventional lectures, join student clubs, and try all kinds of food. Most of all, I will do whatever it takes to make the most of the four years and try to become a well-rounded graduate.

Language focus

Words in use

3 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. confidence

   【译文】若给他展示才能的机会,他就会获得信心并在学业上取得成功。
2. explore

   【译文】由于部分海底很深,探险海底是很困难的。
3. emerged

【译文】埃勒克斯三十秒后才浮出水面，这让我们都很害怕。

4. assume

【译文】我们经常认为其他人也是出于同样的原因而和我们做同样的事情，其实这种假设有时是不合理的。

5. pose

【译文】大家普遍担心失业率的增长会对社会稳定造成危害。

6. comprehensive

【译文】经过全面体检后，我的医生说除了血压有点高以外身体状态很好。

7. resources

【译文】众所周知，中国是一个资源丰富、人口众多的国家。

8. yield

【译文】一些人认为地球可以产出足够现在人口所消费的两倍的食物。

9. inherited

【译文】山姆继承了他的家人的想象力，但他缺乏执行力。

10. transmit

【译文】发现蜂蜜的蜜蜂能够向其他蜜蜂传递信息并一起采蜂蜜。

Word building

4 Add *un-*, *-ant*, or *-ify* to or remove them from the following words to form new words.

Words learned	New words formed
un-	
cover	uncover
easy	uneasy
load	unload
-ant	
apply	applicant
resist	resistant
account	accountant
assistant	assist
-ify	
simple	simplify
note	notify
quality	qualify
class	classify

5 Fill in the blanks with the newly-formed words in Activity 4. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. classified

【译文】尽管被归类为肉食动物,熊猫的饮食是绝对素食主义者的饮食。

2. assist

【译文】他们已经开发了计算机系统,这将极大地帮助所有的图书馆用户,使他们不需要别人的帮助。

3. resistant

【译文】根据城市建设要求做出适当的改变,以使建筑物和公路更耐地震。

4. uncovered

【译文】经过两个月的调查,警方破获了这三名男子的意图,并逮捕了他们。

5. uneasy

【译文】消费者说,他们对在互联网上使用信用卡感到不安,因为他们害怕网络欺诈和身份盗窃。

6. qualify

【译文】大学学位和一些工作经验使你有资格应聘登在报纸上的工作。

7. unloading

【译文】英国船只今天上午到达港口,现在正在港口卸货。

8. applicants

【译文】作为人力资源经理,我遇到过许多技术熟练但态度不好的求职者。

9. simplified

【译文】老师简化他的指令,目的是使小朋友们可以更好地理解他。

10. accountant

【译文】我的专业是文学,然而,现在我在一个公司做会计,每天都和数字打交道。

11. notified

【译文】委员会的决定将于下周通知全体员工。

Banked cloze

6 Fill in the blanks by selecting suitable words from the word bank. You may not use any of the words more than once.

1. D

【解析】classify... into 固定搭配。

2. H

【解析】此处应该填一个名词,passion 是名词。have a passion for... 固定搭配。

3. A

【解析】根据上下文,此处词义应该是"获得一个光明的未来",attain 符合题意。

4. B

【解析】此句是本段的中心句,根据下面的句子推断此处为 pursue。

5. M

【解析】此处应该填一个副词,virtually 符合题意。

6. F

【解析】find sth.... find 后接复合宾语,此处应该填一个形容词,根据 and 并列的句子推断此处的意思,fascinating 符合句意。

7. O

【解析】此句为本段中心句,根据后面的句子内容选 prosperous 符合题意。

8. I

【解析】acquire knowledge from... 固定搭配。

9. G

【解析】be available to... 固定搭配。

10. J

【解析】略。

Expressions in use

7 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. got by

【译文】在我父亲失业后,我们一家依靠他的失业金勉强度日。

2. make the most of

【译文】很多的地铁乘客为了在上班的路上最大化地利用时间或者看书或者听音乐。

3. in advance

【译文】为了确保他能出席会议,我提前两周给他打了电话。

4. over time

【译文】专家说,我们公司是惊人的,因为随着时间的推移,公司销售额稳步增长。

5. reap the benefits of

【译文】为了获得体育锻炼的好处,你必须经常运动,至少每一次半小时。

6. all at once

【译文】他们都同时讲话,但是我根本听不见他们所说的。

7. remind... of

【译文】地里的黄花总是让我想起在乡下的我的童年。

8. stand a chance of

【译文】一直以来我们努力地训练,我们队应该有机会赢得比赛。

9. open the door to

【译文】基因研究将为新的激动人心的医疗方法打开大门。

10. take pleasure in

【译文】你们中的每一个都做出了贡献,我很高兴地承认正是你们每个人所做的才使得这次的学术会议如此成功。

Structure analysis and writing

Structure analysis

8 Read Paragraph 3 of Text A and find the topic sentence, its supporting details and the concluding sentence.

第一句 Let me share with you something that you may not expect. 是本段的主题句,在此主题句下分别阐述两个细节 Detail 1: You will miss your old routines and your parents' reminders to work hard and attain your best. Detail 2: You many have cried tears of joy to be finally finished with high school,

and your parents may have cried tears of joy to be finally finished with doing your laundry! 最后提出本段的结论 Concluding sentence: But know this: The future is built on a strong foundation of the past.

Structured writing

9 Write a paragraph on one of the following topics. One topic has an outline that you can follow.

There are some things you can do to succeed in college. First, pursue passions. Your passions will broaden your mind and make your life interesting. Second, never let go of any opportunities that come your way. College is full of unique opportunities, which will enable you to sample new things and meet wonderful people. Lastly, take responsibilities. In college you must learn to be responsible for your won decisions and actions. With the passions, the opportunities, and the ability to take responsibilities, you will become successful not only in college, but also in your future career.

Translation

10 Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.

苏格拉底是古希腊哲学家，被誉为现代西方哲学的奠基人。他是一个谜一般的人物，人们主要通过后期的一些古典作家的叙述，尤其是他最著名的学生柏拉图的作品去了解他。苏格拉底以他对伦理学的贡献而闻名。他的教学法亦称为苏格拉底法，即通过提问和回答来激发批判性思维以及阐述观点。该方法在各种讨论中仍被普遍使用。他还在认识论和逻辑领域做出了重大而深远的贡献。他的思想和方法所带来的影响一直是后来的西方哲学的坚实基础。苏格拉底是古代哲学史上最丰富多彩的人物。他在他那个时代已威名远扬。虽然他未曾建立什么哲学体系，未曾设立什么学派，也未曾创立什么宗派，但他的名字很快就变得家喻户晓了。

11 Translate the following paragraph into English.

Confucius was a great thinker and educator in Chinese history. He was the founder of Confucianism and was respectfully referred to as an ancient "sage". His words and life story were recorded in *The Analects*. An enduring classic of ancient Chinese culture, *The Analects* has had a great influence on the thinkers, writers, and statesmen that came after Confucius. Without studying this book, one could hardly truly understand the thousands-of-years' traditional Chinese culture. Much of Confucius' thought, especially his thought on education, has had a profound influence on Chinese society. In the 21st century, Confucian thought not only retains the attention of the Chinese, but it also wins an increasing attention from the international community.

Section B

What we wish



一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文是一封父亲写给即将去上大学的孩子的信,信里满满的都是父亲对孩子的殷切期望和谆谆教诲。信的开头,这位父亲表达了自己苦乐参半的心情。乐的是孩子要上大学了,父母骄傲;苦的是孩子要离开家了,父母不舍。父亲认为大学是人生的重要时光,要认真对待每一门课程,要选择激发热情、拓展智力的课程去发现学习的真谛。接着,父亲建议要重视所学到的东西而不是分数;要结交坦率真诚的朋友并信任他们。最后,这位父亲建议孩子要珍惜青春,珍惜眼前的大学经历,用满腔的热情去拥抱大学时光。

(二)背景知识

史蒂芬·乔布斯(Steve Jobs, 1955 年 2 月 24 日—2011 年 10 月 5 日),苹果公司的创办人之一,并曾任苹果公司的董事会主席、首席运行官,同时也是前皮克斯动画工作室的董事长及首席执行官(皮克斯动画工作室已于 2006 年被迪士尼收购)。乔布斯还曾是迪士尼公司的董事会成员和最大个人股东。乔布斯被认为是电脑业界与娱乐业界的标志性人物,同时人们也把他视作 iMac, iPod, iTunes Store, iPhone, iPad 等知名数字产品的缔造者。2007 年,史蒂夫·乔布斯被《财富》杂志评为了"年度最强有力商人"。

乔布斯的生涯极大地影响了硅谷风险创业的传奇,他将美学至上的设计理念在全世界推广开来。他对简约及便利设计的推崇为他赢得了许多忠实追随者。乔布斯与沃兹尼亚克共同使个人电脑在 20 世纪 70 年代末至 80 年代初流行开来,他也是第一个看到鼠标的商业潜力的人。乔布斯在 1985 年苹果高层权力斗争中离开苹果并成立了 NeXT 公司,瞄准专业市场。1997 年,苹果收购 NeXT,乔布斯回到苹果接任首席执行官。2011 年 8 月 24 日,乔布斯宣布辞去苹果首席执行官职务,10 月 5 日因身患胰脏癌去世,享年 56 岁。

美国总统奥巴马对乔布斯的去世发表声明:"乔布斯是美国最伟大的创新者之一,他勇于与众不同地思考,敢于相信自己能够改变世界,并用自己的才华来付诸实施。"《福布斯》发表声明:"世上永远不会再有第二个乔布斯。"

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Paras. 1 - 2 The father's feeling when his child is about to leave home and start college. 当孩子即将离开家、步入大学校门时父亲的感受。

Para. 3 The father thinks college is an important leg of his child's journey in life and his reasons. 父亲认为大学是人生的一个重要旅程,以及他的理由。

Para. 4 The father's suggestion about what kind of course his child should take. 父亲对于孩子选什么样课程的建议。

Para. 5 The father's attitude towards grades. 父亲对于分数的态度。

Para. 6 The father's advice about his child's making friends. 父亲对于孩子交朋友的建议。

Paras. 7 - 9 The father's expectations about his child's dealing with college experience. 父亲对于孩子在大学这段时光里的期望。

2. 写作特点

本文是一封爸爸写给孩子的信,总体的写作特点是作者使用了大量的祈使句来建议和教导即将步入大学生活的孩子,并且这些句子都很简洁。祈使句的作用就是表示请求、命令、建议等,通常以动词开头,省去主语 you。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 participate /pɑːˈtɪsɪˌpeɪt/ *vi.*

take part in an activity or event 参加;参与

—Over half the population of this country participate in sport. 这个国家一半以上的人口参加体育锻炼。

【派生】participation *n.* 参加

【词根】part=part/divide,表示"部分,分开";cip=take/hold/seize,表示"拿,抓,握住"。parti=part 部分+cip 抓+ate 表动词→抓住成为一部分→participate 参与

【近义】attend, join, take part in

2 incredible /ɪnˈkredəbl/ *a.*

(1) extremely good, large or great 极好的;极大的

—Thanks for taking me, I had an incredible time. 谢谢你带我去,我玩得非常开心。

(2) too strange to be believed or very difficult to believe 不可相信的;难以置信的

—It's incredible that he survived the airplane crash. 他在飞机失事中幸存了下来,这真是难以置信。

【派生】incredibly *ad.* 令人难以置信地

【近义】unbelievable

【反义】credible

3 deny /dɪˈnaɪ/ *vt.*

say that sth. is not true, or that you do not believe sth. 否认;否定

—He didn't deny the facts. 他没有否认这些事实。

【近义】reject, decline

【反义】confirm, acknowledge

4 undeniably /ˌʌndɪˈnaɪəbli/ *ad.*

in an unquestionable or obvious manner 不可否认地;无可争辩地 .

—Undeniably, fathers are very important for the well-being of children. 不可否认,父亲对孩子的健康成长是非常重要的。

【派生】undeniable *a.* 不可否认的;无可争辩的

5 depart /dɪˈpɑːt/ *v.*

leave, esp. when you are starting a journey 离开(尤指动身去旅行);启程;上路

—In the morning Mr. McDonald departed for Sydney. 麦克唐纳先生上午启程前往悉尼。

【派生】departure *n.* 出发;离开

【词根】part＝part/divide，表示“部分，分开”。de 分开＋part 部分，分开→部分分开→depart 离开
【近义】leave，set out
【反义】reach，arrive

6 inquisitive /ɪn'kwɪzətɪv/ *a.*

(1) keen to learn about a lot of different things 好学的；好问的

—My elder brother is an intelligent and inquisitive young man. 我哥哥是个聪明好学的年轻人。

(2) asking a lot of questions about things，esp. things people don't want to talk about 过分好奇的；过于好问的；好打听的

—Don't be so inquisitive. It's none of your business! 别这么追根问底的。这与你无关！

【词缀】后缀-itive 表示形容词“……的”。inquisite 审讯，调查＋ ive……的→inquisitive 过分好问的，好奇的
【近义】curious

7 engage /ɪn'geɪdʒ/

vt. attract and keep sb.'s interest or attention 吸引住（某人的兴趣、注意力）

—The toy engaged the little girl's interest. 那个玩具引起了小女孩的兴趣。

vi. (～in/on/upon) be doing or become involved in an activity 参加，参与（活动）

—I have never engaged in the drug trade. 我从未参与过毒品交易。

【词缀】动词前缀 en-表示“使……进入状态或加强”。en 使……进入状态或加强＋gage 挑战→进入挑战→engage 忙于……
【近义】attract；involve

8 despair /dɪ'speə/

vi. (*fml.*) feel that there is no hope at all 绝望；感到无望

—Don't let yourself despair；this will only make matters worse. 不要想不开，这样只能使情况变得更糟。

n. [U] a feeling that you have no hope at all 绝望

—I would overcome any weakness，any despair，any fear. 我要克服所有的软弱、绝望和恐惧。例句

【词根】spair＝hope，表示“希望”。de 去掉，无＋spair 希望→despair 无希望
【近义】depression
【反义】desire，hope

9 embrace /ɪm'breɪs/

vt. (*fml.*) eagerly accept a new idea，opinion，religion，etc. 欣然接受；乐意采纳

—He embraces the new information age. 他迎接新的信息时代的到来。

v. put your arms around sb. and hold them in a friendly or loving way 抱；拥抱

—At first people were sort of crying for joy and embracing each other. 起初人们几乎是喜极而泣，并互相拥抱。

【词缀】动词前缀 em-通常加在名词前构成动词，表示“进入……之中，包围，成为”。em 进入……之中，包围，成为＋brace 胳膊→embrace 进入怀抱
【近义】adopt，accept；hug

10 stimulate /'stɪmjʊleɪt/ *vt.*

(1) encourage sb. by making them excited about and interested in sth. 激发；鼓励；激励

—Bill was stimulated by the challenge. 这个挑战让比尔热情高涨。

(2) encourage or help an activity to begin or develop further 刺激;促使;促进

—America's priority is rightly to stimulate its economy. 美国的首要任务自然是刺激经济。

【派生】stimulation *n.* 激励;鼓励

【词根】stimul=prick,表示"刺,刺激"。stimul 刺,刺激+ate 使……→stimulate 刺激,激励,鼓舞

【近义】encourage, inspire, motivate

11 **intellectual** /ˌɪntəˈlektʃuəl/ *a.*

relating to the ability to understand things and think intelligently 智力的;脑力的

—High levels of lead could damage the intellectual development of children. 铅含量过高会损害儿童的智力发展。

【词根】lect=choose, gather,表示"选择,收集"。intel=inter 在……中间+lect 选择,收集→在中间选出的人→intellect 智者+ual……的→intellectual 知识分子;智力的,有理解力的

【近义】learned, educated, scholarly

【反义】ignorant

12 **capacity** /kəˈpæsəti/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] sb. 's ability to do sth. 能力;才能

—Her mental capacity and temperament are as remarkable as his. 她的才智和气质和他一样出众。

(2) [sing.] the amount of space a container, room, etc. has to hold things or people 容量;容积;容纳能力

—Each stadium had a seating capacity of about 50,000. 每个体育场均可容纳5万人左右。

【词根】cap=take/hold/seize,表示"拿,抓,握住"。cap 拿,抓,握住+acity 表名词→拿住的能力→capacity 容量;才能

【近义】ability, capability; size, volume

13 **bind** /baɪnd/ *vt.* (bound, bound)

(1) (*often passive*) limit what sb. is allowed to do by making them obey a rule or agreement 使受(规则或协议)约束

—The treaty binds them to respect their neighbor's independence. 条约规定他们必须尊重其邻国的独立。

(2) tie sb. 's hands or feet together so they cannot move 捆;绑

—They bound the criminal's arms and legs with rope. 他们用绳子捆绑住罪犯的手脚。

【词根】bind=tie together,表示"捆,结合"。bind 捆,结合→捆绑,捆扎

【近义】fasten, tie

14 **assure** /əˈʃʊə/ *vt.*

tell sb. that sth. will definitely happen or is definitely true so that they are less worried 向……保证;使确信

—I can assure you that the animals are well cared for. 我能向你保证动物们得到了精心照顾。

【派生】assurance *n.* 保证

【词根】sure=sure,表示"肯定,确定"。as 一再+sure 确定→一再确定→assure 肯定

【近义】ensure, guarantee, pledge, promise

15 **assured** /əˈʃʊəd/ *a.*

confident and certain 有把握的;自信的;肯定的

—Rest assured, he probably has rather more common sense than you realize. 放心吧,他知道的常识很

可能比你以为的要多得多。

【词根】sure=sure，表示“肯定，确定”。assure 肯定；确保/+ed……的→assured 确实的，确定的

16 **career** /kəˈrɪə/ *n.*

[C] a job or profession that you have been trained for, and which you do for a long period of your life 职业；事业

—She is now concentrating on a career as a fashion designer. 她目前正专注于服装设计师的工作。

【词根】car=load，表示“装载，负担”。car 车+eer 人→愿意为车辆经过的道路→人所经历的路程→career 事业，生涯

【近义】profession, job, occupation, trade, vocation, work, employment

17 **curve** /kɜːv/ *n.*

[C] a line that gradually bends like part of a circle 曲线；弧线

—The population curve has slowed down. 人口曲线已趋平缓。

18 **decent** /ˈdiːsnt/ *a.*

(1) of a good enough standard or quality 可接受的；相当好的；像样的

—He didn't get a decent explanation. 他没有得到一个像样的解释。

(2) following moral standards that are acceptable to society 正派的；规矩的

—The majority of people around here are decent people. 这里的大多数人都很正派。

【近义】proper, suitable

19 **boast** /bəʊst/ *v.*

talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements, or possessions 夸口；夸耀；吹嘘

—I don't want to boast, but I can actually speak six languages. 不是我吹嘘，我确实能讲六种语言。

【近义】brag, show off

20 **bond** /bɒnd/ *n.*

[C] sth. that unites two or more people or groups, such as love or a shared interest or idea 纽带；联系；关系

—The emotional bond between mother and child is usually very close. 母子之间的感情纽带通常是很紧密的。

vi. develop a special relationship with sb.（与某人）培养一种特殊的关系

—What had bonded them instantly and so completely was their similar background. 是相似的生活背景使他们很快变得亲密无间。

【近义】link, connection

21 **blossom** /ˈblɒs(ə)m/ *vi.*

develop and become more successful 发展；成长；繁盛；兴旺

—What began as a local festival has blossomed into an international event. 最初的地方节日已经发展成了国际性盛会。

【近义】bloom

【反义】wither

22 **decade** /ˈdekeɪd/ *n.*

[C] a period of 10 years 十年；十年期

—Prices have risen steadily during the past decade. 过去的十年间，物价一直在上涨。

【近义】period, era

23 genuine /ˈdʒenjuɪn/ *a.*

(1) honest, friendly, and sincere 真诚的;诚挚的

—He's the most genuine person I've ever met. 他是我见过的最真诚的人。

(2) real, rather than pretended or false 真正的;非伪造的

—This metal is made of genuine gold. 这枚奖章是真金制成的。

【近义】authentic, actual, real, true

【反义】fake, false

24 instinct /ˈɪnstɪŋkt/ *n.*

[C, U] a natural tendency to behave in a particular way or a natural ability to know sth. which is not learned 本能;直觉;天性

—Experience told him that a woman's natural instinct was to defend herself rather than hurt the attacker. 经验告诉他,妇女的天性是保护自己而不是去伤害攻击者。

【词根】stinct=prick,表示"刺,刺激"。in 内+stinct 刺,刺激→内在的刺激→instinct 本能

【近义】nature, character

25 confident /ˈkɒnfɪd(ə)nt/ *a.*

(1) sure that you have the ability to do things well or deal with situations successfully 有信心的;自信的

—She is a confident woman who is certain of her views. 她是一位充满自信的女性,对自己的观点深信不疑。

(2) sure that sth. will happen in the way that you want or expect 确信的;有把握的

—She is confident that everybody is on her side. 她确信所有人都站在她这边。

【派生】confidence *n.* 自信;信心

【词根】fid=trust/faith,表示"信任,相信,信念"。confide 吐露心事,委托,信赖,+ent……的→confident 确信的;自信的

【搭配】be confident of sth. 确信某事

【近义】assured

【反义】unsure

26 secure /sɪˈkjʊə/ *a.*

(1) feeling confident and safe 自信的;有把握的

—Your future in the company is secure. 你在公司的前途有保证。

(2) safe from attack, harm, or damage 安全的

—She felt secure and protected when she was with him. 和他在一起的时候,她感到一种被人保护的安全感。

【词根】cure=care,表示"关心"。se 分开+cure 关心→不关心,不担忧→secure 安全的

【近义】sound, safe, sure, protected

【反义】insecure

27 stereotype /ˈsteriəˌtaɪp/ *n.*

[C] a very firm and simple idea about what a particular type of person or thing is like 模式化的思想;旧框框

—The traditional stereotype of a woman at work in her home is gone. 妇女在家工作这种传统的刻板印象已不复见。

【词根】typ=type,表示"模式,形状"。stero 固体的+type 型式→stereotype 固定型式,老套

【近义】label

28 comprehend /ˌkɒmprɪˈhend/ *v.*

(*not in progressive*) understand sth. that is complicated or difficult 理解；领悟

—They can neither read nor write, nor can they comprehend such concepts. 他们不会读，不会写，也理解不了这样的概念。

【词根】prehend=catch，表示“抓住”。com 全部＋prehend 抓住→全部抓住→comprehend 理解

【近义】understand, know, grasp

29 cultivate /ˈkʌltɪˌveɪt/ *vt.*

(1) work hard to develop a particular skill, attitude, or quality 培养；养成

—School should cultivate students' sense of responsibility. 学校应该培养学生的责任感。

(2) prepare and use land for growing crops and plants 耕；耕作；开垦

—She cultivated a small garden of her own. 她耕种了一片属于自己的小园子。

【派生】cultivation *n.* 培养；耕种

【词根】cult=till，表示“耕种，培养”。cult 耕种，培养＋ivate 表动词→cultivate 耕作；培养

【近义】nurse, tend, foster

【反义】neglect

30 range /reɪndʒ/ *n.*

[C, usu. sing.] a number of people or things that are all different, but are all of the same general type 一系列

—A wide range of colors and patterns are available. 各种颜色和样式都有。

【词根】range=rank，表示“排列，顺序”。range 排列，顺序→范围，领域

31 innocence /ˈɪnəs(ə)ns/ *n.*

(1) [U] lack of life experience or knowledge of the bad things in the world 涉世不深；天真；单纯

—She has the innocence of a child. 她有小孩般的天真。

(2) [U] the fact of being not guilty of a crime 清白；无罪

—He claims he has evidence which could prove his innocence. 他声称有证据证明自己是无辜的。

【派生】innocent *a.* 天真的；单纯的

【词根】noc=hurt, poison，表示“伤害，毒”。in 无＋noc 伤害，毒＋ence 表名词→innocence 无害

【近义】sincerity, purity

【反义】guilt

32 curiosity /ˌkjʊəriˈɒsəti/ *n.*

[sing., U] the desire to know about sth. 好奇心

—They are there only to satisfy their curiosity. 他们去那里纯粹是为了满足其好奇心。

【派生】curious *a.* 好奇的

【习语】Curiosity killed the cat. (谚语)好奇害死猫。

【词根】cur=care，表示“关心”。cur 关心＋iosity 多……的状态→关心多→curiosity 好奇心

【近义】concern, interest

【反义】unconcern, indifference

33 amount /əˈmaʊnt/ *n.*

[C, U] a quantity of sth., such as time, money, or substance 数额；数量

—He needs that amount of money to survive. 他需要那样一笔钱以生存下去。

【词根】mount＝ascend，表示“登上，山，安装”。a＋mount 上→amount 总计
【近义】quantity，number，sum

34 flexibility /ˌfleksəˈbɪləti/ *n.*
[U] the ability to change or be changed easily to suit a different situation 灵活性
—A freelance career has the attraction of flexibility. 自由职业具有诱人的灵活性。
【派生】flexible *a.* 灵活的
【词根】flex＝bend，表示“弯曲”。flex 弯曲＋ibility 具备……性质的→具备弯曲的性质→flexibility 弹性
【反义】inflexibility

35 approach /əˈprəʊtʃ/
vt. deal with a situation or problem in a particular way 处理；应付
—Employers are interested in how you approach problems. 雇主对你如何处理问题感兴趣。
v. move closer to sb. or sth. 接近；靠近
—When I approached, they grew silent. 当我走近时，他们就不说话了。
n. [C] a particular way of thinking about or dealing with sth. 方式；方法
—We will be exploring different approaches to gathering information. 我们将探索收集信息的不同方法。
【派生】approachable *a.* 可接近的
【词根】proach＝near，表示“接近”。ap 一再＋proach 接近→approach 靠近，接近；方法
【近义】manner，method，way，mode，fashion，means
【反义】retreat

36 enthusiastic /ɪnˌθjuːziˈæstɪk/ *a.*
feeling or showing a lot of interest and excitement about sth. 热心的；热衷的
—The teachers are enthusiastic and have a sense of purpose. 教师们很有热情并且很有决心。
【派生】enthusiasm *n.* 热心；热情
【搭配】enthusiastic about (doing) sth. 对(做)某事很有热情
【近义】interested，eager，keen，excited

37 enthusiastically /ɪnˌθjuːziˈæstɪkli/ *ad.*
with enthusiasm; in an enthusiastic manner 热心地；热衷地
—The audience cheered him enthusiastically. 观众热情地向他欢呼。
【近义】eagerly，keenly，excitedly，passionately

38 talent /ˈtælənt/ *n.*
[C, U] a natural ability to do sth. well 天资；天赋；才能
—She is proud that both her children have a talent for music. 她为自己的两个孩子都有音乐天赋而自豪。
【近义】ability，capacity，capability，aptitude

39 evolve /ɪˈvɒlv/ *vt.*
(1) develop and change gradually over a long period of time 逐步发展；逐渐演变
　—Popular music evolved from folk songs. 流行音乐从民歌演变而来。
(2) if an animal or plant evolves, it changes gradually over a long period of time 进化；进化形成
　—Fish evolved from prehistoric sea creatures. 鱼是由史前海洋生物进化而来的。
【派生】evolution *n.* 演变；进化
【词根】volv＝roll/turn，表示“转，卷”。e 出＋volv 转，卷＋e→evolve 转出来，进展

【搭配】evolve from sth. 从……进化而来

【近义】progress, develop, grow

40 potential /pəˈtenʃl/ *n.*

[U] the possibility to develop or achieve sth. in the future 潜力;潜能

—The school strives to treat pupils as individuals and to help each one achieve their full potential. 学校力求对每一个学生因材施教,帮助他们充分发挥其潜力。

a. (*only before noun*) possible or likely in the future 可能的;潜在的

—We are aware of the potential problems and have taken every precaution. 我们已意识到潜在的问题,并采取了全面的预防措施。

【词根】potent=powerful,表示"有力的"。potent 强有力的+ial……的→potential 潜在的;可能的;潜能;潜力

【近义】possible, likely, probable

【反义】unlikely

41 bold /bəʊld/ *a.*

not afraid of taking risks and making difficult decisions 果敢的;敢于冒险的;大胆的

—It was bold of him to enter the burning building. 他敢进入那燃烧着的房屋,真是勇敢。

【近义】brave, courageous, heroic, fearless

【反义】timid, cowardly

42 enormous /ɪˈnɔːməs/ *a.*

very big in size or in amount 巨大的;庞大的

—Our team made an enormous effort to win the competition. 我们队为赢得比赛付出了巨大努力。

【词根】norm=rule/norm,表示"规则,规范"。e 出+norm 规则,规范+ous……的→出了正常状态→enormous 巨大的,过分的

【近义】huge, giant, large, vast, massive, tremendous

【反义】tiny

43 enormously /ɪˈnɔːməsli/ *ad.*

very or very much 非常;极其

—We benefited enormously from his rich experience. 我们从他的丰富经验中获益匪浅。

【近义】extremely, hugely

【反义】slightly

(二)短语

1 be about to do sth.

be going to happen or do sth. very soon 正要发生某事;即将做某事

—We arrived just as the ceremony was about to begin. 我们到达的时候,仪式正要开始。

2 go off

leave a place, esp. in order to do sth. 离开;走

—They have gone off to the coast for the summer. 他们已经去海边度夏了。

3 open up

become available or possible, or make sth. do this (使)出现;(使)成为可能

—His stories opened up new worlds of the imagination. 他的小说开创了想象力的新天地。

4 take sb. /sth. seriously

believe that sb. or sth. is worth your attention or respect 认真对待某人/某事
—Scientists and doctors have begun to take seriously the risk of depression in children. 科学家和医生已经开始认真对待儿童中的抑郁风险。
5 sign up (for sth.)
put your name on a list for sth. because you want to take part in it 报名
—Don't sign up for too many courses in one semester. 不要在一个学期内报太多的课。
6 get to sb.
(*infml.*) make sb. feel annoyed or upset 使生气;使烦恼
—His jokes started to get to me, so I found an excuse and left. 他的笑话让我感到生气,所以我找了个借口离开了。
7 give sb. the benefit of the doubt
accept what sb. tells you even though you think they may be wrong or lying, but you cannot be sure 虽有怀疑但还是愿意相信某人;姑且相信某人
—After hearing his explanation, I was prepared to give him the benefit of the doubt. 听了他的解释,我准备姑且相信他。
8 reduce sb. to sth.
force sb. into a particular unpleasant state or situation 使陷入(不利境地)
—Stress has reduced him to a nervous breakdown. 压力使他精神崩溃了。
9 as long as
used to say that one thing can happen or be true only if another thing happens or is true 只要
—I'll never forget that as long as I am living. 这事我至死也不会忘记。
10 feel like (doing) sth.
(*spoken*) want to have sth. or do sth. 想要(做)某事
—I didn't feel like sitting up all night. 我不想熬通宵。
11 safe and sound
unharmed, esp. after being in danger 安然无恙
—I'm glad to see you home safe and sound. 看到你平安回家我很高兴。
12 take sb./sth. away
remove sb. or sth., or make sth. disappear 拿走;带走;使消失
—This medicine will take your pain away. 这种药会消除你的疼痛。
13 be born to be/do sth.
be very suitable for a particular job, activity, etc. 天生适合做某事
—Was he born to be successful, or did he just luck out? 是他命中注定会成功,还是仅仅交了好运?
14 sb. can't wait
(*spoken*) used to emphasize that sb. is very excited about sth. and is eager for it to happen 某人急着/等不及(用于强调对即将发生的事感到兴奋和迫不及待)
—I can't wait to tell my mother the good news. 我迫不及待地要告诉妈妈这个好消息。

三、课文注释

1 You are about to participate in the next leg of your journey through life. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】You are going to enter the next part of your journey in life.

【解　析】leg 指"(旅程或赛程的)一段,一程"。本句指踏上人生的下一段旅程。

2 For us, this part is bittersweet. As you go off to college, exciting new worlds will open up to you. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】We feel both happy and sad to see you leave home. When you go to college, you will see exciting new worlds.

【解　析】bittersweet 指"苦乐参半的",本句指父母对孩子即将离开家去求学的复杂心情。

3 There has been no greater joy than watching you arrive at this moment. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】Our biggest joy is seeing you achieve this.

【解　析】本句使用了一种特殊形式表示最高级,即用"no + 比较级"来表示最高级。no greater joy 表示"没有……更令人欣喜了"。

4 It is here that you will truly discover what learning is about. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】It is in college that you will really find out what learning is about.

【解　析】本句是强调句,用于强调剧中的 here,即 in college,从而更有效地表达思想。常见的强调句型为:It is/was + 被强调的部分 + that/who/whom 从句。

5 I encourage you to stay inquisitive, but remember this: "Education is what remains after one has forgotten everything he learned in school." (Para. 3)

【Meaning】I inspire you to be curious, but keep this in mind: "The details you have learned or the facts you have remembered are not important. What is really important is the fact that you have learned how to learn and that you have developed a way of thinking and a sense of responsibility."

【解　析】本句中父亲引用了爱因斯坦的一句名言:"教育就是当一个人把在学校所学全部忘光之后剩下的东西。"意思就是说:"你受过的教育,读过的书,等时间长了,那些细枝末节就都忘了,剩下来的,就成了你的素质。"

6 What you learn is not as important as the fact that you learn. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】The reality that you are learning is more important than the details you have learned.

【解　析】not as... as... 表示"不如……"。本句指你学什么并不比你学习本身更重要。

7 This is the heart of scholarship: moving from teacher-taught to master-inspired, on over to the point where you become a self-learner. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】The most important part about learning is that you move from simply learning from teachers to getting inspiration from masters, and then to becoming a self-motivated learner.

【解　析】本句中的 scholarship 指"学识,学问";teacher-taught 指"被动学习";master-inspired 指"主动学习";而 self-learner 指"有自学能力的人"。

8 Of course, you must still take care to sign up for courses which stimulate your passion and your intellectual capacity. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】Of course, you should also take care to select courses that will help you develop your interest and improve your intellectual ability.

【解　析】本句中的 sign up for courses 表示"选课",是校园场景中常用的一个搭配。

9 Steve Jobs said, when you are in college, your passion will create many dots, and later in your life you will connect them. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】Steve Jobs said that in college, you passion will guide you to learn a lot of new and seemingly unconnected things; but later, those unconnected things will become connected and help you to become a well-rounded person.

【解　析】dots 本意指的是"很多个点",在本句中表示"看起来不相关的事情"被连接在一起就变成了"相关的事情"。

10 It is better that your greatest effort earns a lesser grade than that no effort earns you a decent or higher grade. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】It is better that you try your best without achieving the highest grade than that you do not work hard but still receive a good or higher grade.

【解　析】It is better that sb. does sth. than that sb. does sth. else. 用于表达"某人做某事比他做其他事情要好"。本句指"尽了最大努力却没拿高分比没努力却拿了高分要更好"。

11 Grades in the end are simply letters fit to give the vain something to boast about, and the lazy something to fear. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】In the end, grades are just letters. They are only something for the conceited people to show off, and something for the lazy people to be afraid of.

【解　析】本句中的 the vain 指的是"自负的人;自视过高的人";the lazy 指的是"懒惰的人"。当这类定冠词 the 与形容词连用时,表示一类人。如果这类词作主语,谓语动词要用复数形式。

12 You are too good to be either. The reward is not the grade but what you learn. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】You are very good; you are neither vain nor lazy. The reward you get is not the grade, but what you have really learned.

【解　析】too + *adj.* /*adv.* + to + 动词原形,意为"太……而不能……";not... but...,意为"不是……而是……"。

13 Instead, trust your instincts when you make new friends. You are a genuine and sincere person; anyone would enjoy your friendship. So be confident, secure and proactive. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Just to the opposite of your worries, you should believe in your inborn ability of judgment when making new friends. You are an honest and sincere person; anyone would like to make friends with you. So you should be confident, assured, and take the initiative.

【解　析】本句中的 proactive 意为"积极的;主动的;先发制人的",相当于 active。

14 Give others the benefit of the doubt, and don't reduce anyone to stereotypes. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Even though you may not be so sure, you should treat people as if they are nice and honest; don't form a premature and fixed idea about people.

【解　析】本句中的 give sb. the benefit of the doubt 表示"姑且相信某人",表明了父亲让孩子信任朋友,不要抱有成见的建议。

15 Nobody is perfect; as long as others are genuine, trust them and be good to them. They will give back. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Nobody is perfect; trust others and treat them well as long as they are honest and sincere. They will treat you well, too.

【解　析】Nobody is perfect. 意为"人无完人"。as long as 表示"只要"。

16 A healthy body and a sound mind are the greatest instruments you will ever possess. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】A healthy body and a healthy mind are the most important things you will ever have in your life.

【解　析】本句中的 instrument 意思为“促成某事的物/人；手段；方法”，此处指你所拥有的最大“资本”。

17 But also keep yourself safe and sound. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】But also keep yourself out of danger and stay unharmed.

【解　析】本句中的 safe and sound 表示“安然无恙，平安无事”。

18 College is the time when you have: the first taste of independence, the greatest amount of free time, the most flexibility to change, the lowest cost for making mistakes. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】College is a time when you have your first experience of independence and a great deal of free time. In college, you have the most opportunities to change and pay the lowest cost for making mistakes.

【解　析】本句使用了四个结构相同的短语，即排比的修辞手法，增加了句子的气势，加深了父亲谆谆教诲之情。

19 Let your talents evolve to their fullest potential. (Para. 9)

【Meaning】Develop your talents fully to the best possible level.

【解　析】本句中的 evolve to one's fullest potential 意为“发挥出某人最大的潜力”。

20 Be bold! Experiment! (Para. 9)

【Meaning】Be brave and confident. Try new and different things.

【解　析】在本文的信中，父亲给了孩子很多条建议。此处父亲使用了两个简短的祈使句来使他的话听起来更清晰有力。

四、课文译文

我们的期望

我亲爱的孩子：

1. 你即将踏上人生的下一段旅程。这让我们感到喜忧参半。当你离开家步入大学的校门，激动人心的崭新世界将会展现在你面前。这将带给你鼓舞，也会使你面临挑战；你将获得巨大的进步。

2. 这也是令人伤感的时刻。离开家去上大学就明确意味着你不再是个孩子了。没有什么比看到你走到今天这一步更令人感到欣喜的了。你曾经是我们最大的挑战，现在却成为我们最大的骄傲。虽然是我们把你带到了这一步，但是看着你离开仍然很不舍。记住，最主要的是，我们会想念你。

3. 大学将是你人生中最重要的时光。只有在大学里你才会真正发现学习的真谛。你经常会问：“为什么我需要知道这个？”我希望你保持好奇心，但是记住：“教育就是当一个人忘记了在学校所学的一切之后剩下的东西。”你学了什么并不如学习本身更重要。做学问的精髓就在于它可以使你从被动学习转向主动学习——直至成为一个有自学能力的人。所以，要认真对待每一门课程。如果某门课程不能马上吸引你，不要绝望。把它当作一个挑战来接受它，设法使之成为你自己所喜欢的。

4. 当然，你还必须注意，要选择那些能够激发你的热情、拓展你的智力的课程。不要被别人的想法所左右。史蒂夫·乔布斯曾说过，在大学里，你的激情将会创造出很多个点，在以后的生活中你会把这些点连接在一起。所以，不必过多担忧你将来会做什么样的工作，不要太现实。如果你喜欢法语或韩语，就去学，哪怕别人对你说学这些没用。尽情采集你的那些“点”。要坚信有一天，你会找到你自己的有意义的事业，你会把那些点串联成美丽的曲线。

5. 你知道我们总是希望你竭尽全力，但不要让分数的压力困扰你。我们只关心你是否尽了全力，是否学到了知识。你尽了最大的努力而分数不高比你没有努力却得了像样的或更高的分数更有意义。分数只不过是数字而已，虚荣的人拿它来吹嘘，慵懒的人对之感到恐惧。而你既不虚荣，也不慵懒。努力的回报不是分数，而是你所学到的东西。

6. 更重要的是要结交朋友并信任他人。大学里结交的朋友可能是你能够结交到的最好的朋友。在你步入成年的这些年里，你在大学里结交的朋友比你的家人离你更近。你会结下将绽放几十年的友情。选择坦率真诚的人做朋友。选择几个朋友，真正走近他们。不必计较他们的爱好、成绩或长相。相反，结交新朋友时要相信你的直觉。你是坦率真诚的人，任何人都会喜欢和你做朋友，所以要自信，别害怕，要积极主动。如果你认为自己喜欢某个人，就告诉他。你不会损失什么。不要害怕去信任别人。即使心存疑问，也要尽量相信别人，不要对任何人抱有成见。人无完人。只要他们真诚，就信任他们，善待他们。他们会给你回报的。

7. 还要记住，你的青春充满力量，充满美。只有到青春逝去时，你才能理解到这一点。你必须要呵护并培养你的力量和美。健康的身体和健全的思想是你将拥有的最大的资本。享受生活吧。想跳舞就跳舞，不用担心别人怎么想。但也要让自己平平安安的。不要让各种各样的新体验带走你的纯真、健康或好奇心。珍惜青春，珍惜你眼前的大学经历吧。

8. 在大学这一段时光里，你会：

初尝独立的滋味，
拥有最多的自由时光，
享有最大的可塑性，
承担最低的犯错代价。

9. 用满腔的热情拥抱大学时光吧！充分利用好你的时间。成为一个你注定会成为的优秀的思考者。使你的聪明才智发挥出最大的潜力。无所畏惧！勇于尝试！坚持学习，并不断成长！我们对于你已经取得的成功深感自豪，我们也迫不及待地盼望看到你未来的成就。

你的父亲

五、练习答案及详解

—Reading skills—

预览

预览是个重要的阅读技巧，在阅读中对我们帮助很大。在阅读文章之前先对文章进行预览会帮助你抓住文章大意，理解文章结构，并可以对文章下面的内容进行预测。这样做会帮助你更好地理解阅读材料。你可以按照以下四步预览文章：

1. 读文章的标题或是副标题。它们会告诉你文章的主题。
2. 读文章的第一段。第一段通常会介绍文章的主要内容。
3. 读文章的最后一段。最后一段通常会概括整篇文章的主要内容。
4. 读每个主要段落的第一句话。因为第一句话很可能就是主旨句，换句话说它可能会告诉你这一段的主要内容。

1 Look at Text B. Make predictions about the following questions by using the reading skill of previewing.

1. A 2. A 3. C 4. BCE

2 Now read Text B carefully. Check whether your predictions are accurate or not.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

3 Answer the following questions.

1. The father is happy that his child is going to college and will have new exciting experiences. Meanwhile, the father feels sad to see the child leave.
2. Because it is in college that the child will find out what learning is about.
3. The statement "Education is what remains after one has forgotten everything he learned in school" was made by Einstein. It means that the details you have learned or the facts you have remembered are not important. What is really important is the fact that you have learned how to learn and that you have developed a way of thinking and a sense of responsibility.
4. The father thinks his child should take courses that will stimulate his interest and improve his intellectual capacity.
5. What Steve Jobs meant was that in college, your passion will guide you to learn a lot of new and seemingly unconnected things; but later, those unconnected things will become connected and help build your life and career.
6. The father warns his child not to be upset by low grades. They are only letters and are not important.
7. Genius and sincere people can become our friends.
8. The father is eager to see what his child will develop into, and what achievements his child will make in the future.

Critical thinking

4 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. I felt somewhat sad when the time came for me to leave my parents for college because I had to leave them for the first time in my life. I missed all the comforts they provided for me at home. But in the meanwhile, I felt excited about my new experience of living on campus. For me, living on my own was an indication of independence and responsibilities. I was looking forward to this new and exciting leg of my life journey.
2. The most impressive advice my parents gave me is that they reminded me not to spend all the time on the disciplines of my major. Instead, I should try to read as widely as possible. They are very valuable advice for me.
3. I like to be friends with people who are honest, polite, and sincere. I don't care whether we share similar hobbies or interests or not. As long as he/she is a nice person, I'll be happy to be friends with him/her.
4. Actually, I think almost all courses can stimulate our intellectual capacity. Personally, I think learning something new will definitely stimulate my intellectual capacity, so I'm going to take some courses both in arts and science.
5. In the past years, my passion inspired me to learn a lot of "dots", among which learning to be an honest man is the most impressive one. Being an honest man is both my parents' expectation of me and that of my teachers'. With this idea deeply rooted in my mind, I have been doing my best to be honest in all aspects, ranging from academic performance in school to social contact with others outside the campus. I am sure this will undeniably help me a lot in my life.

—Language focus—

Words in use

5 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. stimulate

【译文】政府可以通过降低税率刺激消费,鼓励商业交易和投资。

2. potential

【译文】我们的身体拥有超乎常人想象的潜力,记住这一点对我们大有益处。

3. cultivate

【译文】团体运动的一个重要特点是,它可以培养人们的团队精神和增强人们的集体荣誉感。

4. instinct

【译文】人类的行为通常是学习的产物,而动物的行为主要出自它们的本能。

5. confident

【译文】这两年她一直在攒钱,所以她确信她能出得起今年夏天出国旅行的钱。

6. assured

【译文】医生向他保证他的病情并不严重,而且一个小手术后他就能很快恢复健康了。

7. curiosity

【译文】通常儿童对所见到的一切新鲜事物都会感兴趣,并且想要更深入地了解它们。

8. participate

【译文】他为被选中参加比赛而骄傲,并且承诺将全力以赴。

9. approach

【译文】虽然这种新的教学方法受到了热烈的欢迎,但是还有一些家长对它很抵触。

10. capacity

【译文】这个房间仅能容纳 200 人。然而,有 200 多名热情的学生来听了这次讲座。

Expressions in use

6 Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions or adverbs.

1. into

【译文】无尽的战争已使这个曾经富饶的国度变成了世界上最贫困的国家之一。

2. like

【译文】如果你想待在家里,我们可以看一个你最喜欢的电影 DVD。

3. to

【译文】她是个自信且外向的女孩,但总统的到场使她沉默下来。

4. up

【译文】我想报名参加环保组织的志愿者工作,听说这是个融入社会的好办法。

5. to

【译文】我知道他是个令人讨厌又不友好的人,但你不该让他影响到你。

6. up

【译文】政府正在开展一项旨在扩大就业机会的计划。

7. off

【译文】Sharon 不知去向了，或许她已经和 Tony 离开去海边了。

8. in

【译文】他们培养了参与体育运动所需的专业技能、知识和积极的态度。

Sentence structure

7 Make sentences by combining the following groups of words. Use *while* to introduce information that contrasts with what is conveyed in the main clause. Make changes where necessary.

1. Some people love pets and regard them as friends while other people dislike pets and think they may cause diseases.
2. Jerry is very bold and likes taking risks while his brother is extremely careful and thinks things through before doing anything.
3. Beijing is a busy city with a large population while my hometown is very quiet with a small population.

8 Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English, using the emphatic sentence structure "It is/was... that/who...".

1. It is Sam that/who thinks
2. It was during my undergraduate studies that
3. It is the curiosity and creativity of children that

Collocation

9 Complete the following conversations between a teacher and a few college freshmen with either *do* or *make*. Can you find the four expressions that sound awkward to you?

1. make 做出安排
2. make 做出你的决定
3. do 做一些有深度的研究项目
4. make 成为他们的敌人
5. make 做一顿简单的早餐
6. do 做一些基本的烹饪
7. do 做大量的作业
8. do 尽你最大的努力

The four unacceptable expressions are from Students 1、2、4 and 7.

Unit 2

Loving parents, loving children

Section A

A child's clutter awaits an adult's return

一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文是为了让读者更好地理解父母的爱。文章开篇描述女儿离开家去寻求成年人的独立,妈妈百感交集:一方面感到终于从责任中脱身了,另一方面仍然担心和怀疑女儿能否照顾好自己。随后作者详细描述了女儿在房间里留下的一片狼藉,以及妈妈打扫整理房间时生气、伤心和失落的各种心理活动。接着转折点出现:妈妈发现了一个女儿写着"不要扔掉"的大信封,里面的每一样东西都是她和丈夫以前亲手给女儿的。妈妈心潮起伏,彻底改变了自己的态度,还拿回了原本要扔掉的女儿的东西。儿时百宝箱,老大归家梦。因为爱,妈妈相信女儿无论现在多么叛逆,和家的纽带都不会断,爸爸妈妈张开双臂等她回来。

(二)背景知识

1. 亨利・沃德・比彻

亨利・沃德・比彻(Henry Ward Beecher,1813—1887)是一位美国牧师,是他所在时代最雄辩的演说家之一。他在全美国和英国做了关于道德和公共事务的讲演。他的名言是:"没有什么友谊和爱情比得上父母对子女的爱。"

2. 安吉拉・舒文特

安吉拉・舒文特(Angela Schwindt)是一位美国家庭学校教育的母亲,她的名言是:当"我们试图教会孩子什么是人生时,他们却教会我们人生是什么。"

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Paras. 1 - 4 The daughter is leaving home for independence and the mother feels glad on the one hand and expresses her concern and doubt on the other. 女儿离开家去寻求成年人的独立。妈妈一

方面感到高兴，另一方面仍然担心和怀疑女儿能否照顾好自己。

Paras. 5－12 The daughter leaves a mess in her rooms and the mother has some responses while straightening up the rooms. 女儿留下的一片狼藉和妈妈在打扫房间时的感触。

Paras. 13－22 After the mother finds a large envelope with all the memorable things the parents gave to the daughter, the mother's attitude changes completely. 在妈妈发现了一个大信封，里面装满她和丈夫亲手给女儿的有纪念意义的东西之后，她彻底改变了态度。

2. 写作特点

本文总体的写作特点是问题解决型。问题是女儿离家后留下的狼藉一片，解决方法是妈妈用心用力地打扫和整理房间。另一个重要的写作特点是比较，把在女儿寻求独立后，妈妈发现她珍藏家庭回忆的信封前后的态度变化进行了比较。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 clutter /ˈklʌtə/ *n.*

[sing.，U] a large number of things that are scattered somewhere in an untidy way 杂乱的东西

—A clutter of dirty dishes filled the sink. 洗碗池里堆满了乱七八糟的脏碗碟。

【近义】mess, disorder

【反义】order

2 await /əˈweɪt/ *vt.*

(1) wait for sth. 等待；等候

—We excitedly await your acceptance of our invitation. 我们以激动的心情等待着您接受我们的邀请。

(2) if sth. awaits you, it will happen to you. (某事)将降临到……身上

—Pain and suffering are awaiting them. 痛苦和劫难在等待着他们。

【搭配】await ＋ reply, arrival, return, opportunity, announcement, etc.

【近义】expect, look forward to

3 vehicle /ˈviːɪkl/ *n.*

[C] (*fml.*) a machine with an engine that is used to take people or things from one place to another, such as a car, bus, or truck 交通工具；车辆

—No vehicles are permitted into the park. 公园内禁止任何车辆进入。

【近义】carriage

4 efficiency /ɪˈfɪʃnsi/ *n.*

[U] the quality of doing sth. well and effectively, without wasting time, money, or energy 效率；效能

—To increase our working efficiency, it is necessary to take advantage of every moment. 为了提高工作效率，我们必须分秒必争。

【词缀】名词后缀-ency 表示"性质，状态"。

【近义】effectiveness

【反义】inefficiency

5 embarrass /ɪmˈbærəs/ *vt.*

make sb. feel ashamed, nervous, or uncomfortable, esp. in front of other people (尤指在社交场合)使

尴尬,使窘迫

—Maybe next time I won't embarrass you in front of your friends. 也许下次我不会让你在你朋友前感到尴尬。

【词缀】动词前缀 em- 表示"使……进入状态或加强等"。em 进入+barr 栏+ass 表动词→被拦住→embarrass 使难堪

【近义】puzzle

6 embarrassment /ɪm'bærəsmənt/ *n.*

(1) [C] sb. or sth. that causes problems or makes you feel ashamed 让人难堪的人;使人为难的事

—You have been an embarrassment to us from the day he married you. 从他娶你那天起,你就让我们非常难堪。

(2) [U] a feeling of being nervous or ashamed because of what people know or think about you 尴尬;难堪;窘迫

—The facts could cause embarrassment if they ever became public. 一旦披露出去,真相会让人非常尴尬。

【词缀】名词后缀-ment 表示"……的行为(或结果)"。embarrass 使尴尬+ment……的行为(或结果)→embarrassment 尴尬;难堪

【近义】shame, disgrace

7 rust /rʌst/ *v.*

become covered with rust, or make sth. become covered in rust (使)生锈

—My bike has rusted and needs oil. 我的自行车生锈了,需要上油。

n. [U] the reddish-brown substance that forms on iron or steel when it gets wet 锈,铁锈

—The mower is covered with rust. 割草机布满了锈。

【近义】erode

8 blade /bleɪd/ *n.*

[C] the flat cutting part of a tool or weapon 刀刃;刀片

—Many of these tools have sharp blades, so be careful. 这些工具中很多都有锋利的刀片,务必小心。

【近义】knife, sword

9 tube /tjuːb/ *n.*

(1) [C] a long, thin container which you squeeze in order to force the paste out (膏状物等的)管状容器

—Give the tube of toothpaste a squeeze. 把牙膏挤一挤。

(2) [C] a long narrow object similar to a pipe that liquid or gas can move through 管子

—Take care not to break the test tube! 当心别把试管打碎了。

【近义】pipe

10 paste /peɪst/ *n.*

[C, U] a soft thick mixture that can easily be shaped or spread 糊状物;膏

—Blend the flour with the milk to make a smooth paste. 把面粉和牛奶调成均匀的面糊。

vt. stick sth. to sth. else using glue (用糨糊)粘贴

—Please paste these pieces of paper together. 请将这几张纸粘在一起。

【近义】glue

11 toothpaste /'tuːθˌpeɪst/ *n.*

[U] a thick substance that you use to clean your teeth 牙膏

—Which brand of toothpaste do you use? 你用什么牌子的牙膏?

12 polish /ˈpɒlɪʃ/ *n.*

[C, U] a chemical substance that you rub onto an object to make it shine 上光剂;擦光剂

—A hot plate will spoil the table's polish. 热盘子会弄坏桌面的光泽。

vt.

(1) make sth. smooth, bright, and shiny by rubbing it 擦亮;擦光

—Each morning he shaved and polished his shoes. 他每天早晨都刮脸、擦鞋。

(2) improve a piece of writing, a speech, etc. by making slight changes to it before it is completely finished 修改;润色

—Would you please polish my article right now? 您现在把我的文章润色一下好吗?

【词缀】动词后缀-ish 表示"造成……,成……"。pol 擦亮+ish 造成……,成……→polish 磨光,擦亮;使优美,润饰;擦光剂,上光蜡

【近义】shine

13 trash /træʃ/ *n.*

[U] (*BrE* rubbish) things that you throw away, such as empty bottles, used papers, food that has gone bad, etc. 废物;垃圾

—Many things pollute water, such as tires, trash, and plastic bags. 很多东西使水污染,例如轮胎、垃圾和塑料袋。

【近义】litter, rubbish, junk

14 dump /dʌmp/ *vt.*

(1) empty out a container, vehicle, as by overturning or tilting 倾倒;把……倒空

—Where can I dump this rubbish? 我将这些垃圾倒在什么地方?

(2) get rid of sth. that you do not want 丢弃;扔掉

—The getaway car was dumped near a motorway tunnel. 逃亡用的车被丢弃在高速公路隧道附近。

【近义】throw away

15 match /mætʃ/ *v.*

(1) belong to the same pair (与……)属同一双;(使)成对

—Those two shoes don't match. 那两只鞋不是一双。

(2) if one thing matches another or they match, they look attractive together (与……)相配,相称

—Her nails were painted bright red to match her dress. 她的指甲涂成了大红色,为的是与裙子相配。

【近义】harmonize

16 mismatched /ˌmɪsˈmætʃt/ *a.*

not matched or not suitably matched 不配对的

—The two styles are mismatched. 这两种风格并不搭配。

【近义】unsuitable

17 purple /ˈpɜːpl/ *a.*

having a dark colour that is a mixture of red and blue 紫色的

—How beautiful the purple flower is! 那朵紫色的花多漂亮啊!

n. [U] a dark colour that is a mixture of red and blue 紫色

—Purple, though beautiful, adds years to the age. 紫色虽美,但会使人显得老气。

【近义】lavender

18 **closet** /ˈklɒzɪt/ *n.*

[C] (*mainly AmE*) a small room or space built into a wall for storing things such as clothes or sheets 壁橱

—He got his winter jacket from the closet and dropped it on the sofa. 他从衣橱里取出冬天穿的夹克，把它扔到沙发上。

【词根】clos=close，表示"关闭"。clos 关闭＋et 小东西→关的小东西→closet 壁橱

【近义】wardrobe

19 **comic** /ˈkɒmɪk/ *n.*

[C] (*also* ~ book) a magazine for children that contains stories told in a series of drawings (儿童)连环漫画册

—Joe loved to read "Superman" comics. 乔喜欢看《超人》的漫画书。

a. amusing you and making you want to laugh 滑稽的；好笑的

—The novel is comic and tragic. 这部小说令人笑中带泪。

【词根】com＝banquet，表示"宴会"。com 宴会＋ic……的，或者表示人等→宴会有喜剧的意思→comic 喜剧的，搞笑的

【近义】amusing，humorous

20 **fiction** /ˈfɪkʃn/ *n.*

(1) [U] books and stories about imaginary people and events 小说

—He prefers light fictions to serious novels. 比起严肃小说来，他更喜欢轻松的小说。

(2) [C] sth. that people want you to believe is true but which is not true 虚构的事；想象的事

—Her story was a pure fiction. 她的故事纯属虚构。

【词根】fic-＝do，make，表示"做，制作"。fict＝fic 做，制作＋ion 表名词→做出的故事→fiction 小说，虚构

【近义】novel，tale，legend，myth 小说；故事；传奇；神话

【反义】nonfiction；fact

21 **romantic** /rəʊˈmæntɪk/ *a.*

(1) used about books，plays，and films about love (书、剧本、电影)浪漫的，关于爱情的

—It is a lovely romantic comedy，well worth seeing. 这是一部温馨的爱情喜剧，非常值得一看。

(2) showing strong feelings of love 多情的；浪漫的

—They enjoyed a romantic dinner for two at one of their favorite restaurants. 他俩在他们最喜欢的一家餐馆里吃了一顿浪漫的二人晚餐。

【词缀】形容词后缀-tic 通常放在名词后，表示"与……相关的，……的"。roman 浪漫＋tic 与……相关的，……的→romantic 浪漫的

【近义】imaginative；unrealistic

22 **historical** /hɪˈstɒrɪkl/ *a.*

(1) describing or based on events in the past 描写历史事件的；基于史实的

—He is writing a historical novel about nineteenth-century France. 他正在写一本描述 19 世纪法国的历史小说。

(2) relating to the past (有关)历史的

—No historical phenomenon is a mere repetition of the past. 任何历史现象都不会是简单的重复。

【近义】historic

23 **beloved** /bɪˈlʌvɪd/ *a.*

loved very much by sb. 钟爱的；挚爱的；宝贝的

—She refused to be parted from her beloved cat. 她拒绝和她心爱的猫分开。

【近义】dear

24 **stuff** /stʌf/ *vt.*

(1) push or put sth. into a small space, esp. in a quick careless way 填；塞

—I stuffed my hands in my pockets. 我把手插进口袋里。

(2) fill sth. until it is full 填满；装满

—He still stood behind his cash register stuffing his mouth with popcorn. 他仍站在收银机后，嘴里塞满了爆米花。

n. [U] a variety of objects or things 各种物品

—There's a reason why women don't read this stuff; it's not funny. 女人不读这种东西是有原因的，它并不好笑。

【近义】material, substance

25 **sack** /sæk/ *n.*

[C] a large strong bag for storing and carrying things 大口袋；粗布袋；麻袋

—Don't stuff the sack too full or it'll burst. 别装得太多，把口袋撑破了。

【近义】bag, handbag, purse

26 **stack** /stæk/ *v.*

make things into a neat pile, or form a neat pile (使)整齐地堆起；摞起

—He ordered them to stack up pillows behind his back. 他命令他们把几个枕头叠放在自己的背后。

n. [C] a neat pile of things (叠放整齐的)一叠，一堆，一摞

—There were stacks of books on the bedside table and floor. 床头桌和地板上有几摞书。

【搭配】stack (sth.) up (使)积成堆；堆起，叠起

【近义】pile

27 **plague** /pleɪg/ *n.*

(1) (a ~ of locusts/rats, etc.) an uncontrolled and harmful increase in the numbers of a particular animal or insect 蝗灾/鼠灾等

—The city is under threat from a plague of rats. 该市处于鼠患的威胁之下。

(2) [C] a disease that causes death and spreads quickly to a large number of people 瘟疫；疫病

—In one village almost the entire population was striken with a plague. 在一个村庄里，几乎全部的居民都遭受到瘟疫的袭击。

【近义】disease, epidemic

28 **clumsy** /ˈklʌmzi/ *a.*

(1) not easy to use and often large and heavy (物体)笨重的

—The keyboard is a large and clumsy instrument as far as portable computers are concerned. 就手提电脑而言，键盘就显得大而笨重了。

(2) moving in an awkward way and tending to make things fall over 笨拙的；不灵活的

—Unfortunately, I was still very clumsy behind the wheel of the jeep. 令人遗憾的是，我开起吉普来还是笨手笨脚。

【近义】awkward

29 **charity** /ˈtʃærəti/ *n.*

(1) [U] organizations in general that give money, goods, or help to other people who are poor, sick, etc. 慈善事业

—He made substantial donations to charity. 他为慈善事业捐了很多钱。

(2) [C] an organization that gives money, goods, or help to people who are poor, sick, etc. 慈善机构;慈善团体

—The National Trust is a registered charity. 全国托管协会是个已注册的慈善机构。

【词根】char=dear,表示"关心,抚爱"。char 关心,抚爱+ ity 某种性质→charity 慈善团体,仁慈,施舍

【近义】contribution, donation

【反义】cruelty

30 **band** /bænd/ *n.*

(1) [C] a flat narrow piece of sth. with one end joined to the other to form a circle 圈;箍;带

—Almost all hospitals use a wrist-band of some kind with your name and details on it. 几乎所有的医院都用某种腕带记录名字和详细信息。

(2) [C] (*BrE*) a group of musicians, esp. a group that plays popular music 乐队;乐团

—He was a drummer in a rock band. 他曾是一个摇滚乐团的鼓手。

【近义】orchestra

31 **curl** /kɜːl/ *v.*

form a twisted or curved shape, or make sth. do this 盘绕;缠绕

—His fingers curled gently round her wrist. 他轻轻地握住她的手腕。

【近义】curve, twist

32 **curler** /ˈkɜːlə/ *n.*

[C] a small plastic or metal tube used for making hair curl 卷发夹

—An eyelash curler is a girl's best friend. 睫毛夹是女孩子的大爱。

33 **strain** /streɪn/ *vi.*

pull hard at sth. or push hard against sth. 使劲拉;使劲推;绷紧

—They strained the wire between two posts. 他们拉紧了两根电线杆之间的电线。

vt. injure a muscle or part of your body by using it too much or making it work too hard 拉伤;扭伤;损伤

—Avoid straining muscle by warming up with slow jogging. 先慢跑热热身,免得拉伤肌肉。

n. [C, U] worry that is caused by having to deal with a problem or work too hard over a long period of time 焦虑;紧张

—She was tired and under great strain. 她身心疲惫,压力很大。

【词根】strain=tighten,表示"拉紧"。strain 拉紧→拉紧;扭伤;紧张;焦虑

【近义】stress, pressure

34 **haul** /hɔːl/ *vt.*

pull sth. heavy with a continuous steady movement 拖;拉

—The fishermen haul the net. 渔民们拉渔网。

【反义】drag, pull

35 **donation** /dəʊˈneɪʃn/ *n.*

(1) [C] sth. esp. money, that you give to a person or an organization in order to help them 捐赠物(尤指捐款)

—Employees make regular donations to charity. 员工们定期向慈善机构捐赠。

(2) [U] the act of giving sth., esp. money, to help a person or an organization 捐助(尤指钱)

—He's too mean to make a donation. 他很小气,不肯捐款。

【近义】contribution, offering

36 curb /kɜːb/ *n.*

[C] (*BrE* kerb) the raised edge of a road, between where people can walk and cars can drive 路缘

—The boy sat on the curb and watched the cars go by. 那个男孩坐在马路边上看过往的车辆。

vt. control or limit sth. in order to prevent it from having a harmful effect 控制;抑制;约束

—I began to curb my appetite for food and drink. 我开始节制饮食。

【近义】pavement; restrain, stop

37 sore /sɔː/ *a.*

painful and uncomfortable, usu. as a result of an injury, infection, or too much exercise 痛的;疼痛的

—Mary has a bad cold and sore throat. 玛丽患了重感冒而且咽喉痛。

【近义】painful, aching

38 ridiculous /rɪˈdɪkjʊləs/ *a.*

very silly or unreasonable 愚蠢的;荒唐的;可笑的

—It's the most ridiculous thing I've ever heard in my life. 这是我有生以来听到的最为荒唐可笑的事。

【词根】rid=laugh,表示"笑"。rid 笑+ic+ulous 多……的→多笑的→ridiculous 可笑的

【近义】foolish, silly, unreasonable

39 toss /tɒs/ *vt.*

throw sth., esp. sth. light, with a quick gentle movement of your hand 扔;掷;抛

—He tossed his blanket aside and got up. 他把毯子掀到一边起床了。

【近义】throw, cast

40 strip /strɪp/ *vt.* (*also* ~ off)

(1) remove sth. that is covering the surface of sth. else 剥去;除去

—After Mike left for work I stripped the beds and vacuumed the carpets. 迈克去上班后,我扯下了床罩并用吸尘器清扫地毯。

(2) take off your clothes or take off sb. else's clothes 脱去(……的)衣服

—She stripped the children and put them in the bath. 她脱光孩子们的衣服把他们放进浴缸。

【近义】uncover, remove

41 craft /krɑːft/ *n.*

(~s) [pl.] a job or activity in which you make things with your hands, and that you usu. need skill to do (指传统的手工)工艺;手艺

—He's a master of his crafts. 他有一手好手艺。

【近义】art, skill

42 clip /klɪp/ *vt.*

(1) cut an article or picture from a newspaper, magazine, etc. (从报纸、杂志等上)剪下

—Kids in his neighborhood clipped his picture from the newspaper and carried it around. 附近的孩子们从报纸上剪下他的照片,到哪儿都带着。

(2) fasten one thing to another using a small object 夹住;扣住

—His flashlight was still clipped to his belt. 他的手电筒还别在皮带上。

n. [C] a short part of a film, television program, or news story that is shown separately (电影、电视节目或新闻的)剪辑

—Clips from the movie will be presented on video. 这部影片的剪辑将制作成录像。

43 item /ˈaɪtəm/ *n.*

[C] a single thing, esp. one thing in a list, group, or set of things (尤指清单上、一群或一组事物中的)一项,一件,一条

—The shop window was filled with hundreds of items. 这家商店橱窗里摆满了几百种物品。

【近义】part

44 emotional /ɪˈməʊʃn(ə)l/ *a.*

(1) having strong feelings and showing them to other people, esp. by crying 情绪激动的(尤指哭泣)

—He is a very emotional man. 他是个很情绪化的人。

(2) (*only before noun*) relating to your feelings or how you control them 情绪(上)的;情感(上)的

—Victims are left with emotional problems that can last for life. 受害者心中留下了可能会持续一生的情感创伤。

【词缀】形容词后缀-al 表示"……的"。emotion 情绪+al……的→emotional 情绪的,情感的

【近义】affective

45 bug /bʌg/ *n.*

(1) [C] an enthusiast or a fan 热衷于某事的人;迷

—Henry is really a movie bug, going to the cinema at least five times a week. 亨利真是个电影迷,每星期最少看五场电影。

(2) [C] (*esp. AmE*) a small insect 小虫子

—We noticed tiny bugs that were all over the walls. 我们注意到墙上爬满了小虫子。

【近义】insect, pest

46 reverse /rɪˈvɜːs/ *vt.*

change sth. such as a decision, judgment, or process so that it is the opposite of what it was before 推翻,彻底改变(决定、判决、过程等)

—Can anything be done to reverse this trend? 有什么办法扭转这种倾向吗?

n. (the ~) the exact opposite of what has just been mentioned 相反情况;正相反

—His answer was just the reverse of what I expected. 他的回答正好与我期望的相反。

a. (*only before noun*) (~ order/situation/process, etc.) the opposite order, etc. to what is usual or to what has just been stated 相反的(顺序、局势、过程等)

—Please write down your name on the reverse side of the envelope. 请在信封的背面写下你的名字。

【搭配】reverse oneself 改变主意;放弃立场

【词缀】前缀 re-表示"回,向后,相反,不"。re 反+vers 转+e→reverse 反转的

【近义】opposite, contrary

47 token /ˈtəʊkən/ *n.*

[C] (*fml.*) sth. that represents a feeling, fact, event, etc. 象征;标志

—He gave his wife a ring as a token of his love. 他送给妻子一枚戒指作为爱情的象征。

【近义】symbol, signal

(二)短语

1 make it

(1) be successful at sth., e.g. in your job 获得成功

—I believe I have the talent to make it. 我相信自己有成功的天分。

(2) succeed in getting somewhere in time for sth. or when this is difficult (尤指在困难情况下)准时到达,赶上

—You'll make it if you hurry. 如果你赶紧点便能及时到达。

2 free of/from

not containing or involving sth. unpleasant 无……的;摆脱了……的

—She keeps her slim figure and is free of wrinkles. 她保持着苗条的身材,脸上也没有皱纹。

3 catch oneself doing sth.

suddenly realize one is doing sth. 突然意识到自己在做某事

—One day I caught myself smiling for no reason; then I realized I was thinking of you. 有一天我忽然发觉自己正无缘无故地微笑,随后我意识到我那时想到了你。

4 throw away

get rid of sth. that you do not want or need 扔掉;丢弃

—Don't throw away the diary; it may be of use. 别把这本日记扔了,它可能会有用。

5 after all

(1) used for saying that sth. is true despite what was said or planned before 终究;最终还是

—The threatening strike did not take place after all. 可能来临的罢工终究没有发生。

(2) used when giving a reason to explain what you have just said 毕竟

—No matter where you go in life or how old you get, there's always something new to learn about. After all, life is full of surprises. 不管你生活在哪里,你有多少岁,总有新东西要学习,毕竟,生活总是充满惊喜。

6 reverse oneself

(*AmE*) change one's opinion or position in an argument (争论中)改变主意/立场

—Suddenly, he reversed himself completely. 突然,他完全改变了立场。

7 straighten up

(1) make sth. tidy 把……弄整洁

—We'd better straighten up the house before they get back. 我们最好在他们回来之前把房子收拾好。

(2) stand up straight 直起身

—The bent strip can straighten up by itself. 这弯曲的金属片自己可以变直。

8 keep back

(1) not show your feelings, even though you want to very much 抑制,控制(感情)

—She was unable to keep back her tears, and wept freely. 她抑制不住泪水,痛痛快快哭了起来。

(2) deliberately not tell sb. all that you know about sth. 隐瞒某事

—The prisoner was keeping back vital information. 该囚犯有重要消息不肯吐露。

9 with open arms

if you do sth. with open arms, you show that you are happy to see sb. or eager to accept an idea, plan, etc. 热烈地;欣然

—He welcomed his guest with open arms. 他热烈欢迎客人到来。

三、课文注释

1 She'd refused to consider a practical car with good gas efficiency and easy to park. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】She had refused to think about buying a practical car which used less gas and was easy to park.

【解　析】with 表示"有,拥有(某种特征)",本句指一辆开起来省油、停起来省心的实用型汽车。

2 Eye shadow, face cream, nail polish—all go into the trash. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】Eye shadow, face cream, and nail polish are all put into the garbage bag.

【解　析】go 表示放在应有的位置。

3 When I am finished, it is as neat and impersonal as a hotel bathroom. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】When I finished cleaning the bathroom, it becomes tidy and shows no personal features, just like a hotel bathroom.

【解　析】impersonal 指"没有人情味的"。本句强调在妈妈打扫完卫生间,扔掉女儿的个人物品后,卫生间就少了人情味,和宾馆卫生间没什么两样了。

4 Desk drawers are filled with school papers, filed by year and subject. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Desk drawers are full of my daughter's school papers, which are kept in order according to year and subject.

【解　析】file 指"归档,存档"。后半句为定语,修饰 school papers.

5 I catch myself reading through poems and essays, admiring high scores on tests and reading her name, printed or typed neatly in the upper right-hand corner of each paper. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Suddenly I realize I am reading the poems and essays written by my daughter, looking at her excellent test scores with pride, and reading her name which is printed or typed tidily and carefully in the upper right-hand corner of each paper.

【解　析】right-hand corner 表示"右上角"。her name 后面为定语。

6 A lifetime of reading; each book beloved. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】Reading is something that lasts a lifetime; each book is a treasure for those who love reading.

【解　析】beloved 表示"钟爱的;挚爱的"。

7 But I love books as much as she does, so I stack them onto a single bookshelf to deal with later. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】Like my daughter, I love books very much, so I pile all of them neatly on one bookshelf to handle later.

【解　析】I love books as much as she does 暗指妈妈有可能是女儿爱好读书的榜样。

8 I am a plague of locusts emptying the closet. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】I am like a plague of locusts clearing everything in the closet.

【解　析】此处 a plague of locusts 是一个暗喻,意指衣柜像遭了蝗灾一样,被妈妈收拾得干干净净。

9 Two piles grow to clumsy heights: one for charity, the other trash. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】The two piles of clothes are large and heavy: one pile is to be given away for donation, while the other pile is to be thrown away.

【解　析】为了避免重复,the other trash 中省略了一个 for,原本应为 the other for trash。

10 The job grows larger the longer I am at it. (Para. 9)
【Meaning】The longer I am dealing with the clutter in the room, the more work there seems to be.
【解　析】the ＋er... the ＋er... 表示"越……越……"。
11 I stuff the garbage bags until the plastic strains. (Para. 10)
【Meaning】I put as many things as possible into the garbage bags until the bags are about to burst.
【解　析】the plastic strains 表示"塑料袋快要撑破了"。
12 Donations to charity go into the trunk of my car; trash goes to the curb. (Para. 10)
【Meaning】The items to be given away to charity are put into the trunk of my car; the items to be thrown away are placed at the edge of the road.
【解　析】go 表示放在应有的位置。
13 She left the bedroom a ridiculous mess, the comforter on the floor, the sheets tossed aside. (Para. 11)
【Meaning】Her room is extremely untidy: The quilt is dropped on the floor, and the sheets are thrown to one side.
【解　析】句中 the comforter on the floor 和 the sheets tossed aside 是独立结构。独立结构一般由"名词＋形容词/分词/介词短语"构成。
14 I strip off the comforter, blanket, sheets, and pillows. (Para. 11)
【Meaning】I remove the comforter, blanket and sheets from the bed, and take the pillow cases off the pillows.
【解　析】strip off 表示"脱掉,剥去"。
15 Once she starts feeding coins into laundry machines, she'll appreciate the years of clean clothes I've provided for free. (Para. 11)
【Meaning】Once she has to spend money having her clothes washed, she will feel grateful that I have helped her with her laundry free of charge all these years.
【解　析】coin-operated washing machines 可以在许多公寓或自助洗衣房见到,只有投币才能工作。
16 There are comics clipped from newspapers and magazines. (Para. 13)
【Meaning】There are comics that were cut from newspapers and magazines.
【解　析】这是一个 there be 句型,包括一个修饰 comics 的定语从句。
17 Every single item in this envelope has passed from our hands to hers. (Para. 13)
【Meaning】Each one of the things in this envelope has been given to our daughter by my husband and me.
【解　析】every single 用于强调,表示"每一个"。
18 I reverse myself and bring back the garbage bags from the car and the curb. (Para. 16)
【Meaning】I change my mind and bring back the garbage bags I have put in the car and the curb.
【解　析】reverse oneself 指"改变主意/立场",相当于 change one's mind。
19 My little baby, my dependent child, isn't coming back. But someday my daughter, the independent woman, will return home. (Para. 22)
【Meaning】My little baby, who has depended on me all these years, has left home. But there is no place like home, and she will come back someday as an independent grown-up.
【解　析】dependent child 和 independent woman 形成鲜明对比,增加句子气势。coming back 和 return home 表现了词汇的多样性。
20 Tokens of her childhood will await her. So will we, with open arms. (Para. 22)

【Meaning】The things my daughter collected as a child carry her childhood memories and they will be there waiting for her. We will also be happy to welcome her back home.

【解　析】so + be/have/do/will/其他助动词+ sb. /sth. 结构主要用来说明前面所说人或物的情况也适用于后面的其他人或物，意为“……也一样”。

四、课文译文

儿时百宝箱 老大归家梦

1. 我看着她在车道上倒着她的新卡车。车太大，而且太贵。她就是不愿意考虑买辆开起来省油、停起来方便的实用型汽车。我想，原因在我。她买这辆车就是为了让我看看她的能耐。

2.“我 18 岁了，”她经常这样对我说，以至于听得我牙都疼了。“我是成年人了！”

3. 我心想，真的吗？昨天你还在看动画片呢。今天和昨天又能有多大的变化呢？

4. 今天她搬走了，离开我去寻求成年人的独立。我很高兴她离开了。这意味着她成功了，而我也终于可以从 18 年的责任中脱身了。但是我还是担心她能不能照顾好自己。

5. 她留下的是一片狼藉。她的卫生间真是凌乱不堪，没拧干的毛巾、生锈的剃刀片、散落在面盆里的头发，还有几支快挤空了的牙膏。我拿了一盒大号的黑色垃圾袋上了楼。眼影、面霜、指甲油——这些统统扔进垃圾袋。我把抽屉清空，把架子打扫干净，还把面盆擦洗干净。我打扫完后，卫生间就像酒店里的那样井井有条，丝毫没有人情味儿。

6. 在她的卧室里，我发现床下有不成双的袜子，壁橱底板上扔着紫色的裤子。书桌的抽屉里满是学校的卷子，按照年份和科目归了类。我发现自己竟然在翻看她的诗歌和作文，欣赏着考卷上的高分，端详着每张考卷右上角她用印刷体工工整整书写的或是打印的她的名字。我把书桌里的东西收拾到一个盒子里。六个月，我心想。如果过了六个月她还不来拿她的东西，我就会把它们一股脑儿全扔了。这算讲道理了吧。成年人存放东西是要付费的。

7. 轮到整理书的时候，我有些犹豫了。连环漫画册、青少年小说、言情小说、历史小说，还有课本。阅读是一辈子的事；每本书都是心爱之物。原本我想现实一点，把这些书塞进纸袋，然后送到旧书店。但是我跟女儿一样爱书如命，于是我把她的这些书归置到一个单独的书架上，等日后再作处理。

8. 接下来，我着手整理她的衣服。那些她从七年级起就不再穿的裙子、毛衣和鞋子都被装进了垃圾袋。就像蝗虫洗劫一样，我清空了壁橱。理出高高的、乱蓬蓬的两大堆东西：一堆捐给慈善机构，另一堆扔掉。

9. 可是还有更多的鞋子、填充动物玩具、大大小小的招贴画、发箍和粉红色的卷发夹。我越理，要理的东西就越多。一个小姑娘怎么能在短短的 18 年里收集了这么多东西？

10. 我把东西往垃圾袋里塞，直到塑料袋快要被撑破了。我把垃圾袋拽下楼梯，一次拽两个。要捐给慈善机构的都放在我汽车的后备厢里；要扔掉的都放在路边。我忙得浑身是汗，肩膀酸痛。

11. 她把卧室弄得乱到匪夷所思的地步，盖被掉在地板上，床单掀到一边。我把床罩、毯子、床单和枕套都拆了下来。等到她开始投币洗衣的那一天，她就会感激我这些年来为她无偿提供的干净衣服了。

12. 我打算把她的房间改作手工室，或者改成一间我一直想要的漂亮客房。

13. 我把床翻了个个儿，只见一个棕色的大信封，上面写着“不要扔掉”。我打开一看，好多纸片。我把信封里的东西都倒在地板上。其中有家里的老照片、书信、贺卡、我们写给她的爱心留言，还有从报纸和杂志上剪下的漫画。信封中的每一样东西都是我们亲手给她的。我们以前给她的东西都在这里了。刹那间，我心潮起伏。

14.“不要扔掉”。

15. 我的孩子——我那爱收集小玩意儿的收藏迷——对我太了解了。我一边翻看着卡片和留言，一边想：也许她买那辆卡车也不算什么太糟糕的主意。也许这能让置身于大千世界中的她不至于感到太渺小。

16. 我改变了主意，把垃圾袋从车里和路边又拿了回来。衣服和鞋子放回壁橱。重新铺好床，再堆上填充动物玩具。我丈夫回家了，对着楼上喊我。

17. "我把房间稍微整理一下，"我告诉他。"你能找些盒子来装她的东西吗？"

18. 他从地下室拿上来几个盒子。

19. "她弄得真乱啊，"他说。

20. "我不介意，"我回答。沉默。

21. 然后他轻轻地说道："她不会回来了。"他伤感的语气让我喉头一紧。我努力克制，不让眼泪流下来。

22. 我的小宝贝儿，那个什么都让我操心的孩子，不再回来了。但是有一天，我的女儿，那位独立的女士，会回来的。家里有她童年的回忆在等着她。我们也在等着她，张开双臂等她回来。

五、练习答案及详解

Pre-reading activities

1 Check (√) the statements which are true for you.

(Omitted.)

2 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. I am very close to my parents. In fact, we are like friends. I never keep a secret from them. When I have problems, I ask them for their advice. They give me directions about life. I like this relationship with my parents, and I think this is what parent-child relationship should be like.
2. If I were not very close to my parents, I would do the following to improve our relationship:
   - find out where the problem is and talk to my parents about it;
   - do something that makes them happy;
   - call them often when I am away from home;
   - keep them informed of what I am doing;
   - care for their feelings;
   - be open and willing to communicate.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

1 Answer the following questions.

1. The daughter bought a large and expensive vehicle probably because her mother advised her to buy a practical and gas-efficient car. The daughter did this on purpose because at this age, she was being rebellious.
2. The mother wants to show that although her daughter tries to show she is an adult, actually she is not.
3. The mother is happy that her daughter is independent now, but on the other hand, she feels doubtful whether her daughter could take good care of herself.

4. The mother wants to show that her daughter is not ready to be an adult yet.
5. The mother puts her daughter's books onto a single shelf to deal with later.
6. The mother finds an envelop with items such as old family photographs, letters, greeting cards, and love notes they gave their daughter and sees the words "DO NOT THROW AWAY" marked on the envelope. Her attitude then changes.
7. At first the mother decides to throw some of the items away and donate the rest to charity. After she sees the brown envelope, she changes her mind and puts them back in place.
8. Because the mother knows that the sweet childhood memories will bring her daughter back.

Critical thinking

2 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. If I were the daughter, I would be very much touched when I read the article. I would call my mom to say sorry for acting rebelliously and would tell her how much I love her. Probably I would return home as soon as I can.
2. I don't think it is wise to refuse parents' advice or even do the opposite without a good reason. Your parents care about you more than anybody else and always want to share their experience with you. If you follow their advice, you can at least learn from their experience and avoid making some silly mistakes. If you don't take their advice, you may still get experience—but in a hard way. Besides, your parents may directly point out your weaknesses that your peers wouldn't. So, listening to your parents' advice can make you smarter and help you grow mature.
3. Good communication will, in my view, help build a good relationship. The following are my ways to strengthen communication with my parents:
   • visit them whenever possible;
   • invite them to see what I am doing at college;
   • teach them to use new communication tools, such as WeChat and Skype, so that they can communicate with me wherever I am;
   • try to look at things from their perspectives; and
   • share with them my feelings, problems or ambitions.
4. Although there is no standard pattern for a good parent-child relationship, some common factors can contribute to a more successful relationship:
   • respect each other;
   • support and encourage each other;
   • understand each other;
   • love each other;
   • have fun together; and
   • be friends.
5. • Yes, many parents are expecting too much of their children. First, most families have only one child and parents want to make a perfect child out of them. Second, competition is intense in school and at work today. So parents want their children to learn as much as possible so as to gain advantages over others in competition. It's not uncommon that some parents force their children to achieve what is even hard for adults. But they ignore the fact that winning is not the only

important thing and that children should have their own enjoyment and preferences.

- No, I don't think parents today are expecting too much of their children. Competition is becoming increasingly intense in school and at the workplace. So it is natural for parents to help their children to make full use of their talent and become as competitive as possible. They know better about how far their children can go. Besides, more and more parents, including my parents, think it is more important for their children to be healthy and happy. Of course, while they expect that their children study hard and achieve success, they should at the same time see to it that their children are not overworking themselves.

—Language focus—

Words in use

3 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. awaits

【译文】他对这些美丽的鸟儿怀有一种特殊的情感，每年春天他都热切地期待着它们的归来。

2. efficiency

【译文】多亏了高效的空中交通，人们可以随时去任何地方。

3. donation

【译文】约翰认为捐赠给饥饿的人食物会比给钱更有帮助。

4. polished

【译文】玛丽是个审慎的演讲者，从她口中说出的每个字都好像被润色过似的。

5. stuffed

【译文】当听说她要去的城市正在下雪时，她就又往包里塞了两件毛衣。

6. historical

【译文】在欧洲逗留期间，我们参观了许多名胜古迹，包括一些城堡。

7. emotional

【译文】姐姐的婚礼对我们全家来说是非常激动人心的。

8. embarrassed

【译文】当发现身上的钱不够为他点的红酒买单时，他有些尴尬。

9. dump

【译文】地方政府迫于压力去找新的地方倾倒废弃物。

10. curb

【译文】旨在控制工厂有害排放物的新系统即将投入使用。

Word building

4 Add *-er*, *-ic*, or *-ous* to or remove them from the following words to form new words.

Words learned	New words formed
-er	
employ	employer
computer	compute
interpreter	interpret
-ic	
atom	atomic
artist	artistic
economy	economic
history	historic
electronic	electron
-ous	
envy	envious
continue	continuous
famous	fame
various	vary

5 Fill in the blanks with the newly-formed words in Activity 4. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. interpreted

【译文】在美国,聊天时缺少眼神交流可能会被认为在走神,然而在日本,眼神交流可能会被认为是粗鲁的行为。

2. employer

【译文】在找工作时,务必要突出你所具有的,雇主认为对工作很重要的知识和技能。

3. artistic

【译文】我们的很多学生都是之前从未画过画的初学者,他们正努力提高对艺术的兴趣。

4. historic

【译文】你居然不知道这个这么有历史意义的事件,这太令人惊讶,它可是标志着我们国家进入了一个新的时代。

5. compute

【译文】他们希望创造出一种电脑,这种电脑的运算速度能够比在售的电脑快 10 倍。

6. continuous

【译文】教育是个永无止境的学习过程。老师有责任通过有效引导让学生们学会独立思考。

7. economic

【译文】一方面，我们应该努力发展经济；另一方面，我们必须在经济发展和环境保护之间找到平衡。

8. fame

【译文】一些成功人士即使当初辍学了，他们仍设法追求名望和财富。

9. electron

【译文】电子存在于所有的原子中，它是一个带有负电荷的极小物质。

10. atomic

【译文】原子弹，也被叫作核弹，如果将其用于战争中，则将带来灾难性的后果。

11. envious

【译文】当其他人升职或发财时，我从不为此焦虑不安或嫉妒。

12. vary

【译文】这种药品的疗效会因个人的健康状况、体重和性别而不同。

Banked cloze

6 Fill in the blanks by selecting suitable words from the word bank. You may not use any of the words more than once.

1. G

【解析】应填名词，根据上下文意思应译为“凌乱不堪”。

2. K

【解析】应填形容词，根据上下文意思应译为“孩子们正在担忧他们的考试，所以他们认为母亲的这种做法很荒谬”。

3. L

【解析】to 后面填动词原形，根据上下文意思应译为“领会到差异”。

4. O

【解析】此处填连词，根据上下文关系确定填“否则”。

5. A

【解析】动词后名词前填形容词，应译为“情感的压力”。

6. D

【解析】can 后接动词原形，应译为“扭转或改变这种状况”。

7. E

【解析】和上半句为并列关系，所以填动词原形，应译为“减少生活的压力”。

8. F

【解析】不定冠词后名词前填形容词。

9. B

【解析】此句为 so... that 句型，be overwhelmed with 表示“忙于……”。

10. J

【解析】应填形容词，应译为“他们的宝贝孩子”。

Expressions in use

7 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. made it

【译文】经过了10年的全日制训练,她终于成为一名专业舞蹈演员。

2. After all

【译文】毕竟如果结果只能证明你有多么无能的话,参与竞争的意义又何在呢?

3. strip off

【译文】重新装修这套房子是一项有挑战性的任务。首先把墙纸扯掉很必要。

4. with open arms

【译文】我从不觉得变化有什么不好。相反,我会热情地迎接变化的到来。

5. throw away

【译文】很多我们扔掉的东西是由不可再生的原材料制成的。

6. straighten up

【译文】梅根和约翰意识到他们的房子对新生儿来说太乱了,所以他们决定在宝宝出生前清理一下他们的房子。

7. keep back

【译文】当詹尼弗在弗吉尼亚州的一个新的血癌治疗中心看到那些患病的孩子们时,她的眼泪止不住了。

8. free of/from

【译文】我们想给所有的孩子们一个没有暴力的世界。

Structure analysis and writing

Structure analysis

在本篇文章中,从第5到第11自然段,作者以一提出问题,二分析问题,三解决问题(评价)这样的顺序写作,我们在写文章中可以仿照这种写作模式,它可以让文章结构更加清晰。

8 Read Paragraph 11 of Text A and analyze the problem-solution pattern.

Problem: She left the bedroom a ridiculous mess...
Details of the problem: ... the comforter on the floor, the sheets tossed aside.



Solution: I strip off the comforter, blanket, sheets, and pillows.



Evaluation: Once she starts feeding coins into laundry machines, she'll appreciate the years of clean clothes I've provided for free.

Structured writing

9 Write a paragraph on one of the following topics. One topic has an outline that you can follow.

Parents may get disappointed when you fail to meet their expectations. They may strongly object to your lifestyle and complain that you are wasting time on unimportant things. To solve this problem, you

may try to make them understand that you are a responsible person. First tell them that you have inherited many of their merits. Then remind them that you have your own thoughts and life goals as an individual. You can also explain how your lifestyle will help you in a positive way. You may not be able to change your parents' opinions overnight, but if you keep trying, it will eventually work.

Translation

10 Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.

圣诞节是一个被广泛庆祝的文化节日，全世界有许许多多的人在 12 月 25 日庆祝这一节日。它是为了纪念耶稣基督的诞辰。该节日最早可追溯到公元 336 年。渐渐地，这一节日演变为一个既是宗教又是非宗教的节日，越来越多的非基督徒也庆祝圣诞节。如今，圣诞节在全球被作为一个重大的节日和公共假日来庆祝。不同国家的圣诞节风俗也各不相同。现代流行的圣诞节风俗包括交换圣诞贺卡和圣诞礼物、唱圣诞歌曲、参加教堂活动、摆放各种圣诞装饰品和圣诞树、举行家庭聚会以及准备一顿特别的大餐。对小孩们来说，这个节日充满了幻想和惊喜。据传说，圣诞老人会在圣诞夜从烟囱进入每户人家，给乖巧听话的孩子带来礼物。由于圣诞节送礼物以及许多其他方面推动了基督徒和非基督徒的经济活动，圣诞节也因此成为商家的一个重大活动和主要营销季。

11 Translate the following paragraph into English.

According to the Chinese lunar calendar, August 15 of every year is a traditional Chinese festival—the Mid-Autumn Festival. This day is the middle of autumn, so it is called Mid-Autumn. One of the important Mid-Autumn Festival activities is to enjoy the moon. On that night, people gather together to celebrate the Mid-Autumn Festival, looking up at the bright moon and eating moon cakes. The festival is also a time for family reunion. People living far away from home will express their feelings of missing their hometowns and families at this festival. There are many customs to celebrate the festival, all expressing people's love and hope for a happy life. Since 2008, the Mid-Autumn Festival has become an official national holiday in China.

Section B

Time slows down

一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文从女儿的角度生动诠释了父女之间深厚的爱意。文章开篇女儿描述了现在与父亲散步的情景,年老虚弱的父亲抱怨天冷,不愿散步。这让女儿回忆起了她小时候的一次相似的经历,随后女儿还记起了与年轻力壮的父亲的生活点滴和旅行游历,记得父亲是多么爱她。今天,在弗吉尼亚的养老院里,父亲年老体衰,坐在轮椅里,双手颤抖,声音含混不清,女儿陪父亲散步,并带来熏鳗鱼作为礼物。女儿已长大成人,体贴照顾父亲以回报、感谢父亲的爱。父女间流淌的爱意引发读者思考:父母辛苦养育我们,当他们一天天老去,我们为他们做了什么,我们能为他们做些什么以回报他们的爱。

(二)背景知识

1. 养老院

在一些国家,比如美国,当老年人不能够独自生活时,他们就可以住在养老院。养老院为需要长期护理或活动不便的老人提供帮助。养老院不仅提供日常护理、健康均衡的饮食、24 小时全员服务、用药管理,还会组织社交活动,帮助老年人发展业余爱好。尽管养老院有许多优点,但是远离家庭成员可能会使老年人感到孤独,甚至抑郁。他们可能会发现没有足够的食物选择,没有太多隐私,与社会脱节。因此,当前有一个新的趋势,养老院更加私人化,更像一个家而不是医院。

2. 瑞士军刀

瑞士军刀是众所周知的便携刀品牌。它具有多种功能,用途广泛,被称为万用刀。瑞士军刀一般有一个刀片以及各种工具,如螺丝刀、开瓶器和个人修饰工具。这些附件是装在刀的手柄里,刀也有不同的形状和大小。由于其特殊的设计,瑞士军刀已被纽约现代艺术博物馆和慕尼黑的实用艺术博物馆作为"工业设计精品"收藏。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Paras. 1 - 5 In the nursing home in Virginia the aging and limp father is reluctant to walk and complains about the chilly weather. 在弗吉尼亚的养老院里,年老虚弱的父亲抱怨天冷,不愿散步。

Paras. 6 - 22 The daughter looks back on the years of life with her father. Time slows down when affectionate love flows from "father to daughter and back again". 女儿回忆过去父亲的爱,时光驻足,爱意从父亲流向女儿,又从女儿流向父亲。

Paras. 23 - 34 Today, the love flows from "daughter to father and back again" when the daughter is an adult and the father ages and becomes weak. The daughter takes good care of her father in return to show her gratitude for her father's caring love. 今天,女儿长大成人,父亲年老体衰,爱意从女儿流向父亲,又从父亲流向女儿。女儿体贴照顾父亲以回报、感谢父亲的关爱。

2. 写作特点

本文在叙述过去的故事或发生的事情时用现在时，称为“历史现在时”或“叙事现在时”。运用这种时态，可以给人以身临其境的感觉，使叙述更生动，增强了故事的感染力。另外，本文运用了比较的写作手法，使读者可以从中深切体会父女间的爱。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 limp /lɪmp/ *a.*

not firm or strong 软的；不强壮的

—He carried her limp body into the room and laid her on the bed. 他把绵软无力的她抱进房间，放在床上。

vi. walk slowly and with difficulty because one leg is hurt or injured (因一腿受伤而)跛行，一瘸一拐地走

—He had to limp off with a leg injury. 他腿上有伤，离开时只能一瘸一拐地走。

2 surge /sɜːdʒ/ *vi.*

(1) suddenly move very quickly in a particular direction 迅速涌动；蜂拥向前

—The people surged forward to see the star sportsman they had been waiting for so long. 人群向前涌去，希望看到他们等待已久的体育明星。

(2) suddenly increase 突然上涨；激增

—The city's population surged after the Second World War. 第二次世界大战后，这个城市的人口激增。

n. [C, usu. sing.]

(1) (a ~ of sth.) a sudden, large increase in a feeling (情感的)突发；涌现

—The anniversary is bound to bring a new surge of interest in Dylan's work. 该周年纪念肯定会再一次激发人们对迪伦作品的浓厚兴趣。

(2) (~ in/of) a sudden increase in amount or number (数量的)急剧增加

—Specialists see various reasons for the recent surge in inflation. 专家们认为目前通货膨胀加剧有多种原因。

3 breeze /briːz/ *n.*

[C] a gentle wind 微风；和风

—The sun went in, and the breeze became cold. 云层遮住了太阳，微风有了些凉意。

【派生】breezy *adj.* 有微风的；(人、举止等)轻松愉快的

4 shiver /ˈʃɪvə/ *vi.*

shake slightly because you are cold or frightened (因寒冷或害怕而)颤抖，哆嗦，发抖

—She shivered at the thought of going into the dark house alone. 想到要独自进入那个黑暗的屋子，她就怕得发抖。

【搭配】shiver with sth. (因寒冷或害怕而)颤抖

【派生】shivery *adj.* 令人颤抖的；令人毛骨悚然的

【近义】shake, tremble, quiver

5 complain /kəmˈpleɪn/ *v.*

say that you are annoyed, not satisfied, or unhappy about sth. or sb. 抱怨;不满;发牢骚

—The American couple complained about the high cost of visiting Europe. 这对美国夫妇抱怨去欧洲旅行的花销太高。

【派生】complaint *n.* 抱怨;不满;投诉

6 chill /tʃɪl/ *n.*

[sing.] a feeling of coldness 寒冷;寒气

—September is here, bringing with it a chill in the mornings. 九月到了,早晨已有了寒意。

7 chilly /ˈtʃɪli/ *a.*

cold enough to be unpleasant 寒冷的;冷得难受的

—It's chilly in the house, even when it's sunny outside. 即使外面阳光明媚,屋子里还是很冷。

【近义】cold, freezing, icy

8 stride /straɪd/ *vi.*

(strode, stridden) walk quickly with long steps 迈大步走;大踏步走

—He turned abruptly and strode off down the corridor. 他突然转身,沿走廊大步流星地走了。

n.

(1) [C] a long step you make while you are walking 大步;阔步

—A younger man was coming along in the distance, taking big strides. 一个年轻人迈着大步从远处走来。

(2) [C] an improvement in a situation or in the development of sth. 进步;进展;发展

—The country has made enormous strides politically but not economically. 该国在政治上取得了巨大的发展,但经济却跟不上去。

9 melt /melt/ *v.*

if sth. melts or if heat melts it, it becomes liquid (使)融化;(使)熔化

—The ice will melt when the sun shines on it. 当太阳照到冰的时候,它就融化了。

vi. (*also* ~ away) gradually disappear 逐渐消失

—When he heard these words, he felt his inner doubts melt away. 听到这番话,他感到内心的疑虑顿时消散了。

【近义】dissolve, fuse

10 melting /ˈmeltɪŋ/ *a.*

(of a solid substance) changing into a liquid 融化的;熔化的;溶解的

—Melting ice at both poles of the earth suggests that the climate is changing rapidly. 地球两极的融冰表明气候正在经历着快速的变化。

11 shed /ʃed/ *n.*

(1) [C] a large industrial building where work is done, large vehicles are kept, machinery is stored 工棚;厂房;库房

—There were many disused railway sheds in the suburbs. 郊区有许多废弃的铁路工棚。

(2) [C] a small building, often made of wood, used esp. for storing things 棚屋;小屋;货棚

—I got a ladder from the shed in the garden. 我从花园的小棚里搬来了一个梯子。

12 immense /ɪˈmens/ *a.*

extremely large 巨大的

—Despite his immense success, he was not always happy. 尽管他取得了巨大的成功,但有时他并不

快乐。

【派生】immensely *adv.* 极大地；无限地 immensity *n.* 巨大；广大

【近义】huge, enormous, giant, gigantic, vast, massive, tremendous

13 fatigue /fəˈtiːg/ *n.*

[U] very great tiredness 疲劳；疲乏；劳累

—We were so happy that our fatigue melted away. 我们是多么快乐啊，一切疲劳都飞到九霄云外。

14 aboard /əˈbɔːd/ *prep.*

on or onto a ship, plane, or train 在(船、飞机、火车)上；上(船、飞机、火车)

—After a short break, the driver called his passengers to get aboard the coach. 短暂休息之后，司机招呼乘客上车。

15 hut /hʌt/ *n.*

[C] a small simple building with only one or two rooms (简陋的)小屋，棚屋，茅舍

—The poor old man lived in a little wooden hut. 那个贫穷的老人住在一间小木屋内。

16 barrel /ˈbærəl/ *n.*

[C] a large, round container for liquids or food (中间鼓起的)桶

—The wine is aged for almost a year in oak barrels. 这葡萄酒已经在橡木桶里存放近一年了。

17 shell /ʃel/ *n.*

[C] the hard protective covering of an animal, such as a snail or crab (蜗牛或螃蟹等的)壳；贝壳

—I collect shells and interesting seaside items. 我收集贝壳和海边有趣的小玩意儿。

18 shellfish /ˈʃelˌfɪʃ/ *n.*

[C, U] (*pl.* shellfish) an animal that lives in water, has a shell, and can be eaten as food, e. g. crabs, lobsters, and oysters 水生有壳动物；水生贝类动物

—The soup can be made from vegetables, meat, fish, shellfish, seaweed, or beef bones. 汤是由蔬菜、肉类、鱼类、贝类、海藻或牛骨熬制而成的。

19 bundle /ˈbʌndl/ *n.*

[C] a group of things, such as papers, clothes, or sticks that are fastened or tied together 捆；把；扎；束

—We threw out several bundles of old newspapers and magazines. 我们扔掉好几捆旧报纸和旧杂志。

20 eel /iːl/ *n.*

[C] a long, thin fish that looks like a snake 鳗；鳝

—She bought some eels for dinner. 她买回一些鳗鱼做晚餐。

21 portion /ˈpɔːʃn/ *n.*

[C] a part of an amount or total (数量或总数的)一部分，一份

—The computer factory represents only a small portion of the company's business. 计算机工厂只代表该公司业务的一小部分。

【近义】part, piece, section, division, fraction, fragment, segment, share

【词根】port ①=part/divide，表示"部分，分开"；②=carry，表示"拿，运"：port 部分，分开+ion 表名词→portion 一部分；pro 多+port 部分，分开+ion→proportion 多个部分，每部分占用一定比例；port 拿，运→拿或运东西的地方→port 港口；trans 转移+port 搬运→搬运转移→transport 运输

22 migrate /maɪˈgreɪt/ *vi.*

(1) if birds or animals migrate, they travel to another part of the world for warmer weather at a particular time of the year (鸟或动物)迁徙

—These birds migrate northwards in spring and southwards in fall. 这些鸟春天向北迁徙,秋天向南迁徙。

(2) go to live in another area or country, esp. in order to find work (尤指为找工作)移居,迁移

—A lot of people were encouraged to migrate to Australia from all over Europe. 很多人受到鼓励从欧洲各地移居到澳大利亚。

【搭配】migrate from... to... 从……移居到……

【派生】migrant *n.* 迁徙的人或动物 *adj.* 迁徙的;移居的

【词根】migr=remove,表示"迁移"。migr 迁移+ate 做→migrate 迁移,移居;e 出+migr 移+ate 做→emigrate 自本国移居他乡;im 进入+migrate 移居→immigrate 移居入境

23 migration /maɪ'greɪʃn/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] when birds or animals travel regularly from one part of the world to another (鸟或动物的)迁徙

—This kind of birds travel thousands of kilometers on their yearly migration. 这种鸟每年迁徙时要飞越几千公里。

(2) [C, U] when large numbers of people go to live in another area or country, esp. in order to find work 移居;迁移

—The overseas migration of Europeans during this period totaled about 60 million people. 这段时间里,欧洲移居海外的人数共计约六千万。

24 wrap /ræp/ *vt.*

(*also* ~ up) put paper or cloth over sth. to cover it (用纸、布等)包,裹(某物)

—You'd better wrap it with a piece of clean cloth. 你最好用一块干净的布把它包起来。

25 unwrap /ʌn'ræp/ *vt.*

remove the paper, plastic, etc. that is around sth. 拆开,打开(包装)

—The children couldn't wait to unwrap their presents. 孩子们迫不及待地拆开了礼物。

26 suspicious /sə'spɪʃəs/ *a.*

(1) feeling that you do not trust sb. or sth. 感到怀疑的;认为有问题的

—I am always suspicious of anyone who wants to sell me something cheap. 我总是不相信向我推销便宜货的人。

(2) thinking that sb. might be guilty of doing sth. wrong or dishonest 怀疑的;猜疑的

—He is extremely suspicious of all his neighbors. 他对所有邻居都满腹狐疑。

【派生】suspicion *n.* 怀疑;疑心

27 suspiciously /sə'spɪʃəsli/ *ad.*

(1) in a way that makes people think that sth. bad or illegal is happening 感到怀疑地;不信任地

—The customs officer inspected my passport suspiciously. 海关官员颇为怀疑地检查了我的护照。

(2) in a way that shows you think someone has done sth. wrong or dishonest 怀疑地;猜疑地

—She felt uneasy when people looked at her suspiciously. 当人们用怀疑的目光看她时,她感到很不自在。

28 pinch /pɪntʃ/ *n.*

[C] a small amount of sth. that you can hold between your finger and thumb 一小撮

—He put a pinch of salt on his food. 他在自己的食物上洒了一撮盐。

vt. press a part of sb.'s skin very tightly between your finger and thumb, esp. so that it hurts 捏;掐;夹

—She pinched his arm as hard as she could. 她使出浑身的力气拧他的胳膊。

29 vanish /'vænɪʃ/ *vi.*

disappear suddenly, esp. in a way that cannot be easily explained 突然不见;消失

—The wolf vanished into the woods immediately. 那只狼即刻消失在树林中。

30 slope /sləʊp/ *n.*

[C] a straight surface that has one end higher than the other 斜面;斜坡

—There's a very sharp slope just before you reach the top of the mountain. 在你到达山顶之前有个很陡的斜坡。

31 cracker /'krækə/ *n.*

[C] a hard dry type of bread in small flat shapes, which is often eaten with cheese 薄脆饼干

—I'm not really hungry, just have some crackers. 我不太饿,吃几块薄脆饼干就行了。

32 peak /piːk/ *n.*

(1) [C] the sharply pointed top of a mountain 山顶;山峰

—Climbing this mountain is very difficult, so people take great pride in getting to its peak. 这座山很难爬,因此人们都为能登上山顶而自豪。

(2) [C, usu. sing.] the time when sth. or sb. is best, greatest, highest, most successful, etc. 高峰;顶点

—Athletes have to train continuously to stay in peak condition. 运动员必须不断训练才能保持最佳竞技状态。

【近义】summit, climax, top

33 stretch /stretʃ/ *v.*

(1) continue over a period of time or in a series, or make sth. do this (使)延续;(使)延伸

—As time stretched on, he found his joy in painting. 随着时间的推移,他逐渐喜欢上了绘画。

(2) make sth. bigger or looser by pulling it, or become bigger or looser as a result of being pulled (使)变大;(使)变松;拉长

—My T-shirt stretched after I washed it. 我的T恤衫洗过后变长了。

(3) straighten your arms, legs, or body to full length 伸开,伸展(肢体)

—I stopped at the square and got out to stretch my legs. 我在广场处停下来,下车活动活动腿脚。

【近义】extend, lengthen, prolong

34 overtake /ˌəʊvə'teɪk/ (overtook, overtaken) *v.*

go past a moving vehicle or person because you are going faster than them and want to get in front of them 追上;赶上;超过

—I had to walk very fast to overtake you. 我得走很快才能赶上你。

vt. develop or increase more quickly than sb. or sth. else and become more successful, more important, or more advanced than them 超越;超过

—Starbucks is rapidly expanding in China, which is set to overtake Canada as its second-biggest market next year. 星巴克的中国市场正在迅速扩张,计划在明年取代加拿大,成为星巴克的第二大全球市场。

【词缀】前缀 over-①表示"翻转",②表示"在……之上",③表示"过度,过分,超过"。over 翻转+take 拿,占领→overtake 超过,压倒;over 在……之上+come 来→来到上面→overcome 战胜;over 过度,过分,超过+act 演出→overact 表演过火

35 anticipate /æn'tɪsɪˌpeɪt/ *vt.*

expect that sth. will happen and be ready for it 预期;预料

—We anticipate that we will meet a certain amount of resistance to our plan. 我们预计我们的计划会遭到一定程度的抵制。

【派生】anticipation *n.* 预期;预料

36 reluctance /rɪˈlʌktəns/ *n.*

[U] when sb. is unwilling to do sth. 勉强;不情愿

—Ministers have shown extreme reluctance to explain their position to the media. 部长们极不情愿向媒体解释他们的立场。

37 stoop /stuːp/ *vi.*

bend your body forward and down 俯身;弯腰

—We had to stoop to go through the door. 我们必须俯身才能通过那道门。

38 restraint /rɪˈstreɪnt/ *n.*

(1) [C] sth. that prevents sb. from moving freely, such as a rope or a seat belt 安全装置;安全带

—The car is equipped with head restraints for the safety of passengers. 这辆车配备了护头垫以保护乘客的安全。

(2) [U] the limit or control of the expression of strong emotion or opinion 抑制;克制;控制

—Even though the mother was very angry, she acted with restraint and didn't yell at her child. 即使母亲很生气,她仍克制自己没有向孩子大吼。

(3) [C, U] a rule or principle that limits what people can do 管制措施;限制;控制

—The Prime Minister is calling for new restraints on trade unions. 首相正在呼吁对工会施加新的限制措施。

【词根】strain=tighten,表示"拉紧":re 回+strain 拉紧→拉回去→restrain 抑制,克制;con 一起+strain 拉紧→拉到一起→constrain 限制,强制

39 scrape /skreɪp/ *v.*

rub against a rough surface in a way that causes slight damage or injury, or make sth. do this (使)摩擦,擦伤;刮坏

—I stumbled and fell, scraping my palms and knees. 我绊了一下摔倒了,手掌和膝盖都蹭破了。

vt. remove sth. from a surface using the edge of a knife, a stick, etc. (用小刀等)刮除

—Scrape all the mud off your shoes before you come in. 你进来时先把鞋上的泥土刮掉。

40 delicate /ˈdelɪkət/ *a.*

(1) easily damaged or broken 易坏的;易碎的;脆弱的

—Although the coral looks hard, it is very delicate. 珊瑚虽然看上去坚固,实际上非常易碎。

(2) needing to be dealt with carefully or sensitively in order to avoid problems or failure 微妙的;需要谨慎处理的

—The European members are afraid of upsetting the delicate balance of political interests. 欧洲成员国害怕会打乱各政治利益集团间的微妙平衡。

(3) made skillfully and with attention to the smallest details 精巧的;精致的;精美的

—The delicate pattern of the vase will be a selling point. 这个花瓶上的精致图案将是一个卖点。

【派生】delicately *adv.* 精致地;微妙地 delicacy *n.* 精致;精美;谨慎

41 grip /ɡrɪp/ *vt.*

hold sth. very tightly 紧握;紧抓

—He gripped my arm, partly to restrain me and partly to reassure me. 他紧紧抓住我的胳膊，一方面要制止我，一方面是给我安慰。

n. [C, usu. sing.] the way you hold sth. tightly, or your ability to do this 紧握；紧抓；握力

—Jack answered by tightening his grip on her shoulder. 杰克的回应就是把她的肩头抓得更紧了。

【近义】take, grasp, grab, clasp, clutch, seize

42 gradual /ˈɡrædʒuəl/ *a.*

happening slowly over a long period of time 逐渐的；逐步的

—Losing weight is a slow and gradual process. 减肥是一个缓慢而渐进的过程。

43 gradually /ˈɡrædʒuəli/ *ad.*

slowly, over a long period of time 逐渐地；逐步地

—After months of discussion, a peace agreement is gradually taking shape. 经过几个月的商讨，和平协议渐渐有了眉目。

44 sway /sweɪ/ *vi.*

move slowly from one side to another 摇摆；摆动；摇晃

—At the bottom of the hill, the trees swayed in the wind, graceful like dancers with long hair. 山脚下，树木在风中摇曳，如长发舞女般优雅。

45 accompany /əˈkʌmp(ə)ni/ *vt.*

go somewhere with sb. 陪伴；陪同

—They can accompany you to your favorite restaurant or to somewhere else you like. 他们可以陪你去你最喜欢的饭店或者去其他你喜欢的地方。

46 pureed /ˈpjʊəreɪd/ *a.*

(of sth.) crushed so that it is almost liquid 捣压成酱(泥、糊)的

—She fed the baby on pureed carrots. 她用胡萝卜泥喂养那婴儿。

47 tuna /ˈtjuːnə/ *n.*

[C] (*pl.* tuna) large fish that live in warm seas and are caught for food 金枪鱼

—We have three months' supply of tuna to eat. 我们还储备有足够吃三个月的金枪鱼。

48 awkward /ˈɔːkwəd/ *a.*

(1) lacking skill 笨拙的；不灵巧的

—As a foreigner, he is still awkward with his chopsticks. 他是个外国人，用筷子还不熟练。

(2) making you feel embarrassed so that you are not sure what to do or say 令人尴尬的；使人难堪的

—Her controversial comment was followed by an awkward silence. 在她有争议的评论之后是一片令人尴尬的沉默。

49 sip /sɪp/ *n.*

[C] a very small amount of a drink 一小口

—She took a sip of water to moisten her dry throat. 她抿了一口水，润一下发干的喉咙。

v. drink sth. slowly, taking very small mouthfuls 小口地喝；抿；呷

—He lifted the water bottle to his lips and sipped. 他把水瓶举到嘴边，小口地喝着。

50 champagne /ˌʃæmˈpeɪn/ *n.*

[U] a French white wine with a lot of bubbles, drunk on special occasions (法国)香槟酒

—We had a nice meal with a bottle of champagne. 我们美餐了一顿，还喝了一瓶香槟。

(二)短语

1 slow down

become slower or make sth. slower (使)慢下来;(使)减速

—The increase of productions has now slowed down. 现在产品的增长速度已经慢了下来。

2 make sense

(1) have a clear meaning and be easy to understand 有意义;表述清晰;易于理解

—His answer was so confusing that it didn't make any sense. 他的回答太混乱了,让人无法理解。

(2) be a sensible thing to do 明智;合乎情理

—It makes sense to buy a large packet because it works out cheaper in the end. 还是买大包装明智,因为最后算下来还是大包装便宜一些。

3 at least

(1) used when you are correcting or changing sth. that you have just said 至少;起码

—With separation from other people, you try to avoid the effects of culture shock, or at least that's what you think. 你试图通过不和他人接触来避免文化冲击的影响,至少你是这么想的。

(2) even if sth. better is not true or is not done 至少(指尽管没有更好的情况)

—We've no idea what his state of health is but at least we know he is still alive. 我们不清楚他的健康情况如何,但起码知道他仍然活着。

4 lay sth. out

spread sth. out 铺开;展开

—While she was cooking, her 8-year-old daughter helped lay out the knives and forks at the dining table. 她烧菜的时候,她八岁的女儿帮着把刀叉摆放在餐桌上。

5 hang up

(1) hang clothes on a hook, etc. 挂起(衣服)

—He hangs up his scarf on the hook behind the door. 他把围巾挂在门后的衣钩上。

(2) finish a telephone conversation 挂断电话

—I am sorry I have to hang up now. Someone is knocking at the door. 对不起,我得挂电话了,有人敲门。

6 be supposed to do sth.

used to say what sb. should do, esp. because of rules or what sb. in authority has said 应该做某事

—Students are supposed to work actively and creatively rather than just acquire knowledge passively. 学生应该在学习上主动、创新,而不只是被动地接受知识。

7 not that... but (that)...

used to mean you are not suggesting sth., but rather sth. else 不是……而是……

—Not that the machine is out of order, but that I have not learned to operate it. 不是机器出了故障,而是我还没学会操作。

8 once in a while

sometimes, although not often 偶尔;有时;间或

—I do get a little anxious once in a while. 我的确偶尔会有点担心。

9 the small of one's back

the lower part of one's back where it curves 后腰

—He told the doctor that the pain ran from the small of his back right down his left leg. 他告诉医生,疼

痛从他的后腰一直蔓延到左腿。

10 not care for sb. /sth.

(*fml.*) not like sb. or sth. 不喜欢某人/某物

—I'll take the raw fish slices, but my wife does not care for it. 我吃生鱼片,但我妻子不喜欢。

三、课文注释

1 **Time slows down (Title)**

【Meaning】The author describes "time" as a person who slows down his paces to show a strong desire to hold onto something that has passed or is passing.

【解　析】本文在叙述过去的故事或发生的事情时用现在时,称为"历史现在时"或"叙事现在时"。作者运用这种时态,可以给人以身临其境的感觉,加强了故事的感染力。

2 **Shivering, he complains it's chilly. (Para. 5)**

【Meaning】Slightly shaking, he says in an unhappy tone of voice that it is cold.

【解　析】动词 complain 后可以用 that 引导的宾语从句,或者加介词 about, complain about sth.,或者加介词 to, complain to sb.,还有一种常用表达是 complain of(诉说有……病痛)。

3 **Suddenly we're far away in a time long past in part of a harbor I've never seen before. December, Chicago, I'm five, and cold. One glove is lost. My feet are tired. (Para. 6)**

【Meaning】When the father is reluctant to walk and complains about the chilly weather, the daughter's memory flashes far back into a similar situation, when she was a small child, tired and cold, in a harbor where she has never been before. Here the daughter starts to recall the past.

【解　析】past 常用作形容词,表示"过去了的",同动词 pass 的过去分词 passed 用作表语时的意义相近。past 还可以用作名词、介词或副词,而过去分词 passed 没有类似的用法。

4 **His legs are longer; he strides quickly through melting snow, toward buildings like airplane sheds with immense doors. (Para. 6)**

【Meaning】He has longer legs, so he walks quickly with big steps through melting snow, toward buildings with extremely large doors that look like places for keeping airplanes.

【解　析】本句中不及物动词 stride 后接两个介词短语作状语,buildings 后的两个介词短语作后置定语。

5 **I could walk along here forever, at least until I find out how to get aboard one of the boats. (Para. 7)**

【Meaning】I could walk along here forever. At least I could walk until I find a way to get onto one of the boats.

【解　析】本句中 until 引导时间状语从句,主句的意思同前文,因而被省略,这种"简化"现象在口语中较为普遍。

6 **We slow down our pace. Smaller sheds now. A green diner. (Para. 8)**

【Meaning】We slow down our pace and come to a place where there are smaller sheds. There is a small green restaurant that serves cheap meals.

【解　析】本句中女儿描述了她在一个港口的童年回忆,使用名词短语代替完整的句子能够使表达更加生动。

7 **"Smoked. We'll take a portion home for supper." (Para. 10)**

【Meaning】"The eel is smoked. And we will take a part of it back home for supper."

【解　析】smoked 用作形容词，意思是"熏制的"，如 smoked eel/salmon/sausage 熏鳗鱼/熏三文鱼/熏香肠。

8 While he hangs up our coats, I test one pinch. Smelly, smoky, and salty. (Para. 17)

【Meaning】While he hangs up our coats, I try a small amount of eel out of curiosity. It has a strong unpleasant smell with a taste of smoke, and it contains too much salt.

【解　析】smelly, smoky, salty 都是由名词加后缀-y 构成的形容词，在文中用来形容鳗鱼的味道。常见的由后缀-y 构成的形容词还有 bloody, cloudy, dusty, fatty, foggy 等。

9 He goes into the kitchen to heat milk for me and tea for himself. I test another pinch. Then another. He returns with the steaming cups. (Para. 18) / The eel has vanished. (Para. 19)

【Meaning】He goes into the kitchen to make my milk and his tea hotter. I taste bit by bit the smelly, smoky, and salty eel until I finish the whole eel all by myself and he comes back with the hot cups.

【解　析】本句生动地描写了父亲离开后女儿怎样一点一点地尝又腥又咸、带着烟熏味儿的鳗鱼，直到父亲回来时看到鳗鱼已经被全部吃光了。

10 Because it is Sunday and I am five, he forgives me. Time slows down and the love flows in—father to daughter and back again. (Para. 20)

【Meaning】I think my father does not blame me probably because it is Sunday or because I'm small. Time slows down when affectionate love flows between the father and the daughter.

【解　析】无论什么原因，父亲都没有一句责备之词，那一刻，时光驻足，爱意流淌——从父亲流向女儿，又从女儿流向父亲。

11 At 19, I fly out to Japan. My father and I climb Mount Fuji. High above the Pacific, and hours up the slope, we picnic on dried eel, seaweed crackers, and cold rice wrapped in the eel skin. He reaches the peak first. (Para. 21)

【Meaning】When I'm 19, I fly out to Japan. My father and I climb Mount Fuji. The slope is high above the Pacific, and it takes hours of climbing to get there. We have some typical Japanese food for the picnic. He gets to the top first.

【解　析】本句中女儿描述了另一次她和父亲的共同经历，那时父亲还身强力壮，精力充沛。而且她再一次提到了鳗鱼，表明她与父亲都很享受彼此陪伴的时光。

12 Some days, time flies with joy all around. Other days, time rots like old fish. (Para. 23)

【Meaning】I look back on the years of life with my father. There are good old days when time flies fast and days when we are not so happy.

【解　析】动词 rot 意思是"(使)腐烂；(使)腐败"，"rot like old fish" 是明喻，"有些日子会像不新鲜的鱼一样令人难受"。

13 Today in the nursing home in Virginia, anticipating his reluctance, I beg boldly and encourage him, "Please, Daddy, just a little walk. You are supposed to exercise." (Para. 24)

【Meaning】Today I am visiting my father, who is living in a nursing home in Virginia. I know that he doesn't want to take a walk, but I ask bravely and encourage him, "Please, Daddy, we'll just take a short walk. You should do some exercise."

【解　析】本句中 anticipating his reluctance 现在分词短语作状语，表示让步。

14 Not that he often gets up on his own, but once in a while he'll suddenly have a surge of strength. (Para. 25)

【Meaning】It is not that he often gets up from the wheelchair by himself; however, now and then, he suddenly becomes stronger to stand up.

【解　析】在 not that... but (that)... 结构前面可以加上 it is，即 It is not that... but (that)...。此结构也可以引导原因状语从句，相当于 not because... but because...。

15 He grips the walker and struggles forward. Gradually I lift and pull him to his feet. Standing unsteadily, he sways and then gains his balance. (Para. 26)

【Meaning】My father holds the walker tightly and tries hard to reach forward. I slowly lift and pull him up. He stands up unsteadily, moves a bit from one side to another, and finally gains his balance.

【解　析】名词 walker 尤其在美国英语里指(老人或病人用的)助行架或助步车。本句中 standing unsteadily 现在分词短语作状语，表示伴随。

16 He is impatient with the walker as I accompany him to the dining room. I help him to his chair, and hand him a spoon. It slips from his fingers. Pureed tuna is heaped on a plastic plate. I encourage him, sing him old songs, tell stories, but he won't eat. When I lift a spoonful of gray fishy stuff to his mouth, he says politely, "I don't care for any." (Para. 28)

【Meaning】He is unhappy about using the walker when I go with him to the dining room. I help him sit in his chair, and hand him a spoon, but it goes out of his hand. With a plate of pureed tuna, I try to encourage him to eat, sing him old songs, tell stories and lift a spoonful of gray fishy stuff to his mouth, but he just refuses to eat and says he doesn't like it politely.

【解　析】本句中及物动词 heap 意思是"(杂乱地)堆积，堆放"；spoonful 作名词，意思是"一匙的量；一满匙"。

17 "Look, Daddy, they've been out of it for months, but at last this morning at the fish seller near the Potomac, I found some smoked eel." (Para. 31)

【Meaning】"Look, Daddy, even though they have been out of supply for months, finally this morning I tried hard to find some smoked eel at the fishmonger near the Potomac."

【解　析】短语 out of sth. 意思是"一点不剩"。本句是又一个感人的情节，显示出女儿对父亲的周到体贴。

18 We unwrap it, and then I take out the Swiss Army Knife my beloved aunt gave me "for safekeeping", and slice the silvery flesh. (Para. 32)

【Meaning】My father and I remove the paper around the smoked eel, and then I take out the Swiss Army Knife my dear aunt gave me for protecting myself, and use it to cut the shiny eel flesh into thin flat pieces.

【解　析】短语 for safekeeping 意思是"为了安全起见；为了妥善保管"。本句中 for safekeeping 用了引号，表明这是作者的姨妈说的话，作者本人并不一定用这把刀防身。

19 "What a beautiful picnic," my father beams. (Para. 33) / He takes a sip of his champagne, and then with steady fingers picks up a slice of eel and downs it easily. (Para. 34)

【Meaning】"What a beautiful picnic," my father smiles very happily. He drinks a small amount of champagne and picks up with steady fingers a slice of eel and eats it without any difficulty.

【解　析】本句中不及物动词 beam 意思是"笑，眉开眼笑"；短语 take a sip (of sth.) 意思是"喝一小口，抿一口"；down 用作及物动词，意思是"大口喝下，快速吃下"。

20 And again, time slows down and the love flows in—daughter to father and back again. (Para. 34)

【Meaning】And again, time slows down when affectionate love flows back and forth between the father and the daughter.

【解　析】结尾段呼应第二十自然段，时光在此刻驻足，爱意在父女间流淌。但是两段又有显著区别：第

二十段中爱意从父亲流向女儿，当时女儿年仅五岁；结尾段爱意从女儿流向父亲，此时女儿已成年，父亲年老体衰。这一变化表明，女儿体贴照顾父亲以回报、感谢父亲的关爱。

四、课文译文

那一刻，时光驻足

1.“爸爸，我们去散散步吧。”

2.这是弗吉尼亚四月的一天。他点点头，把手放到轮椅的扶手上，嘟哝着谁也听不懂的话。我试着扶他起来，但是他太重了，而且也太虚弱了。

3.“去散散步，然后呢——我给你带来了一个惊喜。”

4.微风吹过，白色的窗帘飘了起来。

5.他哆嗦着，抱怨天太冷。“冷，我累了。我们现在回家不行吗？”

6.突然间，我们仿佛回到了很久很久以前，我们来到一个我从来没见过的港口。那时是十二月份，在芝加哥，我五岁，我很冷。一只手套丢了。我也走不动了。他的腿长多了，大步流星地走过正在融化的雪地，走向一群装着大门的像是飞机机库一样的建筑。

7.这是我到过的最令人兴奋的地方。忽然之间，我的疲惫消失得无影无踪。我可以一直在这里走下去，起码可以一直走到我设法登上其中的一条船为止。

8.我们放慢了脚步。现在我们看到的是一些小一点的货棚，还有一间绿色的小餐馆。四周弥漫着鱼和烟的味道。我们走进一个小棚里。里面是一桶桶的海水，一网兜一网兜的贝类海鲜，还有一捆捆放在冰块上的鱼。

9.“爸爸，快看那条蛇！”

10.“不，那是鳗鱼，”爸爸说。“烟熏的。我们买一段回家当晚饭吃。”

11.“我才不吃那个东西呢！”

12.“好吧，”他说道，然后拿起那包腥味很重的鱼。我们往回走的时候，他给我讲鳗鱼向马尾藻海洄游的故事：鳗鱼怎样从达尔玛提亚地区的河流游过地中海，再游过整个大西洋，直到抵达温暖的马尾藻海。它们在那里产卵，然后幼鱼再游回到它们的父母原先待过的河流。

13.我们终于回到了公寓。他拆开鳗鱼包，打开折叠小刀，小心地切片。

14.“我不吃，”我狐疑地说道。

15.“尝一口，就算为了我。”

16.“我不会喜欢它的。”

17.当他在挂我们的外套时，我尝了一丁点儿。很腥，带着烟熏味，还咸咸的。

18.他去厨房帮我热牛奶，并给他自己热茶。我又尝了一丁点儿。然后，又尝了一点儿。他从厨房回来，端着热气腾腾的杯子。

19.鳗鱼已经消失得无影无踪了。

20.因为是星期天，我又只有五岁，他原谅了我。时光在此刻驻足，爱意在此刻流淌——从父亲流向女儿，又从女儿流向父亲。

21.十九岁的时候，我飞去日本。父亲和我一起登富士山。我们爬了几小时后，在俯瞰太平洋的山坡上野餐，吃着鳗鱼干、海苔饼干和鳗鱼皮包的冷饭团。他第一个登上山顶。

22.随着岁月的流逝，我们游遍了世界各地的江川湖海。他步子大，所以经常走得比我快。我不知道除了他，还有谁能有如此旺盛的精力。

23.有些日子，时间在快乐中飞逝，也有些日子会像不新鲜的鱼一样，令人难受。

24. 今天，在弗吉尼亚的养老院里，虽然明知他不太愿意，我还是大胆地请求他、鼓励他："来吧，爸爸，就走一小会儿。你应该锻炼锻炼。"

25. 他无法从轮椅上站起来。不是说他能常常靠自己站起身来，但是偶尔，他会突然来那么一股子劲儿。我弯下身，把他的脚从脚蹬里拿出来，收起经常把他脆弱的、薄纸般的皮肤擦伤的金属脚踏。"来，你现在可以站起来了。"

26. 他抓住助步车，努力往前起身。慢慢地，我连拖带拽地帮他站了起来。他站在那儿，有点儿不稳，摇摇晃晃，然后才站稳了。

27. "看，你做到了！太好了！`好吧，我就跟在你后面，我会用手扶着你的腰。好，往前，往前走！"

28. 我陪着他往餐厅走，一路上他对助步车很不耐烦。我扶他在椅子上坐下，递给他一把勺子。勺子从他的指间滑落。塑料餐盘上是一堆金枪鱼肉糜。我鼓励他吃，唱老歌给他听，给他讲故事，但是他不肯吃。当我举起一勺灰灰的鱼肉糜送到他嘴边时，他客气地说："我一点儿也不想吃。"

29. 换了我，我也不想吃。

30. 于是，我从一个塑料袋里取出一小包用白纸包着的带着腥味的东西。他喜欢礼物。他伸手用不怎么灵活的手指试着打开纸包。房间里满是鱼腥味。

31. "看，爸爸，他们已经断货好几个月了。今天早上，我终于在波托马克河附近的鱼贩子那里找到了一些熏鳗鱼。"

32. 我们把纸包打开，然后我拿出我亲爱的姨妈送给我的那把"防身用"的瑞士军刀，切开银色的鱼肉。

33. "多么美妙的野餐啊，"父亲笑容满面地说。

34. 他呷了一口香槟，然后用一点儿也不哆嗦的手指捏起一片鳗鱼肉，轻松地咽了下去。接着，他吃了一片又一片，直到把整块鱼吃完。再一次，时光在此刻驻足，爱意在此刻流淌——从女儿流向父亲，又从父亲流向女儿。

五、练习答案及详解

—Reading skills—

如何以意群的方式阅读？

研究表明，当你阅读时，你的眼睛一定停留在一个词或一组词。阅读差的读者通常是从单词到单词，而不是从一组词到另一组词，这个习惯不仅会减慢阅读速度，而且也会造成理解上的困难。

为了理解你在读什么，你必须读其思想。一个思想很少包含在一个个单一的单词中，而是包含在一组单词中。试着以短语的方式来读，然后把它们作为一个独立的意群来对待。换句话说，从意群到意群的阅读不仅会提高你的阅读速度，而且也增强你的理解。

1 Read Paragraph 12 of Text B and mark off the thought groups.

"All right,"/ he says,/ and carries the smelly package. / As we walk back, / he tells me / about migrations of eels / to the Sargasso Sea: / how / eels come down Dalmatian rivers / and swim across the Mediterranean / and then the whole Atlantic, / until / they reach the warm Sargasso Sea. / Here / they lay their eggs, / and then the baby eels swim back / to the native rivers / of their parents.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

2 Choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

1. D 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. C 6. D 7. D 8. A

Critical thinking

3 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. Raising kids is a complicated endeavor, and there's no one recipe for doing it right. Still, certain ingredients are an indispensable part of the mix. Good parent should:
   • attend to children's physical and spiritual needs;
   • be supportive in times of difficulties;
   • share life experiences without preaching;
   • share hobbies and doing sports with their children; and
   • respect their children's privacy.
2. My parents took good care of my sister and me. They regarded it their duty to make sure that we had good food, decent clothes, and a nice place to live in. But they also required us to do whatever they told us to do. And we were supposed to keep no secrets from them. If I were a parent, I would try my best to supply the best for my child(ren)'s daily needs, just as what my parents did to me. But I would also do something different: I would respect my child(ren)'s privacy; I would not give orders. Instead, I would try to become their friends and encourage them to do what they like.
3. Yes, after reading the two stories in this unit, I have come to a better understanding of my parents' love for me. Though my father and mother show their love in different ways, everything they do for me is meant to do me good, even when they are being tough with me. Most times I tend to take their love for granted. I rarely spend time thinking about their love for me, let alone expressing thanks for their love. A better understanding of my parents' love will prompt me to think about what I can do to them, and how I can repay them for their selfless love.
4. Conflicts between parents and children may be sometimes inevitable. However, there is something we can do to reconcile and solve the disagreement.
   • calm down—anger only makes things worse;
   • analyze the reason for the conflicts;
   • try to be in our parents' shoes and see things from their angle;
   • explain what is on our mind and try to have their support; and
   • make compromises whenever we can.
5. Nowadays, many young people are too busy to spend time with their parents. This has been a social problem of public concern. It is true that young people today are facing great pressure from work. Busy as they are, they should try to set aside time to be with their parents, especially on the weekend. The aging parents may feel deserted and lonely, being left at the "empty nest". In fact, this social problem has promoted the government to take action and make it part of the law that children should regularly visit their parents and attend to their parents' needs.

Language focus

Words in use

4 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. awkward

【译文】作为一个高个子的女孩子，我觉得穿高跟鞋让我既不舒服又很尴尬。

2. stretch

【译文】尽管我们认为本月可以完成这个项目，但是似乎工作要延续到下个月。

3. overtaking

【译文】超车时，司机已对车失去了控制，结果撞上了另一辆车。

4. delicate

【译文】和老板争吵后，我们之间的关系变得更加微妙，结果我不得不辞职。

5. anticipate

【译文】这位科学家并没有预料到他的研究成果将会有完全不同的应用。

6. immense

【译文】大学生艺术节开幕前五天，有大量的工作要做。

7. reluctance

【译文】汉斯是个热心肠的人，需要帮助时，他很乐于助人。

8. suspicious

【译文】有些老年人往往是相当保守的并有些怀疑任何进步。

9. complain

【译文】在环境适应阶段，留学生往往抱怨新环境中的一切。

10. melted

【译文】读了他的道歉信后，她的气消了。

Expressions in use

5 Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions or adverbs.

1. out

【译文】我最喜欢这个市场，因为所有的水果和蔬菜都是用雨伞遮住的且摆放得很好。

2. for

【译文】他礼貌而亲切地说："如果你不喜欢这部电影，也许你会喜欢读这本书。"

3. with

【译文】他很少说话并对她非常有耐心；他是一个善良友善的父亲。

4. in/of

【译文】房价的急剧上升使得年轻人难以买房子，尤其是在大城市。

5. in

【译文】尽管工作很忙，但是他还是偶尔和朋友一起爬山。

6. down

【译文】该地区在过去十年中见证了经济飞跃增长，但现在增长正在放缓。

7. to

【译文】因为你对这个城市不是很熟悉，请让我陪你到旅店以免你迷路。

8. aboard

【译文】离开家人登上去往美国的飞机对他们来说是最具挑战性的。

Sentence structure

6 Complete the sentences by translating the Chinese into English, using the inversion structure beginning with *so* or *nor*.

1. So did the ache in his legs
2. Nor does his mother
3. so did other television news programs and major newspapers

7 Make sentences by combining the following groups of words using "not that... but (that)...".

1. Not that I don't like your apple pie, but (that) my doctor tells me not to have any.
2. Not that she is unwilling to help you, but (that) she is tied up with extra work these days.
3. Not that some coffee beans or tea bags are more flavorful than others, but (that) people love changes.

Collocation

8 Complete the following email with the words given below. All these words can collocate with the verb *make*. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. effort 努力
2. decision 决定
3. preparations 做准备
4. arrangements 安排
5. meal 做美食
6. mess 搞乱
7. complaints 抱怨
8. attempts 尝试
9. sense 有意义
10. excuses 找借口
11. suggestions 建议
12. contribution 做贡献

Unit 3

Digital campus

Section A

College life in the Internet age



一、课文导读

（一）内容介绍

本文是一篇说明文，它解释说明了信息技术给大学教育带来的影响。首先，它讲述了信息技术对大学校园生活的影响：学生在校园里随处都可以通过无线连接到互联网，大学成为互联网最普及的地方；学生对于这种快捷互联网连接的感受；学生们使用智能手机辅助学习、完成作业、参与讨论。其次，它阐述了信息技术对大学的影响：信息技术在大学里发展的速度；互联网给大学生的学习和生活带来了方便；为了保持竞争优势，许多大学要求学生配备笔记本来获取信息；大学之间用最现代的网络和最热门的系统来吸引学生。最后，作者提出，随着信息技术的发展，我们将培养出善于解决问题和善于思考的一代人。

（二）背景知识

1. 苹果公司

苹果公司（Apple Inc.）是美国的一家高科技公司，由史蒂夫·乔布斯、斯蒂夫·沃兹尼亚克和罗·韦恩三人于1976年4月1日创立，并命名为美国苹果电脑公司（Apple Computer Inc.）。2007年1月9日更名为苹果公司，总部位于加利福尼亚州的库比蒂诺。

2. Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi是一种可以将个人电脑、手持设备（如pad、手机）等终端以无线方式互相连接的技术，事实上它是一个高频无线电信号。无线保真是一个无线网络通信技术的品牌，由Wi-Fi联盟所持有。目的是改善基于IEEE 802.11标准的无线网路产品之间的互通性。有人把使用IEEE 802.11系列协议的局域网称为无线保真，甚至把无线保真等同于无线网际网路（Wi-Fi是WLAN的重要组成部分）。

关于Wi-Fi这个缩写词的发音，根据英文标准韦伯斯特词典的读音注释，标准发音为/'waɪ faɪ/，因为Wi-Fi这个单词是两个单词组成的，所以书写形式最好为WI-FI，这样也就不存在所谓专家所说的读

音问题，同理有 HI-FI(/'haɪ faɪ/，高保真)。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Para. 1 The college campus today is being transformed into a new age of electronics by a fleet of laptops, smartphones and Internet connections 24 hours a day. 随着笔记本电脑和智能手机的大量涌现，加上每天 24 小时不间断的网络连接，大学校园转向电子设备的新时代。

Paras. 2 - 6 How does the transformation influence the students' campus life? 这种转变如何影响大学生的校园生活?

Paras. 7 - 11 How does the transformation influence colleges and universities? 这种转变如何影响大学?

Para. 12 With the widespread application of computer technologies, we are going to produce a generation of problem-solvers and intelligent thinkers. 随着计算机技术的发展，我们将培养善于解决问题和善于思考的一代人。

2. 写作特点

本文在写作上使用了大量的因果关系的手法，并举出一系列的例子来证明其观点。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 campus /'kæmpəs/ *n.*

[C, U]the land and buildings of a university or college (大学或学院的)校园

—The campus of Harvard University is very beautiful. 哈佛大学的校园非常漂亮。

2 transform /træns'fɔːm/ *vt.*

completely change the appearance, form or character of sth. or sb. , esp. in a way that improves it 使改观;使变形;使转化

—It was an event that would transform my life. 那是能够彻底改变我一生的一件事。

【搭配】transform sth. (from sth.) (into sth.) 使……变(转化)为……

【派生】transformation *n.* (彻底的)变化，改观，转变，改革

3 fleet /fliːt/ *n.*

[C] a group of vehicles, planes, boats, or trains, esp. when they are owned by one organization or person 车队;机群;船队

—An enormously powerful fleet was concentrated at Pearl Harbor. 一支极其强大的舰队集结在珍珠港。

4 typical /'tɪpɪkl/ *a.*

like most things of the same type 典型的;有代表性的

—This is a typical example of Roman pottery. 这是一件典型的罗马陶器。

【反义】atypical

5 access /'ækses/ *n.*

[U] the right or opportunity to have or use sth. that will bring you benefits 享用权;享用机会

—You need a password to get access to the computer system. 使用这个计算机系统需要口令。

【搭配】access to sth. 对……有享用权

【派生】accessible *a.* 易得到的；易使用的

6 accessible /əkˈsesəbl/ *a.*

easy to obtain or use 易得到的；易使用的

—These documents are not accessible to the public. 公众无法看到这些文件。

【反义】inaccessible

7 response /rɪˈspɒns/ *n.*

(1) [C] sth. that is said or written as a reply 回答；答复

—She made no response. 她没作任何回答。

(2) [C, U] sth. that is done as a reaction to sth. that has happened or been said 反应；响应

—The news provoked an angry response. 这条消息引起了人们的愤怒。

【搭配】response to 对……的答复、回应

8 engineering /ˌendʒɪˈnɪərɪŋ/ *n.*

[U] the work involved in designing and building roads, bridges, machines, etc. 工程(设计)

—The bridge is a triumph of modern engineering. 这座桥是现代工程的一大成就。

9 dialect /ˈdaɪəˌlekt/ *n.*

[C, U] a form of a language which is spoken only in one area, with words or grammar that are slightly different from other forms of the same language 方言；地方话；土语

—Cockney is the colorful dialect spoken in the East End of London. 伦敦方言是在伦敦东区讲的颇有特色的地方语。

10 analyze /ˈænəˌlaɪz/ *vt.*

(*BrE* analyse) examine or think about sth. carefully, in order to understand it 分析；剖析

—The job involves gathering and analyzing data. 这项工作包括搜集和分析资料。

【派生】analysis *n.* 分析

11 script /skrɪpt/ *n.*

[C] the written words of a play, film, television program, speech, etc. (戏剧、电影、电视节目、演讲等的)剧本，手稿

—That line isn't in the original script. 原剧本中没有那句台词。

12 device /dɪˈvaɪs/ *n.*

(1) [C] a machine or tool that does a special job 设备；仪器；装置

—The device will be in production by the end of the year. 该装置将于年底投入生产。

(2) [C] a special way of doing sth. that makes it easier to do (使做某事更容易一些的)特殊方法，手段

—Sending advertising by email is very successful as a marketing device. 作为一种营销手段，用电子邮件发送广告是非常成功的。

【习语】leave sb. to their own devices 听任某人自行其是；对某人不加干涉

13 sophisticated /səˈfɪstɪˌkeɪtɪd/ *a.*

(1) having a lot of experience of life, and good judgment about socially important things such as art, fashion, etc. 见多识广的；老练的；有鉴赏能力的

—Mark is a smart and sophisticated young man. 马克是一个聪明老成的年轻人。

(2) complicated and advanced in design 复杂的；精密的；尖端的

—Medical techniques are becoming more sophisticated all the time. 医疗技术日益复杂精妙。

【反义】unsophisticated

14 undergraduate /ˌʌndəˈɡrædʒʊət/ n.

[C] a student who is studying for a first degree at a college or university (在读的)大学(本科)生

—He posed this question to the undergraduate students. 他向本科学生们提出了这个问题。

15 adopt /əˈdɒpt/ vt.

(1) decide to start using a particular idea, plan, or method 采用;采纳;采取

—The council is expected to adopt the new policy at its next meeting. 委员会有望在下次会议上正式通过这项新政策。

(2) take sb. else's child into your home and legally become its parent 收养;领养

—She was forced to have her baby adopted. 她被迫把婴儿给人收养。

【辨析】adapt v. 使适应;使适合

16 indispensable /ɪndɪˈspensəbl/ a.

difficult or impossible to exist or do sth. without 不可缺少的;必不可少的

—Cars have become an indispensable part of our lives. 汽车已成了我们生活中必不可少的一部分。

【搭配】indispensable (to sb./sth.)/(for sth./for doing sth.) 对……来说是不可缺少的

【同义】essential

【反义】dispensable

17 outline /ˈaʊtlaɪn/ n.

(1) [C, U] the main ideas or facts about sth., without the details 纲要;梗概;要点

—You should draw up a plan or outline for the essay. 你应该为文章草拟个计划或提纲。

(2) [C] a line around the edge of sth. which shows its shape 外形;轮廓

—At last we could see the dim outline of an island. 我们终于能看到一个小岛朦胧的轮廓了。

18 regulate /ˈregjʊˌleɪt/ vt.

(1) control an activity or process, esp. by rules 控制;管理

—The activities of credit companies are regulated by law. 信贷公司的业务受法律的制约。

(2) make a machine or your body work at a particular speed, temperature, etc. 调整;校准;调节

—This valve regulates the flow of water. 这个阀门调节水流。

19 bubble /ˈbʌbl/ n.

(1) [C] a structure that is round like a bubble 泡状物

—The children like to have bubbles in their bath. 孩子们喜欢浴盆里有肥皂泡。

(2) [C] a ball of air or gas in liquid (液体中的)气泡,泡沫

—When water boils, bubbles rise to the surface. 水开时,水面起了泡泡。

【习语】the bubble bursts (好事或好运)突然告吹,成为泡影;泡沫破灭

20 budget /ˈbʌdʒɪt/ n.

[C] the money that is available to an organization or person, or a plan of how it will be spent 预算

—The work was finished on time and within budget. 工作按时完成且未超出预算。

【搭配】within budget 在预算内 over budget 超出预算

21 estimate /ˈestɪˌmeɪt/ vt.

try to judge the value, size, speed, cost, etc. of sth., without calculating it exactly 估计;估算

—We estimated (that) it would cost about €5,000. 我们估计要花费大约5000欧元。

【派生】overestimate v. 高估 underestimate v. 低估

22 estimated /ˈestɪˌmeɪtɪd/ a.

(of value, size, speed, cost, etc.) calculated roughly 据估计的
—The estimated time of burial was placed in the early Tang Dynasty. 埋藏的时间估计在唐朝早期。

23 assignment /ə'saɪnmənt/ *n.*

(1) [C] a piece of work that a student is asked to do 作业
—You will need to complete three written assignments per semester. 你每学期要完成三个书面作业。

(2) [C, U] a piece of work that is given to sb. as part of their job 任务
—She is in Greece on an assignment for one of the Sunday newspapers. 她在希腊为一家星期日报执行一项任务。

24 highway /'haɪˌweɪ/ *n.*

[C] (*esp. AmE*) a wide main road that joins one town to another 公路
—Highway patrol officers closed the road. 公路巡警关闭了这条路。
【习语】highway robbery 拦路抢劫；漫天要价

25 inferior /ɪn'fɪəriə/ *a.*

not good, or not as good as sb. or sth. else 差的；次的
—Modern music is often considered inferior to that of the past. 现代音乐常被认为不如过去的。
【搭配】inferior to 比……差的
【反义】superior

26 inferiority /ɪnˌfɪəri'ɒrəti/ *n.*

[U] the fact that sb. or sth. is not as good, important, intelligent, etc. as sb. or sth. else 低人一等；下级；次等
—She accepted her inferiority to her rivals. 她接受了自己不如对手的现实。
【反义】superiority

27 complex /'kɒmpleks/ *n.*

[C] an emotional problem in which sb. is unnecessarily anxious about sth. or thinks too much about sth. 情结；夸大的情绪反应
—This company had been feeling a bit of a technology inferiority complex. 这个公司一直有一种技不如人的自卑感。
a. consisting of many different parts and often difficult to understand 复杂的；难以理解的
—The army is an extremely complex organism. 军队是一个极其复杂的组织。
【同义】complicated

28 compensate /'kɒmpənˌseɪt/ *v.*

(1) change or remove the bad result of sth. 补偿；弥补
—Nothing can compensate for the loss of a loved one. 失去心爱的人是无法补偿的。
(2) pay sb. money because they have suffered an injury or loss 赔偿
—The firm must compensate you for your traveling costs. 这家公司必须偿付给你差旅费。
【派生】compensation *n.* 补偿(或赔偿)物；(尤指)赔偿金；补偿金；赔偿

29 lease /liːs/ *vt.*

use a building, car, etc. under a lease 租用；租借
—They leased the land from a local farmer. 他们从当地一位农场主手中租了这块土地。
【同义】rent

n. [C] a legal agreement which allows you to use a building, car, etc. for a period of time, in return for rent (房子、汽车等的)租约,租契

—Under the terms of the lease, you have to pay maintenance charges. 按租约的条款,你得支付维修费。

30 focus /ˈfəʊkəs/ *n.*

[sing.] the thing, person, situation, etc. that people pay special attention to 焦点;重点

—His comments provided a focus for debate. 他的评论提供了辩论的重点。

v. give special attention to one particular person or thing, or make people do this (把……)集中(于)

—The discussion focused on seven main problems. 讨论集中在七个主要问题上。

31 competitive /kəmˈpetətɪv/ *a.*

(1) relating to competition 竞争的;竞争性的

—Graduates have to fight for jobs in a highly competitive market. 毕业生不得不在竞争激烈的市场上奋力争取找到工作。

(2) determined or trying very hard to be more successful than other people or businesses 竞争性强的;有竞争力的

—You have to be highly competitive to do well in sport these days. 如今你必须有强烈的竞争意识才能在体育运动中取得好成绩。

【派生】competition *n.* 竞争;比赛 competitor *n.* 竞争者;对手

【反义】uncompetitive

32 peer /pɪə/ *n.*

[C, usu. pl.] sb. who is the same age as you, or who has the same type of job, social class, etc. 同龄人;社会地位相同的人

—Children are worried about failing in front of their peers. 儿童都怕在同伴面前失败。

33 pitch /pɪtʃ/ *n.*

(1) [sing., U] the level or degree of activity or of sb.'s emotions (活动或情感的)程度,强度,高度

—He brought the machine to a high pitch of improvement. 他使该机器有了一个很大程度的改进。

(2) [C] (*AmE* field) a marked out area of ground on which a sport is played 场地

—The rugby tour was a disaster both on and off the pitch. 这次橄榄球巡回赛在场上、场下都彻底失败。

34 portable /ˈpɔːtəbl/ *a.*

able to be carried or moved easily 手提式的;便携式的;轻便的

—I have a portable typewriter. 我有一个便携式打字机。

【派生】portability *n.* 轻便;可携带性

35 mode /məʊd/ *n.*

(1) [C] a particular way in which a machine or piece of equipment can operate (机器、设备的)运行方式,状态,模式

—Switch the camera into the automatic mode. 将照相机调到自动拍摄模式。

(2) (*fml.*) a particular way or style of behaving, living, or doing sth. 方式;方法;做法

—My letter will convey some idea of my mode of life. 我的信将使你了解到一些我的生活方式。

36 loan /ləʊn/ *vt.*

(1) (*also* ~ out) (*BrE*) lend sth. valuable to sb. 把(贵重物品)出借给(某人)

—He loaned the museum his entire collection. 他把自己的全部收藏品都借给了博物馆。

(2) (*AmE*) lend sb. sth., esp. money 借给(尤指钱)

—The bank is happy to loan money to small businesses. 银行乐于贷款给小型企业。

【搭配】loan sth. (to sb.) / loan (sb.) sth. 借出(尤指钱)

37 loaner /ˈləʊnə/ *n.*

[C] 借用物

—I first of all get a loaner laptop. 我首先借来一台笔记本电脑。

38 meantime /ˈmiːntaɪm/ *ad.*

(*also* in the ~) in the period of time between now and a future event, or between two events in the past 在此期间;与此同时

—My first novel was rejected by six publishers. In the meantime I had written a play. 我的第一部小说遭到六家出版商的拒绝。其间我又完成了一部戏剧。

【同义】meanwhile

39 amazing /əˈmeɪzɪŋ/ *a.*

very good, esp. in an unexpected way 惊人的;了不起的

—It's amazing how quickly people adapt. 人适应环境的速度之快真是惊人。

【同义】astonishing

40 solve /sɒlv/ *vt.*

find or provide a way of dealing with a problem 解决(问题)

—Attempts are being made to solve the problem of waste disposal. 正在想办法解决废物处理的问题。

【派生】solution *n.* 解决办法;处理手段

41 solver /ˈsɒlvə/ *n.*

[C] a person who finds an answer to a problem or a difficult situation 解决问题的人

—She's a good problem solver. 她是解决问题的高手。

42 intelligent /ɪnˈtelɪdʒ(ə)nt/ *a.*

good at thinking clearly and quickly, at understanding difficult ideas and subjects, and at gaining and using knowledge 有智慧的;悟性高的;聪明的

—She was once described as the most intelligent woman in America. 她曾经被描述为美国最聪明的女士。

【反义】unintelligent

(二)短语

1 less than interesting/honest/helpful, etc.

not at all interesting, honest, helpful, etc. 一点也没有意思/一点也不诚实/一点也没有帮助等

—The reader can accelerate his pace when the material is easy or less than interesting. 当阅读材料易懂或者不太有趣时,读者可以加快阅读速度。

2 add to sth.

make a feeling or quality stronger and more noticeable 增加;增添

—Do you have anything to add to the list? 你还有什么想要添加到列表里面吗?

3 visit with sb.

(*AmE*) talk socially with sb. 叙谈;闲谈

—Come and visit with me some time. 找个时间来跟我聊聊吧。

4 take the lead

(1) do sth. as an example for others to follow 树立榜样;带头

—Responsible cadres at various levels must take the lead and study well. 各级负责干部要带头学好。

(2) start winning a race or competition (赛跑或竞赛中)开始领先

—She took the lead in the second lap. 她在第二圈时领先。

5 account for

(1) form, use, or produce a particular amount or part of sth. (在数量或比例上)占,占据

—The Japanese market accounts for 35% of the company's revenue. 日本市场占该公司收入的35%。

(2) be the reason why sth. exists or happens 是……的原因;引起;导致

—The poor weather may have accounted for the small crowd. 天气不好可能是人来得少的原因。

(3) give a satisfactory explanation of why sth. has happened or why you did sth. 解释;说明

—How do you account for the show's success? 你认为这次演出为何成功?

6 fire off

(1) quickly send a message or give instructions 匆忙发出(信息或指示)

—She spent an hour firing off emails to all concerned. 她花了一个小时向有关各方发电邮。

(2) shoot with a gun or other weapon 开(枪);开(炮)

—They fired off a volley of shots. 他们举枪齐射。

7 keep up with

(1) manage to do as much or as well as other people 跟上;保持同步

—I can't keep up with all the changes. 我并非所有的变化都能跟得上。

(2) write to, telephone, or meet a friend regularly, so that you do not forget each other 和(朋友)保持联系

—How many of your old school friends do you keep up with? 你与多少老同学保持着联系?

(3) continue to learn about sth. 不断获知(某事的情况)

—She likes to keep up with the latest fashions. 她喜欢赶时尚。

8 at a disadvantage

less likely to succeed than other people or things 处于不利地位的

—I was at a disadvantage compared to the younger members of the team. 与队里较年轻的队员相比,我处于不利地位。

9 stand out

(1) be much better than other similar people or things 出色

—Four points stand out as being more important than the rest. 有四点比其余各点更为重要。

(2) be very easy to see or notice 显眼;突出

—She's the sort of person who stands out in a crowd. 她是那种在人群中很显眼的人。

10 set up

start a company, organization, committee, etc. 建立;设立;创立

—A fund will be set up for the dead men's families. 将为死者家属设立一项基金。

11 in large part

mostly, or in most places 多半;在很大程度上;在大多数地方

—Success was due in large part to good teamwork. 成功在很大程度上是由于良好的团队合作。



三、课文注释

1 The college campus, long a place of scholarship and frontiers of new technology, is being transformed into a new age of electronics by a fleet of laptops, smartphones and connectivity 24 hours a day. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】For a long time, the college campus has been a place to provide education and produce most advanced new technology. But it is now being completely changed into an electronic-age hot spot by the wide use of laptops, smartphones, and access to the Internet 24 hours a day.

【解　析】单词 fleet 用了比喻的修辞手法，a fleet of laptops, smartphones and connectivity 24 hours a day 意思是手提电脑和智能手机的大量出现和 24 小时不间断的网络连接。

2 On a typical modern-day campus, where every building and most outdoor common areas offer wireless Internet access, one student takes her laptop everywhere. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】On a typical campus nowadays, where wireless Internet access is available in all buildings and most outdoor public areas, a student can use her laptop at any place.

【解　析】本句中使用了由 where 引导的非限制性定语从句，where 可以换成 and there。

3 In class, she takes notes with it, sometimes instant-messaging or emailing friends if the professor is less than interesting. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】She takes notes with her laptop in class, and sometimes sends instant messages or emails to friends if the professor's class or lecture is not interesting.

【解　析】less than interesting/honest/helpful, etc. : not at all interesting/honest/helpful, etc. 一点也没有意思/一点也不诚实/一点也没有帮助等。

4 She is tied to her smartphone, which she even uses to text a friend who lives one floor above her, and which supplies music for walks between classes. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】She is so attracted to her smartphone that she even uses it to send messages to a friend who lives just upstairs. She also uses it to listen to music when she walks from one class to another.

【解　析】本句中 smartphone 为先行词，后来是由 and 连接，which 引导的两个并列非限制性定语从句。

5 Welcome to college life in the 21st century, where students on campus are electronically linked to each other, to professors and to their classwork 24/7 in an ever-flowing river of information and communication. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】Welcome to college life in the 21st century. On campus students are all the time—24 hours a day, 7 days a week—connected with each other, with their professors and with their classwork by electronic devices in a forever flowing river of information and communication.

【解　析】前缀 ever-可以接现在分词或者形容词构成形容词，在复合词中的意思是"恒定的、不变的、经常的、固定的、常设的"。

6 "I always feel like I have a means of communication—in class and out of class," says one engineering major. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】"I always have the feeling that I have a way to communicate with others, whether in class or out of class," says a student majoring in engineering.

【解　析】feel like 后面可以接 that 引导的从句(that 可以省略)，意思与 feel as if 相同，表示"感觉好像……"。

7 Many are using smartphones, not only to create their own dialects when texting, but also to do more serious work, such as practicing foreign languages and analyzing scripts from their theatre classes. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】Many students are using smartphones to send text messages by using their own style of language. They also use smartphones to do more serious work, for example, to practice foreign languages and to analyze scripts from their theatre classes.

【解　析】dialect 意为"方言;地方话;土语",在该句子中是指年轻人之前发短信所使用的语言,例如"u"(you), "btw" (by the way), "cool" (very attractive)。

8 "We realized there might be some potential for a device that could get attention and encourage sophisticated thinking," says one leading university director. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】According to a director from a leading university, smartphones have the potential to get students' attention and promote deep and high-level thinking.

【解　析】动词 realize 后面接的为省略 that 的宾语从句,宾语从句中又包含一个由 that 引导的定语从句。

9 For most undergraduates, non-stop Internet connectivity is the fuel of college life. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】For most undergraduate students, continuous access to the Internet is what supports college life.

【解　析】本句中的 fuel 使用的是比喻的修辞手法,这里比喻持续不断的网络连接。

10 And as more people around the world adopt these instruments, they are becoming indispensable. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】All of these instruments—laptops, smartphones, and wireless Internet access—are becoming essential as more people around the world use them.

【解　析】连词 as 意为"随着",as 做连词时还有"因为;正如"的意思。

11 On one campus, students use Wi-Fi to fire off instant messages, review their homework assignments, and check their bank balances. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】On one campus, students use Wi-Fi to send instant messages, review their homework, and check the amount of money they have in their bank accounts.

【解　析】fire off 意为"匆忙发出(信息或指示)";bank account 意为"账户余额;银行存款余额"。

12 Just nine miles down the highway, another university had been feeling a bit of a technology inferiority complex. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】Just nine miles down the main road, another university had been feeling inferior and anxious because they thought their technology was not as good as that of other universities.

【解　析】inferiority 是 inferior 的名词形式,complex 在这里的意思为"情结;夸大的情绪反应",inferiority complex 意为"自卑情结;自卑感"。

13 To compensate, it spent tens of thousands of dollars to give every one of its incoming freshmen a free Apple iPad. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】To change their inferior status, the university spent tens of thousands of dollars to give each new first-year student a free Apple iPad.

【解　析】to do 放在句首表示"为了",引导目的状语,也可以放置在句末,与 in order to do 同义。

14 Some say the focus on technology prepares students for a wired world. (Para. 9)

【Meaning】Some people say if the university gives special attention to technology, it gets students ready

for a world connected by the Internet.

【解　　析】本句中含有宾语从句 the focus on technology prepares students for a wired world，宾语从句中 the focus on technology 作主语，prepares 作谓语。

15 The race to attract students with the most modern networks and the hottest systems has reached fever pitch. (Para. 10)

【Meaning】Universities compete with each other to attract students by providing the most modern networks and the most popular systems, and the competition has become extremely intense.

【解　　析】fever pitch 意为"极度兴奋(状态)；狂热(状态)"。

16 For those who prefer to travel laptop-free, colleges supply several computer labs. (Para. 11)

【Meaning】For those students who do not like to take a laptop with them, colleges supply several computer labs for them.

【解　　析】-free 是后缀，意思是"无……的"，例如 fat-free food，不含脂肪的食物。

17 And for students who study late into the night, many have set up 24-hour repair shops where students can get their laptops fixed by the next day and receive a loaner in the meantime. (Para. 11)

【Meaning】And for those students who study till very late at night, many colleges have established 24-hour shops where students can have their laptops repaired by the next day; at the same time, they can borrow a laptop from the repair shops while their own laptops are under repair.

【解　　析】本句中含有一个由 where 引导的定语从句，先行词是 repair shops。

四、课文译文

互联网时代的大学生活

1. 长久以来，大学校园都是学术之地，新技术的前沿。而现在，随着笔记本电脑和智能手机的普遍使用，以及每天 24 小时持续不断的网络连接，大学校园正迈入电子设备的新时代。

2. 在典型的现代校园里，每一栋建筑和大部分的户外公共区域都提供无线互联网接入，学生可以把笔记本电脑带到任何地方。在课堂上，她用笔记本电脑做笔记，有时如果教授的课没有意思的话，她就会给朋友发送即时信息或者电子邮件。在宿舍，她会给近在咫尺的室友发即时信息。她离不开智能手机，她甚至给住在楼上的朋友发信息；在从上一堂课到下一堂课的路上，她也要用智能手机听音乐。

3. 欢迎体验 21 世纪的大学生活：在这里，学生之间，学生和教授之间以及学生与课堂作业之间，通过一天 24 小时一周 7 天源源不断的信息流建立了一种电子化的联系。很多学校提供覆盖整个校园的无线网络连接，大学作为一个整体也就成为世界上互联网应用最普及的地方。

4. 很多学生都说他们非常看重互联网带来的便利，如轻触指尖就能获得网上的无限信息，能够在凌晨 2 点给教授发邮件，以及在第二天清早收到教授的回复。一个工程专业的学生说："我常常觉得自己有一种交流的手段——无论是课上还是课下。"

5. 许多学生都使用智能手机。他们不仅使用自创语体发短信，而且还做很多正经工作，比如练习外语、分析戏剧课上的戏剧脚本。在一所大学里，一堂有关美国广播历史的课上，学生用智能手机录下他们自己的广播节目。课程老师说："这一做法提高了学生对这门课的兴奋感。"学校也鼓励教授们把授课内容录制下来并发布到网上。一位一流大学的主管说："我们意识到，智能手机能够吸引学生的注意力并且鼓励他们更加深入地思考，这样的工具也许大有潜力。"

6. 对于大多数本科生来说，与互联网永不间断的联系是大学生活的动力。这些电子设备不仅仅是一种玩具，还是储存和管理几乎所有信息的强大工具。随着世界上越来越多的人使用这些工具，它们

正成为生活中不可或缺的一部分。所以,学生应当使用互联网所带来的奇迹来做功课、复习课程提纲、参加课堂讨论并与朋友在网上社交。但是做这些事的同时,他们必须记得控制和平衡好时间。上网时间过长就意味着在现实生活中学习、锻炼或者与朋友相处的时间太少。学生们不应让电脑屏幕上的互联网世界将他们与现实世界分离开来。

7. 大学在20世纪90年代中期迎来互联网,那时许多学校开始给学生宿舍安装高速网线。在过去的几年里,大学率先将校园变成无线网络全覆盖的世界。事实上,美国最近一项研究发现,对信息技术的资金投入占大学预算的5%到8%,这比20世纪80年代中期约2%到3%的投入有所上涨。

8. 在一所校园里,学生用无线网络发送即时信息、复习作业并且查看银行账户余额。而沿公路九英里而下的一所大学则一直有一种技不如人就低人一等的情结。为弥补这一劣势,该校花费数万美元给即将入学的新生每人免费赠送一台苹果 iPad 平板电脑。

9. 有些大学甚至要求所有的学生拥有或者租用笔记本电脑。一些人说对科技的重视使得学生做好准备面对网络世界。一位大学校长说:"你必须与世界保持同步。学生期望通过高速宽带获取信息。如果你不能提供,就会处于竞争劣势。"

10. 另一些大学则正努力从同行中脱颖而出。大学之间的生源竞争已经达到了白热化的程度,各个学校纷纷提供最现代的网络和最热门的网络系统。一些商科专业的学生可以领取免费的便携式电脑。在永久在线模式下,他们可以随时随地得到所需的信息。一所大学甚至给一年级新生发放智能手机以丰富其大学经历,为他们在一个快速变化的世界中获得成功做准备。

11. 大学还为那些不喜欢携带手提电脑的学生配备了许多机房,而且为那些熬夜学习到深夜的学生设立了24小时电脑维修店,第二天电脑就可以修好,并且在电脑维修期间,学生可以使用维修店的代用电脑。

12. 在过去的10年里,全世界的大学都一直在更新他们的电脑系统,很大程度上是为他们的学生提供最先进的免费系统。这种随时随地的网络连接已经使教育大受裨益。随着计算机技术的广泛使用,我们将培养出善于解决问题善于思考的一代人,这对于世界的未来是不可或缺的。

五、练习答案及详解

Pre-reading activities

1 Look at the pictures showing different ways of teaching and learning. Work in groups and discuss the following questions.

1. Traditional classroom:
   - Advantages: better cultivation of students' thinking ability under the guidance of the teacher; a better teaching and learning atmosphere; face-to-face communication between the teacher and students; more systematic knowledge instruction.
   - Disadvantages: teacher-dominated and teaching-dominated; the reduction of the students' role; writing on blackboard reducing efficiency; little interaction either between the teacher and students or among students.

   Multimedia learning:
   - Advantages: a variety of abundant and accessible teaching materials; better involvement in a wide range of classroom learning; more vivid and direct knowledge presentation.
   - Disadvantages: the reduction of the teacher's role; too much time spent on the preparation of ppt and less time spent on researches of courses; too many distractions due to pictures and videos in

multimedia classrooms.

Studying online:

- Advantages: accessible and abundant learning materials; learners being able to take their initiatives and arrange their learning process according to their own schedules.
- Disadvantages: no direct and face-to-face communication between the teacher and students; the possibility for students to copy answers just from the Internet and get distracted by other online information; the possibility of computer failure because of electrical blackout.

2. • Personally, I prefer the multimedia learning. A multimedia classroom is more intriguing and attractive, for the teaching materials are vividly presented by colorful pictures, slides and videos.
   • As for me, I prefer the traditional classroom. Because the teacher gives a well-planned and systematic lecture and I can learn a lot without any distraction.
3. • Yes, in an era of information, the Internet is a must for teaching and learning. The Internet provides us with convenient and easy access to various information, such as the frontier research of a certain subject and the latest development of teaching and learning. The Internet facilitates and promotes students learning in terms of offering online courses and flexible learning models. As for teachers, the Internet comes in handy not only when they are preparing for classes but also when doing researches.
   • No, teaching and learning can be carried out without the Internet as it had been done long before the time of the Internet. Undoubtedly, the Internet makes it much easier and more efficient for teachers and students to teach and to learn. However, I still believe it is dispensable, as long as teachers and students make the best of their abilities and the accessible materials.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

1 Answer the following questions.

1. A fleet of laptops, smartphones and Internet connectivity 24 hours a day.
2. Wireless Internet access anywhere and anytime on campus.
3. Because they believe smartphones could draw students' attention and encourage their sophisticated thinking.
4. Because too much time online means too little time in real-life studying or exercising or visiting with friends. And there is a possibility that we may be cut off from the real world.
5. They wired students' dorms with high-speed connections and provided Wi-Fi networks.
6. Because the technology the university offered was not as advanced as that of other universities, it gave free Apple iPads to compensate for its inferiority.
7. If a university can't keep up with the rest of the world, or if it fails to provide the expected high-bandwidth information, it will be at a competitive disadvantage.
8. To a great degree, they want to provide students with the most advanced free system.

Critical thinking

2 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. • Yes, the Internet is indispensable on campus nowadays. 24-hours non-stop Wi-Fi network

guarantees a well-operated university. Teachers and students rely on the Internet for information to do research and to learn, to communicate with friends and families.

- No, it is not necessary for universities to do so because of potential disadvantages. Some students may develop Internet addiction and spend too much time surfing online, chatting with so-called friends they never meet in real life, or visiting unhealthy websites. In this sense, they may get themselves in danger.

2. • To be honest, I find this idea rather short-sighted and one-sided. Because learning is by no means an activity of only obtaining knowledge. In fact, it aims to develop learners' all-around abilities, such as wide vision, sound personality, social skills, strong principles and the like. And all of these qualities can never be achieved by only learning the online courses at home.
   • I really like the idea, because online courses are very convenient for learners to schedule their time and obtain knowledge at home. In this sense, learning would become more flexible and college education could become available to many more people.
3. • With smartphones and the Internet becoming increasingly popular around the world, people are getting more and more addicted to them, forgetting how to communicate with people face to face or how to write. It is often the case that even friends come to meet each other or family members sit around, instead of talking, they fix their eyes on their smartphones. In this way, people may get estranged and distant.
   • The Internet and smartphones have already been an essential part in our life and they make the communication unprecedentedly convenient. No matter where you are, what time it is, with a smartphone in your hand and Internet access, we can send and get messages at our will without too much cost.
4. • Without the Internet and smartphones, we can do such activities as going to movies with our friends, having a family gathering, visiting an art museum, going hiking, reading a book, or playing some games with kids and so on. We will truly benefit from the abovementioned activities both physically and mentally.
   • I think it will be a disaster if we shut down all our computers and smartphones on which the society is highly dependent. Many societal systems such as the traffic system, the bank system and the communication system will be paralyzed. And my personal life will be changed to a great extent, for I depend on them to do many things, ranging from study to entertainment, from shopping to communication.

Language focus

Words in use

3 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. competitive

   【译文】为了使公司具有市场竞争力,我们必须更加具有创新性和生产力。
2. transform

   【译文】人类逐渐意识到随意改造自然是人类犯过的最大错误。
3. typical

【译文】要总结一个典型的学生在其课余时间的活动并不容易，因为每个学生都有不同的兴趣爱好。

4. response

【译文】一个月前我曾写信给这家商店，投诉其恶劣的服务，但是至今我还未收到任何回复。

5. adopted

【译文】你提出的一些建议已经被采用了，但是余下的建议因为不可行而被拒绝了。

6. focused

【译文】突然之间，他就对工程学失去了兴趣，而专注于学习外语了。

7. compensate

【译文】如果一家公司削减了员工的健康福利，那么就应该提高工资以兹补偿。

8. analyze

【译文】虽然我学习很刻苦，但是仍然没有通过考试。我应该分析一下考试失利的原因。

9. regulate

【译文】做瑜伽的时候，试着去调整你的呼吸。不要呼吸过快，并且要保证仅仅用鼻子呼吸。

10. estimate

【译文】很难估算有多少人在这次地震中受伤。

Word building

4 Add -*ry*, -*ive*, or -*ize* to or remove them from the following words to form new words.

Words learned	New words formed
-*ry*	
scene	scenery
machine	machinery
-*ive*	
detective	detect
compare	comparative
explode	explosive
mass	massive
represent	representative
-*ize*	
modern	modernize
character	characterize
special	specialize
computer	computerize
summary	summarize

5 Fill in the blanks with the newly-formed words in Activity 4. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. scenery

   【译文】新西兰以其干净的海滩、友好的国民和瑰丽的风光而著称。

2. machinery

   【译文】董事会议之后，公司决定淘汰掉工厂里的老旧机械设备。

3. summarize

   【译文】做好一场有效演讲的关键是清楚地表达你的观点，并且在演讲的最后总结一下各个要点。

4. specializes

   【译文】我最喜欢的那家店制作手工巧克力，而且允许顾客品尝样品。

5. massive

   【译文】当独处的时候，他常常大量饮酒把自己灌醉，这确实是件令人悲伤的事。

6. detect

   【译文】令我们高兴的是，这个新的烟雾报警系统可以有效地探测到非常微弱的烟雾信号。

7. representative(s)

   【译文】我们已经派出了工会代表去调查这个事件，看看谁应当负责。

8. characterize

   【译文】詹姆斯以熟练地应用黑白两色而著称；而他早期的绘画则以色彩明艳为特色。

9. comparative

   【译文】我对这两个理论做了一个对比性的分析以展现两者之间的异同。

10. modernize

    【译文】这项工程是迈向全国性健康服务的重要一步，当局正努力将健身设备进行现代化的升级。

11. explosive

    【译文】近年来，由于突飞猛进的发展，这个小城市的面貌焕然一新。

12. computerized

    【译文】数字化的、计算机化的图书馆系统将图书馆里所有的文字资料都储存在电脑上。

Banked cloze

6 Fill in the blanks by selecting suitable words from the word bank. You may not use any of the words more than once.

1. J

   【解析】根据上下文语境，此处缺少一个形容词，根据意义，应当为“复杂”之意。

2. H

   【解析】此处所缺词汇要能够与介词 to 搭配，而且应为名词，再根据前后文语境，可知 H 合适。

3. L

   【解析】此空缺少一个形容词，而且该形容词应当含有被动的含义，加之上下文含义，可知 L 正确。

4. N

   【解析】此空应当填一个动词，再根据下文的 online 一词可知，该动词应当表达“在网上发帖，张贴”之意。

5. F

   【解析】该句意在说明越来越多的大学开设某种层次的网络课程。由 at least 可知，该课程应为学校

里最低层次的，即“本科”。

6. I

【解析】此空缺少一个动词，而且该动词必须能和 to do 形式搭配。据语境推测，答案应为 L。

7. E

【解析】此处应选择一个名词，表达“连通”之意。

8. A

【解析】此空缺少一个表达“要求”之意的动词原形，只有 A 符合题意。

9. C

【解析】根据前文 regard 可知，此处缺少一个形容词去形容 Internet，再加上文意，推测答案应为 C。

10. O

【解析】由 can 可知，此处应选择一个动词原形，并且还要能与下文 into 搭配，表达“转化”之意。

Expressions in use

7 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. fired off

【译文】一发现他们卖给我一双不匹配的鞋子，我立刻给商场经理写了一封投诉信。

2. keep up with

【译文】人们浏览网页、读报、看电视，以期跟上世界发展变化的脚步。

3. set up

【译文】这所大学已经成立了另外一间大型实验室供学生去设计更加复杂的机器人。

4. account for

【译文】我们最好的学生中有两个学生考试不及格，我发现很难解释这件事。

5. stand out

【译文】在当前经济形势下，失业率居高不下，工作竞争激烈，你的简历理所当然地需要脱颖而出。

6. add to

【译文】自从上周参加一项电视访谈节目后，她就走红了。新电影无疑也会使她名声日盛。

7. take the lead

【译文】发达国家应当在减排温室气体上担起领头作用，并为发展中国家的减排提供支持。

8. at a disadvantage

【译文】如果你的英语口语不是很好的话，那么你在找工作的时候则可能会处于劣势。

9. in large part

【译文】他们的成功很大程度上归功于他们周密的计划。

10. visit with

【译文】这些天他一直都忙于工作，以至于他几乎没有时间去拜访他的朋友们。

Structure analysis and writing

Structure analysis

因果模式是组句谋篇的一种重要途径。原因就是导致某事发生的缘由；结果则是此缘由的结果。以因果模式组篇的段落分析某一事件或情况的原因或者结果。写这样的段落，一般需要先给出原因，然后解释结果，或者正好相反。换句话说，此种段落一般会解释为什么某种情况或者事件会发生，以及

他们可能会导致的结果。有时候,一些段落也只分析原因,或者结果。

这样的段落中一般都会用到一些常用表达来说明因果关系,如"因为""所以""既然""结果是""多亏了""因此"等。

8 Read Paragraph 9 of Text A and analyze the pattern of cause and effect.

Effect:

Some universities even require that all students own or lease a laptop.

Causes:

1. Some say the focus on technology prepares students for a wired world.
2. "You have to keep up with the rest of the world. Students expect high-bandwidth information, and if you can't deliver it, you're at a competitive disadvantage," states a university president.

Structured writing

9 Write a paragraph on one of the following topics. One topic has an outline that you can follow.

Smoking is a very widespread phenomenon around the world and it is not uncommon to see teenagers smoking in China today. There are some possible causes as follows. For one thing, some teenagers smoke because of peer pressure. A teenager often feels left out if he does not swim with the stream when his friends all smoke. Therefore, in order to fit in with the smoking friends, he will take a puff. For another thing, adults who smoke set a rather bad example for teenagers around. Some teenagers kind of think it is very cool to smoke, so they imitate the smoking adults to play cool and make themselves different from other teenagers. In conclusion, teenager smoking can be ascribed to peer pressure and their intention to imitate adults.

Translation

10 Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.

伦敦地铁是英国的一个快速交通运输系统,为大伦敦的大部分地区提供服务。地铁系统因其典型的地下隧道形状,又被称为地下管道。伦敦的地铁始建于19世纪中期,是世界上第一个地铁系统,它的第一段地铁于1863年运营。自此之后,伦敦地铁系统不断延伸扩大,发展成一个拥有12条线路、275个车站、铁轨总长超过250英里的地铁杰作,其中有45%在地下运行。以路线总公里数而言,它是世界第四大地铁系统,也是车站数量最多的地铁系统之一。作为一个能够走遍伦敦的经济便捷的途径,伦敦地铁不仅是每天数以百万的通勤者上下班也是节假日游客们游历伦敦的首选交通方式。它已经成为伦敦的一个国际性标志。2013年,伦敦举办了各种各样的活动,庆祝地铁运营150周年这一里程碑。

11 Translate the following paragraph into English.

China's space industry was launched in the year of 1956. Since then, miracles have been creating one after another. In 1970, China successfully launched its first man-made earth satellite, making China the fifth country to independently develop and launch man-made satellite in the world. In 1992, China began its manned spaceflight program. And in 2003, China eventually launched a manned spaceflight named *Shenzhou-5* with success, which ranked China the third country to launch manned spaceflight. In 2007, the first lunar-orbiting man-made satellite, *Chang'e-1*, was sent to space. In 2013, the fifth manned spaceflight named *Shenzhou-10*, was launched successfully, which laid the foundation for the development of Chinese Space Station.

Section B

Too much of a good thing—A real addiction



一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文主要描述了网瘾导致的严重后果。文章开篇先介绍了网络给人们日常生活所带来的各种积极变化,随后提出网络是一把双刃剑,给人们带来各种便利的同时,也产生了一个严重的社会问题——网瘾。然后通过一些间接的事例来说明网瘾覆盖了各色人群,其中就包括大学生,并分析了大学生产生网瘾的原因。接着作者从人体大脑的一种化学物质内啡肽的产生深入分析了产生网瘾的原因。最后,作者提出一个建议:人们在充分利用网络的各种优势的同时,要做到适度,不能脱离现实生活,要时刻警惕网瘾的产生,不要做新科技的奴隶,而要做它们的主人。

(二)背景知识

1. 内啡肽

内啡肽(endorphin)亦称安多芬或脑内啡,是一种内成性(脑下垂体分泌)的类吗啡生物化学合成物激素。它是由脑下垂体和脊椎动物的丘脑下部所分泌的氨基化合物(肽)。它能与吗啡受体结合,产生跟吗啡、鸦片剂一样的止痛效果和欣快感。

2. 拉斯维加斯

拉斯维加斯(Las Vegas)位于美国内华达州东南部,是州内最大的城市,也是一座享有极高国际声誉的城市,以其夜总会和赌场著称,它位居世界四大赌城之首,是一座以赌博业为中心的旅游、购物、度假的世界知名度假城市,被誉为"世界娱乐之都"和"结婚之都"。其气候因位于内华达州的沙漠边缘,所以全年高温。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Para. 1 The advantage of the Internet. 网络的优点。

Paras. 2–5 While the Internet brings us much convenience to our daily life, it has given rise to a new kind of social epidemic: Internet addiction. And some indirect examples are given to prove it, the example of college students and the reasons included. 网络给我们日常生活带来各种便利的同时,也产生了一个严重的社会问题——网瘾。作者给出一些间接的事例予以佐证,其中包括大学生的例子及其网瘾产生的原因。

Paras. 6–7 It depicts the relationship between the release of endorphins and Internet addiction. 阐述了人体大脑中内啡肽的产生与网瘾之间的关系。

Para. 8 The writer offers a suggestion: moderation is your best defense against Internet addiction and watch your time online. 最后作者给出建议:注意上网时间,适度上网是抵制网瘾的最好办法。

2. 写作特点

本文总体的写作特点是对比和比较,通过对比和比较来证明自己观点的正确性以及网瘾的危害

性,从而更加引起读者的注意,起到警醒读者的作用。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 addict /ˈædɪkt/ *n.*

(1) [C] sb. who is very interested in sth. and spends a lot of time doing it 对……着迷的人

—Tom is a real book addict. He spends all his spare time reading all kinds of books. 汤姆是个真正的书迷。他把所有的闲暇时间都花在看各类书籍上。

(2) [C] sb. who is unable to stop taking drugs 吸毒上瘾的人

—He is only 24 years old and a drug addict. 他只有24岁,却是个瘾君子。

2 addiction /əˈdɪkʃn/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] a strong desire to do or have sth. regularly 入迷;嗜好

—He needed money to feed his addiction to gambling. 他需要钱来满足他的赌瘾。

(2) [C, U] the need to take a harmful drug regularly, without being able to stop (毒)瘾

—The topic of addiction remains something of a taboo. 毒瘾仍然是个有些忌讳的话题。

3 positive /ˈpɒzətɪv/ *a.*

(1) good or useful 积极的

—Remember, keep a positive attitude and good things will happen. 记住,保持积极乐观的态度,好事情自然会发生。

(2) (*never before noun*) completely certain 肯定的;确定的

—I'm positive of earning a lot of money from this deal. 我确信能从这笔交易中赚一大笔钱。

【搭配】be positive of/about sth. 对某事确定或有把握

【反义】negative

4 enable /ɪnˈeɪbl/ *vt.*

make it possible for sb. to do sth., or for sth. to happen 使可能;使发生

—The new test should enable doctors to detect the disease early. 新的检测手段应该能够使医生们尽早查出这种疾病。

【搭配】enable sb. to do sth. 使某人能做某事

【词缀】动词前缀 en-意为"使,使成为"。

5 media /ˈmiːdiə/ *n.*

(the ~) all organizations, such as television, radio, and newspapers, that provide news and information for the public, or the people who do this work 新闻媒体;传媒;大众传播媒介(总称)

—Those statements have never been reported in the Western media. 那些言论似乎从来没有被西方媒体报道过。

6 outlet /ˈaʊtˌlet/ *n.*

(1) [C] a television, radio, or publishing company 电视台;电台;出版公司

—A media outlet is anything that produces and distributes media, such as a television station, television network, magazine, etc. 媒体渠道是指任何产生及传播媒介的事物,比如电视台、电视网、杂志等。

(2) [C] a way of expressing or getting rid of strong feelings (强烈感情的)发泄途径,发泄方法

—His father had found an outlet for his ambition in his work. 他的父亲在工作中找到了施展抱负的机会。

7 alternative /ɔːlˈtɜːnətɪv/ *a.*

(1) (*only before noun*) not traditional 非传统的；另类的

—The electricity company is criticized for not developing alternative energy sources. 这家电力公司因未开发非传统能源而受到批评。

(2) (*only before noun*) different from sth. else and able to be used instead of it 供替代的；供选择的

—Your plan is not workable; we must come up with an alternative method. 你的计划行不通，我们必须找其他的方法。

n. [C] sth. that you can choose instead of sth. else 供替代的选择；供选择的东西

—It seems clear that he has no alternative. 这一点似乎很清楚了，他没有其他选择。

8 source /sɔːs/ *n.*

[C] a thing, a place, activity, etc. that you get sth. from 来源；出处

—We're interested in the source of these fictitious rumors. 我们对这些子虚乌有的谣言从何而来很感兴趣。

9 practically /ˈpræktɪkli/ *ad.*

(1) (*esp. spoken*) almost 差不多；几乎

—She's practically always late for school. 她上学几乎总是迟到。

(2) in a way that is useful, sensible, or practical 实用地；讲究实际地；实际可行地

—We all knew by then that the affair was practically over. 到那时，我们都知道事情实际上已经结束了。

【派生】practice *n.* 练习；实践 practical *a.* 实践的；实际的

10 negative /ˈnegətɪv/ *a.*

(1) harmful or bad 负面的；有害的；不良的

—The news from overseas is overwhelmingly negative. 来自海外的消息特别不容乐观。

(2) expressing disagreement or criticism 不赞成的；反对的

—Upon a negative decision, the applicant loses the protection offered by Belgian law. 一旦得到否定裁决，申请人就失去了比利时法律的保护。

(3) giving more attention or emphasis to bad possibilities than good ones 消极的

—Why does the media present such a negative view of this splendid city? 媒体为什么对这座光彩夺目的城市持如此悲观的看法？

11 aspect /ˈæspekt/ *n.*

[C] one part of a situation, idea, plan, etc. that has many parts 方面

—She has already expressed her dissatisfaction with this aspect of the policy. 她对政策的这一方面已经表达了不满。

12 epidemic /ˌepɪˈdemɪk/ *n.*

(1) [C] a sudden increase in sth. bad or unpleasant that affects many people (坏事的突然)盛行，泛滥

—An epidemic of burglaries has hit the area. 该地区的入室盗窃案件已经泛滥成灾。

(2) [C] a situation in which a disease spreads very quickly and infects many people (疾病的)传播，流行

—Health officials have successfully confined the epidemic to this area. 卫生官员成功地将疫情控制在这个地区。

13 neglect /nɪ'glekt/ *n.*
[U] failure to look after sth. or sb., or the condition of not being looked after 疏忽
—He was dismissed by his boss because of his neglect at his job. 他因为玩忽职守被老板解雇了。
vt. fail to do sth. that you should do 疏忽;玩忽;漏做
—The woman denied that she had neglected her child. 那位女士否认疏于照管自己的孩子。
14 infant /'ɪnfənt/ *n.*
[C] (*fml.*) a baby or very young child 婴儿;幼儿
—This country ranks 20th in its infant mortality rate. 这个国家在婴儿死亡率方面排名第20。
15 impact /ɪm'pækt/ *v.*
have an effect or influence on sb. or sth. 对……有作用或影响
—Such schemes mean little unless they impact on people. 这些计划没什么意义,除非它们对人们产生影响。
['ɪmpækt] *n.*
[C] an effect or influence 作用;影响
—The specific impact of the greenhouse effect is unknowable. 温室效应的具体影响无法知道。
【搭配】impact on 对……产生影响
【同义】influence
16 involved /ɪn'vɒlvd/ *a.*
(1) affected by or included in an activity, event, or situation 受影响的;牵扯在内的;卷入……的
—I don't want to get involved in this argument about who is to blame. 我不想卷入这场该由谁承担责任的争论中。
(2) sb. who is involved in sth. takes part in it 参与的
—In all, 200 companies are involved in producing the parts that are needed for these aircraft. 一共有200家公司参与生产这些飞机所需要的零部件。
【搭配】involved in 参与;牵扯;卷入;涉及
17 agony /'ægəni/ *n.*
(1) [C, U] a strong and unpleasant feeling, esp. great worry or sadness 痛苦;煎熬;伤心
—She had to go through the agony of leaving her children. 她只好忍痛离开孩子们。
(2) [C, U] great pain 剧痛
—He staggered around the playground, screaming in agony. 他绕着运动场跌跌撞撞地走着,并且痛苦地大叫。
18 risk /rɪsk/ *n.*
[C, U] the possibility that sth. bad, unpleasant or dangerous might happen 危险(性);风险
—This was one risk that paid off. 这是一个成功的冒险。
vt. do sth. that makes it possible for sth. important or valuable to be destroyed, damaged, or lost 使冒毁坏(或破坏、失去贵重物品)的危险
—Those who fail to register risk severe penalties. 那些没有注册的人可能会受到严厉的处罚。
【搭配】at risk 处境危险;受到威胁 take a risk(s) 冒险
19 concern /kən'sɜːn/ *vt.*
(1) make sb. feel worried or upset 使担心;使忧虑
—It concerned her that Bess was developing a crush on Max. 贝丝迷上了马克思,这让她很担心。

(2) (*never passive*) be about a particular subject 涉及，关系到(某一主题)

—The bulk of the book concerns Sandy's two middle-aged children. 书中主要描写桑迪的两个已到中年的孩子。

n. [U] a feeling of worry about sth. important 忧虑；担心；关切

—Issues such as these were not really his concern. 他其实并不关心诸如此类的问题。

【近义】involve

20 concerned /kən'sɜːnd/ *a.*

(1) worried about sth. 焦急的；担忧的

—Naturally we were concerned for him when we heard of the accident. 当我们听到那意外事件时，自然地为他担忧。

(2) (*not before noun*) involved in sth. or affected by it (与某事)有关的，有牵连的

—As far as oral English is concerned, practice is still the best way. 就英语口语而言，练习仍然是最好的方法。

21 discipline /'dɪsəˌplɪn/ *n.*

(1) [U] a way of training sb. so that they learn to control their behavior and obey rules 训练；管教

—The discipline of studying music can help children develop good work habits. 音乐学习中的训练可以帮助孩子们培养好的工作习惯。

(2) [U] the ability to control your own behavior, so that you do what you are expected to do 自制力

—It was that image of calmness and discipline that appealed to voters. 正是那个冷静、自律的形象打动了选民。

(3) [C] an area of knowledge or teaching, esp. one such as history, chemistry, mathematics, etc. that is studied at a university (尤指大学的)专业，科目

—We're looking for people from a wide range of disciplines. 我们需要各个学科的人才。

22 structure /'strʌktʃə/ *n.*

(1) [U] the quality of being organized 条理性

—These kids require a lot of structure and stability, for they never received good discipline. 这些孩子需要多多培养条理性和稳定性，因为他们从未接受过良好的管教。

(2) [U] the way in which the parts of sth. are organized or arranged into a whole 结构；构造；条理

—The theatre is a futuristic steel and glass structure. 这家剧院是钢筋和玻璃结构的未来派建筑。

23 plunge /plʌndʒ/ *vi.*

(1) if a price, rate, etc. plunges, it suddenly decreases by a large number (价格、比率等)暴跌，骤降

—The bank's profits plunged by 87 percent. 银行的利润骤降了 87%。

(2) fall quickly from a high position 迅速落下；跌落

—The sky diver had a plunge of more than 10,000 feet before his parachute opened. 那个跳伞运动员坠落了一万多英尺，他的降落伞才打开。

24 decline /dɪ'klaɪn/ *vi.*

become less or worse 减少；变糟；衰退

—The number of staff has declined from 217,000 to 114,000. 员工人数从 21.7 万减少到了 11.4 万。

v. say politely that you will not accept sth. or do sth. 谢绝；(礼貌地)拒绝

—He declined their invitation. 他谢绝了他们的邀请。

n. [C, U] a reduction in the amount or quality of sth. (数量的)减少；(质量的)下降

—He criticized the government for failing to halt economic decline. 他批评政府未能遏止经济下滑。

【近义】refuse

25 cease /siːs/ *v.*

(*fml.*) stop doing sth. or stop happening 停止;终止;结束

—A small number of firms have ceased trading. 一小部分公司已经停止交易。

【搭配】without cease 不停地;不断地

【近义】halt

26 imaginary /ɪˈmædʒɪnəri/ *a.*

not real, but produced from pictures or ideas in your mind 想象的;虚构的

—The equator is an imaginary line around the middle of the earth. 赤道是一条假想的环绕地球腰部的线。

【词缀】-ary 作形容词后缀时,意为"……的";-ary 作名词后缀时,意为"人,场所,物等"。

【近义】fictitious

27 attribute /əˈtrɪbjuːt/ *v.*

(～ sth. to sb. /sth.) believe or say that a situation or event is caused by sb. or sth. 把……归因于

—Women tend to attribute their success to external causes such as luck. 女性倾向于将她们的成功归因于外部因素,比如运气。

【搭配】attribute sth. to 把……归因于

28 personality /ˌpɜːsəˈnæləti/ *n.*

[C, U] sb. 's character, esp. the way they behave toward other people 个性;性格

—She has such a kind, friendly personality. 她个性善良友好。

【词缀】名词后缀-ality 表示状态或者性质。

【近义】character

29 interaction /ˌɪntərˈækʃn/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] the activity of talking to other people, working together with them, etc. 交流

—The interaction of the two groups produced many good ideas. 两个组的相互交流产生了许多好主意。

(2) [C, U] a process by which two or more things affect each other 相互作用;相互影响

—You have to understand the interactions of the cells. 你必须明白细胞是怎样相互作用的。

【词缀】前缀 inter-表示"在……之间,相互"。

30 blog /blɒg/ *n.*

[C] a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject, to which new information is added regularly 网络日志;博客

—Reading blogs on the Internet everyday has become a kind of life habit for the young. 每天上网浏览博客已经成为年轻人的一种生活习惯。

31 release /rɪˈliːs/ *n.*

(1) [U] a situation in which sth. such as a chemical is spread into the area or atmosphere around it (化学物等的)释放

—With nuclear power, there is always the fear that there will be a release of harmful radiation. 有了原子能,人们总担心会有有害辐射的泄漏。

(2) [U] the act of letting sb. leave a place such as a prison or hospital 释放;放出

—He called for the immediate release of all political prisoners. 他要求立即释放所有政治犯。

vt.

(1) let a substance flow out 释放，排放(物质)

—The contraction of muscles uses energy and releases heat. 肌肉的收缩消耗能量并且释放热量。

(2) let sb. leave a place where they have been kept 释放；放出

—He was released from custody the next day. 第二天他被从拘留所里放了出来。

32 endorphin /en'dɔːfɪn/ *n.*

[C, usu. pl.] a chemical produced by your body that reduces pain and can make you feel happier 内啡肽(一种体内生成的化学物质，能止痛并让人更高兴)

—With hope, we produce endorphin and can actualize our potentials. 人有了希望，便能诱发大脑内的内啡肽，从而激发内在潜能。

33 essential /ɪ'senʃl/ *a.*

(1) extremely important and necessary 极其重要的；必不可少的

—Calcium is essential for the development of healthy teeth and bones. 钙对于牙齿和骨骼的健康发育至关重要。

(2) the essential part, quality, or feature of sth. is the most basic one 最基本的；本质的

—Most authorities agree that play is an essential part of a child's development. 大多数权威人士都同意，玩耍在孩子成长过程中起着非常重要的作用。

【近义】indispensable

34 sustain /sə'steɪn/ *vt.*

make sth. continue to exist or happen for a period of time 保持；维持；使持续

—There's a sufficiency of drama in their lives to sustain your interest. 这些人的生活充满了戏剧性，总能让你兴趣盎然。

【派生】sustainable *a.* 可持续的 sustainability *n.* 可持续性

【近义】maintain

35 sustained /sə'steɪnd/ *a.*

(*only before noun*) continuing for a long time 持续的；持久的

—America has enough firepower in the area to mount sustained air strikes. 美国在该地区拥有足够的火力发动持续的空中打击。

36 arouse /ə'raʊz/ *vt.*

cause an emotion or attitude 引起；激起；唤起

—There is nothing like a long walk to arouse the appetite. 没有什么比走很长的路更能激起食欲的了。

37 feedback /'fiːdbæk/ *n.*

[U] advice, criticism, etc. about how successful or useful sth. is 反馈意见

—It would monitor traffic flows and provide feedback to drivers. 它能监控交通状况，然后给司机提供反馈信息。

38 interact /ˌɪntər'ækt/ *vi.*

(1) if people interact with each other, they talk to each other, work together, etc. 交流；交往；互相来往

—Teachers have a limited amount of time to interact with each child. 教师和每个孩子沟通的时间有限。

(2) if one thing interacts with another, or they interact, they affect each other 相互作用；相互影响

—Atoms within the fluid interact with the minerals that form the grains. 液体中的原子与形成颗粒的矿

物质相互作用。

【派生】interactive *a.* 互相作用的；互相影响的

39 gamble /ˈɡæmbl/ *v.*

risk money or sth. valuable in the hope of winning more if you are lucky or if you guess sth. correctly 打赌；赌博

—They are not prepared to gamble their careers on this matter. 他们不愿意把自己的事业押在这件事上。

n. [sing.] an action or plan that involves risks but will bring important benefits if it is successful 赌博；投机；冒险

—Yesterday, he named his cabinet and took a big gamble in the process. 昨天他冒了很大的风险任命了内阁成员。

40 gambler /ˈɡæmblə/ *n.*

[C] 赌徒

—He was a compulsive gambler and often heavily in debt. 他嗜赌成癖，常常债台高筑。

41 lever /ˈliːvə/ *n.*

[C] a stick or handle on a machine or piece of equipment that you move to operate it 控制杆；操纵杆

—An elevator mechanic can work the machinery directly by turning this lever. 电梯修理工可以转动这根杠杆直接操作机器。

42 rational /ˈræʃn(ə)l/ *a.*

(1) based on reasons rather than emotions 基于理性的；合理的

  —All your arguments presuppose that he's a rational, intelligent man. 你所有论点的前提都是他是一个理性而聪明的人。

(2) thinking about what you do in a calm way, and making sensible and intelligent decisions 有理性的；理智的

  —Did he come across as a sane rational person? 他看起来是一个正常而理智的人吗？

【派生】rationality *n.* 合理性 rationalism *n.* 理性主义

43 spoil /spɔɪl/ *vt.*

(1) have a bad effect on sth. so that it is no longer attractive, enjoyable, useful, etc. 毁掉；糟蹋；破坏

  —It's important not to let mistakes spoil your life. 重要的是不要让错误毁了你的生活。

(2) give a child everything they want, or let them do whatever they want, often with the result that they behave badly 宠坏；惯坏；溺爱

  —Grandparents are often tempted to spoil their grandchildren whenever they come to visit. 祖父母每次来访都往往禁不住要娇惯孙辈。

44 moderate /ˈmɒd(ə)rət/ *a.*

neither very great or very small in amount, size, strength or degree 中等的；适中的；适度的

—While a moderate amount of stress can be beneficial, too much stress can exhaust you. 适度的压力是有好处的，但是压力太大会把人压垮。

【派生】moderation *n.* 适度；稳定；自我节制

45 moderation /ˌmɒdəˈreɪʃn/ *n.*

[U] (*fml.*) control of your behavior, so that you keep your actions, feelings, habits, etc. within reasonable limits 节制；克制

—Responsibility and moderation were to be the keynotes of their foreign policy. 责任和克制将是他们外交政策的核心。

46 multiple /'mʌltɪpl/ *a.*

(*only before noun*) many, or involving many people, things, events, etc 包括/涉及多个人/物/事件等的;多的;多种的

—The government performed competently in the face of multiple challenges. 面临多种挑战,政府表现得非常出色。

【词缀】前缀 multi-表示"很多"。

47 schedule /'skedʒul/ *vt.*

(*usu. passive*) plan for sth. to happen at a particular time 把……安排在;排定

—A presidential election was scheduled for last December. 总统选举原计划在去年 12 月举行。

n. [C] a plan of activities or events and when they will happen 日程表;计划表;活动安排

—It is the mother who is expected to reorganize her busy schedule. 应该让母亲来重新安排自己紧张的日程。

【搭配】to/on/according to schedule 按预定计划 ahead of schedule 早于预定计划 behind schedule 落后于预定计划

(二)短语

1 a wealth of sth.

a lot of sth. useful or good 丰富的某物

—The book includes a wealth of splendid photographs. 该书中有大量精彩的照片。

2 make use of sth.

use sth. that is available in order to achieve sth. or get an advantage for yourself 利用某物;使用某物

—Not all nursery schools make use of the opportunities open to them. 并不是所有的托儿所都能抓住他们面临的机会。

3 give rise to sth.

make sth. happen or begin, esp. sth. unpleasant or unexpected 引起;导致

—Such an incident does give rise to health and safety concerns. 这一事件的确引起人们对健康和安全的关注。

4 charge sb. with (doing) sth.

accuse sb. formally of a crime so that there can be a trial in a court of law 指控;控告;起诉

—The government official was charged with accepting bribes. 那名政府官员被指控收受贿赂。

5 keep sb. from (doing) sth.

prevent sb. from (doing) sth. 不让某人做某事

—He is a man of determination, so nothing could keep him from carrying out his plan. 他是一个意志坚定的人,没有什么可以阻止他实施他的计划。

6 care for

look after 照顾;照看

—I had a strong desire to help and care for people. 我非常渴望能够帮助和照顾他人。

7 tell of

describe an event or person 描述;叙述

—The story tells of the bravery of a little girl. 这个故事描述的是一个小女孩的勇敢。

8 as well

in addition to sth. or sb. else (除……外)还

—He speaks English and Spanish as well. 他既能说英语,也能说西班牙语。

9 at risk

in a situation where you may be harmed 处境危险;受到威胁

—An estimated seven million people are at risk of starvation. 估计有700万人面临着饿死的危险。

10 nothing but

only 仅仅;只有;不过

—With nothing but his own talent, he made himself rich and famous. 他仅靠自身天赋就变得富有而出名。

三、课文注释

1 Too much of a good thing—A real addiction (Title)

【Meaning】Anything that is too much is troublesome. The Internet is a good thing, but if you rely on it too much and even become addicted to it, it will become a bad thing.

【解　析】标题中 Too much of a good thing 意为 we should do everything in moderation。

2 **It's hard to deny the positive changes it adds to people's lives as it makes life easier with quick access to things like maps, news, and online stores. (Para. 1)**

【Meaning】It's difficult to deny the good roles the Internet plays in people's lives. The Internet makes life easier, for with the Internet, we can have quick access to things like maps, news, and online stores.

【解　析】本句为复合句,包含一个由 as 引导的原因状语从句,主句中又包含一个定语从句 it adds to people's lives 修饰 the positive changes。

3 **Internet access and the ability to make good use of it is practically a must for success in the modern world. (Para. 1)**

【Meaning】The Internet has become something that people must have and must know how to make good use of in order to succeed in the modern world.

【解　析】本句中 make good use of 意为"好好利用;充分利用"。

4 **Like any technology, though, it has negative aspects that become clear as we start to depend upon it. (Para. 2)**

【Meaning】However, like any other technology, the Internet also has harmful effects, which become clear when we begin to depend on it.

【解　析】这里的 though 相当于 however,表达语义的转折。后面由 as 引导的时间状语从句又包含了一个由 that 引导的定语从句。

5 **Like pollution and traffic jams that come with the convenience of cars, Internet access has proven so popular that it has given rise to a new kind of social epidemic, Internet addiction. (Para. 2)**

【Meaning】Cars bring us convenience, but they also cause pollution and traffic jam. Similarly, it has been proven that the widely used Internet has caused a new kind of social problem—Internet addiction.

【解　析】本句为复合句,从句中又包含一个 that 引导的定语从句。

6 **Another recent news story told of a man who spent so much time online that he didn't sleep enough to keep his job. (Para. 3)**

【Meaning】Another recent news story was about a man who spent so much time on the Internet that he

didn't get enough sleep and lost his job.

【解　析】本句为复合句，包含一个由 who 引导的定语从句和由 that 引导的状语从句。

7 There are many stories of excellent students who lost their university scholarships from poor grades, or of other students who failed at the university altogether simply because they spent too much time online. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】Many stories tell us that some very good students lost their university scholarships due to their low grades, or that other students didn't graduate from university merely because they spent too much time online.

【解　析】本句为复合句，包含一个由 because 引导的原因状语从句和由 who 引导的定语从句。

8 These things did not happen to these people because they were lazy or stupid. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】These things happened to these people, but it was not because they were lazy or stupid.

【解　析】do/did not+verb+because... 这个结构表示"……发生，但不是因为……"，其中 not 不是用来否定主句的谓语动词，而是用来否定由 because 引导的状语从句。

9 New college students, even the brightest and most successful ones, are most at risk from these effects because the Internet is important for their studies and because they are just entering a world where their online habits are no longer monitored by concerned parents. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】New college students, even the smartest and most successful ones, are most likely to be influenced by the negative effects of the Internet because the Internet is important for their studies and because they are just coming into a new environment where their anxious parents can't keep an eye on their online habits any more.

【解　析】本句为复合句，包含两个并列的原因状语从句。其中，第二个原因状语从句中又包含了由 where 引导的定语从句。

10 It is easy for those who are unaffected by the powerful draw of connectivity—those who can easily control their time online—to view Internet addiction as an imaginary problem or to attribute its origins to a weak personality. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Some people are not influenced by the strong attraction of the Internet because they can easily control their time online. So, it is easy for them to consider Internet addiction as an unreal problem or to think that a weak character is the root of Internet addiction.

【解　析】本句总体来说就是句型 it is + *adj.* + for sb. to do sth.。其中包括一个由 who 引导的定语从句，破折号后面是其同位语。

11 The trouble with the Internet is that it makes it possible to have unnaturally long periods of endorphin release, sustained rewards from the brain that are as quick as the click of a mouse. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】The problem the Internet has is that it makes it possible for endorphins to be released continuously for an abnormally long period of time. These are constant rewards from the brain and they come out as quickly as a click of the mouse.

【解　析】本句为复合句，包含一个由 that 引导的表语从句和一个由 that 引导的定语从句。

12 These rewards are not actual, useful, real-life rewards, but simple stimulation that arouses positive feedback in the brain. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】These rewards are not real, useful rewards, but only simple stimulation that brings about positive effects in the brain.

【解　析】本句中用到了 not... but...，意为"不是……而是……"，but 表转折。

13 In real life endorphins encourage us to interact with friends or family, or attempt to learn something new. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】In real life endorphins encourage us to communicate with friends or family, or try to learn something new.

【解　析】本句中 interact with... 意为“与……交往”。

14 Just be careful. Notice if you find you are thinking about the Internet even when you're not online, or if you prefer your online time to time with your real-life friends, or if you hide or lie about how much time you spend online. If you find yourself doing any of these things, take a step back. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】Watch out for the following things: thinking about the Internet even when you're not online, preferring the virtual world to the real world, and hiding or lying about your online time. If you find yourself doing any of these things, you should stop for a moment and consider whether you are doing the right thing.

【解　析】本句主要讲的是句子 If you find yourself doing any of these things, take a step back. 之前包含了 if 引导的三个条件状语从句。

15 The Internet is a powerful tool, but make sure that you use it wisely for all the good value it offers and that you won't let too much of a good thing become something bad. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】The Internet is a powerful tool, but make sure that you use it reasonably and take advantage of all the good things that the Internet brings about, and make sure that you do not overuse it and not let such a positive tool become a negative thing.

【解　析】本句是由并列连词 and 连接的两个宾语从句。

四、课文译文

过犹不及——真正的上瘾

1. 现代世界经历的最大变化莫过于互联网的崛起。我们难以否认网络给人们的生活带来了各种便利。网络使生活变得简单,通过网络,人们能够迅速地查找到如地图、新闻和网上商店等信息。作为研究工具,互联网是无与伦比的。它是我们与朋友保持联系的极好的方式。它给我们提供多样的媒体渠道以及各种各样的新闻来源。有条件上网以及有能力充分利用网络是现代社会获得成功的必要条件。

2. 然而,像任何技术一样,随着我们开始依赖网络,网络的负面因素就显现出来。正如随着汽车的使用而来的污染和交通堵塞是一样的,互联网的广泛流行导致了一种新的社会流行病,就是网瘾。

3. 请看以下的报道。几年前,美国一对夫妇被指控疏于照顾孩子。正是因为他们迷恋网络游戏而疏于对两个幼儿的照顾。最近还有个关于一位男子的新闻报道,他长时间上网,结果睡眠不足从而失去工作。最终,连房子也没了,但他保留了笔记本电脑,仍旧终日上网。

4. 大学生们也同样受到影响。有很多报道是关于一些优秀的学生由于成绩差而失去奖学金,还有的学生因此而无法毕业,这都归因于他们上网时间过长。有一个学生不仅没有毕业,而且体重下降了12磅。他太沉迷于网络,饭都忘了吃!想想是多么令人痛心啊!

5. 这些事情发生在这些人身上,不是因为他们懒惰或愚蠢,而是因为他们上网成瘾。新入学的大学生,甚至是那些最聪明、最成功的大学生,受此影响的风险最大,因为互联网对他们的学业很重要,也正因他们刚刚进入一个新环境,他们的上网习惯不再受到关心他们的父母的监督。没有家人的监督和约束,学生们只能自己管理上网时间。在第一学期,他们可能成绩骤降、健康受损、友谊中断。

6. 对于那些不受网络巨大吸引力影响的人，也就是可以轻松控制上网时间的人，容易把网瘾问题认为是想象中的问题，或者把网瘾的根源归咎于软弱的性格。但网瘾背后的脑部化学病理可不是想象出来的。许多常见的网络互动，如在网络游戏中得分、接收电子邮件或即时信息、发现更新的博客，所有这些都会引发大脑中内啡肽的释放。内啡肽是大脑获取成功和快乐这些正面情绪相关的重要化学物质。鉴于网络互动经常包含成功应对挑战或进行社会交往，因此网络互动能引起内啡肽的释放也就不足为奇了。对于这些现实生活中的活动，我们的大脑一直在给予我们奖励。

7. 互联网的问题在于，它可以造成长期的、非自然的内啡肽释放，也就是来自大脑持续不断的奖励，就像点击鼠标一样快速。这些奖励不是真实的、有用的、现实的奖励，他们只是引发大脑中正面反馈的简单刺激。在现实生活中，内啡肽促使我们和朋友、家人交往或者尝试学习新东西。而一旦上网成瘾，内啡肽只会使人更加迷恋电脑。有网瘾的人的行为就好像那些在拉斯维加斯的赌徒们不断拉动赌博机的操作杆，虽然这样做不理智、妨害他们的学业或损害他们的健康和生活。

8. 所以，要留意你上网的时间。节制是对抗网瘾的最好的防御方式。利用网络创造的奇迹来充实你的学业、与远方的朋友保持联系、探索多样的新世界。只是要小心。留意一下，自己不上网时是否惦记网络，或者你是否更愿意上网而不愿意与现实生活中的朋友在一起，或者你是否对上网时间进行掩饰和撒谎。如果你发现自己符合以上任何一种情况，那就要停下来，去寻找其他享受生活的方式。做些运动，运动是内啡肽的重要来源！参观博物馆或去逛逛美丽的公园。和朋友们一起学习或安排娱乐时间来放松一下。互联网是一个强大的工具，但是要确保能明智地利用它，来获得它所能带来的一切好处，确保不会因过度使用而使它变成害人的东西。

五、练习答案及详解

Reading skills

区分事实和观点

作为有鉴赏力的读者应该了解观点不是被证明的事情，合理的观点必须要有事实来支撑。

首先，事实指客观发生的可以被证明或对或错的证据，是可以被检验或检测的，不掺杂主观内容。观点指作者对某事件的看法，作者认为是存在的、真实的、已经发生的事件，带有明显主观性。

其次，一个简单的方法就可以区分事实和观点。可以思考这两个问题“这个陈述值得商榷吗？”如果回答“是”，那么就是观点。“这个陈述肯定是真是的吗？”如果回答“是”，那么就是事实。

1 Look at the following statements from Text B and decide which are facts (F) and which are opinions (O).

1. O 2. O 3. O 4. F 5. F 6. F 7. O 8. O

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

2 Choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. D 7. D 8. C

Critical thinking

3 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. Teenagers, college students and computer game lovers are more likely to become Internet-addicted.

Many teenagers lack self-discipline. Thought their parents may watch them closely at home and only allow them very limited time to get online, once being away from home, these kids are likely to indulge themselves in the Internet. College students use Internet to help with their study, and they also lack supervision from their parents. They may become addicted to the Internet. The same is true to computer game lovers. They often use the Internet to play games, because a great deal of games are online and played with other players. They also use Internet to communicate with other friends about games.

2. • Yes, I think so. A weak personality usually can't resist temptation. Many students knew for sure that online games would take up too much of their study time. However, they couldn't give up thinking or talking about games and were totally into this virtual world.
   • No, I don't think so. A person with a strong personality may also become an addict. Some people are independent and decisive, but somehow they become Internet addicts. Therefore, I don't think there is direct connection between personality and addiction to the Internet.
3. If I have friends who unfortunately become Internet-addicted, I will give a hand to them: (1) make time limits. I will suggest that they should be allowed a limited amount of time to spend online each day; (2) keep themselves busy. I will help them find other activities like meeting friends, doing sports or taking up new hobbies to keep them away from the Internet.
4. • "No Computer Day" is a good idea. If you shut down your computer for a day, you'll possibly find a book to read, hang out with your friends, chat with your family, go to a concert, see a film or visit a museum.
   • I don't think it is a good idea. For people who depend on their computers for their work or study, they could do little or almost nothing without computers. Moreover, the business world may become out of order without computers, even for only one day.

Language focus

Words in use

4 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. concerned

   【译文】教授们讨论经济理论，而商人考虑更多的是利益。
2. release

   【译文】警察不能证明他涉嫌犯罪，所以不得不把他释放。
3. positive

   【译文】持有积极的态度，对自己的能力有自信，只有这样才能给雇佣者留下深刻印象，获得工作机会。
4. ceased

   【译文】如果网络停止工作，导致的结果会是几百亿美金的损失而不是几百万美金。
5. enable

   【译文】加入 WTO 会使一个国家从很多世界精英的信息中获益，足不出户就可直接参与到国际竞争中去。
6. decline

【译文】今年的利润急剧下滑，导致一些公司进行裁员。

7. scheduled

【译文】原计划这个周五举行的会议将延迟到下个月。

8. essential

【译文】对于想成功的人来说，自律是非常重要的；没有规划的工作就不会带来任何进步。

9. neglect

【译文】我不反对你在大学期间赚些零用钱，但不能因此忽视你的学业。

10. arouse

【译文】我们最近一直在研发这个装置，它可以激起年轻人的兴趣。

Expressions in use

5 Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions or adverbs.

1. of

【译文】汽车公司利用媒体来宣传预计明年初面世的新型号车。

2. to

【译文】对文化差异缺乏了解会导致很多的误解。

3. with

【译文】他没有想到他最好的朋友会指控他在期末考试中作弊。

4. of

【译文】针对我们所进行的研究，网上有丰富的资源可以利用。

5. from

【译文】锻炼身体是必要的。经常锻炼会使我们身体健康，远离疾病和肥胖。

6. but

【译文】当所有的灯光渐渐远去，路的两旁仅留给他无尽的黑暗。

7. to

【译文】很多人把观影人数的减少归因于电视和网络的盛行。

8. for

【译文】对我来说，专心工作并同时照看小孩是不可能的。

Sentence structure

6 Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English, using the infinitive phrase "to do something" to express purpose.

1. To make a good impression on the interviewer
2. To greatly improve people's living standards
3. to prevent anyone from carrying guns or drugs

7 Rewrite the following sentences by using the structure "do/did not + verb + because..." to express transferred negation.

1. People do not feel sorry for John because he is shy and awkward in front of others.
2. The traffic accident did not happen because the driver was not skillful at driving.
3. He did not decide to accept a job in the local company because he was offered high pay.

Collocation

8 Complete the following passage about online learning with the words and expressions given below. All of the words and expressions can collocate with the verb *do*. Change the form where necessary. Each word or expression can be used only once.

1. homework 做作业
2. lecture 教授上的有趣的课
3. course(s) 听任何你喜欢的课程
4. exam 参加考试
5. presentations 做演讲
6. research project 做调研报告
7. degree 获得学位
8. shopping 购物
9. washing 洗衣服
10. exercise 做锻炼
11. things 做这些事情
12. more good than harm 网络对你益大于弊

Unit 4

Heroes of our time

Section A

Heroes among us

一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文主要是关于什么造就了英雄的内容以及人们对此不同的观点看法。文章开篇先是对今天的英雄做了一个简单的总结概括,然后提出一个问题:谁是我们中间的英雄?随后作者讲述了图森枪击事件中丹尼尔·赫尔南德兹和多利·斯托达德这两个人物的英雄事迹来回答了问题:他们是我们当中的平民英雄。接着作者又提出了另外一个问题:应急救援人员应不应当被看作英雄?文中列举了瑞安·罗素的英雄事例,并对过去和现在的英雄做了比较,也向读者介绍了埃莉诺·麦克玛农这个人物的事迹以及她对瑞安·罗素事件的看法:他的确是英雄。最后作者给出答案:当我们自己或者我们所爱的人处于危险的时候,应急救援人员是我们的希望,他们冒着危险来帮助我们。因此,当他们为此付出生命的时候,我们应当认可他们超乎常人的英勇行为。课文最后做了一个全面总结:上述英雄的事迹提醒我们,即使平凡的人也能做出非凡的事情,我们应该从中受到鼓舞和启发,当有危机情形出现的时候可以挺身而出。

(二)背景知识

1.2011 图森枪击事件

美国图森市枪击事件是指美国当地时间 2011 年 1 月 8 日上午,民主党女议员加布里埃尔·吉福德在亚利桑那州图森市出席活动时遭遇枪手袭击,头部中弹重伤,另有 6 人身亡,14 人受伤。

2.纳尔逊·曼德拉

纳尔逊·罗利赫拉赫拉·曼德拉(Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela,1918.7.18～2013.12.5)出生于南非特兰斯凯,先后获南非大学文学学士和威特沃特斯兰德大学律师资格,曾任非国大青年联盟全国书记、主席,于 1994 年至 1999 年间任南非总统,是首位黑人总统,被尊称为“南非国父”。

在任职总统前,曼德拉是积极的反种族隔离人士,同时也是非洲国民大会的武装组织民族之矛的

领袖。当他领导反种族隔离运动时,南非法院以密谋推翻政府等罪名将他定罪。依据判决,曼德拉在牢中服刑了 27 年。1990 年出狱后,转而支持调解与协商,并在推动多元族群民主的过渡期挺身领导南非。自种族隔离制度终结以来,曼德拉受到了来自各界的赞许,包括从前的反对者。

曼德拉 40 年来获得了超过一百项奖项,其中最显著的便是 1993 年的诺贝尔和平奖。2004 年,他被选为“最伟大的南非人”。

3. 道路共享单车联合会(Share the Road)

它建立于 2008 年,是由埃莉诺・麦克玛农为了纪念自己的丈夫格雷格・斯托巴特警佐而成立的自行车组织,主要是向人们倡导自行车出行以及公路安全。

4.《格雷格法案》(Greg's Law)

这项法案是为了纪念 2006 年 6 月在下班时间进行自行车训练却惨遭车祸的格雷格・斯托巴特警佐,并以其命名。这项法案的主要目的就是禁止被吊销驾照或者无驾照驾驶员开车上路。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Para. 1 The author makes a thesis statement about heroes today and raises the question: Who are the heroes among us? 作者简述了今天的英雄人物并提出问题:谁是我们当中的英雄?

Paras. 2 - 4 This part provides us with two examples of heroic deeds in a mass shooting of Tucson to answer the question raised in Paragraph 1 and offers a conclusion that they are civilian heroes. 这部分讲述了图森枪击事件中的两个英雄事迹并以此回答了第一段的问题,他们是我们当中的平民英雄。

Paras. 5 - 12 This part deals with whether the first responders should be called heroes. 这一部分主要探讨了应急救援人员是否应当被称为英雄。

Para. 13 The author provides a conclusion for the whole text: The stories of heroes help remind us that ordinary people can do extraordinary things and being inspired by them, we can also be heroes when circumstances call on us to act heroically. 全文总结:文中英雄的事迹提醒我们平凡的人也可以做出不平凡的事情,受他们的激励,我们在危机情形下也可以发挥自身潜能成为英雄。

2. 写作特点

本文总体的写作特点是使用了问题—事例—总结的模式展开关于英雄话题的讨论,其中,问题先被提出,然后再列出一两个事例来支撑观点,最后基于事例给出一个结论总结作为提出问题的答案。全文都是以此来谋篇发展的。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 era /ˈɪərə/ *n.*

[C] a period of time in history that is known for a particular event, or for particular qualities 时代;年代

—The end of an era means the start of another. 一个时代的结束意味着另一个时代的开始。

2 victim /ˈvɪktɪm/ *n.*

[C] sb. who has been attacked, robbed, or murdered 受害者;牺牲者

—The victim suffered a dreadful injury and lost a lot of blood. 受害者受了重伤,大量失血。

3 survivor /səˈvaɪvə/ *n.*

[C] sb. who continues to live after an accident, war, or illness 生还者;幸存者

—Officials said there were no survivors of the plane crash. 官方说这次飞机失事无一人生还。

4 tragedy /ˈtrædʒədi/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] a very sad event that shocks people because it involves death 悲剧性事件;惨剧;惨案

—They have suffered an enormous personal tragedy. 他们遭逢了巨大的个人不幸。

(2) [C] a serious play or book that ends sadly, esp. with the death of the main character 悲剧(作品)

—The story has elements of tragedy and farce. 这个故事兼有悲剧与闹剧的元素。

【反义】comedy

5 subsequent /ˈsʌbsɪkwənt/ *a.*

(*fml.*) happening or coming after sth. else 随后的;继……之后的

—Subsequent events confirmed our doubts. 后来发生的事证实了我们的怀疑。

6 associate /əˈsəʊsiət/ *n.*

[C] sb. who you work or do business with 同事;(生意)伙伴

—A former associate of Mr. Pierce's was among the project's boosters. 皮尔斯先生的一个前合伙人是这个计划的热心支持者之一。

/əˈsəʊsiˌeɪt/ *vt.*

make a connection in your mind between one thing or person and another 联想;联系

—Through science we've got the idea of associating progress with the future. 通过科学我们知道了应该把进步和未来联系起来。

7 congress /ˈkɒŋgres/ *n.*

[C] the group of people chosen or elected to make the laws in some countries 国会;议会

—Eisenhower used his muscle to persuade Congress to change the law. 艾森豪威尔用他的影响力说服国会修改了该项法律。

8 congresswoman /ˈkɒŋgresˌwʊmən/ *vt.*

[C] a woman who is a member of a congress, esp. the US House of Representatives 国会女议员(尤指美国众议院)

—Maxine Waters is a Democratic Congresswoman, representing South Central Los Angeles. 玛克辛·沃特斯是一名民主党女议员,代表洛杉矶市中南区。

9 tender /ˈtendə/ *a.*

gentle and careful in a way that shows love 温柔的;体贴入微的;慈爱的

—Her voice was tender, full of pity. 她的声音很温柔,充满了怜爱。

10 sympathy /ˈsɪmpəθi/ *n.*

[pl., U] the feeling of being sorry for sb. who is in a bad situation 同情;同情心

—I have had very little help from doctors and no sympathy whatsoever. 我从医生那里没有得到什么帮助,也未获得丝毫同情。

11 shield /ʃiːld/ *vt.*

protect sb. or sth. from being harmed or damaged 保护;保卫

—He shielded his head from the sun with an old sack. 他用一只旧口袋挡住头顶的阳光。

n. [C] a large piece of metal or leather that soldiers used in the past to protect themselves when fighting 盾;盾牌

—The sword glanced off the knight's shield. 剑掠过武士的盾。

12 hail /heɪl/ *n.*

(1) (a ～ of bullets/stones, etc.) a large number of bullets, stones, etc. that are fired or thrown at sb. 一阵弹雨/像雹子般袭来的石块等

—The victim was hit by a hail of bullets. 受害者被一阵弹雨击中。

(2) [U] frozen raindrops which fall as hard balls of ice 雹;冰雹

—Hail fell with such violence that it broke windows. 冰雹猛落,把玻璃窗也砸破了。

vt. describe sb. or sth. as being very good 把……称赞为;把……誉为

—Faulkner has been hailed as the greatest American novelist of his generation. 福克纳被誉为他那一代人中最伟大的美国小说家。

【搭配】a hail of 一阵

13 bullet /'bʊlɪt/ *n.*

[C] a small piece of metal that you fire from a gun 枪弹;子弹;弹头

—The bullet slammed into the ceiling, spraying them with bits of plaster. 子弹砰地射进了天花板,掉落的石膏碎片落了他们一身。

14 priest /priːst/ *n.*

[C] sb. who is specially trained to perform religious duties and ceremonies in the Christian church (基督教的)牧师,神父

—The priest made the sign of the cross over him. 神父在他上方画了个十字。

15 remarkable /rɪ'mɑːkəbl/ *a.*

unusual or surprising and therefore deserving attention or praise 非凡的;不寻常的;显著的

—He has displayed remarkable courage in his efforts to reform the party. 在政党改革中,他表现出了非凡的勇气。

16 humanity /hjuː'mænəti/ *n.*

(1) [U] people in general 人;人类(总称)

—We admire her dedication to the cause of humanity. 我们敬佩她对人类事业的献身精神。

(2) [U] kindness, respect, and sympathy toward others 仁慈;博爱;同情心

—For him, the place is fairly boiling with humanity. 对他来说,这个地方充满了人情味。

(3) [pl.] (the ～ies) subjects of study such as literature, history, or art, rather than science or mathematics 人文学科

—Students majoring in the humanities are usually considered to be more emotional. 通常都认为主修人文学科的学生要更感性一些。

17 civilian /sɪ'vɪliən/ *a.*

(*only before noun*) relating to civilians 平民的;百姓的;民用的;非军职的

—He is in charge of the civilian side of the UN mission. 他在联合国使团中负责平民方面的事务。

/sə'vɪliən/ *n.*

[C] anyone who is not a member of the military forces or the police 平民;老百姓

—Attempts to find civilian volunteers have met with embarrassing failure. 寻找平民志愿者的种种尝试都遭遇了令人难堪的失败。

18 grace /greɪs/ *n.*

(1) [U] kind, polite, and fair behavior 善意;礼貌;体谅

—She did not even have the grace to say sorry. 她连道歉的气度都没有。

(2) [U] a smooth way of moving that looks natural, relaxed, and attractive 优美;优雅

—He moved with the grace of a trained dancer. 他的动作带着一种训练有素的舞者的优美。

19 circumstance /ˈsɜːkəmstəns/ *n.*

[C, usu. pl.] the conditions that affect a situation, action, event, etc. 情况;情形

—The strategy was too dangerous in the explosive circumstances of the times. 在当时那种一触即发的形势下,采取那样的策略太危险了。

【搭配】under/in the circumstances 在这些情况下;情况既然如此

20 respond /rɪˈspɒnd/ *vi.*

do sth. as a reaction to sth. that has been said or done 做出反应;回应

—They are likely to respond positively to the President's request for aid. 他们可能会对总统的援助要求做出积极回应。

【搭配】respond to... 对……做出反应

21 responder /rɪˈspɒndə/ *n.*

[C] a person who does sth. as a reaction to sth. that has been said or done 回应者;应答者

—Cycle responders are fully trained to work on their own in busy areas which are difficult to reach by car or ambulance. 自行车应急救援人员经过全面的培训,能够在汽车或救护车难以到达的繁忙区域独立进行工作。

22 widow /ˈwɪdəʊ/ *n.*

[C] a woman whose husband has died and who has not married again 寡妇;遗孀

—Martha was a very rich young widow. 玛莎是个很有钱的年轻寡妇。

23 solemn /ˈsɒləm/ *a.*

involving serious behavior or serious attitudes 严肃的;郑重的;庄严的

—The Premier's burial was a solemn occasion. 总理的葬礼是个庄严的场面。

24 solemnly /ˈsɒləmli/ *ad.*

严肃地;郑重地;庄严地

—I solemnly vowed that someday I would return to live in Europe. 我郑重发誓,总有一天我将回到欧洲生活。

25 sergeant /ˈsɑːdʒ(ə)nt/ *n.*

[C] (*shortened* Sgt.) a police officer of middle rank, below that of inspector 警佐;巡佐

—The bullet lodged in the sergeant's leg, shattering his thigh bone. 子弹嵌进了警佐的腿里,使其股骨碎裂。

26 commitment /kəˈmɪtmənt/ *n.*

(1) [U] the hard work and loyalty that sb. gives to an organization, activity, etc. 投入;忠诚;奉献

—Have they, for example, demonstrated a commitment to democracy? 例如,他们是否已表现出会致力于民主?

(2) [C] a promise to do sth. or to behave in a particular way 承诺

—He made a commitment to pay the rent on time. 他保证按时付房租。

27 automobile /ˈɔːtəməˌbiːl/ *n.*

[C] (*AmE*) a car 汽车

—He is repairing the brake lever of an automobile. 他正在修理汽车的刹车杆。

28 distinct /dɪ'stɪŋkt/ *a.*

(1) (*usu. before noun*) definite and obvious 确实的;显著的

—Now that Tony was no longer present, there was a distinct change in her attitude. 由于托尼不在场了,她的态度有了明显的转变。

(2) separate and different in a way that is clear 有区别的;不同的;单独的

—Engineering and technology are disciplines distinct from one another and from science. 工程学和工艺学互不相同,也有别于自然学科。

(3) able to be clearly seen, heard, smelt, or tasted 清晰的;清楚的;明显的

—I have distinct memories of him in his last years. 我清楚地记得他最后几年的情况。

29 military /'mɪlɪt(ə)ri/ *a.*

used by, involving, or relating to the army, navy, or air force 军用的;军事的;军队的

—Military action may become necessary. 也许有必要采取军事行动。

30 personnel /ˌpɜːsə'nel/ *n.*

[pl.] the people who work in a company, organization, or military force (公司、组织或军队中的)人员;员工;职员

—Five other US military personnel were killed in various incidents. 另有5名美军士兵死于各种意外。

【搭配】personnel management 人事管理 personnel manager 人事部经理

31 jail /dʒeɪl/ *n.*

[C, U] a place where people are put after they have been arrested or where people go as punishment for a crime 监狱;看守所

—He's probably going to finish up in jail for business fraud. 他最后很可能会因为商业诈骗而入狱。

【同义】prison

32 confine /kən'faɪn/ *vt.*

(1) keep sb. in a place that they cannot leave, such as a prison 监禁;禁闭

—The woman will be confined to a mental institution. 这个女人将被关进精神病院。

(2) if sth. is confined to one area or group of people, it happens only in that area or affect only that group of people 使局限于

—He did not confine himself to the one language. 他没把自己局限于这一门语言。

33 solitary /'sɒlət(ə)ri/ *a.*

(1) doing sth. without anyone else with you 单独的;无伴的

—Last night he was being held in solitary confinement in Douglas jail. 昨晚他被单独监禁在道格拉斯的监狱里。

(2) (*only before noun*) used to emphasize that there is only one of sth. 单个的;唯一的

—She enjoys long solitary walks. 她喜欢独自长距离散步。

34 chamber /'tʃeɪmbə/ *n.*

(1) [C] a room used for a particular purpose (有某种用途的)室

—For many, the dentist's surgery remains a torture chamber. 对许多人来说,牙医的治疗室一直是间受刑室。

(2) a large room in a public building, esp. one used for meetings 大厅;(尤指)会议厅

—We are going to make sure we are in the council chamber every time he speaks. 每次他讲话的时候,我们都要确保我们都在议会会议室里。

35 establish /ɪˈstæblɪʃ/ *vt.*

(1) begin a relationship with sb. or a situation that will continue 建立(关系或联系)

—We're trying to establish linkages between these groups and financial institutions. 我们正努力在这些团体和金融机构之间建立联系。

(2) make sth. start to exist or start to happen 建立;创立;设立

—The UN has established detailed criteria for who should be allowed to vote. 联合国已经制定了有关投票资格的标准细则。

36 harmony /ˈhɑːməni/ *n.*

[U] when people live or work together without fighting or disagreeing with each other 融洽相处

—As they smiled at each other, harmony was restored again. 他们彼此微笑的时候,又恢复了往日的和睦。

【搭配】in harmony 和睦相处;融洽 social harmony 社会和谐

37 reconcile /ˈrekənˌsaɪl/ *vt.*

find a way to make ideas, beliefs, needs, etc. that are opposed to each other capable of existing together 调和;调解

—We suggest that it is possible to reconcile these apparently opposing perspectives. 我们认为这两个看似对立的观点是可以调和的。

v. if you reconcile two people or groups or they reconcile, they become friendly again after a disagreement (使)和解;(使)恢复友好关系

—He never believed he and Susan would be reconciled. 他从来没想过自己和苏珊会和解。

【搭配】reconcile with 与……和解

38 conflict /kənˈflɪkt/ *vi.*

if two ideas, beliefs, opinions, etc. conflict, they cannot exist together or both be true 矛盾;冲突;抵触

—Personal ethics and professional ethics sometimes conflict. 个人道德和职业道德有时会相互抵触。

/ˈkɒnflɪkt/ *n.*

[C, U] a state of disagreement or argument between people, groups, countries, etc. (意见等的)抵触,冲突,矛盾

—This was a straight conflict of directly opposed aims. 这是完全对立的目标之间的正面冲突。

【搭配】cultural conflict 文化冲突

39 conflicted /ˌkənˈflɪktɪd/ *a.*

experiencing or marked by conflicts, esp. of emotions (尤指情感)冲突的,矛盾的

—Many mothers today feel conflicted about working outside the home. 如今很多母亲对是否要出去工作感到很矛盾。

40 advocate /ˈædvəkət/ *n.*

[C] sb. who publicly supports sb. or sth. 提倡者;拥护者;鼓吹者

—He is a keen advocate of park-and-ride schemes. 他是"停车再换乘"计划的热情拥护者。

/ˈædvəˌkeɪt/ *vt.* publicly say that sth. should be done 主张;拥护;鼓吹

—The group does not advocate the use of violence. 该团体不支持使用暴力。

41 grief /griːf/ *n.*

[U] extreme sadness, esp. because sb. you love has died (尤指因所爱之人去世而产生的)悲痛,极度悲伤

—Their grief soon gave way to anger. 他们的悲痛迅速转化为愤怒。

42 rage /reɪdʒ/ *n.*

[C, U] a strong feeling of uncontrollable anger 盛怒;狂怒

—The rage in his eyes made her blood run cold. 他眼中的怒火吓得她汗毛倒竖。

v. feel very angry about sth. and show this in the way you behave or speak 发怒;怒斥

—Monroe was on the phone, raging about her mistreatment by the brothers. 门罗正在打电话,怒不可遏地说着她被这几个兄弟虐待的事。

vi. continue with great violence or strong emotions (战斗、争论)激烈进行;(暴风雨)肆虐

—Train services were halted as the fire raged for more than four hours. 火灾肆虐超过 4 个小时,其间列车停止了运行。

【搭配】road rage 路怒症

43 association /əˌsəʊsiˈeɪʃn/ *n.*

(1) [C] an organization that consists of a group of people who have the same aims, do the same kind of work, etc. 协会;社团

—The support of our members is of great importance to the Association. 会员的支持对于我们协会来说非常重要。

(2) [C, U] a relationship with a particular person, organization, group, etc. 关系;关联;交往

—The association between the two companies stretches back thirty years. 这两家公司的往来可以追溯到 30 年前。

44 legislation /ˌledʒɪsˈleɪʃn/ *n.*

[U] a law or set of laws 法规;法律

—They began to draft legislation. 他们开始起草法规。

45 authority /ɔːˈθɒrəti/ *n.*

(1) [U] the power you have because of your official position 权力;当权

—The judge had no authority to order a second trial. 法官无权进行二次审判。

(2) [C] sb. who is considered an expert in a particular subject 专家;权威

—He's universally recognized as an authority on Russian affairs. 他是公认的俄罗斯事务专家。

(3) [C] an official organization or a government department that has the power to make decisions, and has particular responsibilities 官方机构;政府部门

—Any alterations had to meet the approval of the local planning authority. 任何改建都要取得当地规划机构的批准。

46 intense /ɪnˈtens/ *a.*

having a very strong effect or felt very strongly 剧烈的;强烈的

—Suddenly the room filled with intense light. 突然,刺眼的强光照亮了整个房间。

47 involve /ɪnˈvɒlv/ *vt.*

(1) include or affect sb. or sth. 涉及;影响

—If there was a cover-up, it involved people at the very highest levels of government. 如果有人想要隐瞒实情,那其中就涉及政府部门最高层的人物。

(2) include sth. as a necessary part of an activity, event, or situation 包含;需要

—Running a kitchen involves a great deal of discipline and speed. 料理好厨房需要把一切都安排得规规矩矩,且要讲求速度。

(3) encourage or allow sb. to take part in sth. 鼓励……参与;允许……参加

—Before too long he started involving me in the more confidential aspects of the job. 不久，他便开始让我介入工作中更机密的方面。

48 fulfill /fʊl'fɪl/ *vt.* (*BrE* fulfil)

(1) do or provide what is necessary or needed 履行；执行；符合

—Miners have complained bitterly that the government did not fulfill their promises. 矿工们愤愤不平地抱怨说政府没有履行诺言。

(2) achieve sth. that you wanted to do, or get sth. you hoped for 实现；达到

—My father was very keen that I should fulfill my potential. 我父亲热切地希望我能够发挥出自身的潜力。

49 fulfillment /fʊl'fɪlmənt/ *n.* (*BrE* fulfilment)

(1) [U] the act of doing or achieving sth. that is promised or expected 履行；实现；达到

—He was willing to face any hardship in fulfillment of his duty. 他愿意面对任何困难去履行他的职责。

(2) [U] a feeling of happiness and satisfaction, esp. because you are doing sth. important or using your abilities 满足感；成就感

—People find fulfillment in working for a common goal. 人们在为一个共同目标而努力的过程中得到满足。

(二)短语

1 give one's life

die in order to save other people or because of a strong belief 捐躯；牺牲

—He has given his life for the cause of the people. 他为人民的事业献出了自己的生命。

2 ring out

produce a loud clear sound 发出响亮的声音

—A single shot rang out. 传来一声响亮的枪声。

3 shield sb. /sth. from sb. /sth.

protect sb. or sth. from being harmed or damaged by sb. or sth. 使……免受

—He tried to shield me from suspicion. 他试图避免我被怀疑。

4 with (good/a good) grace

in a pleasant and willing way 有风度地；情愿地

—He accepted the decision with good grace, and wished me the very best of luck. 他欣然接受这一决定并祝我好运。

5 be/get caught up in sth.

become involved in sth., esp. when you do not want to 被卷入；陷入

—How did the contract get caught up in a legal dispute? 合同怎么会陷入法律纠纷呢?

6 in the words of sb. /in sb. 's words

as sb. says or writes 用某人的话来说

—Michael and his sister went to the concert, and in the words of his sister, it was a night to remember. 迈克尔和他的姐姐一起去了音乐会，用他姐姐的话来说，那是难忘的一夜。

7 reserve sth. for sb. /sth.

keep sth. so that it can be used by a particular person or for a particular purpose 保留；预留

—A double room with a balcony overlooking the sea had been reserved for him. 特地为他预留了一间带

阳台的海景双人房。

8 **relate to sth. /sb.**

be able to understand a situation or the way sb. feels and thinks 理解;认同

—Sam gave up his profession as a doctor. I found it really hard to relate to him. 山姆放弃了他的医生职业,我觉得很难理解他。

9 **make sense of sth.**

understand sth., esp. sth. difficult or complicated 理解,弄懂某事(尤指困难或复杂的事)

—How can we make sense of such a story as this? 我们如何能理解这样的事?

10 **sum up**

give the main information in a report, speech, etc. in a short statement at the end 概括;总结;概述

—I can't sum up his whole philosophy in one sentence. 我无法用一句话来概括他的全部人生观。

11 **in need**

not having enough food, money, clothing, or other things that are necessary for life 在困难时;在贫困之中

—A friend in need is a friend indeed. 患难见真情。

12 **count on**

depend on sb. or sth., esp. in a difficult situation 依靠;指望

—I can always count on you to cheer me up. 你总能使我振作起来。

13 **call on**

formally ask sb. to do sth. 呼吁;号召

—Frequently he was called on to resolve conflicts. 不断有人要求他出面解决冲突。

三、课文注释

1 **In an era of heightened heroism, the word *hero* has become more common. (Para. 1)**

【Meaning】In a time when there is an increasing number of impressive actions of great courage, the word *hero* has been used more frequently.

【解　析】本句就是一个简单句。注意句中 heightened heroism 意为"发扬光大的英雄主义"。

2 **Daniel held her head up so she could breathe and applied pressure to her wounds. (Para. 2)**

【Meaning】Daniel held her head up so she could breathe, and he pushed hard on her wounds in order to stop the bleeding.

【解　析】Here *apply* means "use physical force in order to make sth. happen or work"(用力压,用力启动).

3 **... when Dory heard shots ring out he immediately fell on top of his wife to shield her from the hail of bullets. (Para. 3)**

【Meaning】... when Dory heard loud gunshots, he immediately fell on top of his wife to protect her from being shot as the bullets showered on them.

【解　析】本句为复合句,句中的 when 和 as 引导的都是时间状语从句。

4 **At the memorial service, the priest said: "Dory didn't die a hero; he lived a hero." (Para. 3)**

【Meaning】By saying "Dory didn't die a hero; he lived a hero", the priest meant hat Dory was a hero all through his life; he became a hero not just because he died in a brave way.

【解　析】在 Dory didn't die a hero; he lived a hero 中，a hero 是主语补足语。die 后面可以接一些名词或形容词作主语补足语。

5 Long known for his remarkable spirit and love of humanity, Dory Stoddard died as he had always lived, assisting others. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】Dory Stoddard had always been known for his noble spirit and his love toward other people. He had always helped others when he was alive, and he died when he was helping others.

【解　析】本句为复合句，包含一个方式状语从句 as he had always lived。

6 These are civilian heroes, who acted instinctively with courage and grace when caught up in extraordinary circumstances. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】These are not military people or police officers; they are ordinary people. But they are heroes because they acted out of their instinct with courage and grace when they were involved in unusual conditions.

【解　析】本句为复合句，包含一个由 who 引导的非限制性定语从句 who acted instinctively with courage and grace，这个从句里又包含一个时间状语从句 when caught up in extraordinary circumstances。

7 But what about first responder, whose job is, in the words of the widow of a fallen police officer, to "rush toward danger"? (Para. 5)

【Meaning】But what about those people who are supposed to be the first to arrive at the spot and deal with emergencies? As the widow of a police officer puts it, it is the job of these people to "rush toward danger", that is, to rush forward in face of danger.

【解　析】Here *a fallen police officer* means "a police officer who has been killed"（已故的警官）。

8 In Toronto, Canada, downtown life stopped when more than 11,000 police and other emergency responders marched solemnly through the streets to honor Sergeant Ryan Russell, a 35-year-old "good man and good cop", who believed deeply in his commitment to protect and serve. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Sergeant Ryan Russell, 35-year-old, was a good man and a good policeman. He believed deeply that it was his duty to protect and serve the people. In the city center of Toronto, Canada, all other activities stopped when more than 11,000 police and other emergency responders marched seriously through the streets to honor him.

【解　析】本句为复合句，包含一个由 when 引导的时间状语从句和一个由 who 引导的非限制性定语从句，进一步说明 Sergeant Ryan Russell。

9 He tried to stop a drunk driver in a stolen snowplow with only his police automobile and his goodwill to help others. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】He tried to stop a drunk driver in a stolen snowplow with only his police car because he was kind and always willing to help others.

10 It used to be that the word *hero* was reserved for those who performed acts of distinct courage beyond the call of duty. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】In the past, the word *hero* was used particularly to refer to those who acted with remarkable courage and who did something that they did not have the duty to do.

【解　析】本句为复合句，这个从句里又包含一个由 who 引导的定语从句。"It used to be that"用于表示过去的某一习惯或情况如今已不存在，与目前情况或习惯有所不同。

11 A soldier who runs through gunfire to rescue other military personnel is seen as a hero. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】A soldier is regarded as a hero if he is brave enough to risk his own life through gunfire to save the lives of other team members.

【解　析】本句为复合句,包含一个由 who 引导的定语从句。

12 So are larger-than-life leaders such as Nelson Mandela, who emerged after 27 years of jail, confined in a solitary chamber. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】Those extraordinary leaders, such as Nelson Mandela, are also regarded as heroes. Mandela had been kept alone in a room in prison for 27 years.

【解　析】本句为复合句,包含一个由 who 引导的非限制性定语从句。句中 so＋be＋subject 的句型为倒装结构,意思为"……也是如此"。

13 But today, our heroes are average men and women, "everyday heroes" to whom we can relate, people like us. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】But today, our heroes are average men and women; they are "everyday heroes" that we are able to understand; they are people like us.

【解　析】本句为复合句,包含一个 whom 引导的定语从句,whom 前面的介词 to 来自不及物动词 relate,relate to 是定语从句中实际的谓语动词短语。先行词 everyday heroes 是 average men and women 的同位语。

14 However, while many people honor Sgt. Russell, some people raise this question when they try to make sense of a tragedy like Sgt. Russell's: "Some first responders do not succeed in helping others and they get injured or die in their efforts. Do these people become heroes because of what happens to them as they try to help others—instead of what they actually make happen?" (Para. 9)

【Meaning】However, although many people think Sgt. Russell is respectable, some people ask the question when they are trying to understand a tragedy like Sgt. Russell's. "Some first responders fail to help other people; instead, they get injured or give their lives in their efforts to help. Do they become heroes because they get injured or die?"

【解　析】本句为复合句,包含一个由 when 引导的时间状语从句,这个从句里又包含一个时间状语从句 when they try to make sense of a tragedy...。第二句也为复合句,包含一个由 because of 引导的原因状语从句,这个从句里又包含一个时间状语从句 as they try to help others。

15 Through grief and rage, Ms. McMahon founded Share the Road, a cycling association, and worked tirelessly until the government established "Greg's Law", legislation that gave authority to police to immediately seize the automobiles of drunk drivers caught on the road. (Para. 10)

【Meaning】After experiencing extreme sadness and anger at her husband's unexpected death, Ms. McMahon founded Share the Road, an organization for cyclists, and worked very hard until the government established "Greg's Law". According to this law, police have the right to immediately take possession of a car if the driver is found drunk and caught on the road.

【解　析】本句有一个由 until 引导的时间状语从句,在这个从句中又包含一个定语从句 that gave authority to police...,其中 give authority to 意为"授权"。

16 We count on first responders to rush toward danger, especially when it involves us or those we love. We expect nothing less. (Para. 12)

【Meaning】We depend on first responders to rush toward danger to help, especially when we ourselves or those we love are involved. That is exactly what we expect.

【解　析】第一句为复合句,包含一个时间状语从句 especially when it involves...。

17 So when one of them dies doing that, we should recognize the heroic action even though we may doubt our own capacity to be heroic ourselves. (Para. 12)

【Meaning】So when one of them loses their life when rushing toward danger, we should admit and admire their brave behavior and great courage, even though we are not sure if we ourselves would be able to be brave enough to do the same, to rush toward danger.

【解　　析】本句为复合句，包含一个时间状语从句 when one of them... 和一个让步状语从句 even though we may doubt...

18 The inspiring stories of heroes help remind us that ordinary people can do extraordinary things, whether it is in the fulfillment of their duties or as part of everyday life. (Para. 13)

【Meaning】The encouraging stories of heroes help remind us that ordinary people can do amazing things, whether when they are carrying out their duties, or doing them as part of their daily life.

【解　　析】ordinary people 意为"平凡人"。extraordinary things 意为"不平凡的事"。

四、课文译文

我们身边的英雄

1. 谁是当今的英雄？在一个英雄主义发扬光大的时代，"英雄"一词已经变得更加常见。我们把各种困难和悲剧的受害者和幸存者称为"英雄"。那么，我们身边哪些人是英雄？

2. 在亚利桑那州图森市枪击案发生后的日子里，许多人都把20岁的政界同事丹尼尔·赫尔南德兹描述为英雄。在骇人的枪击案发生时，他勇敢地冒着危险，去救助受害者之一，也是他的上司和朋友的加布里埃尔·吉福德议员。丹尼尔把她的头托高，便于她呼吸，并用力摁住她的伤口。他用温柔体贴的话语安慰她，告诉她他会把她的丈夫和父母找来，告诉她一切都会好的。而且，他一直守护在她身边，在去医院的路上，他也一直在救护车里陪伴在她身旁。

3. 图森枪击事件中的另一位英雄是多利·斯托达德。多利为保护妻子梅维献出了自己的生命。多利和他的妻子自小青梅竹马。一听到枪声，多利马上扑在妻子身上为她挡住扫射过来的子弹。在葬礼仪式上，牧师说道："多利一生英雄，非死才为英雄。"多利·斯托达德一直以来以精神高尚、富有爱心而为大家所熟知，他至死也同他生前一样在帮助他人。

4. 这些都是平民英雄。他们在特别危急的情况下，本能地做出勇敢而高尚的举动。

5. 但是，那些应急救援人员是否也算是英雄呢？用一位已故警官遗孀的话来说，他们的工作就是"迎着危险上"。

6. 在加拿大多伦多市，11000多名警察和其他应急救援人员肃穆地在大街上游行，纪念这位具有高度保护和服务意识的"好男人和好警察"、35岁的瑞安·罗素警佐。当时整个市中心的其他活动都停止了。罗素警佐迅速采取行动，保护他人免受伤害。他仅凭着一辆警车和一颗帮助他人的善良心，试图挡住一辆醉驾司机驾驶的偷来的扫雪车。不幸的是，他没能拦住醉驾司机，不幸牺牲。

7. 在过去，"英雄"一词仅限于称呼那些做出超乎职责范围的特别英勇的行为的人们。一位战士冒着枪林弹雨去抢救其他战友，他被看作英雄。同样，超凡卓越的具有传奇色彩的领袖人物也是英雄，比如纳尔逊·曼德拉。被囚禁于单人牢房27年后，曼德拉终于摆脱了牢狱生活。他没有抱怨，作为南非的第一位黑人总统，他努力奋斗，致力于创建和谐国家，促进社会化解以往的矛盾。

8. 但是今天，我们的英雄是平凡的男男女女，他们是我们看得见、摸得着的"平民英雄"，是和我们一样的普通人。

9. 虽然很多人尊重罗素警佐，但有些人在试图理解像罗素警佐这样的悲剧时提出了一个问题："有

些应急救援人员在帮助他人时没能获得成功,而自己却受伤或牺牲了。这些人不是因为他们成功帮助了别人,而是因为他们在帮助别人时所遭遇的不幸才成为英雄的吗?”

10. 我问道路交通安全倡导者艾莉诺·麦克玛农,她是否认为罗素警官是位英雄。麦克玛农女士的已故丈夫曾是一名警官,2006年的一天,他未当班,却在骑车时因一名醉驾卡车司机肇事而丧生。在悲伤和愤怒中,麦克玛农女士创立了“道路共享单车联合会”,一个自行车协会。她不懈地努力,直到政府颁布了《格雷格法案》,授予警察在路上一旦发现醉驾司机就当场予以扣留车辆的权力。

11. 麦克玛农女士回答说,她认为罗素警官确实是英雄。“想象一下,在狂风暴雪中,这位警官想道:我必须挡住这辆扫雪车,不让它伤及他人。”麦克玛农女士概括了为什么她认为许多警官都是英雄的原因:“害怕危险是正常的。大多数人因害怕危险而奔向安全之处躲避危险,这也是正常的。而英雄则恰恰相反。他们迎着危险上,为的是帮助需要帮助的人。”

12. 我们指望应急救援人员冲向危险,尤其是当我们或我们所爱的人身处险境时。这正是我们对应急救援人员的期望。所以,当他们中的一位因冲向危险而遭遇不幸时,我们应认可他们的英勇行为,哪怕我们可能怀疑自己是否具有这样的勇气。

13. 英雄们激励人心的事迹有助于提醒我们,平凡的人也可以做出不平凡的事,不管是履行职责,还是在日常生活中。我们向消防员、警察和普通平民致敬,赞扬其大无畏的精神。也许,甚至更为重要的是,我们要通过改变让他们遭遇不幸的环境来向他们致敬。通过缅怀他们,我们可以从中得到鼓舞。一旦有情况召唤我们挺身而出时,我们会当英雄吗?但愿我们会!

五、练习答案及详解

Pre-reading activities

Scripts:

On a New York City subway, it's hard enough to find someone who'll give up his seat to some stranger, let alone be willing to give his life for another person.

Fifty-year-old Wesley Austrey was a construction worker. One day he was standing on a subway platform with his two little daughters. Right in front of them stood a man. Suddenly the man slipped off the platform edge and fell to the tracks between the two rails. The headlights of a train appeared. Wesley had to make a quick decision. He jumped onto the tracks. He lay on top of the man, pressing him down in a space roughly a foot deep. There was only one half inch of space between the two men and the train. The train rolled overhead before it stopped and people got them out.

Wesley's children were extremely scared at the scene, and Wesley himself was scared too. “I got to talk to him,” later he told news reporters. “Sir, you can't move. I've got two kids up there looking for their father to come back. I don't know you and you don't know me, but listen, don't panic. I'm here to save you.”

The man Wesley saved is 20-year-old Cameron Hollopeter. Except for a few small wounds, Hollopeter was doing fine. Wesley refused medical help because, he said, nothing was wrong. He visited Hollopeter in the hospital before he went to work. “I don't feel like I did something extraordinary; I just saw someone who needed help,” he said. “I did what I felt was right.”

1 Listen to a news report and fill in the blanks.

1. 50 2. construction worker 3. fell 4. jumped onto 5. pressed

2 Listen to the news report again and check your answers.

3 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. • Yes, I think Wesley Austrey is a real hero because he showed unusual courage in times of danger. Few people would jump onto the tracks to save a stranger from a racing train.
   • No, I don't think Wesley Austrey is a hero. He was behaving irresponsibly. He should have realized that he had two little children to take care of. What would his kids do if he died!
2. • I am most impressed by Wesley talking about his own fear and what he said to the stranger. From the report we can tell that Wesley loved his children and that he was fully aware of the danger he was facing. This further shows how caring and how courageous he was.
   • I am most impressed when Wesley said, "I don't feel like I did something extraordinary; I just saw someone who needed help". This shows that Wesley is a warm-hearted and courageous person. When it is time for him to offer help, he just extends his hand. This is why when a stranger slipped off the platform, Wesley immediately jumped onto the tracks to save him, regardless of the extreme danger involved.
3. I doubt if I would be courageous enough to jump onto the tracks to save the man. I would probably shout at the man, telling him to stay between the rails, lower his body, and keep his head down. And then I would ask the subway staff for help.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

1 Answer the following questions.

1. Today both victims and survivors of all kinds of difficulties and tragedies are described as heroes.
2. Because during a mass shooting in Tucson, Daniel Hernandez courageously ran through the danger to save one of the victims.
3. The priest meant that Dory was a hero not just because he gave his life for his wife, but also because he had been known for his remarkable spirit and love of humanity when he was alive.
4. First responders are people, such as police officers and firefighters, whose job is to rush toward danger. They are supposed to be the first to arrive at the scene of accidents and deal with emergencies.
5. In the past, heroes were those who acted courageously beyond the call of duty or great leaders, while today's heroes can be average men and women.
6. Eleanor McMahon considered many police officers to be heroes because they rush toward danger to help those in need, against the human instinct to rush toward safety and away from danger.
7. The inspiring stories of heroes help remind us that ordinary people can do extraordinary things, whether it is to fulfill their duties, or as part of everyday life.
8. We honor heroes by recognizing their heroism and, more importantly, by working to change the circumstances that led to their death.

Critical thinking

2 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. In my view, a hero is someone who:

- is brave or even risks their lives in face of dangers;
- saves others in trouble;
- shows great courage when others hesitate or fear;
- sacrifices themselves for others.

2. Yes, people who give their lives for others should certainly be considered heroes, no matter whom they save—whether it is a family member or a stranger. By rescuing others, they demonstrate extraordinary courage and the rare qualities of a hero.
3. Yes, I agree that "Heroism is latent in every human soul." I think everyone, kids or adults, men or women, wants to be a hero. Some want to be a hero because they want to be respected or loved by others; they would like to gain fame or attention. Some want to be a hero because they want to feel powerful for themselves. Still some others want to be a hero just because they want to help those in need, even by sacrificing their own interest, health or lives. No matter what motivates the hero, it is a glorious feeling when others look up to you as a hero.
4. Yes, I think they should be regarded as heroes even though their efforts fail. They are heroes because they are brave and ready to sacrifice themselves for others. Their act and sacrifice will set a good example for other people, no matter whether their efforts have brought about desirable results or not. The most important thing is that they have tried while many other people would have neither the intention nor the courage to have a try.
5. It is heroes who protect us from danger and give us strength, comfort and confidence. To honor heroes, we should:
   - spread their names and stories in legends, the media, songs, movies, etc.;
   - put up monuments for commemoration;
   - name places after them;
   - set up a special day to remember them;
   - take good care of them and their families;
   - give them special honors; and
   - call on society to learn from them.

Language focus

Words in use

3 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be only used once.

1. involve
   【译文】幸运的是,此次事故因当时车辆非常少,并没有牵涉到很多人。
2. fulfilled
   【译文】经过多年的努力工作,她实现了自己的抱负,成为一名时尚设计师。
3. intense
   【译文】他们一直在努力发展业务,但在如此激烈的市场竞争中,他们也不知道是否有一天会取得成功。
4. advocate
   【译文】音乐在我们的生命中非常重要,因此很多音乐教师和音乐教育家都提倡从小就要学习一门

乐器。

5. circumstances

【译文】这个规则清晰地印刻在每个人的心中,在任何情况下都不应该被误解。

6. respond

【译文】我的女儿非常害羞;她很害怕在课上提问问题,回答问题或与其他孩子交流。

7. subsequent

【译文】我仅收到了他的一封信,信放在我的办公桌上;收到他的信之后就再也没有他的消息。

8. confined

【译文】对需要帮助的孩子们提供服务不局限于当地的社会服务部门。

9. reconciled

【译文】我们祈祷所有的国家都能彼此和解,全世界所有人都能获得和平。

10. distinct

【译文】他给出的意见虽小,但却使我们之前的计划有明显的改进;我很感谢他的意见。

Word building

4 Add *-able*, *-ance*, or *-ment* to or remove them from the following words to form new words.

Words learned	New words formed
-able	
agree	agreeable
apply	applicable
desire	desirable
sustain	sustainable
compare	comparable
-ance	
accept	acceptance
attend	attendance
assist	assistance
-ment	
entertainment	entertain
assignment	assign
engage	engagement

5 Fill in the blanks with the newly-formed words in Activity 4. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. assistance

【译文】如果寻找某本书有困难,你可以向图书管理员寻求帮助。

2. comparable

【译文】我现有的经验与你几十年前获得的经验截然不同,没有什么可比性。

3. attendance

【译文】几乎没有人知道这位著名的作家是通过广泛的阅读和参与公共讲座自学成才的。

4. engagement

【译文】他们计划成立一个新的院系,这个院系以直接与学生进行互动为教学理念。

5. applicable

【译文】他的建议听起来很有吸引力,但遗憾的是,对于一家小公司出现的管理问题不太适用。

6. assigned

【译文】这位年轻的工程师一直以来都很努力地工作,以便完成导师布置给他的任务。

7. acceptance

【译文】我们的项目旨在帮助高中毕业生找到最好的大学,并获得他们中意的大学的录取。

8. entertain

【译文】好的电影不仅可以娱乐大家,也可帮助我们理解人生。

9. agreeable

【译文】他很高兴得知他的父母都赞同他出国留学。

10. sustainable

【译文】我们在使用国家丰富资源的同时,必须要考虑到国家的可持续发展。

11. desirable

【译文】想要成为我们公司的销售代表,你最好既了解医学知识,又了解市场。

Banked cloze

6 Fill in the blanks by selecting suitable words from the word bank. You may not use any of the words more than once.

1. L

【解析】此空考查的是固定搭配 apply to 的用法,"应用到,适用于"。此处可理解为"通过对伤口施压。"

2. N

【解析】根据语法判断,此处应填形容词,结合前半句话"通过对伤口施压,说些亲切的话语"因此选择 tender"温柔的"最为合适。

3. J

【解析】根据语法判断,此处应填入动词的过去分词形式,构成本句的谓语动词部分,同时根据句子含义,填入 hailed"致敬,赞扬",此句可理解为"他被公众认为是个英雄而受到赞扬"。

4. F

【解析】根据语法判断,此处应填形容词或名词构成主系表结构,同时结合上下文转折关系及含义,填入 remarkable"引人注目的,卓越的,非凡的"。此句可理解为"尽管献身于公共服务意义非凡,但在他的书……中,他并不认为自己是个英雄"。

5. M

【解析】根据语法判断,此处应填入名词构成"形容词+名词"。此处可理解为"巨大的悲剧"。因此选择 tragedy"悲剧"最为合适。

6. C

【解析】根据语法判断,此处应填入动词的过去分词形式构成被动句,结合句意可理解为"事故发生

后，一些出版商就曾说服我让我出书”，因此填 pushed，有“说服”之意。

7. H

【解析】此空考查的是固定搭配 commitment to 的用法，“承诺”。此处可理解为“承诺一生都要帮助他人。”

8. K

【解析】此空考查的是固定搭配 focus on 的用法，“集中于、专注于、重点在于”。此处可理解为“集中在公共服务方面”。

9. A

【解析】此空考查的是搭配 involve sb. in sth. 的用法，“使某人参与某事”。此处可理解为“使他们参与到他们的社区中去”。

10. E

【解析】根据语法此句应填入名词，再结合搭配 an advocate for “在某方面的倡议者”。此处可理解为“作为教育方面的倡议者”。

Expressions in use

7 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. shield... from

【译文】她举起手遮挡阳光保护眼睛，以便能更清楚地看见在她前面的这个男人。

2. make sense of

【译文】这个男孩用了一个多小时来学习这些标识，但仍然不能理解，便向老师寻求帮助。

3. called on

【译文】他们呼吁发达国家把更多的钱用来保护环境。

4. in need

【译文】我们会持续关心那些需要帮助的人，并致力于建立一个惠泽富饶的社会。

5. are/get caught up in

【译文】很多人都专注于事业和养育子女，结果忽略了婚姻也同样需要关注。

6. relate to

【译文】我最喜欢的节目就是那种大众百姓也能理解的科学话题类节目。

7. sum up

【译文】最后，我总结下：和你们在一起工作令我感到十分愉悦。

8. count on

【译文】他是一个无论你什么时候需要帮助都可以依靠的人。

9. In her words

【译文】贝蒂喜欢阅读，在她看来，“阅读是世界上最美妙的事情”。

10. reserved for

【译文】这家饭店非常受欢迎，因为它有很多独立的小房间，以备有小孩儿的家庭使用。

Structure analysis and writing

Structure analysis

问题—范例—结论模式型段落：为了使自己的观点更加清晰，作者通常会先提出一个问题，然后给出一个或多个例子来证明该观点，最后概括问题的答案作为段落的总结。

8 Read Paragraphs 9 - 12 of Text A and analyze the pattern of question-example-conclusion.

Question:
Some first responders do not succeed in helping others and they get injured or die in their efforts. Do these people become heroes because of what happens to them as they try to help others—instead of what they actually make happen?
(Para. 9)

↓

Example:
Ms. McMahon was the founder of a cycling association. Her husband was a police officer who was killed in an off-duty bicycling accident. Ms. McMahon thought that Sgt. Russell was indeed a hero because he showed distinct courage when trying hard in a heavy snowstorm to stop the snowplow before it hurt others. She summed up that it's natural for most people to rush toward safety and away from danger. Heroes, however, rush toward danger to help those in need.
(Paras. 10 - 11)

↓

Conclusion:
We expect first responders to rush forward in times of danger. So when they die doing that, we should recognize their heroic action even though we ourselves may not be that brave.
(Para. 12)

Structured writing

9 Write a paragraph on one of the following topics. One topic has an outline that you can follow.

Where does happiness come from? Ann set a good example for us. Ann was a full-time worker with low income, but she devoted a lot of her time to helping people in her community. One day, Ann was diagnosed with a severe heart disease, but she did not have enough money for treatment. When people in her community heard the news, they raised money for her and helped her with taking care of her children. Although Ann was very sick, she was moved and grateful. She enjoyed helping others, who now in turn were pleased to help her when she was in trouble. Happiness is indeed the result of helping each other.

Translation

10 Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.

作为通过中国游历亚洲的首批欧洲人之一，马可·波罗可能是中国人最熟知的外国商人和航海家。从 1271 年到 1295 年，他和他的家人游历广泛，遍及欧洲和亚洲。其间，他在中国留居了 17 年。他

的著作《马可·波罗游记》描述了他游历亚洲的旅程，让欧洲人首次全面领略了包括中国、印度和日本在内的远东地区的情况。从他的文字叙述中，西方人第一次了解到瓷器、煤炭、火药、印刷术、纸币以及丝绸。在15世纪末和16世纪欧洲发现与征服的大航海时代，马可·波罗所记录的大量新的地理信息得到了广泛使用。在他去世后的几个世纪里，马可·波罗获得了他在有生之年未曾获得的赞誉。马可·波罗的故事鼓舞了其他无数的探险者去踏上征程，发现世界。

11 Translate the following paragraph into English.

Zheng He was the most famous maritime explorer in Chinese history. In 1405 AD, the ruler of the Ming Dynasty sent Zheng He on a voyage to the Western Seas in order to strengthen border defense and develop trade by sea. In the following 28 years, Zheng He led his fleet, made seven voyages to the Western Seas with over 100,000 crew members in total, and visited more than 30 countries and regions. The fleet traveled far into South Asia and West Asia, and made all the way to the continent of Africa. Zheng He's voyages to the Western Seas were a great feat in the world's navigation history. It showed Zheng He's outstanding navigation and organization talents; meanwhile, it exhibited the national strength and prestige of the Ming Dynasty, and strengthened the relationships between the Ming Dynasty and the overseas countries.

Section B

A hero's aspiration



一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文是一篇记叙文,讲述一个叫琼达的警官的个人经历。琼达警官一直为在多年前未能救助一个十几岁的少年而终日生活在懊悔恐惧中,在那次事故后她曾多次努力调节自己的心态,可是还是摆脱不了那段记忆。终于,同样的场景又出现了,琼达发誓不要放过这次救人的机会来修复内心的愧疚,一个名叫桑迪的老妇人驾驶一辆汽车滑下公路,掉进了道尔顿河,当天下着雨,雨水使河水猛涨,琼达努力去砸车窗,一次又一次失败后,最终车窗被砸成碎片,桑迪被救了出来。之后琼达和桑迪成了好朋友,桑迪感激琼达的救命之恩,琼达也感谢桑迪,她内心的伤口总算愈合了。

(二)背景知识

第六感

第六感是标准名称"超感官知觉"(英文简称 ESP)的俗称,又称"心觉",此能力能透过正常感官之外的渠道接收信息,能预知将要发生的事情,与当事人之前的经验累积所得的推断无关。普通人的感官(五感)包括眼(视觉)、耳(听觉)、鼻(嗅觉)、舌(味觉)、肌肤(触觉)或是其他现今科学熟悉的感官。由于感官的定义很模糊,故"超感官"的定义也很模糊,可通常认为"超感官"是指现今科学还不熟悉的信息,这些能力与现代研究的神通有相应之处。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Paras. 1-2 Jonda deeply regretted that she hadn't saved the teenager many years ago. 琼达为多年前未能救助一个少年而感到深深愧疚。

Paras. 3-14 Jonda saved an old lady named Sandy from a car dropping in the river. 琼达从落入河水中的汽车里救出一个名叫桑迪的老妇人。

Para. 15 Jonda was healed and free of her past regret. 琼达内心的创伤愈合了,摆脱了过去的懊悔。

2. 写作特点

本文为记叙文,包含了记叙文的六要素:时间、地点、人物、起因、经过、结果。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 **aspiration** /ˌæspɪˈreɪʃn/ *n.*

[C, U] a strong desire to have or achieve sth. 强烈愿望;志向;抱负

—He has never had any aspiration to earn a lot of money. 他从未企求赚很多钱。

【同义】ambition

2 barely /ˈbeəli/ *ad.*

(1) only with great difficulty or effort 勉强才能

—She was very old and barely able to walk. 她年纪非常大，只能勉强走几步路。

(2) almost not 几乎不

—She was barely aware of his presence. 她几乎注意不到他。

3 lane /leɪn/ *n.*

(1) [C] one of the two or three parallel areas on a road which are divided by painted lines to keep traffic apart 车道

—That idiot changed lanes without signaling. 那个白痴没打灯就改换车道了。

(2) [C] a narrow road in the countryside (乡间的)小路

—We drove along a muddy lane to reach the farmhouse. 我们驾车沿泥泞的小路到达农舍。

4 terror /ˈterə/ *n.*

[U] a feeling of extreme fear 恐惧；惊恐

—People fled from the explosion in terror. 人们惊恐地逃离了爆炸现场。

【派生】terrorism *n.* 恐怖主义 terrorist *n.* 恐怖主义者

5 awful /ˈɔːfl/ *a.*

very bad or unpleasant 糟糕的；恶劣的；讨厌的

—The last six months have been awful for her. 最近六个月对她来说相当难过。

【同义】terrible

6 abolish /əˈbɒlɪʃ/ *vt.*

officially get rid of a law, system, practice, etc. 废止；废除；取消

—Slavery was abolished in the US in the 19th century. 美国于 19 世纪废除了奴隶制。

【派生】abolishment *n.* 废止，革除，取消

7 image /ˈɪmɪdʒ/ *n.*

[C] a picture that you have in your mind, especially about what sb. or sth. is like or the way they look 印象；概念

—He had no visual image of her, only her name. 他记不得她的样子了，只记得她的名字。

【辨析】imagine *v.* 想象；设想

8 slippery /ˈslɪpəri/ *a.*

a slippery surface, object, etc. is difficult to hold, walk on, etc. because it is smooth, wet, or covered in sth. such as ice or oil 滑的；湿滑的

—In places the path can be wet and slippery. 这条小径有些路段又湿又滑。

9 concrete /ˈkɒŋkriːt/ *n.*

[U] a substance used for building that is made by mixing sand, small stones, cement, and water 混凝土

—Mixing concrete is hard physical work. 拌和混凝土是辛苦体力活。

a. definite and specific 具体的

—What does that mean in concrete terms? 具体来说那到底是什么意思？

10 primitive /ˈprɪmətɪv/ *a.*

(1) very simple in design (设计)简单的

—The first station buildings were quite primitive. 最初的车站设计很简单。

(2) at a very simple stage of development, before modern technology 原始的

—The constitution of a primitive society is not necessarily simple. 原始社会的结构未必简单。

【派生】primitiveness *n.* 原始；原始性

11 crystal /ˈkrɪstl/ *n.*

[C，U] 水晶

—People imitate diamonds with crystal. 人们用水晶仿造钻石。

12 reflect /rɪˈflekt/ *v.*

if sth. reflects light，the light shines back off it 反射（光）

—The windows reflected the bright afternoon sunlight. 窗户反射着午后明媚的阳光。

vt.

(1) if a surface reflects sth.，you can see the image of that thing on the surface 映射；反射

—She could see her face reflected in the car's windshield. 她看到自己的脸映照在汽车的挡风玻璃上。

(2) show or be a sign of a particular situation or feeling 显示；反映

—Our newspaper aims to reflect the views of the local community. 我们的报纸旨在反映当地人民的心声。

13 lean /liːn/ *vi.*

(1) support yourself in a slopping position against a wall or other surface 倚；靠

—She walked slowly，leaning on her son's arm. 她倚靠着她儿子的手臂缓慢行走。

(2) move or bend your body in a particular direction 屈身；倾斜

—I leaned back in my chair. 我仰靠在椅背上。

【搭配】lean on sb. /sth. 依靠，依赖（……的帮助和支持）

14 ignore /ɪɡˈnɔː/ *vt.*

(1) not consider sth. or not let it influence you 忽略；忽视；不顾

—I made a suggestion but they chose to ignore it. 我提了个建议，但他们不予理会。

(2) pretend that you have not noticed sb. or sth. 假装没有注意到；无视

—She ignored him and carried on with her work. 她没理他，继续干她的活。

【派生】ignorant *a.* （对某事物）不了解的；无知的；愚昧的；无学识的

15 patrol /pəˈtrəʊl/ *n.*

(1) [C] a group of people or vehicles that move around a place in order to prevent trouble or crime 巡逻队；巡查队；巡逻车队

—The patrol pushed off before dawn. 巡逻队于黎明前离开了。

(2) [C，U] the movement of a patrol around a place 巡逻；巡查

—Security guards make regular patrols at night. 夜间保安人员定时巡逻。

v. move regularly around a place in order to prevent trouble or crime 巡逻；巡查

—Troops patrolled the border day and night. 军队日夜在边境地区巡逻。

16 slam /slæm/ *vt.*

(1) put，move or hit sth. somewhere with great force 猛放；用力移；猛击

—Henry slammed the phone down angrily. 亨利气呼呼地摔下电话。

(2) shut a door or lid with great force so that it makes a loud noise，often because you are angry 使劲关；把……砰地关上

—I heard the door slam behind him. 我听见他随手砰地把门关上了。

17 halt /hɔːlt/ *n.*

[sing.] a stop or pause 停止;暂停

—Work came to a halt when the machine broke down. 机器一坏,工作便停了下来。

18 yell /jel/ *v.*

(*also* ~ out) shout or say sth. very loudly, esp. because you are frightened, angry or excited (尤因恐惧、愤怒或激动而)叫喊,大嚷大叫

—She yelled at the child to get down from the wall. 她喊着让小孩从墙上下来。

【搭配】yell at sb./sth. 对……大喊大叫

19 backup /ˈbækʌp/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] people or equipment that can be used when extra help is needed 后备人员;支援人员;备用设备

—We can use him as a backup if one of the other players drops out. 如果有参赛者退出,我们可以用他作为替补。

(2) [C] a copy of information on your computer that you make in case you lose the information 备份

—Make a backup of any work you do on the computer. 你计算机上做的任何工作都要备份。

20 swell /swel/ *v.*

increase in amount or number (数量)逐渐增加;(使)增多,增大

—The crowd swelled to around 10,000. 人群扩大到 10,000 人左右。

vi. become larger and rounder than normal, used esp. about parts of the body 肿,肿胀

—Her ankle was already starting to swell. 她的脚踝已经开始肿起来了。

【反义】shrink

21 monster /ˈmɒnstə/ *n.*

[C] an imaginary or ancient creature that is large, ugly, and frightening 妖怪;怪兽;怪物

—Fishermen and sailors sometimes claim to have seen monsters in the sea. 渔夫和水手有时声称看到过海里的妖怪。

22 roar /rɔː/ *vi.*

to make a deep, very loud noise 吼叫;呼啸

—The gun roared deafeningly. 枪炮轰鸣声震耳欲聋。

n. [C] a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by sb.'s voice 吼叫声;咆哮声

—He let out a roar of laughter. 他放声大笑。

23 limb /lɪm/ *n.*

(1) [C] a large branch of a tree 大树枝

—She sat on a limb of the tree and looked down. 她坐在一根大树枝上往下看。

(2) [C] an arm or leg 肢;手臂;腿

—For a while, she lost the use of her limbs. 好一会儿她四肢都动弹不得。

【习语】out on a limb 无人支持;孤立无援

24 current /ˈkʌrənt/ *n.*

[C] a continuous movement of water in a river, lake, or sea (河、湖或海的)水流,潮流

—Strong currents can be very dangerous for swimmers. 激流对游泳者会很危险。

a. (*only before noun*) happening or existing now 现时的;当前的;现行的

—In its current state, the car is worth £1,000. 这辆车照现在的车况来看值 1000 英镑。

25submerge /səb'mɜːdʒ/ *vt.*

cover sth. completely with water or another liquid 使浸没;淹没

—The tunnel entrance was submerged by rising sea water. 隧道入口被涨起的海水淹没。

26heave /hiːv/ *v.*

push, pull, or lift a heavy object using a lot of effort (用力)推,拉,提,举

—I managed to heave the trunk down the stairs. 我用力把箱子弄下楼梯。

vi. move up and down with very strong movements 强烈起伏

—The sea heaved up and down beneath the boat. 船下面的大海波涛汹涌。

【习语】heave into sight/view (尤指船)从远处出现;进入视野

27lord /lɔːd/ *n.*

(1) [sing.] (Lord) a title of God or Jesus Christ, used when praying 主(祷告时对上帝或耶稣的称呼)

—Thank you, Lord, for your blessings. 感谢主的赐福。

(2) [C] (*also* Lord) a man who has a high rank in the British aristocracy (英国的)(男性)贵族

—Lord Salisbury 索尔兹伯里勋爵

28lower /'ləʊə/ *a.*

below another thing of the same kind 较低的;较下的

—Nina chewed her lower lip anxiously. 尼娜焦虑不安地咬着下唇。

v. reduce sth. in amount, degree, strength, etc., or become less 减少;降低

—This drug is used to lower blood pressure. 这种药用于降血压。

【反义】upper

29collapse /kə'læps/ *vi.*

(1) suddenly fall down or become unconscious because you are ill or weak (因病或虚弱)突然倒下,昏倒

—He collapsed in the street and died two hours later. 他昏倒在大街上,两小时后便去世了。

(2) if a building, wall, etc. collapses, it falls down suddenly, usu. because it is weak or damaged 倒塌;坍塌

—The roof collapsed under the weight of snow. 房顶在雪的重压下突然坍塌下来。

30badge /bædʒ/ *n.*

[C] a small piece of metal or plastic that you carry to show people that you work for a particular organization 徽章;证章;徽牌

—He pulled out a badge and said he was a cop. 他拿出工作证,说他是警察。

31identify /aɪ'dentɪˌfaɪ/ *vt.*

(1) be a sign that shows who or what sb. is 是……的标志;显示出

—In many cases, the clothes people wear identify them as belonging to a particular social class. 很多情况下,人们的穿着显示出他们的社会阶级。

(2) recognize sb. and be able to say who they are 辨认,确认(某人)

—The bodies were identified as those of two suspected drug dealers. 那两具尸体被辨认出原是两名贩毒嫌疑犯。

(3) recognize sth. and understand exactly what it is 确认,识别(某物)

—Scientists have identified a link between diet and cancer. 科学家发现了饮食与癌症之间的关联。

【派生】identification *n.* 鉴定;确定

32betray /bɪ'treɪ/ *vt.*

(1) show feelings that you are trying to hide 流露(想掩饰的情感)

—His voice betrayed the worry he was trying to hide. 他的声音掩盖不了内心的担忧。

(2) be disloyal to sb. who trusts you, so that they are harmed or upset 背叛(信任你的人);对……不忠;出卖

—He was offered money to betray his colleagues. 有人收买他出卖他的同事。

【派生】betrayal *n.* (被)背叛,出卖

33 crack /kræk/ *v.*

break or make sth. break, either so that it gets lines on its surface, or so that it breaks into pieces (使)裂开;(使)破裂

—Don't put boiling water in the glass or it will crack. 不要把沸水倒进这个玻璃杯里,否则它会破裂的。

n. [C] a very narrow space between two things or two parts of sth. 裂缝;缝隙

—He squeezed into a crack between two rocks. 他挤入两块岩石之间的缝隙中。

34 moan /məʊn/ *v.*

(1) make a long low sound because of pain, sadness, or pleasure 呻吟;呜咽

—She moaned and cried out in pain. 她痛得又是呻吟又是喊叫。

(2) complain about sth. in an annoying way 抱怨

—A lot of people moaned about the parking problems. 很多人抱怨停车问题。

35 grab /græb/ *vt.*

take hold of sb. or sth. with a sudden or violent movement 攫取;抓住

—I grabbed my bag and ran off. 我抓起我的包就跑。

【同义】seize

36 slender /ˈslendə/ *a.*

thin in an attractive or graceful way 修长的;苗条的;纤细的

—She is slender and stylish. 她身材修长,穿着时髦。

【同义】slim

37 streak /striːk/ *vi.*

move very quickly 快速移动

—A car pulled out and streaked off down the road. 一辆汽车驶出后沿着公路疾驰而去。

【同义】speed

38 stiff /stɪf/ *a.*

if you are stiff or a part of your body is stiff, you feel pain in your muscles and cannot move easily (肌肉)疼痛的,僵硬的,不灵活的

—I'm really stiff after that bike ride yesterday. 昨天骑了那趟自行车,我觉得浑身酸痛。

39 heal /hiːl/ *v.*

(1) become mentally or emotionally strong again after a bad experience, or help sb. to do this (在精神和情感上)(使)复原;(使)坚强起来

—It was a chance to heal the wounds. 那是个弥合创伤的机会。

(2) become healthy again, or make sth. healthy again (使)康复,复原

—This will help to heal your cuts and scratches. 这个会有助于治好割伤和擦伤。

40 acute /əˈkjuːt/ *a.*

(1) very serious or severe 严重的

—There is an acute shortage of water. 严重缺水。

(2) used for describing the senses and abilities of sb. who notices things very quickly and easily 灵敏的;敏锐的

—He is an acute observer of the social scene. 他是个敏锐的社会现状观察者。

【派生】acuteness *n.* 敏锐,剧烈

41 nightmare /ˈnaɪtˌmeə/ *n.*

[C] a very frightening dream 噩梦;梦魇

—Years after the accident I still have nightmares about it. 事故发生很多年后,我依然做噩梦。

(二)短语

1 live in terror of sb./sth.

be very afraid of sb. or sth. all the time 一直很害怕某人/某物

—She lives in terror of losing her job. 她一直胆战心惊地害怕丢了工作。

2 a string of

a number of similar things or events coming one after another 一连串,一系列(事件等)

—He owns a string of racing stables. 他有好多个赛马训练场。

3 turn off

(*infml.*) stop listening to or thinking about sb. or sth. 不再听;不再想

—I couldn't understand the lecture so I just turned off. 我听不懂讲课,所以也就不听了。

4 lean on

depend on sb. for support and encouragement, esp. at a difficult time 依靠;依赖

—The couple lean on each other for support. 夫妻俩互相扶持。

5 beat sb. to it

(*infml.*) do sth. before sb. else 抢在某人之前做

—I wanted the last piece of pie, but somebody beat me to it. 我想吃最后那块馅饼,可是有人抢先一步拿走了。

6 pull over

drive to the side of the road and stop your car, or make sb. else do this (使)(车辆和司机)停靠在路边

—If the ground begins shaking while you are driving, pull over and stay in your car. 如果您在开车时,地面开始摇晃,把车开到路边并待在车里面。

7 slip off/down

move smoothly, esp. off or from sth. 滑落;脱落

—The ring had slipped off Julia's finger. 戒指从朱莉娅的手指上滑脱了。

8 bring sth. to a halt

make sth. stop moving 使停止;使停住;使暂停

—The thought brought her to an abrupt halt. 她一想到这个便猛地停下了。

9 cut through

move or pass easily through water or air (在水中或空中)轻松地通过

—The boat cut effortlessly through the water. 小船轻快地在水中行驶。

10 fill up with

become full of sth. (使)充满;(使)装满

—Her eyes filled up with tears. 她的眼里噙满泪水。

11 identify sb. as sb.

show who sb. is 表明……的身份

—Eye witnesses identified the gunman as an army sergeant. 目击者认出了枪手是一名陆军中士。

12 catch up with

come from behind and reach sb. in front of you by going faster 追上;赶上

—After missing a term through illness he had to work hard to catch up with the others. 他因病休学一学期,不得不努力学习好赶上别的同学。

13 break through (sth.)

manage to get past or through sth. that is in your way 冲破;突破

—Several demonstrators broke through the barriers despite warnings from the police. 有几名游行示威者不顾警察警告,冲破了路障。

14 hold on

have your hands and arms tightly around sth. 紧紧抓住;紧紧抱住

—Hold on and don't let go until I say so. 握紧,等我让你松手时再松开。

15 let go (of sb. /sth.)

stop holding sb. or sth. 放手;松开

—Don't let go of the rope. 别松开绳子。

16 be grateful for

feel that you want to thank sb. because of sth. kind that they have done, or show this feeling 对……表示感激

—We would be grateful for any information you can give us. 如能提供信息我们将感激不尽。

三、课文注释

1 It was swaying. It was not swaying violently, and was still barely within the lane, but on the winding road in the fierce November rain, it was enough. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】The car was moving from one side to another. It was not swaying violently, and the driver still managed to keep it within the lane, but it was clear that the driver did so with great difficulty. With the road having a lot of turns and the heavy rain in November, an accident was likely to happen.

【解　析】wind 作动词的意思是(道路、河流等)蜿蜒,曲折前进,在文中变成了现在分词 winding 作定语修饰 road。

2 Jonda had a sixth sense for accidents and lived in terror of them ever since that awful night so many years ago. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】Ever since she was on the scene of a terrible accident one night many years ago, Jonda had lived in extreme fear of accidents. She also had a special ability to tell if there were accidents about to happen.

【解　析】live in terror of sb. /sth. : 一直很害怕某人/某物

3 She still couldn't abolish the terrible image of that teenager screaming for help, her help. Help that she had been unable to give as she was driven back by the intense heat of the car fire. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】She still couldn't get rid of the terrible picture that she had in her mind, which was of that teenager crying loudly for her help. But she had not been able to give the help because she was kept from

moving forward by the hot burning car.

【解　析】Help that she had been unable to... 是一个不完整的句子，用来表强调，加强语气，表达主人公的懊悔之心。

4 These were memories Jonda could never really turn off. She leaned on her training for support, and these days she never ignored any signs of the next accident. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】Jonda could never get rid of these memories. She depended on what she had been trained to remain strong, and these days she paid attention to any signs of potential accident.

【解　析】turn off 是非正式用法，意思是"不再听；不再想"。

5 She made a gesture to turn on the patrol car's flashing lights, but her partner, David, beat her to it; he too had sensed the danger. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】She made a gesture to turn on the patrol car's flashing lights, but her partner David did it first; he had also realized the potential danger.

【解　析】make a gesture/gestures 是常用搭配。这里用 make，而不说 do a gesture/gestures。make 和 do 是英语中搭配能力很强、用法很灵活的两个动词，注意和这两个动词有关的搭配。

6 The big car slowed, but not enough to stop at the warning sign as the driver slammed on the brakes. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】The driver of the big car pressed the brakes hard. The car slowed, but not in time to stop at the warning sign.

【解　析】本句中连词 as 的意思是"当……时"，引导时间状语从句。

7 Yelling at David to call for backup help, she slipped down the side of the road to the water's edge. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】She shouted at David, telling him to call the headquarters to send help, and at the same time she moved down the side of the road to the edge of the water.

【解　析】本句中 yelling 是现在分词做伴随状语。

8 It roared well over its banks, rushing swiftly with tree limbs caught in the raging current. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】The driver made deep and loud noise as the water rushed onto its banks and it flowed quickly, carrying big tree branches that had been swept down by the fast moving water.

【解　析】本句中 rushing 是现在分词做主句的伴随状语，caught 是过去分词做 limbs 的后置定语。

9 And half submerged in the current was the car. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】Half of the car was under the river water.

【解　析】该句子为倒装结构，表示强调。用于这类倒装结构的动词大多表示位置和状态，如 hang，stand，sit 等。

10 The driver would not have had time to make it out, Jonda knew. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Jonda knew that the driver would not have had time to manage to get out of the car.

【解　析】本句中 make it out 是 make it out alive 的简写形式，意思是"脱离生死险境"。

11 Her flashlight beam barely cut through the heavy rain, but she could still see the trapped driver screaming and banging the window. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】The small electric light that Jonda carried as almost of no help because of the heavy rain, but with its weak light, she could still see the driver stuck in the car, crying with fear and hitting the car window hard.

【解　析】cut through 的意思是"（在水中或空中）轻轻地通过"。

12 "David, I need the window hammer!" Jonda called over her radio and rushed toward the car. By the time she was at the driver door, the water was rushing up to her waist, and unbelievably cold, like her legs had been encased in ice. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】"David, I need the hammer to break the car window!" Jonda called through her radio and rushed toward the car. By the time she reached the door near the driver's seat, the water was rising up to her waist; and it was so cold that Jonda felt as if her legs had been wrapped in ice.

【解　　析】本句中 like 可以解释成 as if，但这是非正式用法，经常用于口语。

13 Her eyes, betraying her intense fear, were locked on Jonda's. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】Sandy looked steadily at Jonda. Through Sandy's eyes, Jonda could see that she was deeply frightened.

【解　　析】本句中 betraying 是现在分词做状语。

14 The glass, thick as the old car was big, barely cracked. And with a heavy heart Jonda felt the car heave. The current was loosening it from the tree. (Para. 9)

【Meaning】Just as the old car was big, the glass was thick, so the hammer could hardly break it. And Jonda felt sad as the car moved a bit. The current was pushing the car away from the tree.

15 "It's all right, ma'ma," Jonda said, tears streaking down her cheeks, unable to let go of the woman. (Para. 14)

【Meaning】"It's fine now, ma'ma," Jonda said, tears running down her cheeks. She kept holding the woman tightly.

【解　　析】本句中 streaking 是现在分词做伴随状语。

16 Stiff and sore, Sandy cried, "Thank you!" (Para. 14)

【Meaning】Sandy was unable to move her body and she felt painful. She cried, "Thank you!"

【解　　析】本句使用了省略，完整的结构应该是 Sandy was still and sore, and she cried, "Thank you!"

四、课文译文

一位英雄的愿望

1. 琼达警官的心跳加快了。在那个寒冷、漆黑的冬夜，路况险恶。肆虐的暴风雨令人视线模糊，但她仍能感觉到前面的车遇到了麻烦。那车开得左摇右晃。尽管歪得不是很厉害，而且勉强还开在车道内，但是走在十一月狂风暴雨的蜿蜒道路上，这已经够危险的了。琼达对事故有第六感，并且自从多年前那个可怕夜晚之后，她就一直生活在对事故的恐惧之中。琼达一直无法忘记那个少年尖叫着呼救，向她求救的骇人场景。但她当时却无能为力，因为汽车燃烧释放出来的热气使她无法靠近。

2. 按照以前的培训要求，琼达尽职尽责地在事后的事故报告中记录了事故情况，但并没有记录受害者的尖叫声和伤痛。记录是一种形式，即警方报告中一连串的事实；而回忆却又是另外一回事：熊熊燃烧的金属，湿滑水泥地上深深的车轮印，还有散落在血泊中，如同天然水晶一般闪烁的安全玻璃碎片。记录和回忆如此不同，着实令人奇怪。这些记忆在琼达的脑海中始终挥之不去，无法摆脱。她靠受过的训练来支撑自己。现在她不会忽视任何一个预示事故的征兆。她动手要去打开巡逻车上的警灯，但搭档戴维抢先一步打开了顶灯，他也察觉到了险情。戴维说："在有人受伤之前，咱们得让那辆车停下来。"

3. 那辆大轿车的司机猛踩刹车，车速慢了下来，但还是没来得及停在警示线之内。车子滑下公路，栽进道尔顿河里。

4. 琼达急忙停下警车,跳出车。她一边喊着让戴维呼叫支援,一边沿着路边小斜坡下滑到河边。

5. 大雨使河水暴涨,变成了一头凶猛的怪兽。河水咆哮着冲上两岸,急流夹杂着树枝汹涌奔腾。那辆车已经被河水淹没了一半。虽然车子很大,但是水流的力量把它顶到了一棵树上,副驾座被淹没,河水漫过挡风玻璃。"上帝啊!"琼达祈祷道。"别再像上次那样了!"太让人受不了了,这样的事太眼熟了,琼达心想。

6. 琼达知道,司机肯定来不及脱身。暴雨如注,手电的光亮几乎一点不起作用,但她还是能看到被困司机在呼喊着,拍打着车窗。河水正不断涌入车厢。

7. "戴维,我需要破窗锤!"琼达向对讲机呼叫,并冲向那辆车。当她来到驾驶座一侧的车门时,水已经上涨到她的腰部,河水冰冷刺骨,她的两条腿仿佛被冰冻住了一样。如果动作不快点的话,她的下半身就可能会失去知觉,她就会瘫倒。

8. 透过车窗,琼达看到车里的受困妇女,河水已经涨到她的胸口。她的胸前别着一张工作卡,上面写着桑迪。并且她年事已高,大约65岁或70岁。在冰冷的河水中她支撑不了多久。她的眼里流露出强烈的恐惧,直直地盯着琼达的眼睛。"救救我,"她喊道。

9. 戴维赶到琼达身边,把破窗锤递给她。"夫人,"她透过车窗喊道,"你得转过身去,避开玻璃!我要把车窗砸开!"那位妇女转过头去,琼达砸向玻璃。这辆旧车车身硕大,车玻璃厚实,琼达砸过去却几乎不见裂痕。琼达感到车起伏了一下,她不禁心头一沉。急流正把车推离那棵树。

10. 琼达拼尽全力又砸了一次,谢天谢地,这次车窗碎成小片。水涌了进来,车子又起伏了一下,很快就会被冲到下游。

11. 这位妇女颤抖着双唇,努力要说点什么。"告诉我的孙子孙女们,我爱他们,"她呜咽着。

12. 琼达侧身探入,用双臂环抱住她。"我们不会让你死的,桑迪!抱住我的脖子,抓紧!戴维,搂住我的腰往外拉!"

13. 在冰冷的河水中,戴维搂着她的腰往外拉。琼达用尽全力把那位瘦弱的妇女拖出驾驶座,从砸破的车窗中拉出来。车子最后又起伏了一下,那位妇女刚刚被救出来,车子就被河水吞没。

14. 那位妇女在琼达的怀里哭泣。"没事了,女士,"琼达说,泪水顺着她的脸颊滑落,她紧抱那位妇女不愿松开。"我们没有失去你!我们没有失去你!"她哭着说。浑身酸痛僵硬的桑迪也哭着说:"谢谢你!"

15. 自打那次事故之后,两位女士便成了密友。"她是个了不起的女人,"桑迪说。"她绝不允许我死掉。我永远感激她。"但是琼达也同样心存感激。因为她内心的伤痛终于愈合了,她终于摆脱了过去痛苦的噩梦。

五、练习答案及详解

Reading skills

略读

略读是一种非常重要的阅读技巧,通过快速略读可获取篇章中的关键信息。在多数情况下,读者带着阅读目标通读篇章,在阅读中专注于寻找所需的目标信息,如专有名词、日期、数字,或者例子。读者最熟悉的略读是在电话簿里寻找人名,或者在字典里查词。

要略读,读者就要在书页之间搜寻特殊的指示词和短语。略读的技巧就是要快速定位有用的细节信息。以下是一些小贴士:

1. 略读时,读者要对自己所要寻找的信息心中有数,目标明确。

2. 不要逐字阅读。

3. 注意文中的定义、斜体字词以及黑体字词。
4. 要学会定位日期、统计数据以及其他一些数字。
5. 注意作者对数字和字母等一些指示词的使用。
6. 搜寻文中的关键词和高频词汇。

1 Look at Text B and scan for answers to the following questions.

1. November.
2. In the Dalton River.
3. Jonda.
4. Sandy.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

2 Choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

1. B 2. D 3. C 4. D 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. D

Critical thinking

3 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. No, I don't think so. It is absolutely true that police officers should save victims in accidents despite life threats. But, it is unfair to blame them in some cases as the situations may go out of their control and they themselves may also get severely injured. In this sense, even if they fail to save the victims, they are still heroes and deserve due respect.
2. Helping others is definitely a highly-recommended deed. For one thing, we feel self-fulfilled by extending a hand to people in trouble, which is mentally beneficial to ourselves. For another thing, a positive example can be set for others who may also offer their hands to more people, which in turn will help to create a harmonious society from which every member will benefit.
3. Personally speaking, it depends. If something valuable and rewarding will be achieved at the risk of your life, then perhaps it is worthwhile to have a try. Whereas, if your efforts and sacrifices are surely going to be spent in vain, it is not sensible to do so. Instead, a more practical and wise way is to plan carefully and turn to more people for help. Only in this way can you stand a chance of saving the victim and avoid unnecessary injuries and casualties.

Language focus

Words in use

4 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. collapse

【译文】一场大洪水把桥冲垮了;现在,如果没有船就没有人能够横渡河面。

2. heal

【译文】自从一年前苏珊的姐姐去世之后,她就一直常常哭泣;看来她是没法从这一重大损失中恢复过来了。

3. lean

【译文】有时，吃饭时倚靠在桌子上被认为是不礼貌的，因此请小心不要这样做。

4. reflected

【译文】哭了一阵后，她看着镜中自己的脸，发现自己只不过是一个悲伤而又相貌平平的女孩。

5. slippery

【译文】我得紧紧地抓住大厅沿边的扶手，以防失去平衡摔倒在光滑的地板上。

6. identify

【译文】这个男人给警察打了电话，之后又去警察局看照片指认抢劫犯。

7. abolished

【译文】科举制度始于隋朝，于1905年被废止。

8. ignore

【译文】许多烟民都选择忽视抽烟对健康的危害并拒绝戒烟。

9. aspiration

【译文】他不再有激情继续深造了，因为他觉得成本太高。

10. betrayed

【译文】虽然她常常看起来既冷漠又严肃，但她笑意盈盈的眼睛还是掩饰不了她真实的性格。

Expressions in use

5 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. lean on

【译文】在遇到困难的时候，几乎每个人都需要他人相助。这就是为什么我们如此珍视友情。

2. pull over

【译文】当因超速而被警察开车追赶时，出租车司机不得不把车停靠到路边。

3. is grateful for

【译文】对于这份曾经助力成功的慷慨支持，总经理是深怀感激的。

4. filled up with

【译文】一场倾盆大雨过后，沟壑里又填满了泥土和垃圾。

5. broke through

【译文】当比赛结束时，球迷们冲破栏杆涌向赛场。

6. brought... to a halt

【译文】看到一个小孩正跑着横穿马路的时候，司机猛拉手刹及时停车避免了一场事故。

7. letting go of

【译文】秘诀就在于以特定的技巧去工作，并且紧紧锁定目标不放弃。

8. held on

【译文】横穿马路的时候，这位盲人老妇用手紧紧地抓住这个小女孩的手。

9. turned off

【译文】我对舞台剧一点也不感兴趣，所以直接关上电视并且开始和朋友们短信交流。

10. beat them to it

【译文】他们想把这部流行的科幻小说拍成电影，但是另外一个电影工作室却抢先一步。

Sentence structure

6 Make sentences by combining the following groups of words. Use the structure "It used to be + that..." to emphasize a discontinued habit or past situation in contrast to the present. Make changes where necessary.

1. It used to be that there were many fish in the river and people swam in it.
2. It used to be that Tom was afraid of heights, but he has got over the fear now.
3. It used to be that John assisted his wife with housework, but now he is too busy to do so.

7 Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English, using the emphatic sentence structure "participle + prepositional phrase + be".

1. Standing alongside him in front of a farmhouse was
2. Hung inside the hut are
3. Covered with mud were

Collocation

8 Replace *do* and *make* in the following diary excerpts with alternative verbs that you have learned. Answers may vary. You may refer to the table above.

1. carried out/conducted 开展/实施
2. gave/delivered/presented 给予/发表/呈现
3. enroll in/take 选课/选修
4. invented/coined 发明/创造
5. created 制造
6. put in/devote 投入/奉献
7. delivered/gave/offered 表达/给予/提供
8. put forward/offer/provide 提出/提供/给予
9. take 参加
10. write/finish/complete 写/完成/结束

Unit 5

Winning is not everything

Section A

Cliff Young, an unlikely hero

一、课文导读

（一）内容介绍

运动是人类生活中不可缺少的组成部分，本文介绍了澳大利亚著名的马拉松运动员克里夫·杨的传奇经历。作为农民和业余运动员的克里夫·杨，用他的坚持和努力向世人证明了普通人也可以实现梦想。作者缓缓道来，按时间顺序向读者介绍了马拉松的赛事及克里夫·杨的参赛经历。首先，文章介绍了悉尼至墨尔本的马拉松比赛。克里夫·杨走进公众视线。年龄大，体质弱，装备差等等问题无疑让他受到公众和媒体的质疑。但是他后发制人，用自己的方式取胜。然后，文章介绍他坚持跑步，从未放弃，在余生参加了很多次马拉松比赛。他不仅从未领取奖金，而且把比赛募集的善款都用于资助无家可归的儿童。文章尾段用一句名言点名主旨："有志者事竟成！"作者重申了不懈的恒心和充分的准备会指引普通人走向成功。

（二）背景知识

1. 克里夫·杨

澳大利亚农夫。1983年他以61岁的高龄，5天15时4分的成绩跑完了长达875公里的悉尼至墨尔本马拉松比赛，成功地击败了世界上最优秀的长跑运动员，捧走了冠军奖杯，以提前9小时的成绩打破了纪录。

2. 马拉松

马拉松是近代奥林匹克运动会的主要竞赛项目之一，因各地举行这项比赛的客观条件相差较大，所以没有世界纪录，只公布最高成绩。比赛时，起点终点可设在田径场内，而绝大部分跑程是在公路上进行，一般采用一个转折点的路线或环行路线，沿途有里程碑、饮料站和路标。

马拉松起源于古希腊。公元前490年，希腊军队在马拉松平原击退波斯军队的入侵。为把这个胜利消息尽快地告诉雅典人民，一名善跑的战士从马拉松一直跑到雅典。为了纪念这位战士的英雄事迹，在1896年第1届奥运会上举行了首次马拉松赛跑。参加比赛的运动员均从马拉松跑到雅典城，全

程40公里(后改为42.195公里)。从1924年第8届奥运会起,国际业余田径联合会把这个距离(42.195公里)正式规定为马拉松的标准距离,一直沿用至今。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Paras. 1-10 Cliff Young took part in the Australian marathon in 1983. 克里夫·杨参加了1983年的澳大利亚马拉松比赛。

Paras. 11-13 Cliff kept running for the rest of his life, but never kept a single prize. 克里夫·杨余生参加了很多比赛,但从未要过一分奖金。

Para. 14 Cliff Young sets a good example for other people, showing that an ordinary person can achieve great things with determination and preparation. 克里夫·杨给别人树下榜样:通过不懈的努力和充分的准备,即使是普通人也能获得非凡的成就。

2. 写作特点

本文按时间顺序组织文章,在段落和整体谋篇方面运用了大量的时间定位词。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 marathon /ˈmærəθ(ə)n/ *n.*

[C] a race that is run over a distance of 42 kilometers or about 26 miles 马拉松(长跑)

—On her second marathon, en route to Portland, she fractured a bone in her foot. 在她第二次参加马拉松时,在跑向波特兰的路上,她摔断了腿骨。

2 annual /ˈænjuəl/ *a.*

happening once a year 一年一度的;每年的

—They met at an annual convention in New York. 他们在纽约年会上会面。

3 route /ruːt/ *n.*

(1) [C] a way from one place to another 路线

—I normally run or bicycle the same route at the same time each day. 我每天都在同一时间,沿同一线路跑步,或是骑自行车锻炼。

(2) [C] a way of doing sth. or achieving a particular result 途径;方法

—Researchers are trying to get at the same information through an indirect route. 研究者们正试图通过一条间接途径获取同样的信息。

4 harsh /hɑːʃ/ *a.*

(1) severe, cruel, or unkind 严厉的;残酷的;苛刻的

—Ten days ago, I received some pretty harsh criticism. 十天前,我受到了一些颇为严厉的批评。

(2) harsh conditions are very difficult to live in and very uncomfortable 恶劣的;艰苦的;严峻的

—This laptop is definitely designed for harsh conditions. 这台笔记本绝对是为恶劣环境设计的。

【近义】rough, coarse, harsh, rude, crude 这些形容词均有"劣的,粗糙的"之意。rough:指表面凹凸不平,不光滑。coarse:指某物质地粗糙,加工等不精细;指人的言谈举止粗鲁,不文雅。harsh:指外表粗糙、声音刺耳等。rude:指某人的言行举止粗鲁无礼,缺乏修养。crude:主要指未经加工处理尚处于自然状态的物质。

5 endurance /ɪn'djʊərəns/ *n.*
[U] the ability to continue doing sth. difficult or painful over a long period of time (忍)耐力
—The exercise obviously will improve strength and endurance. 这项练习将明显增强力量和耐力。
【近义】endurance, patience 这组词都有"忍耐,耐心"的意思,其区别是:endurance 侧重指忍受艰辛或痛苦的能力,patience 通常指不急不躁的容忍态度或能力。
6 regardless /rɪ'gɑːdləs/ *ad.*
(~of) without being affected or influenced by sth. 不管;不顾
—They will carry out this experimentation, regardless of what happen. 不管发生什么,他们都将完成这个实验。
7 super /suːpə/ *prefix*
(super-) more, better, or bigger than usual 过于;超
—What clause do you require in the contract? 你要求在合同中订上什么条款?
/'suːpə/ *a.*
(*infml.*) extremely good 极好的;了不起的
—Then they spent a super week at the seaside. 然后他们在海边度过了极好的一周。
8 contract /'kɒntrækt/ *n.*
[C] an official agreement between two or more people, stating what each will do 契约;合同;合约
—What clause do you require in the contract? 你要求在合同中订上什么条款?
/kən'trækt/ *v.*
agree to do sth. or make sb. agree to do sth. by a formal written agreement (使)签订合同;(使)立约
—You can contract with us to deliver your cargo. 你们可以和我们签订合同,由我们负责运输你们的货物。
9 prominent /'prɒmɪnənt/ *a.*
important and well-known 重要的;知名的;显赫的
—The newspapers gave prominent coverage to the news. 各报在显著位置上登载了这条消息。
【近义】famous, prominent, notorious 这些形容词均含有"著名的,知名的"之意。famous:普通用词,指传播很广,引起人们注意的人或事物。prominent:指出人头地,为公众所熟悉,至少在地方上闻名。notorious:指因劣迹而臭名昭著,含强烈贬义。
10 sponsor /'spɒnsə/ *n.*
[C] a person or company that pays for a show, broadcast, sports event, etc., esp. in exchange for the right to advertise at that event 赞助者;赞助商
—Race officials announced a handful of new sponsors on Tuesday. 比赛官方星期二公布了几位新赞助人。
vt. give money to a sports event, theater, institution, etc., esp. in exchange for the right to advertise 赞助;资助
—Most students are sponsored by the National Department of Education. 多数学生是由国家教育部资助的。
11 finance /faɪ'næns/ *vt.*
provide money, esp. a lot of money, to pay for sth. 为……提供资金
—He sells one each year to finance the next. 他每年出售一项投资,来为下一项投资筹措资金。

n.

(1) [U] the management of money by governments, large organizations, etc. 财政;金融

—The report recommends an overhaul of public finances. 这份报告建议对公共财政进行彻底检视。

(2) (~s) [pl.] the money that an organization or person has, and the way that they manage it (机构或个人的)财务情况

—Be prepared for unexpected news concerning your finances. 对关于你财务状况的意外消息要做好准备。

【派生】financial *a.* 财经的,金融的

12 furnish /ˈfɜːnɪʃ/ *vt.*

(1) (*fml.*) supply or provide sth. 提供;供应

—The bank will furnish accommodation to the firm. 银行将给这家公司提供贷款。

(2) put furniture and other things into a house or room 为(房屋或房间)配备家具

—Many proprietors try to furnish their hotels with antiques. 许多经营者都想用古董装饰他们的酒店。

13 substantial /səbˈstænʃl/ *a.*

(1) large in amount or number 大量的;多的

—This sounds promising, but as far as we know, substantial investigation of the applicable rules has yet to be done. 这听起来十分有前途,但是据我所知,人们对可应用的规则已经进行了大量的研究。

(2) consisting of or relating to substance 物质的;材料的

—People now care more about the spiritual life than the substantial life. 现在人们更加注重精神生活而不是物质生活。

14 mechanism /ˈmekəˌnɪz(ə)m / *n.*

(1) [C] a system that is intended to achieve sth. or deal with a problem 机构;结构;机制;体制

—What's the mechanism behind these traits? 这些特征背后的机制是什么?

(2) part of a machine or a set of parts that does a particular job 机械装置;机件;工作部件

—Bomb has been detonated by a special mechanism. 炸弹由一个专门装置引爆。

15 contest /ˈkɒntest/ *n.*

[C] a competition or a situation in which two or more people or groups are competing with each other 比赛;竞赛

—Did you hear who won the English speech contest? 你可听说谁赢得了这次英语演讲比赛冠军?

/kənˈtest/ *vt.*

compete for sth. or try to win it 竞争;争夺;角逐

—The state election in November will be the last such ballot before next year's presidential contest. 11月的州选举将是明年的总统竞选前最后一轮这类投票。

16 distinction /dɪˈstɪŋkʃn/ *n.*

(1) [U] the quality of being excellent and important 优秀;卓越;杰出

—He was a man of great charm and distinction. 他这个人魅力十足,卓尔不群。

(2) [C, U] a clear difference or separation between two similar things 差别;不同

—There is an important distinction between practices and processes. 在实践与过程之间有着很重要的差别。

17 amateur /ˈæmətə/ *a.*

used about sb. who does sth. because they enjoy it and not as their job 业余爱好者的
—He is an amateur magician. 他是一位业余魔术师。
n. [C] sb. who does an activity just for pleasure, not as their job 业余爱好
—A fellow journalist once told me that if you are not writing every day, then you are an amateur. 一个同行的记者曾经告诉我,如果你不每天写写,那么你是一个业余爱好者。
18 odd /ɒd/ *a.*
unusual or unexpected in a way that attracts your interest or attention 奇特的;古怪的;异常的
—This is an odd collection of people. 这是一群稀奇古怪的人。
【近义】weird
19 invisible /ɪnˈvɪzəbl/ *a.*
sth. that is invisible cannot be seen 看不见的
—Many stars overhead are invisible to the naked eye. 天上的许多星星是肉眼看不到的。
【反义】visible
20 assemble /əˈsembl/ *v.*
come together as a group, or bring people or things together as a group 聚集;集合;收集
—There wasn't even a convenient place for students to assemble between classes. 甚至没有一个学生们课间集合的方便的地方。
vt. put all the parts of sth. together 组装;装配
—The people who assemble cars work very quickly. 装配汽车的工人们工作节奏很快。
21 assembled /əˈsembld/ *a.*
brought together into a group or crowd 聚集在一起
—We all assembled in the lobby of the hotel. 我们在宾馆大堂集合。
22 assert /əˈsɜːt/ *vt.*
state firmly that sth. is true (坚决)主张;断言
—He asserted his innocence of the crime. 他坚称自己无罪。
【近义】assert, affirm, claim 这些动词均含有"断言,声称"之意。assert:主观意味强,指自认为某事就是如此,而不管事实如何。affirm:侧重在做出断言时表现出的坚定与不可动摇的态度。claim:可与 assert 换用,但语气弱一些,侧重指行为自己的权利提出要求他人承认。
23 react /riˈækt/ *vi.*
behave in a particular way or show a particular emotion because of sth. that has happened or been said (做出)反应
—Do they react when certain subjects are mentioned? 当提到特定话题时,他们是否有所反应?
【派生】reaction *n.* 反应
【搭配】react to 对……做出反应
24 apparent /əˈpærənt/ *a.*
easy to notice 显而易见的;明白的
—It will be apparent on a moment's consideration. 稍加思考,这个问题就清楚了。
25 publicity /pʌbˈlɪsəti/ *n.*
[U] the attention that sb. or sth. gets from newspapers, television, etc. (报纸、电视等对某人或某物的)关注,报道
—The newcomer was greeted with an avalanche of publicity. 新来者受到了广泛的关注。

26 crush /krʌʃ/ *n.*

[sing.] a crowd of people pressed so close together that it is difficult for them to move 拥挤的人群

—His thirteen-year-old son somehow got separated in the crush. 他13岁的儿子不知怎么在拥挤的人群里走散了。

vt. press sth. so hard that it breaks or is damaged 压碎;压坏;压扁

—How many tons of ore can this machine crush in an hour? 这机器每小时可以破碎多少吨矿石?

27 gear /gɪə/ *n.*

(1) [U] the special clothes and equipment that you use for a particular activity 服装;用具;装备

—I used to wear trendy gear but it just looked ridiculous. 我过去常穿时髦服装,但那看起来简直滑稽。

(2) [C, U] the machinery in a vehicle such as a car, truck, or bicycle that you use to go comfortably at different speeds 排挡;挡位

—On hills, he must use low gears. 在山上,他必须用低速挡。

28 style /staɪl/ *n.*

[C] the individual way that sb. behaves and does things (个人的)行为方式,风格,作风

—Boston, you have to admit, has style. 你得承认波士顿很有格调。

29 shuffle /'ʃʌfl/ *vi.*

walk very slowly and noisily, without lifting your feet off the ground 拖着脚步走

—Moira shuffled across the kitchen. 莫伊拉拖着脚走过了厨房。

30 commentator /'kɒmənˌteɪtə/ *n.*

[C] sb. on television or radio who describes an event as it is happening 实况解说员;实况播音员

—As a social commentator, she's pretty fearless. 作为社会时事评论员,她是相当无畏的。

31 alike /ə'laɪk/ *ad.*

used to emphasize that you mean both the people, groups, or things that you have just mentioned 两样都(用于强调刚提及的两者)

—Good and bad alike respect him. 不论好人坏人都尊敬他。

a. (*not before noun*) very similar 相同的;相像的

—The twin sisters are so much alike that it is almost impossible to know one from the other. 这两个孪生姐妹长相极为相像,几乎无法把她们俩区分开。

32 welfare /'welfeə/ *n.*

(1) [U] the health and happiness of people 幸福;康乐;安康

—I do not think he is considering Emma's welfare. 我认为他没有考虑到艾玛的幸福。

(2) [U] care provided by the state or another organization or people in need (政府或组织的)福利救济

—Child welfare services are well established and comprehensive. 儿童福利机构发展成熟、体系完善。

33 insane /ɪn'seɪn/ *a.*

(1) (*infml.*) completely stupid or crazy, often in a way that is dangerous 愚蠢的;疯狂的

—I would be insanely jealous if Bill left me for another woman. 如果比尔为了另一个女人而离开我,我会妒忌得发疯的。

(2) suffering from very severe mental illness so that you cannot be considered legally responsible for your actions 精神错乱的;精神病的

—Some people simply can't take it and they just go insane. 一些人就是接受不了,于是便变得精神错乱。

34 smash /smæʃ/ *vt.*

(~ a record) do sth. much faster, better, etc., than anyone has done before 打破纪录

—The movie directed by a not-so-famous director smashed all box office records. 这部由不太知名的导演执导的电影打破了所有票房纪录。

v.

(1) break into pieces violently or noisily, or make sth. do this by dropping, throwing, or hitting it 打碎;砸碎;(使)粉碎

—Someone smashed a bottle. 有人打碎了一个瓶子。

(2) hit an object or surface violently, or make sth. do this (使)猛撞,猛击,猛掷

—The bottle smashed against a wall. 那瓶子撞到了一面墙上。

35 award /əˈwɔːd/ *vt.*

officially give sb. sth. such as a prize or money to reward them for sth. they have done 给予;授予

—We have awarded the contract to a New York-based company. 我们已经把这份合同给了一家总部设在纽约的公司。

n. [C] sth. such as a prize or money given to sb. to reward them for sth. they have done 奖;奖赏;奖金;奖品

—This new invention won the highest award. 这项新发明获得最高奖。

36 prominence /ˈprɒmɪnəns/ *n.*

[U] the state of being important or well-known 重要;著名

—He came to prominence during the World Cup. 他在该世界杯期间一举成名。

【派生】prominent *a.* 突出的,杰出的

37 despite /dɪˈspaɪt/ *prep.*

used to say that sth. happens or is true even though sth. else might have prevente it 尽管;虽然

—He persevered despite discouragement from those around him. 尽管周围一片劝阻声,他还是锲而不舍。

38 dim /dɪm/ *v.*

(1) if feelings or hopes dim, or are dimmed, they become weaker (使)减弱;(使)变渺茫

—Their memory of what happened has dimmed. 他们对所发生的事的记忆变得模糊了。

(2) if a light dims, or if you dim it, it becomes less bright (使)暗下来;(使)变微弱

—Their economic prospects have dimmed. 他们的经济前景变得暗淡了。

a. fairly dark or not giving much light, so that you cannot see well 阴暗的;昏暗的

—She stood waiting in the dim light. 她站在昏暗的灯光下等待着。.

39 stroke /strəʊk/ *n.*

[C]中风

—He had a minor stroke in 1987, which left him partly paralysed. 他在1987年患了轻度中风,这使他半身不遂了。

vt. move your hand gently over sth. 轻抚;轻摸

—Carla, curled up on the sofa, was smoking a cigarette and stroking her cat. 卡拉蜷曲在沙发上,抽着一支烟,轻抚着她的猫。

40 legend /ˈledʒ(ə)nd/ *n.*

(1) [C] sb. who is famous and admired for being extremely good at doing sth. 传奇人物

—On the verge of a comeback tour, music legend Michael Jackson dies at 50. 在准备重回舞台时，一代音乐传奇人物迈克尔·杰克逊天命之年去世。

(2) [C, U] an old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical events 传说；传奇(故事)

—This legend still spreads abroad among the people. 这个传奇故事依然在民间广泛流传。

41 magnificent /mæɡˈnɪfɪsnt/ *a.*

very good or beautiful, and very impressive 宏伟的；壮观的；华丽的

—These magnificent ancient buildings demonstrate the great intelligence of the labouring people. 这些壮丽的古代建筑显示了劳动人民的高度智慧。

42 brilliant /ˈbrɪljənt/ *a.*

(1) (*BrE*) (*infml.*) extremely good 极好的

—She had a brilliant mind. 她有极聪明的头脑。

(2) brilliant light or color is very bright and strong 明亮的；光辉夺目的；灿烂的

—Many of the patterns show brilliantly coloured flowers. 许多图案都有绚丽多彩的花。

43 individual /ˌɪndɪˈvɪdʒuəl/ *n.*

[C] a person, considered separately from the rest of the group or society that they live in 个人；个体

—No individual shall overtop the law. 任何个人的权力都不能凌驾于法律之上。

a. (*only before noun*) considered separately from other people or things in the same group 单独的；个别的

—After all, individual strength is limited. 个人的力量毕竟是有限的。

44 inherent /ɪnˈhɪərənt/ *a.*

an inherent quality is a basic or essential feature that gives sth. its character 本质的；内在的；基本的

—There are so many inherent contradictions in his arguments. 他的论据中存在很多的内在矛盾。

45 inherently /ɪnˈhɪərəntli/ *ad.*

本质地；内在地；基本地

—We are all inherently musical and can develop this capacity in ourselves and in others. 可以说，我们天生具备音乐智能，并可以开发自身与他人的这种能力。

(二)短语

1 up to

as much or as many as a certain amount or number but not more 达到；至多

—Up to ten people can sleep in this tent. 这个帐篷至多能睡十人。

2 in attendance

(*fml.*) present somewhere, often at an important or official event 出席(重要的或官方的活动)

—Police with riot gear and several fire engines are in attendance. 防暴警察和数辆消防车都到了。

3 might (just) as well

used for saying that it would not make any difference if you did sth. else 不妨；还不如；倒不如

—They move about listlessly and apparently without much purpose; they might just as well be idiots. 他们坐卧不宁地动来动去显然毫无目的，说他们是一群傻子也并不过分。

4 at a time

used for saying how many people or things there are in each group or on each occasion 每组；每次；一次

—Add the cream a few drops at a time. 每次加几滴奶油。

5 leave sb. /sth. behind

(1) move away from sb. or sth. 把……抛在后面

—Don't leave what the teacher said behind. 别把老师的话当耳边风。

(2) not take sb. or sth. with you when you leave a place 不带；忘记拿走；留下

—We cannot bring ourselves to leave behind those treasures. 我们舍不得丢弃那些传家之宝。

6 out loud

in such a way that people can hear you 大声地

—He began to read out loud. 他开始大声读出来。

7 fall ill

become sick 生病

—More than 100,000 people could fall ill after drinking contaminated water. 超过10万人可能会在饮用受到污染的水后患病。

8 have no intention of doing sth.

have no plan or desire to do sth. 不打算做某事；无意做某事

—We have no intention of buying American jets. 我们无意购买美国喷气式飞机。

9 endear sb. to sb.

make sb. popular and liked 使受欢迎；使被喜爱

—He managed to endear himself to my entire family. 他能让我全家人都喜欢他。

10 give away

(1) give sth. to sb. because you do not want or need it for yourself 分送，送掉（不需要的东西）

—We have six copies of the book to give away. 这本书我们要赠送6本出去。

(2) show where sb. is or what they are doing or thinking when they are trying to keep this a secret 使露马脚；暴露

—Don't give away the secret. 这项机密不可泄露。

11 pass away

die 去世

—He passed away peacefully. 他安详地去世了。

12 to this day

even now, after a very long time 直到现在；至今

—To this day, it's unclear whether he shot himself or was murdered. 至今尚不清楚他究竟是饮弹自杀还是被谋杀。

三、课文注释

1 Considered one of the toughest marathon events in the world, the 875-kilometer annual Australian race, a route from Sydney to Melbourne, is a harsh test of endurance for the world's top athletes, regardless of their age. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】The 875-kilometer annual Australian race, a route from Sydney to Melbourne, is considered the most difficult long-distance race in the world. It is a challenging to every athlete no matter who you

are and how old you are.

【解　析】considered，介词，含义是"作为"。regardless of，介词，后面接名词或名词性短语，含义是"不管，不顾"。

2 The young, super-fit runners train for months before a competition and are under contract to prominent sponsors like Nike and Adidas, who finance them and furnish them with a substantial support mechanism of money and equipment. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】The young and strong runners train for months for the competition. They have signed official agreements with companies like Nike and Adidas, who support them with a lot of money and equipment based on a sponsor system.

【解　析】be under contract 是一个固定句型，表示"有协议，签合同"。furnish sb. with 是固定搭配，表示"提供，配备"。

3 The contest takes up to seven days to complete and is a challenging test of fitness and strength even for world-class athletes who compete for distinction and a cash prize. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】The race takes as long as seven days to finish and it is a hard test of physical condition and strength even for the world's top athletes who want to become famous and earn money by winning the race.

【解　析】up to 含义是"达到，多至"，表示数量之多。

4 When he asserted his intention to compete, the world-class athletes around him reacted with apparent disbelief and then with disrespect. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】When he declared that he had come to attend the race, the world-class athletes around him did not believe him and showed no respect.

【解　析】When sb. asserted his intention to do sth., other people reacted with... 用于表达"当某人明确表示自己要做某事时，其他人的反应"。

5 But the press was curious, so as he took his number and moved into the crush of runners in their special, expensive racing gear, the camera focused on him and the assembled reporters shouted question after question at Cliff. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】But the press wanted to know more about him, so when he took his number for the race and ran into the crowds who were wearing their special and expensive racing clothes and shoes, the camera focused him and reporters gathered around and asked him many questions.

6 I've run sheep for two or three days at a time. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Every time I run sheep, it takes about two or three days.

【解　析】at a time 含义是"每次，每回"。克里夫·杨的这句话是表达他觉得马拉松比赛与放羊无异。

7 As the race progressed along, of course, the attention of the sports commentators and viewers alike was on the athletes at the front of the pack. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】As the race went on, both the commentators and viewers paid attention to the athletes in the leading position.

【解　析】这是一个由 as 引导的时间状语从句。alike 在句中是副词，含义是"两者都……"。

8 And it seemed that he intended to keep running until he reached the finish line or fell ill or was injured as many viewers now began to fear. (Para 7)

【Meaning】It looked like that he would not stop running until he reached the end of line or became sick or got injured. This made many viewers start to worry.

【解　　析】intend to do sth. 是固定搭配,含义是"目的在于,打算做……"。fall ill 是系表结构表示状态。

9 Although he was still far behind the world-class athletes, he kept at it. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】Although he was still far behind the world-class athletes, he continued running.

【解　　析】这是一个由 although 引导的让步状语从句。keep at sth. 意为"坚持,不放弃"。

10 Later, he told people that throughout the race he kept focused by imagining he was gathering his sheep and trying to outrun a storm. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】Later, he told people that throughout the race he kept focused by imagining he was trying to gather his sheep and get home before the storm came.

【解　　析】outrun 意为"跑得比……快"。

11 He led all the way to the finish line, smashing the record by finishing the 875-kilometer race in 5 days, 15 hours and 4 minutes—9 hours faster than anyone before! (Para. 9)

【Meaning】He stayed in the lead all the way to the end of the race, breaking the record by finishing the 875-kilometer race in 5 days, 15 hours and 4 minutes, which was 9 hours faster than anyone before.

【解　　析】本句的精彩词汇 smash,意为"打破,击碎"。all the way,意为" 一直,一路"。

12 In that instant, Cliff Young became a beloved national hero. (Para. 9)

【Meaning】At that moment, Cliff Young won the love and respect of people throughout the country. He became a national hero.

【解　　析】instant 意为"瞬间,片刻"。beloved 意为"受人尊重的,受人爱戴的"。

13 "There're five other runners still out there doing it tougher than me," and he gave them $2,000 each. (Para. 10)

【Meaning】There are five other runners who were still running out there and having a harder time than him, so he gave each of them $2,000.

【解　　析】本句凸显了克里夫·杨人性的光辉一面,他把自己的奖金分配给其他更加困难的参赛选手。

14 Cliff came to prominence again in 1997, at age 75, when he attempted to become the oldest man to run around Australia and raise money for homeless children. (Para. 11)

【Meaning】Cliff became famous again in 1977, at the age of 75, when he tried to became the oldest man to run around Australia. He did so to collect money for homeless children.

【解　　析】prominence 意为"重要,著名"。come to prominence 意为"变得重要,变得有名"。attempt to do sth. 是固定搭配,意为"试图去做某事,尝试去做某事"。

15 Over the years, despite increasing age and physical challenges, he participated in many races and won a number of them. (Para. 12)

【Meaning】Although he was getting older and not as strong as before, he took part in many races and won a number of them.

【解　　析】固定搭配 participate in 相当于同义词组 take part in,含义是"参与,参加"。

16 His love for running never dimmed, but in the year 2000, he suffered a mild stroke that ended his heroic running days. (Para. 13)

【Meaning】His love for running never faded, but in 2000, he suffered a mild stroke, which put a stop to his glorious running days.

【解　　析】suffer 一词后面经常搭配疾病方面的词语,意为"遭受,遭遇"。

17 To this day, Cliff Young remains a magnificent reminder and brilliant example of how ordinary individuals can inherently achieve remarkable results. (Para. 14)

【Meaning】Even now, Cliff Young is still a good reminder and brilliant example of how ordinary people can achieve great results with their natural qualities.

【解　析】To this day, sb. remains + *adj.* + reminder and + *adj.* + example of how..."用于表达"某人树立的榜样精神"。

18 With determination and preparation, we can achieve distinction and be a brilliant example to others. (Para. 14)

【Meaning】If we are determined and well-prepared, we can become excellent and set a good example for others.

【解　析】With sth., we can... 用于表达"达到目的所需要的条件"。

四、课文译文

克里夫·杨，令人意想不到的英雄

1. 澳大利亚一年一度的悉尼至墨尔本的马拉松比赛全长875公里，被认为是世界上最艰难的马拉松赛事之一，对任何年龄段的世界顶尖运动员来说都是一项严酷的耐力考验。体能超好的年轻选手在赛前要进行数月的训练，而且还和像耐克和阿迪达斯这样著名的赞助商签约，这些赞助商通过强大的资金和装备支持机制为选手提供资助和装备。这项比赛历时七天，即使对那些为荣誉和奖金而赛的世界一流运动员来说，也是对体能和力量的严峻考验。

2. 1983年比赛那一天，克里夫·杨，一个牙齿已全部脱落的61岁的农民业余选手也来参加比赛。他脚穿橡胶靴，年龄也比其他选手大得多。没有人注意到这个外表古怪的老头，他就跟个隐身人差不多。聚集的人群以为克里夫只是来观看比赛的。当克里夫明确表示自己是来参赛的时候，他周围的世界级选手先是表示出明显的怀疑，继而予以鄙视。显然，人们认为这只是媒体的炒作而已。

3. 但是媒体记者颇为好奇，所以当克里夫领好自己的参赛号码，走进配备昂贵的特殊装备的参赛选手队伍时，镜头对准了他，聚集的记者们向他抛来一个又一个问题。他们问："你是谁？""你来做什么？"

4. "我是克里夫·杨。我来自墨尔本郊外的一个大农场，我们在那里养羊。"

5. 他们接着问道："你为什么认为自己有能力参加这项比赛？跑完全程要花一周的时间，而且每晚的睡眠不足六个小时。"

6. 克里夫回答道："我放羊时每一次都要跑上两三天。这项比赛只是需要再多花几天而已。我相信我可以做到。"

7. 很快，马拉松比赛开始了，年轻的运动员把克里夫远远地甩在了后面。人们笑了，有些人还大声地笑，因为克里夫甚至连跑步的姿势都不正确。他跑步的样子怪极了，因为他似乎是在拖着脚走。随着比赛的进行，体育解说员和观众们的注意力都放到了那些领先的选手身上。想象一下第二天早上看到新闻报道说克里夫还在比赛的队伍里时，人们有多么惊奇！不仅如此，他还彻夜未眠，一直在跑。而且，看起来他决意要一直跑到终点，或一直跑到病倒或受伤为止，这正是许多观众现在开始担心的事情。他们变得不安起来，而且非常担心他的身心健康。许多人在说，甚至更多的人在想："不用说，应该有人制止这疯狂的老头儿，免得他真的把自己弄伤！"

8. 但是克里夫没有要停下的意思。虽然他仍然远远落后于那些世界顶级的选手，但他还一直坚持着。当他抵达一个大城镇时，有人问他对接下来的比赛有什么计划。他说他会继续跑下去，而且他也的确是这样做的。随着每一小时的流逝和迈出的每一次拖拖拉拉的步履，他一点一点地接近领先的选手们。事后，他告诉人们，整个比赛过程中他都很专注，他把自己想象成是在赶着羊群、努力与暴风雨抢

时间。

9. 到了第五天夜里，他追上了所有的选手。到了第六天，他把整个队伍甩开一大截。他一路领先，直到终点，以5天15小时4分钟跑完875公里的赛程，打破了纪录，比之前最快的选手还快了9个小时！在那一刻，克里夫·杨成为受人爱戴的民族英雄。

10. 当克里夫得到一万美元奖金时，他说他不知道比赛还有奖金，并坚持说他不是为了钱才参赛的。他说："还没有到达终点的那五位选手，他们比我跑得更艰苦。"他给他们每人2000美元。他自己一分钱都没留。这一举动提高了他的声望，使他受到了所有澳大利亚人的爱戴。

11. 克里夫在1997年75岁时又一次赢得了声望。当时他试图成为环澳大利亚长跑年龄最大的人，并为无家可归的孩子们筹集善款。

12. 在他的余生里，克里夫一直坚持在跑。多年来，尽管年纪越来越大，身体状况也不如从前，但是他还是参加了许多比赛，并赢得了其中的多次比赛。据说克里夫从未为自己留下过任何奖品。因为他从没戴过表，所以人们就送他手表。他会感谢送他手表的人，因为他不想伤害他们的感情。但是随后，他就把表送给沿途上他看见的第一个孩子。他说："我不需要手表。我知道什么时候是白天、什么时候是黑夜、什么时候肚子饿了。"

13. 他对跑步运动的热爱从未衰减。但在2000年，他得了轻度中风，从而结束了他具有英雄色彩的跑步生涯。2003年11月2日，克里夫·杨这位长跑传奇人物与世长辞，享年81岁。

14. 直到今天，克里夫·杨依然是一个伟大的标杆和辉煌的榜样。他向世人表明，普通人也能凭潜在的能力取得非凡的成就。有句名言说得好："有志者事竟成！"有坚定的决心和充分的准备，我们就能获得殊荣，也能成为别人的光辉榜样。

五、练习答案及详解

—Pre-reading activities—

1 Look at the pictures and answer the following questions.

1. (1) playing baseball
   (2) swimming
   (3) running on a treadmill
   (4) playing tennis
   (5) playing cycling
2. • Yes. Generally speaking, these sports are popular among college students, though they are not as popular as basketball and soccer.
   • Not all of these sports are popular among college students as far as I know.

2 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. I like badminton. I could have a lot of fun playing it with my friends. It is so exciting.
2. • I don't do sports every day, but I try to exercise regularly. On weekdays, I'm too busy with my classes and homework, so I can only do sports occasionally. But on weekends, I always manage to spend as much time as I can playing table tennis, going hiking, or doing yoga.
   • I usually get up at six so I manage to spend about half an hour doing exercise every morning.
3. Yes, definitely. There are lots of benefits of playing sports. First, it is good to our health. It also helps to cultivate cooperation and teamwork. Besides, it is very good for the development of our social skills, for sports teach us how to communicate and cooperate with people.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

1 Answer the following questions.

1. Because the Sydney-to-Melbourne race is 875 kilometers long and it is a harsh test of endurance for the world's top athletes.
2. Cliff Young was a toothless 61-year-old farmer; he was wearing rubber boots, and was much older than the other runners.
3. Other athletes neither believed it nor treated Cliff Young with respect.
4. Because Cliff Young didn't run properly. He had the strangest running style and appeared to shuffle.
5. When people found that Cliff Young run through the entire night without sleeping and when it seemed to them that he intended to keep running until he reached the finish line or fell ill or was injured.
6. When he was running, Cliff Young imagined he was gathering his sheep and trying to outrun a storm.
7. Cliff Young gave all the prize money to five other runners. He did not keep a single cent for himself.
8. Cliff Young is a brilliant example showing that ordinary people also have the inherent quality to achieve great results.

Critical thinking

2 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. I think teamwork, fair play and honesty, and excellence in performance best characterize the spirit of sports. For teamwork, the reasons lie on that individuals can be strong on their own but they can be much stronger in a team. And for fair play and honesty, the reasons are every attendant should be honest and respect the rules of the game. Last, the reasons for excellence in performance are that every attendant should show the efforts and try their best.
2. Honesty, determination and mutual respect are the values people can cultivate though playing sports.
3. No, winning is not the most important thing in sports. There is much more about playing sports than winning. The spirit of sports is best reflected in the Olympic Creed, which reads: "The most important thing in the Olympic Games is not to win but to take part, just as the most important thing in life is not the triumph but the struggle. The essential thing is not to have conquered but to have fought well."
4. I think it means that a true champion has great confidence and determination that we should not take lightly. A true champion knows one must push his limits of endurance or strength or skill to achieve victory. A true champion never gives up.
5. The story of Cliff Young is extraordinary and inspirational, from which I have learned a great deal. I have learned that we should pursue our dreams regardless of what other people have to say. An ordinary person can become a hero, and wonderful things do happen when we are determined and committed. Most important of all, we should believe in ourselves!

Language focus

Words in use

3 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. annual

【译文】我每年都参加的年会来年一月将在伦敦举行。

2. contract

【译文】根据合同条约,你方须提前三个月提出离职申请。

3. distinction

【译文】如此众多的杰出人才参与到此话题的讨论中来,我们深感荣幸。

4. substantial

【译文】当地政府一直给他们提供大量的支持。若没有这些支持,他们不会如此成功。

5. furnished

【译文】特工承诺他所提供的信息来源可靠。

6. amateur

【译文】无论业余的还是专业的,美国足球可能是美国最受欢迎的运动。每年它都吸引着四千多万观众参与其中,还有数百万多观众通过电视观看它。

7. assemble

【译文】为了迎合 DIY(自己动手做)的时尚,店铺出售给顾客那些可以在家里组装的零部件和工具。

8. react

【译文】我好奇当我告诉她今年不会涨工资时她会有何反应。

9. apparent

【译文】很明显,教授的讲座没能打动学生,因为很多学生在讲座结束前就已经离开了。

10. magnificent

【译文】在参观了华丽的宫殿和美妙的博物馆后,我们都觉得不虚此行。

Word building

4 Add *-ing*, *-ion*, or *-ary* to or remove them from the following words to form new words.

Words learned	New words formed
-ing	
boring	bore
fascinating	fascinate
amuse	amusing
-ion	
explode	explosion
assume	assumption
evolve	evolution
compensate	compensation
contribution	contribute
-ary	
element	elementary
revolution	revolutionary

5 Fill in the blanks with the newly-formed words in Activity 4. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. assumption

【译文】他争辩道，该教学计划的设计者错误地假设所有的学习者都是同一水平。

2. fascinated

【译文】所有的旅客都被沿海岸线的美妙风光迷住了。

3. explosion

【译文】在过去的二十几年里，世界上有些地方的人口大爆炸导致了食物卫生保健的匮乏。

4. elementary

【译文】这家医院缺乏像 X 光机和手术室这类最基本的设施。

5. compensation

【译文】公司应该给被不公平解雇的员工赔偿金。

6. evolution

【译文】在进化过程中，一些鸟失去了飞行能力并开始在陆地上生活。

7. amusing

【译文】几乎所有看了这部电影的观众都认为这是部搞笑至极的电影，因为它是关于一只会说话的狗的。

8. bore

【译文】我建议你不要读这本小说因为它无聊至极。

9. contribute

【译文】不吃早饭及睡前吃得过饱会导致肥胖问题。

10. revolutionary

【译文】为了创造一代全新的、更好的英语水平测试系统，大家做出了创新的努力。这次变化只是其中的一部分。

Banked cloze

6 Fill in the blanks by selecting suitable words from the word bank. You may not use any of the words more than once.

1. K

【解析】由前文 professional (职业的)决定该空格取其相对之意的 amateur(业余的)。

2. D

【解析】名词，"耐力"。需注意与 L 项 insurance (保险)形似词区分开。

3. C

【解析】形容词，"每一个"。

4. B

【解析】形容词，"独立的；自主的"。

5. H

【解析】present evidence 提供证据。

6. O

【解析】此处 despite 介词(尽管)引导插入语从句。

7. F

【解析】过去分词,"发展;成为"。

8. M

【解析】名词,"比赛"。

9. A

【解析】形容词,"不寻常的"。

10. G

【解析】动词,"创造"。

Expressions in use

7 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. passed away

【译文】得知她姐姐抗癌三年却以失败告终,我心悲恸。

2. left behind

【译文】在女子一百米自由泳决赛之初,中国选手落后。但她并没放弃并终获领先之位。

3. give away

【译文】这个富人认为如果他不把自己的财富捐献给公益事业,他将蒙羞而逝。

4. had no intention of

【译文】他们无意让他就此离去,而是期待他在合同期满后仍然留任原职。

5. Up to

【译文】今年的大学毕业生将多达七百万。这无疑会给就业市场带来就业压力。

6. regardless of

【译文】如果他决意做某事,不管别人怎么说,他都会去做。

7. might (just) as well

【译文】看这电影简直是浪费时间。我真不如待在家里了。

8. fall ill

【译文】权威部门承诺将引进有效的健康服务体系,以确保人们生病时花费不会过高。

9. in attendance

【译文】数千人参与了昨日的罢工,引起了很大的骚乱。

10. to this day

【译文】他们二十几岁相识,至今仍保持密切联系。

Structure analysis and writing

Structure analysis

逻辑性的组织段落细节的方式之一就是时间顺序,即按照事件发生的顺序呈现细节信息。这有助于读者记忆事件的发展步骤。时间顺序在讲解流程、书写历史事件和讲故事时特别适用。为凸显时间顺序,可多使用标志词,如 when, while, before, first of all 等。

8 Read Paragraph 9 of Text A and underline the signal words that indicate the time order.

By the fifth night

By the sixth day

In that instant

Structured writing

9 Write a paragraph on one of the following topics. One topic has an outline that you can follow.

In 1564, William Shakespeare, the great poet and playwright, was born in England. As a boy, he attended a local grammar school in his hometown. At the age of 18 he married Anne Hathaway, and they had three children. Between 1585 and 1592, he developed a successful career in London. By 1592 several of his plays were on the London stage and he had become well-known by acting and writing plays. He appeared to have retired from the theater and returned to his hometown around 1613. In1616, at the age of 52, he passed away.

Translation

10 Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.

有关古代奥林匹克运动会的最早文字记载可追溯至公元前776年。古代奥运会每4年举办一次，在8月6日与9月19日之间的一个纪念宙斯的宗教节日期间举行。第一届现代奥运会于1896年在希腊雅典举办。奥运会的标志由五个大小相同的套环组成，代表着五大洲的联合和来自世界各地运动员的大聚会。奥运会真正腾飞、成为一项国际体育盛会是在1924年之后，即第8届奥运会在巴黎举办之后。这一年，来自44个国家约3000名运动员同场竞技，并且第一次在奥运会上增加了闭幕式这一仪式。同年，冬季奥运会首次亮相，比赛项目包括花样滑冰、冰球、雪橇和冬季两项运动。80年后，2004年夏季奥运会在相隔一个多世纪后再次在雅典举办，来自201个国家的近11000名运动员展开竞技，创下参赛国数量之最。

11 Translate the following paragraph into English.

Tai Chi is a kind of martial arts, and a fitness exercise as well. It has a long history in China. With slow and gentle movements, Tai Chi is suitable for people of any age, sex, or body type to practice. It can be used to provide self-defense as well as build the body. Therefore, it has become very popular among Chinese people. During its development, Tai Chi borrowed and absorbed desirable elements from traditional Chinese philosophy, medicine, and martial arts, and it has developed into a sport with unique features. As a unique sport in China, Tai Chi is also gaining increasing popularity among many foreign friends.

Section B

Shaping young lives with sports



一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文论述了运动对年轻人保持身心健康的重要性。文章首段即引用一句名言:"健全的心智来自健康的体魄。"随后作者从不同角度阐述了运动给年轻人带来的益处:运动不仅是娱乐,还可以教会年轻人胜不骄、败不馁的生活态度;可以让人最好地学习和理解策略、团队协作这些至关重要的概念;有运动天赋的人有机会培养自己的领导才能,成为体育明星,与此同时,运动也能激励和鼓舞那些天分并不太高的人做到最好。当然,参加竞技团队体育运动也存在一定的危害,如一味地强调比赛的输赢会给孩子们带来心理上的伤害,孩子们就失去了从运动中学习的机会。但是,体育运动教给人们的远比表面上看起来的多得多。运动远不只是让年轻人保持健康的体魄并健康成长,它能给年轻人带来自我价值感和成就感,并教会他们很好地对待成败,会为年轻人未来生活的成功铺平道路。

(二)背景知识

1. 尤维纳利斯

尤维纳利斯(Juvenal, 60?—140?),古罗马讽刺诗的创始人。他的作品《讽刺诗》,一共五卷,按照题材分为两个时期,共收集了十六首讽刺诗。诗歌多是讽刺显贵和君主专制、描述知识阶层劳动者的贫困状况和依附贵族生活的人们的作品。他被认为是揭露罗马贵族和暴君的战士,是"一个最伟大的罗马人"。

2. 美国体育教育

体育成为美国教育体系中的一部分已经很长时间了。在美国,无论是公立还是私立学校,课程里都包括各种各样的体育活动,如篮球、垒球、棒球、橄榄球、足球、曲棍球、排球、网球、高尔夫球、游泳、摔跤、体操等。学校之间共同举办一些体育活动赛事是很常见的。几乎每个中学和高中都有运动队。在某些社区,中学的篮球或足球比赛是当地一周以内最引人注目的活动。对于大学生来说,体育赛事更是丰富多彩:春天的全国大学生体育锦标赛,秋天的足球比赛,冬天的篮球比赛和曲棍球比赛。

美国人成长于一种观念中,体育是学习团队协作、学习如何竞争、学习如何与周围的人相处的途径。如果一个人能在球场上创造奇迹,在其他地方也能够创造奇迹。竞争意识已经深深植入美国人的心里,他们坚信:只要你付出努力,就一定会有回报。体育是美国文化中的一个主要部分。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Para. 1 A healthy mind is to be found in a healthy body. 健全的心智来自健康的体魄。

Paras. 2 - 5 There are benefits that sports can bring to young people. 运动给年轻人带来的益处。

Para. 6 There are harms when too much emphasis is put on winning. 过分强调体育比赛的输赢会给年轻人带来伤害。

Para. 7 Sports teach much more than what is easily seen on the surface. 体育运动教给我们的远比表

面上看起来的多得多。

2. 写作特点

本文的写作特点是典型的总一分一总结构，首段先给出主要的观点，中间部分从正反面列举细节来支撑该观点，末段再次呼应首段。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 mold /məʊld/ *vt.*

(*BrE* mould) influence sb. strongly so that they will have certain qualities or behave in a certain way 塑造，影响(某人)

—Don't try to mold your child into something you want him to be. 不要试图把孩子塑造成你想要他成为的那个样子。

【搭配】mold sb. into sth. 把某人塑造成某样

n. [C]模具；铸模

—Please pour the liquid into the molds. 请把液体倒入模具。

2 critical /ˈkrɪtɪkl/ *a.*

(1) very important 非常重要的；关键的

—Have you realized that we are at a critical time in history? 你有没有意识到我们正处于历史的关键时刻？

(2) expressing an opinion when you think sth. is wrong or bad 批判的；爱挑剔的；吹毛求疵的

—People have been critical of the way she has handled the affair. 人们对她处理那件事的方式很有意见。

3 underline /ˌʌndəˈlaɪn/ *vt.*

(1) show that sth. is important 强调；使突出

—The headmaster underlined the importance of self-study in the college. 校长强调了大学里自我学习的重要性。

(2) draw a line under a word to show that it is important 在……之下画线(以示重要)

—Underline all the new words by using a red pen. 用红笔在生词下面画线。

4 humble /ˈhʌmbl/ *a.*

(1) not considering yourself or your ideas to be as important as other people's 谦虚的；谦卑的

—Susan is such a humble girl that she never thinks she is better than others. 苏珊是个很谦虚的女孩，从来没觉得自己比别人强。

(2) having a low social class or position (社会阶层或地位)卑微的，低下的

—Employees at humble jobs have to carefully weigh up the employer's words. 职位低的雇员不得不用心揣摩老板的话。

5 generous /ˈdʒenərəs/ *a.*

(1) sympathetic in the way you deal with people, and tending to see the good qualities in sb. or sth. 宽宏大量的

—Such generous actions stamp him as a man of honor. 他这些宽宏大量的行为表明他是个君子。

(2) giving people more of your time or money than is usual or expected 慷慨的；大方的

—She was always very generous in her charity. 她行善时总是很慷慨。

6 emphasize /'emfəˌsaɪz/ *vt.*

(*BrE* emphasise) say sth. in a strong way 强调；着重

—We can not emphasize too much the importance of careful driving. 我们再怎样强调小心驾驶的重要性也不为过。

7 mutual /mjuːtʃuəl/ *a.*

(1) belonging to or true of two or more people 共有的；共同的

—My friend and I have mutual enthusiasm for drawing. 我和我的朋友对绘画有着共同的爱好。

(2) felt or done on the same way by each of two or more people 相互的；彼此的

—Friendship between individuals is based on mutual trust and respect. 人与人之间的友谊是建立在相互信任和尊重的基础上的。

【近义】mutual, reciprocal, common, joint 是近义词。mutual 与 reciprocal 通常用在正式文体或技术术语中，指人或群体间的相互、共同；common 指两人或多人共用的、共同享用的；joint 通常指双方共有的、联合的。

8 obligation /ˌɒblɪ'geɪʃn/ *n.*

[C, U] a moral or legal duty to do sth. 义务；职责；责任

—Children have the obligation to look after their old parents. 子女有义务照顾他们年老的父母。

9 graceful /'greɪsfl/ *a.*

(1) showing good manners and respect for other people 有风度的；得体的

—His refusal was worded in such a graceful way that we could not be offended. 他的拒绝是那样的委婉得体，所以我们并未感到不快。

(2) moving in a smooth and attractive way, or having an attractive shape or form 优美的；优雅的；雅致的

—We admired the graceful poise of the dancer. 我们很欣赏那位舞蹈演员的优美舞姿。

【近义】elegant

10 youngster /'jʌŋstə/ *n.*

[C] a child or young person 孩童；年轻人

—A poor old man was once a lazy youngster. 一个懒惰的少年将来就是一个衣衫褴褛的老人。

11 nevertheless /ˌnevəðə'les/ *ad.*

(*fml.*) in spite of a fact that you have just mentioned 然而；不过；尽管如此

—I cannot take your advice. Nevertheless, thank you for putting it. 我不能接受你的建议。不过，谢谢你提出来。

【近义】however, but, yet

12 abstract /'æbstrækt/ *a.*

based on general ideas or principles rather than specific examples or real events 纯理论上的；纯概念的；抽象的

—We may talk of beautiful things, but beauty itself is abstract. 我们尽可谈论美的事物，然而美本身是抽象的。

n. [C] a short written statement containing only the most important ideas in a speech, article, etc. 摘要；梗概

—The whole text of the abstract shall contain no more than 500 words. 摘要部分不得超过 500 个字。

13 concept /ˈkɒnsept/ *n.*
[C] an idea of how sth. is, or how sth. should be done 概念;观念;想法
—Children can not understand such an abstract concept. 孩子们无法理解如此抽象的概念。
【近义】conception

14 strategy /ˈstrætədʒi/ *n.*
[C] a planned series of actions for achieving sth. 行动计划;计谋;策略
—Learning strategy is very important to every English leaner. 学习策略对每一个英语学习者来说都很重要。

15 cooperation /kəʊˌɒpəˈreɪʃn/ *n.*
[U] the process of working together for the same purpose 合作;协作
—We were greatly aided in our investigation by the cooperation of the police. 我们在调查的过程中得到警方的大力协助。
【派生】cooperator *n.* 合作者

16 crucial /ˈkruːʃl/ *a.*
sth. that is crucial is extremely important, because everything else depends on it 至关重要的;关键性的
—Our project had reached a crucial stage. 我们的项目已经到了关键阶段。
【近义】critical, fatal

17 overcome /ˌəʊvəˈkʌm/ *vt.*
successfully control a feeling or problem that prevents you from achieving sth. 控制(感情);克服(困难)
—I realized that there is no way I can overcome my homesick. 我意识到自己没有办法克服我的思乡情结。

18 fundamental /ˌfʌndəˈmentl/ *a.*
(1) relating to the most basic and important parts of sth. 根本的;基本的;基础的
  —From the outset, the cooperation had two fundamental flaws. 从一开始,这一合作就有两个根本的缺陷。
(2) very necessary and important 必不可少的;十分重要的
  —Telling your child the difference between right and wrong is one of the fundamental tasks of being a parent. 教导孩子辨别是非是父母的重要任务之一。

19 outcome /ˈaʊtˌkʌm/ *n.*
[C] the final result of a process, meeting, activity, etc. 结果;结局;后果
—The answer given to the question will affect the outcome of the research. 对这些问题的回答将影响到研究结果。
【近义】consequence, result

20 ambition /æmˈbɪʃn/ *n.*
(1) [C] a strong desire to achieve sth. 追求;夙愿
  —The glory of his country is his ambition. 为国增光是他的夙愿。
(2) [U] determination to be successful, rich, powerful, etc. 抱负;雄心;野心
  —That politician is full of ambition. 那位政治家野心勃勃。

21 participation /pɑːˌtɪsɪˈpeɪʃn/ *n.*
[U] the act of taking part in an activity or event 参加;参与
—I'd like to express my thanks for your participation in the work. 对于您的参与,我深表谢意。

【派生】participant *n.* 参加者
【搭配】participate in 参与,参加
【近义】take part in

22 hazard /ˈhæzəd/ *n.*
[C] sth. that may be dangerous, or cause accidents or problems 危险;隐患
—Scientific researches show that there are many serious health hazards associated with smoking and drinking. 科学研究表明许多危害健康的情况都与吸烟酗酒有关。

23 psychology /saɪˈkɒlədʒi/ *n.*
[U] the study of the mind and how it influences people's behavior 心理学
—Many interviewers failed in the psychology test. 很多应聘者在心理测试环节被淘汰。

24 psychologist /saɪˈkɒlədʒɪst/ *n.*
[C] sb. who studies how people's minds work and how this affects their behavior 心理学家
—Freud was a brilliant psychologist. 弗洛伊德是位杰出的心理学家。

25 considerable /kənˈsɪd(ə)rəbl/ *a.*
fairly large, esp. large enough to have effect or be important 相当大的
—Jack has earned a considerable sum of money this year. 杰克今年赚了一笔数量可观的钱。
【辨析】considerate *adj.* 考虑周到的;体贴的

26 intensity /ɪnˈtensɪti/ *n.*
[U] the quality of being felt very strongly or having a strong effect 强烈;剧烈
—I felt down and the pain increased in intensity. 我摔倒在地,疼痛感越来越强烈。
【派生】intensive *a.* 密集的,精细的

27 psychological /ˌsaɪkəˈlɒdʒɪkl/ *a.*
involving or affecting your mind 精神的;心理的
—Inhibition of natural impulses may cause psychological problems. 压抑自然的冲动可能会引起心理上的问题。

28 emphasis /ˈemfəsɪs/ *n.*
[C, U] special attention or importance 重点;重要性
—Our English course places great emphasis on conversational skills. 我们的英语课程非常重视会话技能。
【搭配】put/place emphasis on sth. 重视……;强调……

29 exclusive /ɪkˈskluːsɪv/ *a.*
limited to a particular person or group and not shared with others 专用的;独有的;独享的
—The interview is exclusive to this magazine. 本杂志得到独家访问权。

30 exclusively /ɪkˈskluːsɪvli/ *ad.*
used for emphasizing that sth. is available to or limited to one specific thing or group 仅仅;单独地;专门地
—This room is exclusively for women and babies. 这个房间是供妇婴专用的。

31 outlook /ˈaʊtˌlʊk/ *n.*
(1) [C] your general attitude to life and the world (对生活和世界的)看法,观点,态度
—We shall all have a very optimistic outlook on our future. 我们应该对我们的未来有一个乐观的态度。

(2) [C, usu. sing.] what is expected to happen in the future 前景;远景

—As prices have dropped lower and lower, the outlook looks black for many small companies. 价格一再下跌，对许多小公司来说前景大为不妙。

【近义】prospect, perspective, viewpoint, opinion

32 demanding /dɪˈmɑːndɪŋ/ *a.*

(1) expecting a lot of attention or expecting to have things exactly the way you want them, esp. in a way that is not fair (人)要求严格的;苛求的;要求过高的

—My little boy is a demanding child. 我的小儿子是个很难满足的孩子。

(2) needing a lot of ability, effort, or skill 要求高的;需要技能的;费力的

—Teaching is a demanding profession. 教学工作是个要求很高的工作。

33 excessive /ɪkˈsesɪv/ *a.*

much more than is reasonable or necessary 过度的;过多的

—Excessive smoking and drinking tend to do great harm to your health. 过多的抽烟和过量的酗酒,会严重危害你的健康。

34 drain /dreɪn/ *vt.*

(1) make sb. very tired and without any energy 使筋疲力尽

—Find out those things that drain you energy, and get rid of them gradually. 找出那些使你消耗精力的事情,并逐步消除它们对你的影响。

(2) make the water or liquid in sth. flow away 使流走;使排出

—They drain the swamp and turn it into fertile land. 他们排干沼泽地的水,将它变成了肥沃的土地。

35 draining /ˈdreɪnɪŋ/ *a.*

使人筋疲力尽的

—After a draining day, we had finally reached the top of the mountain. 经过了筋疲力尽的一天,我们终于到达了山的顶峰。

36 consequence /ˈkɒnsɪkwəns/ *n.*

[C] sth. that happens as a result of a particular action or set of conditions 后果

—In consequence of his bad conduct he was dismissed by his company. 由于行为不良,他被公司开除了。

37 rate /reɪt/ *n.*

(1) [C] the speed at which sth. happens over a period of time (某事发生的)速率,速度

—Prices keep rising at a dizzy rate. 物价以极快的速度不断上涨。

(2) [C] the number of times sth. happens, or the number of examples of sth. within a certain period 比率;率

—The birth rate is the number of births compared to the number of the people. 出生率是出生人数与人口总数的比率。

【搭配】at a/the rate of... 以……速度/比率

【近义】ratio, proportion

38 accomplish /əˈkʌmplɪʃ/ *vt.*

succeed in doing sth., esp. after trying very hard 完成;实现

—Mary has accomplished a great deal in the past weeks. 在过去的几个星期里,玛丽完成了相当多的工作。

39accomplishment /ə'kʌmplɪʃmənt/ *n.*

(1) [C] sth. successful or impressive that is achieved after a lot of effort and hard work 成就;成绩

—The series of paintings is quite an accomplishment. 这一系列的绘画真是了不起的成就。

(2) [U] the act of finishing or achieving sth. good 完成;实现

—The accomplishment of this task took much effort. 这项工作的完成花费了很多精力。

40adapt /ə'dæpt/ *v.*

gradually change your behavior and attitudes in order to be successful in a new situation (使)适应;(使)适合

—Freshmen need to adapt to the new campus life as soon as possible. 新生们需要尽快适应新的校园生活。

vt. change sth. to make it suitable for a different purpose 改造;改装

—This novel has been adapted for movie from the Russian original. 这部小说已由俄文原著改编成电影。

【搭配】adapt to (使)适应……

【辨析】adopt 采纳;收养

41define /dɪ'faɪn/ *vt.*

(1) describe clearly and exactly what sth. is 使明确;规定;说明

—Government should clearly define the scope of research. 政府应该明确规定研究范围。

(2) explain exactly the meaning of a particular word or idea 给……下定义;解释

—How do you define a marital felicity? 你是如何定义美满的婚姻的呢?

【派生】definition *n.* 定义;规定

42redefine /ˌriːdɪ'faɪn/ *vt.*

define sth. again or differently 重新界定;重新定义

—We need to redefine what we mean by democracy. 我们需要重新考虑我们对民主的理解。

43trait /treɪt/ *n.*

[C] (*fml.*) a particular quality in sb. 's character (某人性格中的)特征,品质

—One of his less attractive traits is criticizing his wife in public. 他有个不太讨人喜欢的特点,就是爱当众责备妻子。

【近义】characteristic

44extreme /ɪk'striːm/ *a.*

(1) (*only before noun*) very great in degree 极大的;极度的

—The extreme heat sapped his strength and health. 极度的暑热逐渐损耗他的体力和健康。

(2) considered unreasonable by most people 极端的;偏激的;过分的

—His political views are rather extreme. 他的政治观点相当极端。

n. [C] a situation, quality, etc. which is as great as it can possibly be—used esp. when talking about two opposites 极端(尤用于谈论两个相反的事物)

—Love and hate are two extremes. 爱与恨是两个极端。

45extremely /ɪk'striːmli/ *ad.*

to a very great degree 极度;极其

—This task is extremely difficult to him since he has little experience. 这项任务于他而言极其艰巨,因为他几乎没有任何经验。

46pave /peɪv/ *vt.*

cover a path, road, area, etc. with a hard level surface such as blocks of stone or concrete 铺;铺砌;铺筑

—The road was paved with cobblestones. 那条路是用鹅卵石铺成的。

【搭配】pave the way for... 为……铺平道路;为……做好准备

(二)短语

1 the here and now

the present time 现时

—Nowadays, youngsters enjoy living in the here and now. 当今的年轻人喜欢生活在当下。

2 early on

at an early stage in a relationship, process, etc. 在初期;开始不久

—I knew quite early on that he was from a poor family. 我很早就知道他家里很穷。

3 free ride

a benefit obtained at another's expense or without the usual cost or effort 白白得到的好处

—There is no free rides! You have to work hard to achieve what you want. 天下没有免费的午餐!要成功,就必须努力。

4 blame sb. for sth.

say or think that sb. is responsible for sth. bad 责怪;指责;把……归咎于

—Some parents blamed the internet games for misleading youngsters into violence. 有些家长们责怪网络游戏误导了年轻人,使年轻人喜欢采用暴力解决事情。

5 place emphasis on sth.

put special attention or importance on sth. 重视

—More and more people place emphasis on English learning. 越来越多的人重视英语学习。

6 cancel out

stop sth. from having any effect 抵销

—The poor sale of the fourth season canceled out the gains of the rest time of this year. 第四季度的销售亏损抵销了今年其他三季度的盈利。

7 on the surface

when not thought about deeply or thoroughly, or when not looked at carefully 表面上;从外表看;乍一看

—On the surface, the stock market looked pretty good, with indexes on the rise. 从表面上看,股市行情很好,各大股指纷纷上扬。

8 in shape

in a good state of health or physical fitness 健康状况良好

—My father believes that jogging is a good way to keep in shape. 我父亲认为慢跑是保持健康的好方法。

9 deal with sth.

take action to do sth., esp. to solve a problem 处理;应付

—Do you have any concrete thoughts on how to deal with this difficulty? 处理这种难题你有什么具体的想法吗?

10 the way of the world

how things always happen or are done, esp. when this is not easy to change 大多数人的行为方式;世道;事情发生的规律

—The rich and powerful make the decision—that's the way of the world. 有钱有势的人说了算,这就是

世道。

11 pave the way for sth.

make a later event or development possible by producing the right conditions 为某事物铺平道路;为某事物创造条件

—This agreement will pave the way for a lasting peace. 这个协议将为持久和平铺路。

三、课文注释

1 As the Roman poet, Juvenal, famously said, "A healthy mind is to be found in a healthy body." (Para. 1)

【Meaning】Juvenal who was the famous Roman poet once said, if you want to have a healthy mind, first you need to have a healthy body.

【解　析】本句是文章的主要观点。引用名人名句抛出自己的观点,更有说服力。

2 For parents, teachers, and coaches, there is no greater responsibility than sustaining the mental and physical health of our young people. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】The greatest responsibility of parents, teachers, and coaches is to maintain the mental and physical health of our young people.

【解　析】there is no... than... 是一个固定句型,no 后面接比较级,否定的比较级结构表达最高级意义,表示"最……的是……"。

3 The ability to work toward a common goal underlines the value of teamwork. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】The ability to work toward the same goal shows how important the value of teamwork is.

【解　析】a common goal 指的是"一个共同的目标",underline 是"强调,突出"的意思。

4 The lessons our youth learn will stay with them all their lives, and there is no better place to assist this learning than on the playing field. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】What the young people learn from sports will have great influence on their whole lives, and the best place to learn these lessons is the playing field.

5 Nevertheless, many lessons remain abstract concept until they are made real by life experiences. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】However, if those lessons are not applied in real life, they will be just empty ideas which have not much practical value.

【解　析】此句强调实践的重要性。abstract 和 real 是一对相对反义的词语。

6 You can talk about how bitter lemons are or how sweet honey is. However, until you actually taste lemons and honey you cannot experience the true meaning of "bitter" and "sweet". Knowledge comes from the application of ideas in the experience of real life. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】You can describe the meaning of the bitter lemons and the sweet honey to youngsters. However, young people will not know what "bitter" and "sweet" mean until they taste them by themselves. In the same way, young people learn knowledge from their experience in their real life.

【解　析】实践出真知。本句里 lemons 和 honey 是作者列举的两个例子,目的是想说明只有尝过了柠檬和蜂蜜之后,人们才知道"酸"和"甜"的真正意义。

7 Strategy, teamwork, and cooperation are crucial concepts that can be best learned and understood through sports. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】People can best learn the important concepts such as strategy, teamwork, and cooperation through sports.

【解　　析】从运动当中能学到许多宝贵的东西，比如策略、团队精神、合作精神。

8 Naturally, those who are inherently talented will spend more time on the field and will achieve fame. They have the opportunity to develop leadership skills and earn the respect of their team members. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】It is natural that those with inborn talents will spend time on the field and will become famous. They have the opportunity to develop leadership skills and win the respect of their team members.

【解　　析】句中 achieve fame 和 earn the respect of ... 是绝佳的词汇搭配。另外，win/enjoy fame, show respect 也是常见的搭配。

9 However, the benefits of participating in team sports are not dependent on natural ability. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】However, the benefits of doing team sports are not determined by the abilities you were born with. In other words, people can gain benefits from doing team sports even if they are not inherently talented in sports.

【解　　析】natural ability 指的是"天赋"，not dependent on 指的是"并非完全取决于"，整句话的意思是，运动能否给人带来益处并非完全取决于他是否有运动天赋。也就是说，没有运动天赋的人一样能从运动中获益。

10 Youth need not be stars to benefit from team membership. It doesn't matter whether they are gifted at their chosen sport. As a famous American sportswriter said, "It's not whether you win or lose. It's how you play the game." (Para. 4)

【Meaning】Young people do not have to be stars to reap benefits from sports. It doesn't matter whether they are talented at their chosen sports. According to a famous American sportswriter, what matters is not whether you win or lose the game but how you play it.

【解　　析】本文作者为了更有说服力，多次引用名人名言名句。本句中引用美国著名体育记者的话："输赢不重要，重要的是你在比赛中如何表现。"

11 What is missing in natural talent can be overcome through hard work, practice and learning from the example of others. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】One can make up for the lack of natural talent through hard work, practice and learning from others.

【解　　析】what is missing in natural talent 和 not talented 表达同一个意思，overcome 是"克服，弥补"的含义。

12 Of course, participation in competitive team sports is not without hazards. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Certainly, taking part in competitive team sports have its negative sides.

【解　　析】句中 not without 是双重否定形式，表达肯定的意思。构成双重否定的另一种方式是借助 in-或者 un-这样的否定前缀。

13 A football coach, famous for his competitive spirit, said: "Winning isn't everything; it is the only thing." (Para 6)

【Meaning】A football coach who was famous for his idea of trying to be better than others once said that wining was very important although it was not everything, and that sportsmen had to win because there was no other option for them.

【解　　析】尽管参加体育运动能够培养人们竞争意识，但是不应该过分强调比赛的输赢。作者引用这位足球教练的话作为反面例子来支撑他的观点。

14 Such an outlook can be harsh on children when they feel pressured to win from the adults around them. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】The attitude of adults including coaches, parents and teachers will have negative effects on children when they feel that adults push them to win.

【解　　析】成人对待比赛的态度直接影响孩子们。因此，教练、父母、老师要引导孩子正确对待比赛，从运动中获益。

15 Child psychologists often blame parents and coaches for being too demanding. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Child psychologists often criticize parents and coaches for expecting too much from children.

【解　　析】blame sb. for sth. 是固定搭配，意为"责怪某人某事，为某事责怪某人"。

16 In such circumstances, the sports experience uncovers negative, draining and harmful consequences, canceling out the many desirable effects of sports. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】In such situation, the negative effects of sports experience appear: It requires too much time and emotional energy and might lead to harmful results; therefore, it will reduce the many good effects of the sports experience.

【解　　析】本句的精彩词汇有 uncover(揭露)，draining(使人筋疲力尽的)，desirable(理想的)。

17 Sports teach much more than what is easily seen on the surface. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】Sports teach children much more than the general things that can easily be seen; in other words, sports can also teach children something that may not be easily observed.

【解　　析】sth. does much more than 意为"某事远比表面上多/好；不只是……"，用于表达"做某事远不止是……"。

18 It helps them learn the ways of the world, the benefits of hard work and determination, and how to coexist with others to achieve a common goal, even with other team members they may not particularly like! (Para. 7)

【Meaning】Sports help young people learn how everything works, what they can get with hard work and determination, and how they can work together with others to achieve a common goal, even with other team members they may not really like.

【解　　析】the ways of the world 是"世道；人情世故"的意思。整句话的结构是 It helps them learn A, B, and C. even with other team members they may not particularly like 是修饰 C。

19 It allows youth to find a role they can fill, then to change or adapt to that role, and, over time, to grow and redefine who they are and who they will become. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】Sports give young people a chance to play a role, and then change themselves to play the role well. As time goes by, they will grow and reexamine who they are and what kind of person they will become in the long run.

【解　　析】句子结构为 It allows youth to do..., then to do... and to do...

20 These are all traits that can be extremely useful in the real world, and developing such traits at an early age paves the way for success later in life. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】These are all qualities which can be very useful in the real world, and developing such qualities of children when they are still young can help them make success a great possibility later in life.

【解　　析】pave the way for sth. 意为"为……铺路；为……做好准备"。

四、课文译文

用运动塑造年轻人的生活

1. 未来的领导者塑造并培养于当下。正如罗马诗人尤维纳利斯的一句名言所说的:"健全的心智来自健康的体魄。"对家长、老师和教练而言,最大的责任莫过于让我们的年轻人保持身心健康。

2. 成长中的孩子需要精神激励和身体刺激。团队体育运动是提供这些特质的极好途径!运动不仅是娱乐,年轻人还可以通过运动学到让其在日后的成年生活中得以受益的重要技能。有能力为一个共同的目标而努力凸显了团队合作的价值。胜不骄、败不馁强调了在所有人际交往中保持优雅风度是彼此的义务。我们的年轻人从中学到的经验将伴随他们终生,而运动场正是帮助年轻人学习这些经验的最佳场所。

3. 当然,年轻人所获得的最重要的经验是父母和老师教给他们的。然而,只有在生活中经历之后,许多经验教训才不再是抽象的概念。你可以说柠檬有多苦或蜂蜜有多甜。但是,只有在你真正品尝过柠檬或蜂蜜之后,你才会体会"苦"与"甜"的真正含义。概念只有应用到现实生活中才能变成知识。运动可以让人最好地学习和理解策略、团队协作和合作这些至关重要的概念。团队体育运动给孩子们提供了一个自然场所,让他们去努力奋斗并学习宝贵的生活经验。

4. 当然,那些有运动天赋的人将会在运动场上花更多的时间,也将会出名。他们有机会培养自己的领导才能,并赢得团队伙伴的尊敬。然而,能否从参加团队体育运动中受益并不取决于天赋。年轻人不是非得成为体育明星才能从团队体育中受益。他们在自己选择的运动上有没有天赋并不重要。正如一位美国著名体育记者所说的:"输赢不重要,重要的是你在比赛中如何表现。"

5. 运动能激励和鼓舞那些天分并不太高的人做到最好。一个人天分不足可以通过努力奋斗、训练和向其他榜样学习来弥补。天分不足的人绝不该嫉妒他人,他们可以比那些有天赋的运动员更多地了解真实的世界,因为他们很早就知道世界上没有免费的午餐,而且要想在现实世界中取得成就,就必须不断地付出努力。通过运动,他们会认识到个人努力奋斗的价值,以及努力和团队合作更重要的价值。他们还将认识到,作好计划与准备对于实现人生理想来说极其重要。这些经验教训对于他们整个人生,包括他们的事业和个人生活,都是宝贵的。

6. 当然,参加竞技团队体育运动也并非没有危害。有些心理学家已经对年轻人体育竞技的激烈程度表示出相当大的忧虑。他们认为,当一味强调要赢得比赛时,孩子们经常遭到心理上的伤害。一位以体育竞技精神闻名的橄榄球教练曾说:"赢不是一切,但赢是唯一重要的事。"这样的观念对孩子们来说有些苛刻,因为他们会迫于身边大人的压力去赢得比赛。儿童心理学家经常责怪父母和教练对孩子们要求过高。如果过分强调输赢,孩子们就失去了从运动中学习的机会。在这样的情况下,体育运动就会暴露出负面的、令人身心疲惫的和有害的后果,从而也就抵消了体育运动带来的诸多益处。

7. 体育运动教给我们的远比表面上看起来的多得多。年轻的运动员每次踏上运动场都能学到一些东西。运动远不只是让年轻人保持健康的体魄并健康成长。运动能给年轻人带来自我价值感和成就感,并教会他们很好地对待成败。体育运动帮助年轻人了解处世之道,使他们认识到肯努力和有决心的益处,以及学会如何与他人,甚至是那些自己其实不怎么喜欢的队友相处以实现共同的目标。体育运动使年轻人找到自己的角色定位,然后为了这个角色去做出相应的改变或调整,并随着时间的流逝逐渐成长,重新界定他们自己是什么样的人以及他们要成为什么样的人。这些都是在现实世界中极其有用的品质。早期培养这样的品质会为年轻人未来生活的成功铺平道路。

五、练习答案及详解

Reading skills

略读

略读(skimming)是一种快速阅读技巧，目的是找到主要事实或篇章的主旨大意。略读最重要的是找出概括性的信息。它不同于寻读(scanning)，寻读主要是寻找细节性的信息。下列步骤将会对你的略读提高有很大帮助：

1. 读文章的标题。
2. 读第一段落。
3. 如果有副标题，细读副标题和每段的第一句。
4. 浏览文章主体，寻找线索词，如谁、什么、什么时间、什么地方、多少等。
5. 仔细阅读最后一段。

1 Answer the following questions about Text B by using the reading skill of skimming.

1. The text is mainly about the benefits sports can bring to young people.
2. Sports can keep young people healthy, give them a sense of self-worth and accomplishment, teach them to deal with both failure and success, and help them learn to cooperate with others.
3. Yes, participation in competitive team sports can do harm to young people sometimes.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

2 Answer the following questions.

1. It means that the qualities of the future leaders are formed through the activities that they participate in now.
2. Team sports can bring about attributes such as inspiration and physical stimulation.
3. By mentioning lemons and honey, the author wants to illustrate that in order to get to know the real meaning of something, you have to experience it.
4. The quotation implies that it doesn't matter whether you win or lose in a game. What matters is whether you try your best or play fair or work as a team.
5. By taking part in team sports, talented people have the chance to develop leadership skills and earn the respect of their team members.
6. Through sports, those who lack talent will learn the value of individual hard work, the value of cooperation and teamwork, and the fundamental importance of planning and preparation for the positive outcome of their ambitions.
7. When too much emphasis is put on winning, children may suffer psychological harm, and may miss the learning opportunities sports can offer.
8. It means winning is not everything, but we must win as there is no other option for us. In saying this, the football coach means that although people often say winning is not everything, it turns out to be the most important thing on the playground. What he wants to convey is that players should do all their best to win.

Critical thinking

3 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. There are many benefits we can get from playing sports:
   - It can improve our health, fitness, and overall well-being.
   - It is fun and makes us enjoy our college life more.
   - It helps us develop self-discipline.
   - It improves our self-esteem.
   - It helps us how to act with grace in the face of failures.
2. Yes, I have played in competitive sports. I was on the class volleyball team in high school. Every year we competed at the school sports meeting. I usually felt stressed out a few days before the game. I would calm myself down by closing my eyes and taking deep breaths, or by practicing meditation or yoga. Besides, I would keep telling myself that my team had practiced a lot, we cooperated well and we were ready.
3. No, I don't have any trouble in cooperating with others in team sports. I play team sports such as basketball and football. I can always get along well with my teammates and my opponents as well, for I'm understanding and considerate, and I can handle defeat with good grace.
4. Take up a sport, practice it, and you will love it. Playing sports benefits you both for the time being and in the long run. By playing sports, you will enjoy good health, better self-image, and therefore generate confidence; and you will meet more people, learn to deal with stress or depression. So let sports become part of your life, for the benefits will not only add up to a better quality of life, but will also last a lifetime.
5. We should be humble in victory and gracious in defeat. If you win, be humble. Don't boast about your talents or skills. Don't play down your opponents. But if you lose, be gracious. Don't complain that the judge wasn't fair, or your teammates didn't play well, or your opponents, and shake hands with them. And thank your teammates for their efforts.

Language focus

Words in use

4 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. critical

   【译文】销售团队的工作对这家新玩具公司的成功至关重要。
2. humble

   【译文】这位将军参与了多次艰苦的战斗，赢得无数奖牌，却依然保持谦逊。
3. underline

   【译文】我们英语老师总是让我们给课文中的新词和词组画线。
4. mutual

   【译文】我认为找到能和你相互理解、彼此关爱的人棒极了。
5. accomplish

   【译文】他们承诺尽自己的每一分力量来按时完成这项任务。我觉得我应该信任他们。
6. adapt

【译文】当来到一个新的国家,你需要适应新的礼仪和习俗。

7. emphasized

【译文】在这次会议上,他强调三点:贸易、人力资源和资本投入。

8. overcome

【译文】当孩子们通过自己的努力克服困难的时候,他们就发展了自己的新技能以及对自己能力的强烈认同。

9. demanding

【译文】我的一个朋友决定放弃薪水优厚的工作,原因是这个岗位要求过高,他没有时间陪伴家人。

10. considerable

【译文】想要一门外语精通,需要投入大量的时间和精力。

Expressions in use

5 Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions or adverbs.

1. for

【译文】不要因为孩子们糟糕的行为而批评他们。应该受到批评的是他们的父母,因为父母应该教育孩子们有良好的表现。

2. on

【译文】这门课要求学生进行大量的文学阅读,特别是女性文学。

3. to

【译文】该项目的目的是为学生提供掌握某项技能的基本知识,并具有适应新环境的能力。

4. in

【译文】许多年轻女性对自己过于苛刻,她们过度节食。

5. out

【译文】旅行的花费和种种计划削减了她本会获得的快乐。

6. for

【译文】这次讨论是为两国之间官方协议的签署铺平道路。

7. with

【译文】这本手册给出了工作中遇到问题如何处理的指导。

8. on

【译文】杰瑞爱他母亲,但有时觉得她对他的要求过于严格了些。

9. in

【译文】如果你缺乏自信,问问自己害怕什么,然后找到办法去克服它。

10. at

【译文】近几年,在线购物以越来越快的速度增长。

Sentence structure

6 Rewrite the following sentences by using the structure "It is/was said/reported, etc. that...".

1. It is thought that writing about troubling experiences helps people deal with them.
2. It is reported that a film by an unknown director has won the first prize in the film festival.
3. It was known that this world-famous company evolved from a small company with a few people and a single office.

7 Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English, using "not without" to express affirmative meaning.

1. not without problems
2. not without risk
3. not without foundation

Collocation

8 Read the following email about doing various sports. Complete the following email with the verbs given below. Change the form where necessary. Some verbs can be used more than once.

1. playing 玩电子游戏
2. do 进行许多不同的活动
3. go 去钓鱼
4. go 去游泳
5. doing 做早间运动
6. play/do 做任何运动
7. played 打高尔夫
8. keep 保持身体健康
9. overcome 不足的部分可以被弥补
10. achieved 获得荣誉
11. set 创造纪录
12. earned 赢得尊重

Unit 6

Earn as you learn?

Section A

To work or not to work—That is the question



一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文是一篇调查研究报告——打工对学生的学习带来的影响。文章题目即点明主题：打工还是不打工——这是个问题。这是模仿了莎士比亚的名作《哈姆雷特》中的经典对白“生存还是毁灭，这是个问题。”的句子结构，从而引出作者的观点：对大学生而言，大学期间是否应该去打工是个值得深思的问题。文章首段介绍了调查研究的目标及方法：打工经历对学生成就的影响；采用比较、对比、长期跟踪、评估等方法。然后介绍了调查研究的结果：花费过多的时间精力去打工会影响和严重干扰学生的学习。接着详细分析了打工对学生学习参与度产生负面影响的多种原因：首先，由于紧张的打工日程，打工的学生用来完成学校作业的时间就减少了；第二，为了每周能打工20个小时或更长时间，许多学生必须要在晚上工作；第三，挣到数量可观的零花钱所带来的兴奋感似乎让上学显得没意义和乏味；最后，长时间打工与饮酒和吸毒的增多有关。最后，末段是结论：学生可以去打工，但是要想学业成功，就应该下决心做到每周打工不超过10个小时。

(二)背景知识

TO BE OR NOT TO BE, THAT IS THE QUESTION.

TO BE OR NOT TO BE, THAT IS THE QUESTION.(意为“生存还是毁灭，这是一个值得考虑的问题。”)是《哈姆雷特》(Hamlet)中的经典独白。《哈姆雷特》是由威廉·莎士比亚(William Shakespeare, 1564～1616)创作于1599年至1602年间的一部悲剧作品。戏剧讲述了叔叔克劳狄斯谋害了哈姆雷特的父亲，篡取了王位，并娶了国王的遗孀乔特鲁德；哈姆雷特王子因此为父王向叔叔复仇。《哈姆雷特》是世界著名悲剧之一，也是莎士比亚最负盛名的剧本，具有深刻的悲剧意义、复杂的人物性格以及丰富完美的悲剧艺术手法，代表着整个西方文艺复兴时期文学的最高成就。《哈姆雷特》《麦克白》《李尔王》和《奥赛罗》一起组成莎士比亚“四大悲剧”。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Para. 1 The author gives a brief account of the research objective and the research methods. 调查研究的目标及研究方法。

Paras. 2-4 The research findings are demonstrated. 调查研究的发现。

Paras. 5-8 Explanations for the negative effects of part-time work on student performance are in details. 详细解释说明打工给学生的学习带来的负面影响。

Para. 9 The author draws the conclusion of the research. 调查研究的结论。

2. 写作特点

本文是一篇典型的调查报告,包括调查研究的目标及方法、调查结果、原因分析、结论四个部分。文章结构清晰。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 numerous /'nju:mərəs/ *a.*

many 许多的;很多的

—It's too noisy here and numerous interruptions have prevented me from finishing my work on time. 这里太吵了。由于屡遭打扰,我未能按时完成工作。

2 reliable /rɪ'laɪəbl/ *a.*

able to be trusted or depended on 可信赖的;可靠的

—He is regarded as a reliable man. 他被认为是一个可靠的人。

【派生】reliably *adv.* 依赖地 reliability *n.* 依赖,信赖

3 contrast /kən'trɑ:st/ *vt.*

compare two things, ideas, people, etc. to show how different they are from each other 使成对比;使成对照

—In her essay, the author contrasts the present economic crisis with the one 10 years ago. 作者在文中就当前的经济危机和十年前的经济危机进行了对比。

vi. (of two things) be different from each other, often in a noticeable or interesting way 形成对比

—His actions and his words contrast sharply. 他说的和做的相差太远。

/'kɒntrɑ:st/ *n.*

[C, U] a difference between people, ideas, situations, things, etc. that are being compared 差异;差别

—There can be no differentiation without contrast. 有比较才有差别。

【搭配】contrast with sb./sth. 与……形成对照 by contrast 相反,相比之下 in contrast with/to sb./sth. 和……做对比,与……相反

4 indicate /'ɪndɪˌkeɪt/ *vt.*

(1) show that a particular situation exists, or that sth. is likely to be true 表明;显示

—My car's gas gauge indicates that there is little gas left. 我车上的汽油表显示剩下的油不多了。

(2) say or do sth. to make your wishes, intention, etc. clear 表明(意向等)

—Her hesitation indicates unwillingness. 他的犹豫表明不愿意。

【近义】imply, show

5 indicator /ˈɪndɪˌkeɪtə/ *n.*

[C] sth. that can be regarded as a sign of sth. else 指示物;指示者

—Age alone is a poor indicator of a person's capability, so we must consider other aspects. 单看年龄不能说明一个人的能力,因此我们必须考虑其他方面。

6 decrease /diːˈkriːs/ *v.*

become less or go down to a lower level, or make sth. do this (使)变小;(使)减少

—They are making further efforts to decrease family spending. 他们正在做进一步的努力来减少家庭开支。

/ˈdiːkriːs/ *n.*

[C, U] the process of becoming less, or the amount by which sth. becomes less 减少;减少的量

—The birth rate has been on the decrease in the past few years. 过去几年的出生率呈下降趋势。

【反义】increase

7 assess /əˈses/ *vt.*

(1) make a judgment about a person or situation after thinking carefully about it 评价;评定

—They are conducting a survey to assess the impact of advertising on people's consumer behavior. 他们正在进行一项调查,测评广告对于人们消费行为的影响。

(2) calculate the value or cost of sth. 估价;估计

—They looked at the house and assessed its market value. 他们看了看房子并估算了其市场价值。

8 alter /ˈɔːltə/ *v.*

change, or make sb. or sth. change (使)变化;(使)改变

—We'll have to alter our plan for this weekend if it snows. 如果下雪,我们将不得不改变这个周末的计划。

9 stake /steɪk/ *n.*

(1) (~s) [pl.] the things that you can gain or lose by taking a risk, e. g. in business or politics 赌注;风险

—The men played for high stakes. 那些人玩牌时下大赌注。

(2) [C] money that you risk as the result of a horse race, card game, etc. (赛马、牌局等的)赌注,押金

—For a dollar stake, you can win up to $1,000,000. 押一美元的赌注,你最多可以赢一百万美元。

(3) [C] the part of a business that you own because you have invested money in it 股份

—His wife holds a 40% stake in the company. 他的妻子拥有公司 40%的股份。

10 academic /ˌækəˈdemɪk/ *a.*

(*usu. before noun*) relating to education, esp. at college or university level 学术的

—Applicant must possess good conduct and obtain satisfactory academic results. 申请者必须拥有良好品性,并考获令人满意的成绩。

11 undermine /ˌʌndəˈmaɪn/ *vt.*

gradually make sb. or sth. less strong or effective 逐渐削弱;逐渐损害

—They will do anything to undermine their adversary's reputation. 他们会不择手段地去损害对手的名誉。

12 significant /sɪgˈnɪfɪkənt/ *a.*

(1) very large or noticeable 相当数量的;显著的

—We have all invested significant amounts of time and energy in making this project a success. 我们都为这个项目的成功付出了相当多的时间和精力。

(2) very important 重要的;意义重大的

—Early experiences in childhood plays a significant role in developing one's character. 一个人童年时期的经历对他的性格形成有着重大的意义。

13 significantly /sɪg'nɪfɪkəntli/ *ad.*

in an important way or to an important degree 重大地;显著地

—More significantly, young people finally realized the importance of balancing working and study. 颇具意义的是,年轻人终于认识到平衡打工和学习的重要性。

14 interfere /ˌɪntə'fɪə/ *vi.*

deliberately get involved in a situation where you are not wanted or needed 介入;干涉;干预

—None has the right to interfere in the internal affairs of other countries'. 任何国家都无权干涉别国内政。

【搭配】interfere in 干涉,干预 interfere with 妨碍,阻止

15 overall /ˌəʊvər'ɔːl/ *ad.*

(1) generally 一般地;总体上

—Overall, she is very satisfied with the decoration of the house. 总的来说,她对房子的装修非常满意。

(2) considering or including everything 全部地;总共

—How much will it cost overall? 一共多少钱?

a. (*only before noun*) considering or including everything 包括一切的;全部的

—The overall measurement of this room is 100 square meters. 这个屋子的总面积是100平方米。

16 proof /pruːf/ *n.*

[C, U] facts, information, documents, etc. that prove sth. is true 证明;证据

—Have you got any proof that you own this book? 你有什么证据证明书是你的?

17 approximately /ə'prɒksɪmətli/ *ad.*

used for showing that an amount, number, time, etc. is not exact 大致;近似

—The plane will be taking off in approximately ten minutes. 飞机大约十分钟后起飞。

18 seemingly /'siːmɪŋli/ *ad.*

(1) (*fml.*) according to the facts as you know them 看样子;看来

—There is seemingly nothing we can do to stop the plan going ahead. 看样子我们无法阻止这项计划的实施。

(2) appearing to have a particular quality, when this may or may not be true 看上去;表面上;外观上

—The company, though seemingly rebuffed, in fact got what it wanted. 公司虽然表面上遭到了挫败,实际上得到了它想得到的。

19 consistent /kən'sɪstənt/ *a.*

(1) continuing to happen or develop in the same way 稳定发展的;持续不变的

—The last five years have seen a consistent improvement in the country's economy. 在过去五年中,这个国家的经济经历了持续的发展。

(2) always behaving in the same way of having the same attitudes, standards, etc., usu. used to show approval (行为、态度、标准等)一贯的,一致的

—What you do is not consistent with what you say. 你的言行不一致。

20 **toll** /təʊl/ *n.*

(1) [C] a very bad effect that sth. has on sth. or sb. over a long period of time 严重的不良影响

—Lack of sleep takes a toll on nearly every aspect of daily life. 缺少睡眠对日常生活的几乎各个方面都会造成不良影响。

(2) [C, usu. sing.] the number of people killed or injured in a particular accident, by a particular illness, etc. 伤亡人数

—It was reported that the death of toll from last week's fire was 45. 据报道,上周的火灾造成了45人死亡。

21 **given** /ˈɡɪvn/ *prep.*

taking sth. into account 考虑到;鉴于

—Given their inexperience, they've done it quite well. 考虑到他们缺乏经验,他们已经做得相当好了。

a. (*only before noun*) (any/a ~...) any particular time, situation, amount, etc. that is being used as an example 指定的;特定的

—You have to finish the work within the given period of time. 你们必须在规定的时间内完成这项工作。

【搭配】given that 考虑到,鉴于(一般位于句首,后面接表示原因的句子)

22 **indication** /ˌɪndɪˈkeɪʃn/ *n.*

[C, U] a sign that sth. will happen, is true, or exists 象征;迹象;标示

—There are some indications that the prices will rise. 有迹象表明物价将上涨。

【近义】implication

23 **compromise** /ˈkɒmprəˌmaɪz/ *vt.*

risk harming or losing sth. important 损害

—Defeat at this stage would compromise their chances of reaching the finals of the competition. 这个阶段的失败会减少他们进入决赛的机会。

vi. solve a problem or end an argument by accepting that you cannot have everything that you want 折中解决;让步

—They found it wiser to compromise with her. 他们觉得与她妥协更明智。

n. [C, U] a way of solving a problem or ending an argument in which both people or groups accept that they cannot have everything that they want 妥协;和解

—After some discussion they arrive at a compromise. 经过一番讨论之后,他们达成一项折中方案。

24 **whereas** /weərˈæz/ *conj.*

(*fml.*) used to say that although sth. is true of one thing, it is not true of another 但是;却;尽管

—Some people like reading until the midnight, whereas others like reading in the very early morning. 有人喜欢读书至深夜,然而也有人喜欢在清晨阅读。

【近义】however, yet, but

25 **marginal** /ˈmɑːdʒɪn(ə)l/ *a.*

(1) barely within a lower standard or limit of quality 勉强够格的;最低限度的

—He has received little education and his reading and writing abilities are marginal. 他没受过什么教育,他的阅读和写作能力都很有限。

(2) (of change or difference) too small to be important 小的;微不足道的;不重要的

—There has been a marginal improvement in the film's sales. 公司的销售额略有增长。

26 commit /kə'mɪt/ *vt.*

(1) decide to use money, time, people, etc. for a particular purpose 投入(钱、时间、人力等)

—You need to commit time and effort to improving English. 你需要投入时间和精力来提高英语水平。

(2) do sth. wrong or illegal 犯(错误或罪行)

—He committed suicide rather than sell out to the enemy. 他宁愿自杀也没有向敌人投降。

【搭配】commit... to... 投入(时间、精力等)到……中去

27 committed /kə'mɪtɪd/ *a.*

willing to work very hard at sth. 坚定的;尽心尽力的

—The organization is committed to achieving equal rights for women. 该组织致力于为妇女争取平等权利。

【近义】devoted

28 withdraw /wɪð'drɔː/ *v.*

no longer take part in sth., or stop sb. or sth. from taking part 退出;不参加

—He withdrew his name from the race. 他退出了比赛。

vt. take money from a bank account (从银行)提取

—I'd like to withdraw some money from my account. 我想从银行账户里提取一些钱。

29 striking /'straɪkɪŋ/ *a.*

attracting your interest or attention because of some unusual feature 引人注目的;显著的;吸引人的

—The most striking aspect of this city is the European style of the architectures. 这个城市最吸引人的地方是它的欧式建筑风格。

【近义】outstanding, remarkable, prominent, attractive

30 generate /'dʒenəˌreɪt/ *vt.*

(1) produce or cause sth. 产生;创造

—The new product is supposed to generate a lot of income for the company. 这款新产品被期待为公司创造大笔收入。

(2) produce heat, electricity, or another form of energy 产生(热、电等能量)

—Water power can be used to generate electricity. 水力可以用来发电。

31 anew /ə'njuː/ *ad.*

again, often in a new or different way 再;重新

—Both sides should begin anew the quest for peace. 双方都应重新开始寻求和平。

32 permanent /'pɜːmənət/ *a.*

continuing to exist for a long time or for all the time in the future 长久的;永久的;永恒的

—The incident left permanent traces on his mind. 那件事在脑海里留下了永久的印象。

【反义】temporary

33 owing to /'əʊɪŋ tuː/ *prep.*

(*fml.*) because of sth. 因为;由于

—Owing to the rain, our match was cancelled. 由于下雨,我们的比赛取消了。

【近义】due to, because of, thanks to

34 erode /ɪ'rəʊd/ *v.*

(1) gradually reduce the strength or importance of sth. or be gradually reduced in this way (逐步)削弱,

损害

—Confusion and suspicion will erode the competitiveness of the organization. 混乱和猜疑会削弱这个组织的竞争力。

(2) gradually damage the surface of rock or land so that it begins to disappear, or be gradually damaged in this way 侵蚀;腐蚀

—The sea has eroded the cliff face over the years. 海水长年累月冲刷着峭壁的表面。

35 characteristic /ˌkærɪktəˈrɪstɪk/ *a.*

very typical of a particular thing or of sb. 's character 典型的;独特的

—A characteristic feature of Suzhou is its beautiful gardens. 苏州的一大特色就是其美丽的园林。

n. [C, usu. pl.] a quality or feature of sth. or sb. that is typical of them and easy to recognize 特征;特性;特色

—Kindness is one of his characteristics. 和善是他的特征之一。

36 intensive /ɪnˈtensɪv/ *a.*

involving a lot of activity, effort, or careful attention in a short period of time 加强的;密集的

—The police failed to find any clues although they had conducted an intensive search. 尽管彻底搜查过了,但是警察还是未发现任何线索。

37 recreation /ˌrekriˈeɪʃn/ *n.*

[C, U] an activity that you do for pleasure or amusement 娱乐;消遣

—She usually sets aside Sunday for recreation and leisure for her family. 她通常专门安排周日来进行家庭娱乐休闲活动。

38 surplus /ˈsɜːpləs/ *a.*

more than what is needed or used 过剩的;剩余的;多余的

—Surplus rice and wheat are put in storage and shipped abroad. 剩余的大米和小麦被储存起来运到海外。

n. [C, U] an amount of sth. that is more than what is needed or used 剩余;过剩;剩余额;多余的量

—As the number of graduates has been increasing in recent years, the job market witnesses the problem of a surplus of labor. 由于近年来毕业生人数逐年增加,就业市场面临着劳动力过剩的问题。

39 accustomed /əˈkʌstəmd/ *a.*

(be ~ to doing sth.) being familiar with sth. and accepting it as normal 习惯于做某事

—He has become accustomed to the life of university gradually. 他逐渐适应了大学生活。

40 depress /dɪˈpres/ *vt.*

(1) (*fml.*) make sth. such as a price or value go down 降低;减少

—Does mass unemployment depress the wages? 大量失业是否降低了工资?

(2) make sb. feel very unhappy 使沮丧;使忧愁;使抑郁

—The rainy days always depress me. 雨天总是使我沮丧。

41 convention /kənˈvenʃn/ *n.*

[C, U] behavior and attitudes that most people in a society consider to be normal and right 习俗;惯例;常规

—Convention requires that such meetings open with prayer. 惯例上要求这样的集会应当以祈祷开始。

42 controversial /ˌkɒntrəˈvɜːʃl/ *a.*

causing a lot of disagreement, because many people have strong opinions about the subject being

discussed 引起争论的;有争议的

—The treatment is controversial because it may have serious side effects. 这种治疗方法是有争议的,因为它可能引发严重的副作用。

43 conventional /kən'venʃ(ə)nl/ *a.*

(*usu. before noun*) of the usual, traditional, or accepted type, instead of being new and different 常例的;因袭的;传统的

—After a conventional opening remarks, he made a brilliant speech. 在一个常规的开场白后,他做了场很精彩的演讲。

44 formative /'fɔːmətɪv/ *a.*

(~ years/period/stages, etc.) the period when sb. 's character develops 个性形成时期/阶段等

—In her point of view, the first year at college is a formative experience for students. 她认为,大学的第一年是对学生们人生经历很有影响的一年。

【派生】formation *n.* 形成,构造

45 abandon /ə'bændən/ *vt.*

(1) stop having a particular idea, belief, or attitude 放弃(信念、信仰或看法)

—Although they met some difficulties, they were not going to abandon the plan. 尽管他们遇到了一些困难,但并不打算放弃这个计划。

(2) leave sb. when you should stay with them and look after them 抛弃;遗弃

—The cruel man abandoned his wife and children. 那个无情的男人抛弃了他的妻儿。

46 appealing /ə'piːlɪŋ/ *a.*

attractive or interesting 有吸引力的;有趣的

—The outside world is always so interesting and appealing. 外面的世界总是那么新奇有趣。

47 myth /mɪθ/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] an idea or story that many people believe, but which is not true (许多人相信的)错误观点,荒诞说法

—He doesn't believe in the myth of lucky number. 他不相信幸运数字的说法。

(2) an ancient story, esp. one invented in order to explain natural or historical events (古代的)神话

—Venus is one of the goddess in Greek myth. 维纳斯是希腊神话中的女神之一。

48 resolve /rɪ'zɒlv/ *vt.*

(1) (*fml.*) make a definite decision to do sth. 下决心,决意(做某事)

—He resolved that nothing should hold him back. 他下决心不让任何事情阻挡他。

(2) find a satisfactory way of dealing with a problem or difficulty 解决(问题、困难)

—We must find a way to resolve these problems before it's too late. 我们必须趁还来得及的时候找到解决这些问题的办法。

n. [U] (*fml.*) strong determination to succeed in doing sth. 决心;决意

—Harper keeps her resolve to do better. 哈珀决心干得更出色。

(二)短语

1 interfere with

prevent sth. from succeeding or from happening in the way that was planned 妨碍;阻止

—Don't interfere with him while he's working. 他工作的时候不要打搅他。

2 cut class

(*AmE*) (*infml.*) deliberately not go to a class that you should go to 逃课
—The teacher warned the naughty boy against cutting class. 老师警告那个淘气的男孩不要旷课。

3 on the other hand

(*also* on the one hand... ~) used to give another opinion or fact that should be considered as well as the one you have just given 另一方面……;从一方面来说……,从另一方面来说……
—On the one hand, I have no time; on the other hand, I have no money. 一来,我没时间;二来,我没有钱。

4 take a/its toll on

have a bad effect on sth. or sb. over a long period of time 对……产生不良影响
—The dotting mother may take a toll on her boy's future independence. 母亲的溺爱会影响到男孩将来的独立自主。

5 at risk (of)

in a situation where you may be harmed 处境危险;受到威胁
—The disease is spreading, and all young children are at risk. 疾病正在蔓延,所有的幼儿都有危险。

6 to begin with

(1) during the first part of a process or activity 起初;开始的时候
—There were six of us to begin with, and then two people left. 开始的时候我们有六个人,后来有两个人离开了。

(2) (*spoken*) used to introduce the first and most important point you want to make 首先
—To begin with, she is too young for that kind of job. 首先,她做这种工作年纪还太年轻。

7 in other words

used when you are expressing an idea or opinion again in a different and usu. simpler way 换言之;换句话说
—In other words, you'll come instead, right? 换句话说,你将替代他来,对吗?

8 cut back on

(1) reduce the amount, size, cost, etc. of sth. 削减;缩减
—We really need to cut back on our spending. 我们真的需要削减我们的开支。

(2) eat, drink, or use less of sth., esp. in order to improve your health (尤指为了健康而)少吃,少喝,减少
—You should cut back on sugar to lose some weight. 要减肥,你就要少吃点糖。

9 cut corners

do sth. less carefully or thoroughly than you should, because you are trying to save time or money (为节省时间或金钱而)草草行事,偷工减料
—He had cut corners in building his house, and it didn't stand up well. 盖房子的时候他偷工减料了,因此房子盖得并不牢固。

10 bit by bit

gradually 逐渐地;一点一点地
—Jack worked hard and made some progress bit by bit. 杰克努力学习,逐渐取得进步。

11 burn the midnight oil

(*infml.*) work or study until late at night 挑灯夜战;开夜车
—With the end of the semester coming near, many students burn the midnight oil for the final exams. 随

着期末临近，许多学生挑灯夜战，准备考试。

12 drop out

(1) leave a school or university before your course has finished 退学；辍学

—It is not wise to drop out of school because of part-time jobs. 因为打工而辍学是不明智的。

(2) no longer do an activity or belong to a group 退出；脱离

—She was injured in the first round and had to drop out of the competition. 她在第一轮受伤，只好退出比赛。

13 in turn

(1) as a result of sth. 相应地

—Theory comes from practice and in turn serves practice. 理论来自实践，并反过来服务于实践。

(2) one after the other, esp. in a particular order 轮流地；依次地

—The students clean the classroom everyday in turn. 学生们每天轮流打扫教室。

14 contribute to

help to make sth. happen 促成，造成(某事发生)

—Everyone of the team contributed to winning the game. 队里的每一个人都为赢得这场比赛出了力。

15 hold on to

continue feeling or believing sth. 继续感到；仍然相信

—If we believe something was true, we should hold on to it. 如果我们相信某事是真的，就应该坚持。

三、课文注释

1 To work or not to work—That is the question (Title)

【Meaning】Should students work or not work? That is an important question, which requires careful consideration.

【解　析】这是文章的题目。句子结构模仿的是莎士比亚的作品《哈姆雷特》中的经典独白："To be, or not to be, that is the question."(生存还是毁灭，这是个问题。)对哈姆雷特来说，这是一个关系到生或死的值得深思的问题。作者采用这种句子结构来表达"打工还是不打工——这是个问题"。

2 There are numerous and reliable ways by which one can measure the impact of employment on student achievement, and we used several in our research. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】There are plenty of reliable methods to study how work affects students' school performance, and we used some of the ways in our research.

3 Additionally, we followed students over time as they increased or decreased their work hours, and we assessed how different patterns of employment altered school performance and engagement. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】What's more, we observed students for a period of time as they spent more or fewer hours working part-time, and we made judgment about how the increased or decreased hours changed their school achievement and commitment.

【解　析】additionally 是个连接词，在本段中起承上启下的作用。本段落大意为研究的目标和方法。段落结构为 There are numerous and reliable ways... and we used several in our research. We compared... We also contrasted... Additionally, we followed... and we assessed...

4 We have simplified and classified the data and the results are clear: The stakes are high. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】We have processed the data by making them simpler and dividing them into different groups.

The results of the study are clear: The risks for working students are high.

【解　析】simplify 和 classify 是 simple 和 class 的动词形式，是由 *adj.* /*n.* + 后缀-ify 变化而来的。有着同样构词法的还有 purify, identify, beautify, clarify, justify 等词。

5 A heavy commitment to a part-time job during the academic year, say, working 20 hours per week or more, undermines and significantly interferes with school achievement and commitment. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】When students spend too much time on a part-time job during the school year, for example, 20 hours or more, their devotion to study becomes less and less gradually and therefore their school performances are seriously affected.

【解　析】say 是用作举例子，意为"比方说；比如"。

6 On the other hand, we also detected a different pattern. Working for approximately 10 hours per week or less seemingly does not take a consistent toll on school performance. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】However, we also found out a different pattern, that is, when students work for about 10 hours or less weekly, it does not seem to have a continuous bad effect on their school performance.

【解　析】本文是一篇结构清晰的研究报告。无论是段落内还是段落与段落之间，作者都非常注重使用一些连接词或者短语。此处的 on the other hand 起转折作用，是和上一段相呼应。另外，on the other hand, in contrast, on the contrary 这三个词组都表示转折，意为"相反；但是"，但是它们表示的转折关系有所不同。on the other hand 是"从另一方面来说"，通常是说同一件事情的两个方面。in contrast 是"对比之下"，通常对比不同的人或事物，更加侧重于两者的不同，强调有差异。on the contrary 是"正相反；恰恰相反"，往往针对同一件事或同一个人表示个人意见，认为后面所说的才是对的，虽然后面所说的和前面的情况完全相反。

7 Nevertheless, given that half of all employed seniors, about one-third of all juniors, and about one fifth of all second-year students work above the 20-hour limit, indications are that a large number of students are at risk of compromising their school careers with their part-time jobs. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】However, since half of all employed fourth-year students, about one-third of all third-year students, and about one-fifth of all second-year students work above the 20-hour limit, it is implied that many students risk harming their school careers by taking part-time jobs.

【解　析】given that 表示"考虑到；鉴于"，一般用在句首，后面接表示原因的句子。

8 Whereas it is true that more disengaged students are more likely to work long hours to begin with, it appears that working makes a marginal situation worse. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】It is true that more students who are less involved in studying are more possibly to work long hours. However, it seems that they become even less committed to their study because of working.

【解　析】whereas 和 however 同义，都可以表达转折的意义。但是，however 是副词，可引导一个单独的句子；而 whereas 是连词，只能引导一个从句。

9 In other words, over time, the more students work, the less committed to school they become. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】That is to say, as students spend longer hours working, they become less engaged in studying.

【解　析】the more... the more/less... 意思是"越……越……"。

10 When students withdraw from the labor force or cut back on their work hours, however, the results are striking: Their interest in school is generated anew. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】However, when students stop working or reduced work hours, the results are obvious: They

become interested in study again.

11 We uncovered numerous explanations for the undesirable effects of working on students' engagement in school. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】We found out many reasons why working has negative effects on students' commitment to study.

12 First, owing to their demanding work schedule, working students have less time to devote to school assignments. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】First, because their working schedule is tight and requires a lot of time and effort, working students have to spend less time doing their school assignments.

【解　析】owing to 意为"因为",同义词组还有 due to, because of, thanks to 等。

13 Second, in order to work 20 hours or more each week, many students must work evenings. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Second, in order to work 20 hours or more each week, many students must work in the evenings.

【解　析】句中的 evenings 是个副词,它的意思等同于 in the evenings。同样用法的词还有 mornings, afternoons, Mondays, Wednesdays 等。

14 Although mind-wandering during school is characteristic of young adults, working students report significantly more of it than non-workers. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】Although it is typical of young people not to be committed to study all the time, working students are found to lose interest in study more often than non-working students.

15 Indeed, the rush from earning and spending money may be so strong that students who have a history of intensive employment, those who, for example, have been working long hours since their second year, are actually at greater risk than their classmates of dropping out before graduating. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】Actually, since the excitement of making and spending money may be very strong, students who have been working a lot for a long time, say, those who have been working long hours since their second year, are more likely to leave school before graduating, as compared with their classmates.

【解　析】句子结构为 Indeed, the rush from earning and spending money may be so strong that students... are actually at greater risk... of dropping out..." 第一个从句 who 解释说明"有长时间打工史的学生",第二个从句举例进一步说明"比如从大二开始就长时间打工的学生"。

16 Teenagers with between $200 and $300 of monthly surplus income frequently have more money to spend than their peers, and often they become accustomed to spending their earnings on drugs and alcohol. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】Teenagers who have the extra income ranging from $200 to $300 every month often have more money to spend than their classmates, and they often become used to spending the money they have earned on drugs and alcohol.

17 According to our study, alcohol and drug use, in turn, may be linked to disengagement from school, and therefore, is likely to depress school performance. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】According to our study, alcohol and drug use may consequently be related to the loss of interest in study, and as a result, is likely to affect school performance.

【解　析】句子结构为"... alcohol and drug use may... and is likely to...". in turn 和 therefore 是插入语,起停顿和强调的作用,都表达"因此,结果"的意思。

18 To summarize, convention has long held that early employment builds character. (Para. 9)

【Meaning】To make a summary, people have long believed that working early in life can help develop one's character.

【解　析】文章的第五段至第八段详细解释说明了打工给学生的学习带来的负面影响，第九段是调查研究的结论。作者使用了 first, second, third, finally 在四个段落里分别引出各个负面影响，使用了 to summarize 在末段得出结论，使得文章整体结构非常清晰，一目了然。

19 To our own surprise, our findings make us question how long we have held on to the conventional assumptions about the great value of work in our formative years. (Para. 9)

【Meaning】To our surprise, our research findings make us wonder why we have long believed the traditional thought that working plays a significant role in developing our character.

20 We conclude that students should resolve to work no more than 10 hours per week if they want to be successful in school. (Para. 9)

【Meaning】In conclusion, students should make a definite decision not to work more than 10 hours per week if they want to succeed in study.

【解　析】We conclude that... 和本段首句 to summarize 相呼应，同时作为文章的最后一句话，也是对题目提出的 To work or not to work 的回答：打工还是不打工？要想学业成功，学生就应该下决心做到每周打工不超过 10 个小时。

四、课文译文

打工还是不打工——这是个问题

1. 有许多方法可以评价工作对学生的影响。在我们的研究中，我们采用了几种方法。我们对打很多工的学生和打工时间有限或者根本不打工的学生的学习成绩进行了比较。我们也对比了打工学生和不打工学生在学习投入程度方面的不同指征。另外，我们长期跟踪学生，了解他们在打工时间增加和减少时的表现。而且，我们还评估了不同的打工模式如何改变学习成绩和学习参与度。

2. 经过对数据加以简化和归类，我们得出很明确的结论：学生打工付出的代价很大。在学年中花过多精力兼职打工，比如，一周打工 20 个小时或更长时间，会影响和严重干扰学生的学习成绩和学习投入程度。总的来说，我们的研究证明，每周打工超过 20 个小时的学生的学习成绩不及班上其他同学。他们的分数更低，花在作业上的时间更少，逃课更频繁，作弊更常见。而且据反映，这些学生的学习投入程度较低，学习志向也不够远大。

3. 但是，我们也发现了另外一种不同的模式。每周打工大约 10 个小时或更少时间对学习成绩似乎没有持续的影响。不过，鉴于一半的大四打工学生、约三分之一的大三打工学生以及约五分之一的大二打工学生的打工时间都超过 20 个小时的上限，由此表明，有很多学生面临因打工而危及学业的危险。

4. 尽管一开始确实是学习兴趣不大的学生更容易长时间地打工，但是打工看起来会让他们原本勉强的学习状况变得更糟。换言之，随着时间的推移，学生打工时间越长，他们对学习的投入就越少。但是，当学生退出打工队伍或者减少打工时间后，结果也引人注目：他们对学习的兴趣被重新激发起来。所以，打工对学习的负面影响并非是永久性的，这是个好消息。

5. 我们找到了打工对学生学习参与度产生负面影响的诸多原因。首先，由于紧张的打工日程，打工的学生用来完成学校作业的时间就减少了。面临这样的时间压力，打工学生一个普遍的应付方法就是偷懒，比如选择较容易的课程、抄袭其他同学的作业，逃课或者不做老师布置的作业。时间一长，当这些变成习以为常的做法以后，学生对学习的投入也就一点点地减少了。

6. 第二，许多学生必须要在晚上工作，为了每周能打工 20 个小时或更长时间。晚上工作不仅影响

做作业，而且影响睡眠和饮食。研究表明，与不打工的学生相比，打工学生的休息时间更少，饮食也不够健康。熬夜让打工的青少年在学校时更疲倦。老师们经常抱怨打工学生在课堂上睡觉。在我们的调查中，将近三分之一的学生会经常因打工太累而不做作业。

7. 第三，与挣到数量可观的零花钱所带来的兴奋感比较，上学显得没意义和乏味。虽说在学校学习时心不在焉是年轻人的通病，但是据反映，打工的学生比不打工的学生在这方面表现得更为糟糕。事实上，赚钱和花钱带来的快感也许过于强烈，以至于有长时间打工史的学生，比如从大二开始就长时间打工的学生，实际上比其他同学面临更大的辍学风险。

8. 最后，饮酒和吸毒的增多也与长时间打工有关。打工的学生吸毒和饮酒的概率比不打工的学生要高出大约33%。我们的长期研究显示，长时间打工导致打工的学生更多地饮酒和吸毒，他们借此来娱乐和消遣。每月多收入200至300美元的青少年通常比其他同学有更多的零花钱，而且他们也常常习惯于把自己挣来的钱花在吸毒和饮酒上。我们的研究表明，饮酒和吸毒相应地可能造成学习兴趣减弱，因此很可能导致学习成绩下降。

9. 总之，传统观念一直认为，早期的工作经历能锻炼性格。而我们研究结果表明，对于许多学生而言，每周打工20个小时或更多时间会导致学习成绩下降以及饮酒和吸毒的增多。我们知道可能在许多人看来这些研究结果是有争议的。但让我们吃惊的是，我们的研究结果促使我们质疑，为何长久以来我们一直坚守着那种打工有利于我们成长的传统想法。现在放弃这种诱人的错误观念的时候到了。我们的结论是：要想学业成功，学生就应该下决心做到每周打工不超过10个小时。

五、练习答案及详解

Pre-reading activities

1 Look at the pictures and answer the following questions.

1. (1) A teaching assistant in kindergarten or a tutor.
   (2) A cashier in a store.
   (3) A waiter in a restaurant.
   (4) A car cleaner.
2. I would like to work as a teaching assistant in kindergarten. I really enjoy spending time with small children and I am thinking of working as a teacher in kindergarten in the future. So working as a teaching assistant would definitely be a great experience for me.

2 The following are some advantages of doing part-time jobs. Work in groups and discuss which three advantages are most important. Compare your choices with your group members.

In my opinion, the most important advantages of doing part-time jobs are: gaining work experiences, acquiring communicative skills, and building connections for future career. In doing part-time jobs, especially those jobs which are related to my field of study, I can build up my work experience and enrich my resume. Besides, in working, I may have to communicate with different kinds of people, so it can help develop my communicative skills, which are essential to success. And in getting to know some important people in the workplace, I can build some contacts for my future career.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

1 Answer the following questions.

1. To measure the impact of employment on student achievement.
2. According to the research, a heavy commitment to part-time work undermines and significantly interferes with school achievement and commitment.
3. About 10 hours per week or less.
4. Students become interested in study again.
5. Students may take easier classes, copy others' assignments, cut class, or refuse to do assignments, and over time, students' commitment to school is eroded bit by bit.
6. Students may find school less rewarding and interesting, and it is highly possible that those who have been working long hours will drop out of school before graduation.
7. Because teenagers working long hours frequently have more money to spend than their peers, and they often become used to spending their earnings on drugs and alcohol.
8. Doing part-time jobs while studying is acceptable, but students should work no more than 10 hours a week if they want to be successful in school.

Critical thinking

2 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. Yes. Early employment can definitely build your character, because you have to learn to strike a balance between work and study. And it also helps you to learn interpersonal skills, social responsibility and professional ethics.
2. Yes. Students have so many tasks in school and if they work, they will have less time to spend on study, which is likely to depress their school performance.
3. Yes, I agree with the author that working while studying has negative impacts, such as not getting enough time to rest, decreased school performance, abuse of alcohol and drugs, etc.
4. No, part-time jobs don't help to build a sense of responsibility because long hours of part-time work make the students fail to meet the academic requirements and have no clear plan for career development.
5. It has many positive influences:
   - building a sense of responsibility;
   - building self-discipline;
   - gaining social skills;
   - broadening your vision.

Language focus

Words in use

3 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. indicate

【译文】研究表明,常常参与合作项目的孩子们比那些不参与的受益更多。

2. conventional

【译文】他们是如此传统的家庭——当他们的儿子把头发染成粉色时,他们一定会很震惊。

3. assess

【译文】通过考试测试学生一直被认为是一种可靠的评估学生能力的方式。

4. decrease

【译文】许多发电站已经被现代化以减少污染排放,或者搬到离居住区更远的地方以减少危害。

5. alter

【译文】失业情况稍微好转,但这没有改变它还是一个主要问题的事实。

6. has undermined

【译文】史密斯先生状况不好;医生说几次感冒使他的健康每况愈下。

7. compromise

【译文】在家里处理问题的最好方法就是诚实并心平气和地说出问题并试着和解。

8. controversial

【译文】达尔文的进化论还是存在部分争议,因为它挑战了上帝创造人类的宗教信仰。

9. resolved

【译文】据报道,如果有必要,总统决心参战,尽管这可能会影响他的连任。

10. abandon

【译文】我不得不放弃我的一个邮箱账号,因为它里面都是垃圾邮件。

Word building

4 Add *-ion* or *-ity* to or remove them from the following words to form new words.

Words learned	New words formed
-ion	
represent	representation
form	formation
occupation	occupy
solve	solution
persuade	persuasion
transmit	transmission
-ity	
productive	productivity
original	originality
flexibility	flexible
secure	security
simple	simplicity
prosperous	prosperity

5 Fill in the blanks with the newly-formed words in Activity 4. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. solution

【译文】你总是能从不同的角度和以不同的方式思考,从而提出解决问题的方法。

2. transmission

【译文】如今，我们已经习惯于即刻交流，以至于很难想象19世纪电缆应用于电报信息传输所带来的兴奋。

3. prosperity

【译文】一个国家未来的兴旺在一定程度上依赖于其国民的教育质量。

4. formation

【译文】我明白我的首要目标就是在我和学生之间建立新的关系。

5. flexible

【译文】认识到老师们平衡工作和私人生活的需要，有些学校提供给他们弹性工作时间。

6. occupied

【译文】他忙于生意而没有时间考虑度假。

7. originality

【译文】年轻时，他习惯于抄袭一位名画家的风格，所以早期的作品没什么新意。

8. productivity

【译文】由于生产力的提高，过去的十年来，中国的经济取得巨大的发展。

9. simplicity

【译文】为简单起见，我们用数字给每个样本标注。

10. persuasion

【译文】我丈夫不喜欢旅行，所以我费了好大劲才说服他和我一起去非洲旅游。

11. representation

【译文】在许多文化中，蛋是新生命的标志，新生的小鸡被视为新发展的可爱代表。

12. security

【译文】每一次，当你用安抚和爱回应宝宝的哭声时，你就在向他展示他的世界是安全的，从而帮他建立一种安全感。

Banked cloze

6 Fill in the blanks by selecting suitable words from the word bank. You may not use any of the words more than once.

1. J

【解析】to 后面接动词原形，generate income 意为“增加收入”。

2. C

【解析】interfere with 是固定搭配，prevent working from 后面要接动词的 ing 形式。

3. H

【解析】class and work schedules 意为“课程和工作表”。

4. D

【解析】of 后面接名词或动名词，burn the midnight oil 是固定搭配，意为“开夜车”。

5. M

【解析】此处需要一个形容词，take a consistent toll on 意为“持续损害”。

6. G

【解析】此处需要一个名词，use the opportunity 意为“利用这个机会”。

7. I

【解析】have to 后面接动词原形，decrease the work hours 意为“减少打工时间”。

8. A

【解析】根据上文确定需要一个动词原形，withdraw from 是固定搭配。

9. E

【解析】risk 后面接动词的 ing 形式，compromise with 是固定搭配。

10. N

【解析】be 后面需要形容词，flexible 此处意为“通融的”。

Expressions in use

7 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. cutting back on

【译文】新政府已经承诺要减少温室气体的排放。

2. interfere with

【译文】我父母不反对我打工，但他们提醒我不要因此影响学业。

3. take a toll on

【译文】生气、担心、失望这些负面情绪会损害你的心脏、大脑和身体。

4. at risk of

【译文】如果一个人采取不健康的生活方式，他就会有得病的风险。

5. dropped out

【译文】当他辍学时，大部分人对他都不抱什么希望，但后来他回到学校并获得了学位。

6. in turn

【译文】喝酒太多会增加患高血压的风险，相应地会导致心脏病或中风。

7. contribute to

【译文】廉价航空在整个亚洲都出现了，这将会对全世界的航空市场的发展做出贡献。

8. are accustomed to

【译文】当你搬到一个新的国家，你会发现那儿的食物很怪并且你会怀念你习以为常的祖国的食物的味道。

9. held on to

【译文】尽管他一直尝试，一直失败，但我总是坚信总有一天他会成功。

10. in other words

【译文】税收只会影响那些年收入在 20 万美元以上的人，换句话说，它只会影响富人。

Structure analysis and writing

Structure analysis

列举法是一种很常用的写作手法。本单元课文 A 中有几段使用了列举的写法。使用列举写法的段落通常以一个主题句开始，跟随着一条又一条的列举信息。通过列举法，作者可以以一种有序的方法表达自己的观点，从而让读者可以轻松地跟随他的思路。常见的用于列举的信号词有 first，second，finally，furthermore，moreover 等。

8 **Read Paragraphs 5 – 8 of Text A and analyze the pattern of listing. Fill in the chart with information from the text.**

Explanation 2: Many working students have to work late until midnight. Getting less rest and eating less healthy meals, they often get too tired from work to study.

Explanation 3: The excitement of earning large sums of spending money makes school seem less rewarding and interesting. The strong desire to earn and spend money is more likely to cause students who have been working long hours for a long time to drop out of school.

Explanation 4: Working students take drugs and use alcohol more often than non-working students. Working students have more money to spend. The longer hours they work, the more drugs and alcohol they are likely to use. This may lead to disengagement from school and depress their school performance.

Structured writing

9 **Write a paragraph on one of the following topics. One topic has an outline that you can follow.**

There are several reasons why people get fired from their jobs. First, people may lose their jobs if they have some dishonest behaviours, such as cheating in their job applications or telling lies in work. Second, employees may be fired due to poor attendance. No boss likes an employee who is often late for or absent from work. Third, people having difficulty getting along with their co-workers are also likely to be fired because they may cause conflicts in the workplace. Therefore, to be a good employee, it is important to be honest, punctual, and cooperative.

Translation

10 **Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.**

间隔年指的是学生休假不去上学而去旅游或工作等的一段时间，但不一定是一年。间隔年通常选在高中毕业和进入大学之前的一段时间。在这段时间里，学生可以旅游、参加志愿者工作或者在国外边打工边度假。一种新潮流是参加集语言学习、住家、文化交流、社区服务和自主学习于一体的国际教育活动。间隔年的做法于 20 世纪 60 年代兴起于英国。它在英国、澳大利亚、新西兰和加拿大已经变得非常流行。但是在美国，间隔年的做法仍然只是个别现象。不过近年来，间隔年对美国人来说变得稍微普遍了。2013 年，大约四万美国学生参加了间隔年活动，比 2006 年增加了近 20%。普林斯顿大学、哈佛大学、麻省理工学院等大学都有明文规定允许学生延迟入学。

11 **Translate the following paragraph into English.**

Since its economic reform and opening-up to the world, China's education has gone through rapid development and made remarkable achievements. The Chinese government gives top priority to the development of education, persists in revitalizing the country by science and education, and fully advocates quality-oriented education. Meanwhile, it actively promotes equality in education to guarantee everyone access to education. China's achievements in education can be reflected in two different layers: One is the popularization of the nine-year compulsory education; the other is the realization of mass higher education. The development of education has made significant contributions to China's economic development and social progress. In recent years, to satisfy the needs of social and economic development, the Chinese government has sped up the training of qualified personnel urgently needed in various fields.

Section B

Earn as you Learn?

一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

随着近20年上大学费用的急剧攀升,高等教育费用应该由谁支出的问题引发了坦诚而激烈的讨论。在有些国家,人们总是希望学生通过打工或贷款来承担部分或全部的费用,而在另一些国家,上大学的大笔费用一直由有关教育部门或父母提供。本文中作者通过边工作边学习的经历诉说了大学生兼职工作的益处:兼职不仅可以让一个人经济独立,也可以提升他的学习效率。处理好两者关系的作者不仅没有荒废自己的学业,反而充分利用时间,成绩卓然。作者在毕业时既付清了自己的学费,又让父母骄傲地看到自己独立生活的本领。

(二)背景知识

1. 学分制

"学分"是用来计算学生学习分量的一种单位。一个学分约等于一个学生在课堂或实验室从事一学时学术工并且连续一个学期的量,它不包括学生与教师或同学进行的课外讨论与交流、准备考试以及从事其他与课程有关但与课程教学无直接联系的学术工作的量。这个关于学分的定义是由美国卡内基教学促进基金会提出的,并得到了广泛的认可。用学分来衡量学生学习的量便是学分制,又称学分累计制。它以学分为计算学生学习量的单位,认为学生若要获得某个学术性的学位,如学士学位、硕士学位或博士学位,必须达到某个最低限度的学分量。这个学分量代表着学生所修习的课程量。

2. 美国的教育制度

美国是世界上教育质量最高的国家之一,它有完整的而独特的教育体系。美国文化教育的高水平也决定了美国在世界科技方面的领先地位。在美国人看来,人人都有接受教育的权利。美国的法律规定儿童在6~16岁必须入学。美国的公立学校由政府税收支持,学生免费入学;私立学校多由教会支持。从整体上说,美国教育可以分为四个递进的阶段:学前教育、初等教育、中等教育(初中和高中)到高等教育。前三个阶段都属于大学前(pre-college)的教育,包括保育学校(Nursery School)及幼儿园(Kindergarten)、小学(Elementary School)、初中(Middle School)及高中(High School)。大学前的教育又称为基础教育,即K-12教育阶段(也是义务教育)。美国教育注重学生的个性发展,强调让学生自己动手探索并设计实验,讲授知识时更注重讲授思维过程,而不追求知识理论的逻辑性和层次体系。另外,美国的教育非常强调Independent Thinking(独立思考),Creative Thinking(创新思考)和Critical Thinking(批判性思维)。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Para. 1 The author is proud to be in the small minority of students who "earn as they learn" and absorb the cost of their own university education in spite of the many obstacles. 我是少数派学生中的一员,通过"勤工助学"、克服重重困难去承担自己的学费,我为此而骄傲。

Paras. 2－10 The author puts forward his own ideas based on his own experiences. He manages to pay his tuition through work, without compromising his school performance, frees himself from the worries of debt payment and makes his parents proud of his independence. 作者通过自己的经历陈述了大学生勤工助学的益处。自己半工半读不会耽误学业，懂得珍惜时间，在生活上和经济上不断成长，让父母替自己感到骄傲。

Para. 11 A conclusion is drawn: Joining the ranks of those of us who "earn as they learn" will serve you a successful path to a happy and sustainable life. 得出结论：勤工助学会助你走上幸福的人生之路。

2. 写作特点

作者从自己的经历出发，娓娓道来，例证清楚。在段落和整体谋篇方面运用了大量的标志词。通过标志词的使用，搭建了句子与句子之间、段落与段落之间的桥梁。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 soar /sɔː/ *vi.*

(1) increase quickly to a high level 猛增；骤升

—Meanwhile, its market share continues to soar. 同时，它的市场份额不断上涨。

(2) rise quickly into the air 急速升高

—The eagle can soar without flapping their wings. 老鹰无须振翼就能翱翔。

2 frank /fræŋk/ *a.*

honest and truthful 坦率的；坦诚的；直言不讳的

—The reaction to his frankness was hostile. 他的坦诚得到了充满敌意的回应。

3 vigorous /ˈvɪg(ə)rəs/ *a.*

(1) full of energy, enthusiasm, or determination 体力旺盛的；热情满怀的；强有力的；坚决的

—He was a vigorous, handsome young man. 他是个精力充沛、年轻帅气的小伙子。

(2) strong, active, and healthy 强壮的；积极的；健壮的

—They will take vigorous action to recover the debts. 他们将积极讨回债款。

4 absorb /əbˈzɔːb/ *vt.*

(1) accept changes or costs and deal with them successfully 经受；承受

—The banks would be forced to absorb large losses. 银行将被迫承受巨大的损失。

(2) take in liquid, gas, or another substance from the surface or space around sth. 吸收

—Plants absorb carbon dioxide from the air and moisture from the soil. 植物从空气中吸收二氧化碳并从土壤中汲取水分。

(3) interest sb. so much that they do not pay attention to other things 吸引某人；使专心

—It is a second career which absorbed her more completely than her acting ever had. 这是比演艺生涯更让她投入的又一职业。

5 tuition /tjuːˈɪʃn/ *n.*

[U] (*BrE* ~ fees) the money you pay for being taught 学费

—I came here, as a mother raising a son, to support the university students chanting for halved tuition. 我作为一名抚养孩子的母亲来到这里，支持大学生呼喊的学费减半。

6 tremendous /trəˈmendəs/ *a.*

very big, fast, powerful, etc. 巨大的;极快的;强有力的

—The business is tremendously profitable. 这笔生意利润巨大。

【同义】powerful

7 relevant /ˈreləv(ə)nt/ *a.*

directly relating to the subject or problem being discussed or considered 有关的;切题的

—Yesterday, however, his views seemed scarcely relevant. 然而,昨天他的观点似乎毫无关联。

【派生】relevance *n.* 关联,相关

8 spite /spaɪt/ *n.*

[U] (in ～ of sth.) without being affected or prevented by sth. 虽然;不顾;尽管……(仍……)

—Their love of life comes in spite of, almost in defiance of, considerable hardship. 尽管面临众多的艰难困苦,他们还是几乎义无反顾地表现出了对生活的热爱。

9 obstacle /ˈɒbstəkl/ *n.*

[C] sth. that makes it difficult to achieve sth. 障碍;阻碍;妨碍

—To succeed, you must learn to overcome obstacles. 必须学会克服困难才能成功。

10 collective /kəˈlektɪv/ *a.*

(*only before noun*) shared or made by every member of a group or society 集体的;共同的;共有的

—This success was the result of a collective effort. 这次成功是全体努力的结果。

11 collectively /kəˈlektɪvli/ *ad.*

as a group 集体地;共同地

—You do it collectively. There's strength in numbers, and that's what we have to understand. 人多力量大,所以他们需要全体地发挥,这就是我们必须要明白的。

12 claim /kleɪm/ *vt.*

state that sth. is true, even though it has not been proved 声称;断言;主张

—He claimed that it was all a conspiracy against him. 他声称这一切都是一场针对他的阴谋。

n. [C] a statement that sth. is true, even though it has not been proved 声称;断言;主张

—He made a claim for damages. 他提出赔偿损害的要求。

13 endure /ɪnˈdjʊə/ *vt.*

be in a difficult or painful situation for a long time without complaining 忍耐;忍受

—He had to endure the aftermath of the accident. 他不得不忍受这次事故的后果。

14 bulge /bʌldʒ/ *vi.*

stick out in a rounded shape, esp. because sth. is full or too tight 鼓起;胀出

—His pocket were bulging with candy. 他的口袋里鼓鼓囊囊塞满了糖。

n. [C] a curved mass on the surface of sth., usu. caused by sth. under or inside it 凸起;鼓起部分

—The gun in his pocket made an obvious bulge. 他兜里的枪令他的衣兜看上去鼓鼓的。

15 tutor /ˈtjuːtə(r)/ *n.*

(1) [C] sb. who gives private lessons to one student or a small group, and is paid directly by them 家庭教师;私人教师

—His parents employed a tutor to teach him Greek. 他父母雇用了一位家庭教师来教他希腊语。

(2) [C] a teacher in a college or university (学院或大学里的)导师,助教

—That whole private tutor was such a sweet deal. 全职私人导师是件多美妙的事。

16 startle /ˈstɑːtl/ *vt.*
make sb. suddenly surprised or slightly shocked 使(某人)吃惊;吓(某人)一跳
—Sorry, I didn't mean to startle you. 对不起,我不是故意想吓你一跳的。
【同义】shock, stun
17 startled /ˈstɑːtld/ *a.*
suddenly frightened or surprised by sth. 受到惊吓的;吓了一跳的;吃惊的
—She was obviously a little startled at this idea. 她显然对这个想法有点儿吃惊。
18 necessity /nəˈsesəti/ *n.*
(1) [C] sth. that you need to have in order to live 必需品
—For a married couple to own a property in a big city is a luxury, not a necessity. 对于新婚夫妇来说,在大都市拥有一处房产是种奢侈品,而非必需品。
(2) [U] a process, thing, or action that is needed in a situation 必要;必要性
—You must understand the necessity of education. 你必须懂得教育的必要性。
19 luxury /ˈlʌkʃəri/ *n.*
(1) [C] sth. expensive that you do not need, but you buy for pleasure and enjoyment 奢侈品
—Telephones are still a luxury in some parts of Spain, Portugal, and Greece. 在西班牙、葡萄牙和希腊的一些地方,电话仍然是奢侈品。
(2) [U] very great comfort and pleasure, such as you get from expensive food, beautiful houses, cars, etc. 奢华;奢侈
—He was cradled in luxury. 他幼年生长于奢华的环境之中。
20 glimpse /ɡlɪmps/ *n.*
[C] a quick look at sb. or sth. that does not allow you to see them clearly 一瞥;飞快的一看
—This is a glimpse at the workforce of tomorrow. 这只是未来劳动群体的一个缩影。
【搭配】take a glimpse 一瞥;一看
21 prioritize /praɪˈɒrɪˌtaɪz/ *v.*
decide in what order you should do things, based on how important or urgent they are 确定优先次序;分清主次
—Once you prioritize this, look at your choices. 一旦你划定了优先级,再来看你的选择。
【派生】priority *n.* 优先权
22 aware /əˈweə/ *a.*
(*not before noun*) knowing about a situation or a fact 意识到的;知道的
—She was aware that he was watching her fixedly. 她知道他正在盯着她看。
【派生】awareness *n.* 意识
23 influential /ˌɪnfluˈenʃl/ *a.*
having a lot of influence and therefore changing the way people think and behave 有影响力的
—He is a very influential man in the government. 他在政府中是个很有影响的人物。
24 illustrate /ˈɪləˌstreɪt/ *vt.*
(1) be an example which shows that sth. is true or that a fact exists (作为例证)说明(事实)
—Here are a few examples to illustrate this principle. 略举数例,用以说明这一原理。
(2) show sth. by using pictures, diagrams, lists of numbers, etc. (用图片、图表、一连串数字等)说明,阐明

—Let me illustrate these points with some sample code. 让我用一些样本代码来阐述这些要点。

【派生】illustration *n.* 说明,阐明

25 cite /saɪt/ *vt.*

(1) (*fml.*) mention sth. as an example, esp. one that supports, proves, or explains an idea or situation 引证;援引

—Can you cite another case like this one? 你能举出与此相似的另一个例子吗?

(2) (*fml.*) give the exact words of sth. that has been written, esp. in order to support an opinion or prove an idea 引用;引述

—They cited Alex's refusal to return to the marital home. 他们引述了亚历克斯拒绝回到婚后的家中一事。

26 dropout /ˈdrɒpaʊt/ *n.*

[C] sb. who leaves school or college before they have finished 辍学者;退学者

—At 19, he was a high school dropout with dreams of writing science fiction. 19岁的时候,他是一个有着科幻小说作家梦的高中辍学生。

27 evidence /ˈevɪd(ə)ns/ *n.*

[U] facts or signs that show clearly that sth. exists or is true 证据;证明

—To date there is no evidence to support this theory. 到目前为止,还没有证据支持这种理论。

28 exhaust /ɪɡˈzɔːst/ *vt.*

(1) use all of sth. 用完;耗尽

—They said that food supplies were almost exhausted. 他们说供应的食物几乎快要吃完了。

(2) make sb. feel extremely tired 使筋疲力尽

—He took to walking long distances in an attempt to physically exhaust himself. 他开始长距离步行,试图耗尽自己的体力。

【派生】exhausted *adj.* 筋疲力尽的

29 abuse /əˈbjuːs/ *n.*

[C, U] the use of sth. in a way that it should not be used 滥用

—What went on here was an abuse of power. 这里所发生的事是一种滥用职权的行为。

/əˈbjuːz/ *vt.*

(1) treat sb. in a cruel and violent way 虐待;凌辱

—Similar abusing animals occurs in all of the farmed animal industries. 类似的虐待发生在所有的动物养殖业中。

(2) deliberately use sth. for the wrong purpose or for your own advantage 滥用;妄用

—I used to abuse the unusual usage, but now I'm not used to doing so. 我过去常滥用这个不寻常的用法,但我现在不习惯这样做。

30 authentic /ɔːˈθentɪk/ *a.*

(1) based on facts 可靠的;真实的

—I had obtained the authentic details about the birth of the organization. 我已经掌握了有关该组织诞生的可靠的详细资料。

(2) done or made in the traditional or original way 正宗的;原汁原味的

—At some point, restaurateurs got in the habit of adding flour to make chowder thicker and thicker, and now this is what consumers have come to expect constitutes a bowl of "authentic" clam

chowder. 有一点，食客们养成了往汤里加面粉的习惯，使它变得越来越稠，以至于当他们想要一碗“正宗的”蛤蜊杂烩时，他们心里面想的就是这样一碗稠稠的汤。

31 stress /stres/ *n.*

[C, U] continuous feelings of worry about your work or personal life, that prevent you from relaxing 压力；忧虑；紧张

—Katy could think clearly when not under stress. 在没有精神压力的情况下，凯蒂思路清晰。

vt. emphasize a statement, fact, or idea 强调；着重

—The spokesman stressed that the measures did not amount to an overall ban. 该发言人强调这些措施并不等同于全面禁止。

32 tension /ˈtenʃn/ *n.*

[U] a nervous worried feeling that makes it impossible for you to relax 紧张；焦虑；焦急

—The tension between the two countries is likely to remain. 那两个国家间的紧张局面可能会持续下去。

33 relieve /rɪˈliːv/ *vt.*

(1) make a problem less difficult or serious 减轻，缓和，缓解(问题的难度或严重性)

—Drugs can relieve much of the pain. 药物能够大大地缓解病痛。

(2) reduce sb.'s pain or unpleasant feelings 减轻，缓和，缓解(疼痛或不快的感觉)

—This will relieve the heat of the fever. 这会减轻发烧的热度。

【派生】relief *n.* 宽慰，缓解

34 burden /ˈbɜːdn/ *n.*

[C] sth. difficult or worrying that you are responsible for 重担；负担

—The developing countries bear the burden of an enormous external debt. 发展中国家背负着巨额外债。

35 convince /kənˈvɪns/ *vt.*

make sb. feel certain that sth. is true 使确信；使信服

—Although I soon convinced him of my innocence, I think he still has serious doubts about my sanity. 虽然我很快便让他相信我是清白的，但是我想他仍然非常怀疑我是否神志正常。

36 convinced /kənˈvɪnst/ *a.*

(*not before noun*) feeling certain that sth. is true 确信的；信服的

—He was convinced that I was part of the problem. 他确信我就是问题的一部分。

37 ensure /ɪnˈʃʊə/ *vt.*

make certain that sth. will happen properly 确保；保证

—Ensure that it is written into your contract. 确保把这一点写入合同中。

38 responsible /rɪˈspɒnsəbl/ *a.*

(1) (*not before noun*) having a duty to be in charge of or to look after sb. or sth. 负责的

—I'm responsible to my board of directors. 我对董事会负责。

(2) sensible and able to make good judgment so that you can be trusted 有责任心的；可靠的；可信赖的

—He's a very responsible sort of person. 他是个非常有责任心的人。

【派生】responsibility *n.* 责任，负责

39 formal /ˈfɔːml/ *a.*

(1) (of education or training) obtained from studying rather than from working at a job (教育或培训)正规的

—Business relationships are necessarily a bit more formal. 商业关系有必要更正式一些。

(2) (*usu. before noun*) made or done officially or publicly 官方的;正式的

—UN officials said a formal request was passed to American authorities. 联合国官员称正式请求已向美国当局转达。

【反义】informal

40 advanced /əd'vɑːnst/ *a.*

(1) at a high academic level 高级的;高等的

—I study an advanced English course. 我学习高级英语教程。

(2) based on the most recent methods or ideas 先进的

—They have to have a basic understanding of computers in order to use the advanced technology. 要想利用先进技术,他们必须先对计算机有个基本的了解。

41 singular /'sɪŋgjʊlə/ *a.*

(1) noticeable because of being strange or unusual 奇异的;异常的

—A singular glow came from the unidentified flying object. 从不明飞行物上发出奇特的光。

(2) 单数的;单数形式的

—The word "you" can be singular or plural. 单词 you 可以是单数也可以是复数。

42 financial /faɪ'nænʃl/ *a.*

relating to money or the management of money 财政的;金融的;财务的

—The company is in financial difficulties. 公司目前财政困难。

43 furthermore /'fɜːðəmɔː(r)/ *ad.*

(*fml.*) in addition to what has already been said 此外;而且;不仅如此

—Furthermore, they claim that any such interference is completely ineffective. 此外,他们还声称任何这样的干预都是完全无效的。

44 readily /'redɪli/ *ad.*

(1) quickly, willingly, and without complaining 乐意地;爽快地

—I asked her if she would allow me to interview her, and she readily agreed. 我问她是否允许我采访她,她欣然同意了。

(2) quickly and easily 快速地;便利地

—Once this principal contradiction is grasped, all problems can be readily solved. 抓住了这个主要矛盾,一切问题就迎刃而解了。

45 concede /kən'siːd/ *v.*

admit that sth. is true or correct, although you wish it were not true (不得不)承认

—I'm willing to concede that I have hurt her, but that's not my real intention. 我可以承认我是伤害了她,但那并不是我的本意。

46 mature /mə'tʃʊə/ *vi.*

(1) become sensible and start to behave sensibly and reasonably, like an adult 变理智;(举止)变成熟

—Hopefully after three years at university I will have matured. 希望 3 年大学生活之后我能变成熟。

(2) become fully grown or developed 成熟;长成

—When the trees matured they were cut in certain areas. 在有些地方,树木长成后就会被砍掉。

a. behaving in a sensible and reasonable way, as you would expect an adult to behave 成熟的;理智的;明

白事理的
—You and I are mature, freethinking adults. 你我都是明白事理、思想自由的成年人。
【反义】immature

(二)短语

1 be in the/a minority
form less than half of a group 占少数
—I used to be in the minority at work. 在工作中,我曾是少数派。
2 as for
used for introducing a subject that is related to what you have just been talking about 关于;至于
—As for your father, he won't be mentioned in my will. 至于你父亲,我的遗嘱里不会提到他的名字。
3 a matter of (doing) sth.
a situation that involves sth. or depends on sth. 关乎……的事情
—Social progress is normally a matter of struggles and conflicts. 社会进步通常是斗争和冲突的结果。
4 look back
think about a time or event in the past 回忆起;回顾
—They can look back on their endeavors with pride. 他们可以骄傲地回首过去付出的努力。
5 feel sorry for oneself
feel sad about one's life rather than trying to do things that could make one feel better 自我怜悯
—I feel sorry for not giving you a quick reply. 迟复为歉。
6 be envious of
be wanting sth. that sb. else has 妒忌;羡慕
—She would always be envious of her sister' beauty. 她总是妒忌她妹妹的美貌。
7 catch/get/have a glimpse of
have a quick look at sb. or sth. for a moment only 一瞥;飞快地看
—Several thousand supporters strained to catch a glimpse of the new president. 几千名支持者翘首企盼能一睹新总统的风采。
8 relieve sb. of sth.
(*fml.*) help sb. by taking sth. from them, esp. a job they do not want to do or sth. heavy that they are carrying 解除某人的负担
—He rose and relieved her of her bags. 他站起来接过她手中的包。

三、课文注释

1 As the cost of attending university has soared over the last two decades, a frank and vigorous debate is emerging over who should pay for the cost of higher education. (Para. 1)
【Meaning】Since the cost for university education has increased so much over the last 20 years, there appears an open and heated discussion about who should pay for the cost of university education.
【解　析】soar,动词,含义是"猛增,骤升"。debate一词理解成"人们对于不同问题持有不同意见的讨论或争论"时,往往和over一起搭配使用。

2 While in some countries students have always been expected to absorb part or even all of their tuition costs through work or borrowing, in other countries the tremendous cost of attending university has been provided by the relevant education authority or by parents. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】In some countries, students are always supposed to work to make money or borrow money to cover part or even all of their education costs. However, in other countries, the relevant authorities or the parents have covered the huge cost of university education.

【解　析】absorb,动词,表示"经受,承受"。本句中的 while 表示对照和对比。

3 I am proud to be in the small minority of students who "earn as they learn" and absorb the cost of their own university education in spite of the many obstacles. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】I feel proud that I am among the small numbers of students who make money as they study and cover the cost of their education although there are many difficulties to do so.

【解　析】be proud to do sth. ,含义是"感到自豪的是……"。in spite of,介词短语,含义是"尽管"。

4 As for the remaining majority, I ask myself, "Is it me, or are students these days just lazy?" (Para. 2)

【Meaning】When it comes to the majority of students who do not earn as they learn, I ask myself if I am special, or if students these days are just too lazy to work.

5 I think it's more a matter of them simply not wanting to pay or contribute. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】I think it is just that they do not want to pay or to help to pay their own tuition.

6 They would look at me blankly, as though I had told them I'd gone to the moon. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】They would look at me without understanding, as if I had told them that I had gone to the moon.

【解　析】as though 引导条件状语从句。

7 Looking back, I'm not sure how I managed to cover all the costs of my education. (Para 3)

【Meaning】When I think about those days, I don't quite know how I succeeded in making enough money to pay all my tuition.

【解　析】looking back 是现在分词短语作伴随状语,表时间。manage to so sth. ,含义是"成功做成某事"。

8 She went on to explain that her parents paid for everything and provided her with every necessity, and many luxuries too! (Para. 4)

【Meaning】She continued to explain that her parents paid for everything and prepared everything for her, including things for basic needs and a lot of expensive stuff as well!

【解　析】necessity,名词,含义是"必需品"。provide sb with sth. ,含义是"为某人提供……"。

9 Truthfully, I was a little envious of her easy life as I took 18 credit hours so that I could graduate within four years. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】To tell the truth, I kind of wanted to have the same easy life she had because I took 18 credit hours a term so that I could graduate within four years.

【解　析】so that 引导目的状语从句。

10 One day I caught a glimpse of that same girl's report card at the end of the term. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】One day at the end of the term, I had a quick look at the report card of that girl who claimed to study full-time.

11 Besides, these studies also give evidence that many students exhaust much of their earnings not on school, but on entertainment and partying while attending school. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】In addition, these studies also prove that instead of using most of the money they have earned on education, many students spend the money on entertaining themselves and attending parties.
【解　析】本句的精彩句型 not... but...(不是……而是……")。

12 **The studies also show increased abuse of alcohol and drugs, which leads me to question these students' resolve and commitment to the serious side of life. (Para. 7)**
【Meaning】The studies also indicate that there is an increased misuse of alcohol and drugs. This makes me wonder if these students really have the determination to lead a serious life.
【解　析】lead to:导致。commitment to sth. :恪守承诺,致力委身于,投入。

13 **Relieved of these considerable burden, I am convinced that I will be able to make intelligent career choices that will provide me with greater personal satisfaction and ensure better pay over the years to come. (Para. 8)**
【Meaning】Free from this great worry, I am certain that I will be able to make wise choices about my career, which will bring me a greater sense of fulfillment and make sure that I will get better pay in my future years.

14 **I understand that some will disagree with my singular approach to educational funding. (Para. 9)**
【Meaning】I understand that some will disagree with my unusual and unique way of paying for my own educational cost.
【解　析】singular 在本句中的含义是"奇异的,异常的"。

15 **Furthermore, by taking care of myself, without their assistance, I have given them the satisfaction of knowing that they successfully completed the task of raising me into adulthood. (Para. 10)**
【Meaning】Moreover, by taking care of myself, without asking them for help, I have made my parents feel satisfied because they know they succeeded in bringing me up and turning me into an adult.
【解　析】固定搭配 take care of 相当于同义词组 look after,含义是"照顾,照看"。raise,及物动词,含义是"抚养,养育"。

16 **I will readily concede that it's not always fun. It's not! (Para. 11)**
【Meaning】I will be willing to admit that working to pay for my own tuition is not always fun. No, it is not fun!
【解　析】readily,副词,含义是"乐意地,爽快地"。

17 **Want to know a successful path to a happy and sustainable life? Consider joining the ranks of those of us who "earn as they learn"! (Para. 11)**
【Meaning】Do you want to know a successful way to a happy and self-supporting life? Think about joining those of us who "earn and learn"!
【解　析】作者此处连用了两个陈述句式的疑问句,意在号召和建议。

四、课文译文

勤工助学?

1. 随着近 20 年来上大学费用的急剧攀升,应该由谁来支付高等教育费用的问题引发了坦诚而激烈的争论。在有些国家,人们总是希望学生通过打工或贷款来承担部分或全部的学费,而在另一些国家,上大学的大笔费用一直由有关教育部门或者父母提供。我是通过"勤工助学",克服种种困难去承担自己的学费的少数派学生中的一员,我为此而感到自豪。

2. 至于其他大多数人，我问自己："是我情况特殊，还是现在的学生就是懒惰呢？"大家都声称自己没有支付大学学费的能力。我认为倒不如说是他们不想自己出钱或不愿分担学费。在大学时，我一直忍受着其他同学的评论。他们拿着奖学金和助学贷款，或者开着崭新的汽车、住着昂贵的公寓。他们会瞪大眼睛问我："你是说你的父母一点资助都不给你吗？""那你怎么付学费啊？"我的回答很简单："我打工。"然后他们就会一脸不解地看着我，仿佛我告诉他们我去过月球一样。

3. 我在读本科时做了整整两年的日托保育员，拿的是最低工资。后来，我还照顾过失聪儿童，也当过私人学校的助教，以此支付我其余的学费。回顾过去，我都不清楚我是怎么设法付清了我所有的学费的。但是，我做到了。而且，每一本课本、每一支铅笔也都是我自己花钱买的。

4. 我有时候也有点儿为自己感到难过，尤其是当我把自己跟家境富裕的同学相比时。有一次，我问另一个同学她是否打工。"哦，我不打工！"她说，很吃惊的样子，"我是全职学生。"她只上13学分的课，但竟然"没有空"去打工。她接着解释道，她的父母负担她的所有费用，为她提供一切日常所需，还有许多奢侈品！

5. 说真的，我有那么点儿嫉妒她那轻松的生活。因为为了能在四年内毕业，我得上18个学分的课。此外，我每周打工25个小时，这样我才能付清学费，将来不会有贷款债务。而令人难以相信的是：我门门功课都得A，成绩在班里名列前茅！

6. 期末的某一天，我瞥见了那位女生的成绩单。她得的大多是C，以及几个B，成绩不佳。对此我并不感到惊讶。要做到努力打工，并且要同时做好几件事，这就迫使你按轻重缓急来安排事情，而这种技能她还没有学会。

7. 我明白，我这种半工半读的做法并不普遍，而且有很多颇有影响的研究声称半工半读会给学习成绩带来负面影响。他们引用的证据包括上升的退学率、下降的成绩以及减少的终身收入。而且，这些研究还提供证据说，在大学期间许多学生并没有把大部分赚来的钱用在学习上，而是用在娱乐和聚会上。这些研究还表明，酗酒和吸毒现象有所增加，这让我质疑这些学生缺乏意志力和责任心，对待生活不够认真。

8. 对我来说，"勤工助学"最切实的好处之一就是，毕业时我没有还债的巨大压力和焦虑感，而这种压力和焦虑感让许多人忧心忡忡、忐忑不安。没有了这个大包袱，我确信我能明智地选择能让我获得更大的个人满足感，并保证今后有更称心收入的职业。

9. 争论的核心问题是："上大学的主要目的是什么？"以及"谁应来负担上大学的费用？"对我而言，回答始终是：我上大学的目的是接受正规的教育、获得高等学位；一切费用应由我自己来承担。我知道有些人会不赞成我的这种不同寻常的教育筹资途径。但是想想看，我所选择的道路能带来教育上、经济上和心理上的巨大好处！

10. 让我尤其感到自豪的是，由于选择了自我资助，我解除了父母的负担，使他们不必承担我上大学的费用。而且，我不靠父母的帮助，自己照顾自己，这给了他们满足感，因为他们知道他们已经将我成功地培养成人了。

11. 我乐于承认，勤工助学并非一直都充满乐趣。这并不好玩！但是，你一旦接受了要靠自己负担学费的做法，你就会成长、成熟，并学会能让你受益终生的重要技能。你想知道一条通向快乐并能持续发展的人生之路吗？那就考虑加入我们"勤工助学"一族吧！

五、练习答案及详解

Reading skills

理解标志词

标志词就像红绿灯或者路牌。它们能提示出接下来发生什么，或者是提醒读者改变想法跟上作者的思路，从而提高读者的阅读理解能力。标志词可以显示句子成分间、句与句间，甚至是段落之间的关系。常见的标志词可以显示附加信息，举例，结论，思路改变，对比，顺序，原因、条件、结果关系及重点。

1 Read Paragraph 1 and Paragraph 7 of Text B and underline the signal words.

1. As
   While
   and
2. Besides
   also
   but
   also

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

2 Choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

1. B 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. C

Critical thinking

3 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. It is no easy task for a working student to strike a balance between work and study. The tips may be useful: good time management, modest working hours, efficiency in work and study, and good health.
2. • I admire the students who work to pay their own tuition as long as they are still performing well academically because they are independent, responsible and self-motivated.
   • I feel pity for the working students as they are not able to fully enjoy their college life like many other students. They have less time to study or to do other fun activities.
3. • Yes, working part-time definitely helps students learn to prioritize and become more efficient. To balance work and study, working students often encounter time conflicts and approaching deadlines. So they have to know which is the most urgent and important thing under different circumstances.
   • No, not necessarily. Working students often have to give priority to their work when their study conflicts with their work. If they fail to go to work as scheduled, they may lose their job. They surely don't want that to happen. As a result, they may skip class or fail to turn in their assignments.
4. No, not necessarily. Paying tuition is just a sign of being independent, but there are many other ways

to show our independence. For example, doing housework, doing volunteer work and being excellent in academic study.

5. There are many advantages of studying full-time. For example, focusing on study, leading a colorful college life, building friendships and a better relationship with their parents.

Language focus

Words in use

4 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. advanced

【译文】此项目旨在满足不同层次学生的需求，它开设的课程既有面对初学者的，也有面对高年级学生的。

2. tremendous

【译文】她被发现患有肿瘤时，甚是惊讶；当医生说有可能威胁生命时，她更为震惊。

3. claim

【译文】他否认了校方称他两次考试前知道考题的作弊声明。

4. endure

【译文】在等待医生过来期间，你只好忍受这难以忍受的痛苦。

5. relieve

【译文】为了缓解压力，她求助于从小喜爱的一项活动——画画。

6. ensure

【译文】为确保车流顺畅，所有道路工程高峰时应停止。

7. relevant

【译文】在挑选应聘者时，人们往往偏好在相关领域工作了至少两年的人。

8. convinced

【译文】细细拜读了您的报告，我深信您的解决方案比我的好。

9. illustrate

【译文】弗兰克经常在讲课时准备些图片解释文中所涉情形是如何发生的。

10. soared

【译文】上周一项联合国报告称该国的失业率已由3%猛增至6.5%。

Expressions in use

5 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. In spite of

【译文】尽管经济预报不乐观，商人们对未来一致信心十足。

2. catch/get/have a glimpse of

【译文】两百多名粉丝深夜等在机场，寄希望于能瞥见他们最喜欢的流行乐歌手一眼。

3. are in the/a minority

【译文】在我国，医院的护士大多是女性，男护士属于少数。

4. relieves... of

【译文】很多人喜欢网上购物，因为它能使人免于驾车及停车的烦恼。

5. a matter of

【译文】广告不仅仅关乎于向顾客提供信息，同时也是一项寻求用最先进技术影响世界的事业。

6. As for

【译文】对于那些上了年纪的大学生，刻苦学习是第一位的。

7. is envious of

【译文】她一直嫉妒姐姐的美貌，两姐妹相处实属不易。

8. look back

【译文】回顾过去，我看到我的过往人生是如此轻松、舒适、愉悦，而我却习以为然。

Sentence structure

6 Make sentences by combining the groups of words. Use *whereas* to suggest that although something is true of one thing, it is not true of another. Make changes where necessary.

1. Whereas my friend was dressed in a black hat and coat, I was dressed in jeans and sneakers.
2. Whereas having meals at home can cost as little as two or three dollars, eating out at a restaurant is always more expensive.
3. Whereas Asian people do not look into each other's eyes as they talk, in the Western world it is polite to maintain eye contact during a conversation.

7 Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English, using "given that..." structure.

1. Given that you had very little help
2. Given that students had learned how to do the experiment in class
3. given that nearly 90% of adult smokers began smoking at or before the age of 18

Collocation

8 The following passage is about the pros and cons of working part-time. Complete the passage by filling in the blanks with appropriate collocations from the texts. You are provided with the first letter(s) for each of the collocations.

1. formal education 正规教育
2. working students 半工半读的学生
3. educational funding 教育资金
4. non-working students 全职学生
5. educational experience 教育经历
6. school engagement 学校事宜
7. school commitment 学习义务
8. school performance 学校表现
9. commitment 义务
10. educational aspirations 教育抱负
11. undergraduate students 大学生
12. school careers 学习生涯

Unit 7

Hoping for the better

Section A

When honesty disappears

一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文通过聚焦大学中缺乏诚信，作弊和剽窃现象在不断增加，讨论了多种多样的不诚实行为。文章开头首先整体描述了社会各个层面广泛存在的腐败和不诚实现象，比如：学生贩卖期末考题、提交买来的学期论文等。随后作者关注了大学里面作弊和剽窃的现象，分析了可能导致学生作弊的原因，以及作弊的容易性，并介绍了一些大学是怎样应付学生作弊的。作者在最后表达了他对于过去时代的人们是否比当代人诚实这一问题的不确定性，但通过林肯的故事表明答案是肯定的，并指出我们社会的未来取决于相互信任。

(二)背景知识

亚伯拉罕·林肯

亚伯拉罕·林肯(Abraham Lincoln，1809—1865)，美国政治家、思想家，黑人奴隶制的废除者。1809年2月12日，林肯出生在肯塔基州哈丁县一个贫苦的家庭，他通过自学使自己成为一个博学而充满智慧的人。1836年，林肯成为一名律师，后在斯普林菲尔德合伙开办律师事务所。不久他又成为州议会辉格党领袖。积累了州议员的经验之后，1846年，37岁的林肯当选为美国众议员。1847年，林肯作为辉格党的代表，参加了国会议员的竞选，获得了成功，第一次来到首都华盛顿。在此前后，关于奴隶制度的争论，成了美国政治生活中的大事。在这场争论中，林肯逐渐成为反对黑奴主义者。他认为奴隶制度最终该消灭，首先应该在首都华盛顿取消奴隶制。代表南方奴隶主利益的蓄奴主义者则疯狂地反对林肯消除奴隶制。1850年，美国的奴隶主势力大增，林肯退出国会，继续当律师。1856年，林肯因强烈反对扩大奴隶制而退出辉格党，参加新成立的反对奴隶制的共和党，并很快成为该党主要领导人。1860年11月，林肯当选总统，共和党首次执政。林肯的当选对南方种植园主的利益构成严重威胁，南方种植园奴隶主为制造分裂，发动了叛变，南方11个州先后退出联邦，宣布成立"美利坚联盟国"，并制

定了新的宪法,选举新总统。1861 年 4 月,南方叛乱武装首先向北方挑起战争。林肯号召民众为维护联邦统一而战,南北战争爆发。战争初期,林肯采取谋求同南方和解的方针,军事上节节失利。在各阶层的强烈要求下,一系列打击奴隶制的法令在 1862 年得以通过。1862 年 9 月 22 日,林肯发表《解放黑人奴隶宣言》,宣布自 1863 年 1 月 1 日起废除叛乱各州的奴隶制,奴隶将成为自由人。文件给黑奴带来了希望和勇气,许多黑奴脱离了南方军队,参加了北方军。1864 年,他提出"民有、民治、民享"的口号,鼓舞士气,于 1865 年 4 月取得内战胜利。在 1864 年大选中,林肯提出了废除奴隶制的第十三条修正案并列入共和党竞选纲领。11 月 8 日,林肯再次当选为总统。1865 年 4 月 14 日晚,林肯在华盛顿福特剧院被演员约翰·布斯刺杀,次日晨逝世。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Para. 1 By giving some examples, the author describes the phenomenon of widespread corruption and dishonesty at all layers of society. 通过举例,作者描述了社会各个层面广泛存在的腐败和不诚实现象。

Paras. 2 - 4 The author analyzes what may have caused students to cheat, how easy it is to cheat nowadays, and how universities deal with cheating. 作者分析了可能导致学生作弊的原因,作弊的容易性,以及大学是怎样应付学生作弊的。

Paras. 5 - 6 The author expresses his uncertainty about whether people in the past were more honest than people today, but Lincoln's story suggests so, and concludes that the future of our society depends on mutual trust. 作者表达了对于过去时代的人们是否比当代人诚实这一问题的不确定性,但通过林肯的故事表明答案是肯定的,并得出了我们社会的未来取决于相互信任的结论。

2. 写作特点

本文总体的写作特点是先提出问题,再分析问题产生的原因,并提出解决办法,最后说明解决该问题的重要性。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 fraud /frɔːd/ *n.*

[C, U] the crime of deceiving people in order to gain sth. such as money or goods 欺诈;诈骗

—She was charged with credit card fraud. 她被控告信用卡欺骗罪。

【派生】fraudulent *a.* 欺骗的,欺诈的

2 corruption /kəˈrʌpʃn/ *n.*

[U] dishonest, illegal, or immoral behavior, esp. from sb. with power (尤指有权势者的)贪污,贿赂,受贿,腐败

—The new district attorney has promised to fight police corruption. 新上任的地方检察官承诺要与司法腐败做斗争。

【搭配】combat corruption 反腐

3 expel /ɪkˈspel/ *vt.*

officially force sb. to leave a place or organization because of their bad behavior 强迫(某人)离开;驱逐;

开除

—Two girls were expelled from school for taking drugs. 两个女生因吸毒而被学校开除。

【搭配】expel from 驱逐出；开除；排出

【派生】expellable *a.* 可驱逐的，应开除的

4 purchase /ˈpɜːtʃəs/ *n.*

[C, U] (*fml.*) sth. you buy, or the act of buying it 购买(的东西)

—Keep your receipt as proof of purchase. 保存好收据作为购货凭证。

vt. (*fml.*) buy sth. 购买

—The equipment can be purchased from your local supplier. 这种设备可从您当地的供应商购买。

【搭配】account purchase 赊购 cash purchase 现金购买

5 layer /ˈleɪə/ *n.*

(1) [C] a level or rank within an organization or system (组织或体系中的)层、级别，阶层

—There were too many layers of management in the company. 这家公司管理层太多。

(2) [C] an amount or piece of a material or substance that covers a surface or that is between two other things 表层；层

—A thin layer of dust covered everything. 所有的物品上都积了薄薄的一层灰尘。

6 exemplify /ɪgˈzemplɪˌfaɪ/ *vt.*

(1) be a typical example of sth. 作为……的范例；当作……的典型

—Her early work is exemplified in her book, "A Study of Children's Minds". 她的《儿童思维研究》一书是她早期的代表作。

(2) give an example of sth. 举例说明

—She exemplified each of the points she was making with an amusing anecdote. 她的每一个论点都用一个佚闻趣事来说明。

【派生】exemplification *n.* 例证，范例

【近义】demonstrate

7 consumer /kənˈsjuːmə/ *n.*

[C] sb. who buys and uses products and services 消费者

—Health-conscious consumers want more information about the food they buy. 注重身体健康的消费者想得到更多有关他们所购买的食物的信息。

【派生】consumption *n.* (能量、食物或材料的)消耗，消耗量

【同根】consume *vt.* 消耗；耗费

8 bribe /braɪb/ *n.*

[C] money or a gift that you illegally give sb. to persuade them to do sth. for you 贿赂

—It was alleged that he had taken bribes while in office. 他被指称在任时收受贿赂。

vt. illegally give sb., esp. a public official, money or a gift in order to persuade them to do sth. for you 贿赂；收买

—They bribed the guards with cigarettes. 他们用香烟贿赂看守。

【派生】bribery *n.* 行贿；受贿；贿赂

9 rip /rɪp/ *vt.*

remove sth. quickly by pulling hard 撕掉；扯掉

—Gilly ripped out a sheet of paper from her notebook. 吉利从她的笔记本上撕下一页纸。

v. tear sth. or be torn quickly and violently 撕;扯;被撕裂;被扯开

—Her clothes had all been ripped. 她的衣服都被撕破了。

【搭配】rip at sth. 猛烈撕扯;用力割 rip off 盗窃;敲……的竹杠

10accurate /ˈækjʊrət/ *a.*

correct and true in every detail 正确的;准确的

—The brochure tries to give a fair and accurate description of each hotel. 这本小册子尽量公正、准确地介绍每一家酒店。

【派生】accuracy *n.* 准确(性);精确(程度)

【反义】inaccurate

11exaggerate /ɪɡˈzædʒəˌreɪt/ *v.*

make sth. seem better, larger, worse, etc. than it really is 夸大;夸张;言过其实

—Demand for the product has been greatly exaggerated. 对这项产品的需求被过分夸大了。

【派生】exaggeration *n.* 夸张,夸大

12principle /ˈprɪnsəpl/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] a moral rule or belief about what is right and wrong, that influences how you behave 道德原则;行为准则

—He has high moral principles. 他很有道德。

(2) [C] the basic idea that a plan or system is based on 原则;原理;基本的观念

—There are three fundamental principles of teamwork. 团队合作有三个基本原则。

【派生】principled *a.* 是非观念强的;原则性强的;根据规则(或事实)的

13morality /məˈræləti/ *n.*

[U] beliefs or ideas about what is right and wrong and about how people should behave 道德;道德观

—The authorities are protectors of public morality. 当权者是公众道德的捍卫者。

14extensive /ɪkˈstensɪv/ *a.*

(1) large in size, amount, or degree 广阔的;大量的;大规模的

—The house has extensive grounds. 这栋房子有宽敞的庭院。

(2) containing or dealing with a lot of information and details 广泛的;全面的

—Extensive research has been done into this disease. 对这种疾病已进行了广泛研究。

【派生】extensively *ad.* 广大地;广泛地

【近义】comprehensive

15facilitate /fəˈsɪləteɪt/ *vt.*

(*fml.*) make it easier for a process or activity to happen 促进;使便利

—The new trade agreement should facilitate more rapid economic growth. 新贸易协定应当会加快经济发展。

【派生】facilitation *n.* 简易化,助长 facilitator *n.* 诱导者;促进(或推动)……的事物

16nerve /nɜːv/ *n.*

(1) (~s) [pl.] a worried feeling that makes you afraid that you will not be able to do sth. well 精神紧张;焦虑不安;神经质

—Even after years as a singer, he still suffers from nerves before a performance. 尽管已做歌手多年,他在演出前仍然神经紧张。

(2) [C] 神经

—Every nerve in her body was tense. 她的每一根神经都绷得紧紧的。

【派生】nervous *a.* 焦虑的;担忧的

17 frustrate /frʌ'streɪt/ *vt.*

make sb. feel annoyed and impatient by preventing them from doing or getting sth. 阻挠;使烦恼;使灰心

—What frustrates him is that there's too little money to spend on the project. 使他懊恼的是可用于这个项目的资金太少。

【派生】frustrated *a.* 懊恼的;沮丧的 frustrating *a.* 令人懊恼的;令人沮丧的

18 frustration /frʌ'streɪʃn/ *n.*

[C, U] the feeling of being annoyed, upset, or impatient, because you cannot control or change a situation, or achieve sth. 懊丧;懊恼;沮丧

—I was practically screaming with frustration. 我懊恼得几乎要大叫起来。

19 ultimate /'ʌltɪmət/ *a.* (*only before noun*)

(1) better, bigger, worse, etc. than all other things or people of the same kind 最出色的;最大的;最糟糕的

—This race will be the ultimate test of your skill. 这次竞赛将是对你的技能的最大考验。

(2) sb. 's ultimate aim is their main and most important aim, that they hope to achieve in the future (目标等)最终的,首要的

—Our ultimate objective is to have as many female members of parliament as there are male. 我们的最终目标是要让议会里的女性议员和男性议员数量一样多。

(3) happening at the end of a process or activity 最终的;最后的

—The ultimate outcome of the experiment cannot be predicted. 试验的最后结果无法预测。

【派生】ultimately *ad.* 最后,最终 ultimateness *n.* 结论;终结

20 illegal /ɪ'li:gl/ *a.*

not allowed by the law 违法的

—It is illegal to sell tobacco to someone under 16. 出售烟草给 16 岁以下者是违法的。

【反义】legal

21 fake /feɪk/ *vt.*

make sth. seem real in order to deceive people 仿造;伪造

—She faked her mother's signature on the document. 她伪造了她母亲在文件上的签字。

n. [C] a copy of a valuable object, painting, etc. that is intended to deceive people 赝品;假货

—All the paintings proved to be fakes. 所有这些画结果证实都是赝品。

a. (*usu. before noun*) made to look like a real material or object in order to deceive people 伪造的;冒充的

—We should crack down on companies which sell fake products. 我们应该打击出售假货的企业。

【派生】faker *n.* 骗子;伪造者 fakery *n.* 伪造,伪装

【反义】genuine

22 browse /braʊz/ *v.*

(1) search for information on a computer or on the Internet (在计算机或因特网上)浏览(信息)

—If you can remember where you have placed your files, then you can browse directly to the directory containing those files. 如果你能记起在何处放置了文件,那么就可以直接浏览到包含了这

些文件的那个目录。

(2) look at the goods in a shop without wanting to buy any particular thing (在商店里)随便看看

—You are welcome to come in and browse. 欢迎您光临本店随便看看。

vi. look through the pages of a book, magazine, etc. without a particular purpose, just looking at the most interesting parts 随意翻阅;浏览

—I found the article while I was browsing through some old magazines. 我在翻阅一些旧杂志时找到了这篇文章。

【派生】browser *n.* 浏览程序,浏览器 browsy *a.* 浏览性质的,适宜于随便翻阅的

23 locate /ləʊ'keɪt/ *vt.*

(1) find the exact position of sth. 找出……的准确位置

—The mechanic located the fault immediately. 机修工立即找到了出故障的地方。

(2) (be ~ed in/near, etc. sth.) be in a particular position or place 位于某处/位于某处附近等

—The business is located right in the center of town. 这家商店就在市中心。

【派生】location *n.* 地方;地点;位置

24 appropriate /ə'prəʊpriət/ *a.*

correct or suitable for a particular time, situation, or purpose 恰当的;合适的

—Now that the problem has been identified, appropriate action can be taken. 现在既已找出问题的症结,即可采取适当行动。

【派生】appropriately *ad.* 适当地

【近义】suitable

【反义】inappropriate

25 web /web/ *n.*

(1) [sing.] (the Web) the World Wide Web 万维网

—I found the information on the Web. 我在互联网上找到了这条消息。

(2) [C] a net of thin threads made by a spider to catch insects 蜘蛛网

—A spider had spun a perfect web outside the window. 蜘蛛在窗外结了一张完整的网。

26 conscious /'kɒnʃəs/ *a.*

(1) thinking a lot about or concerned about sth. 关注的;有意识的;注重的

—We should become environmentally conscious consumers. 我们应该成为有环保意识的消费者。

(2) (*not before noun*) noticing or realizing sth. 注意到的;意识到的

—I became conscious of someone watching me. 我意识到有人在看我。

(3) awake and able to understand what is happening around you 清醒的;有知觉的;神志清醒的

—The driver was still conscious when the ambulance arrived. 救护车赶到时,司机仍然神志清醒。

【派生】consciously *ad.* 有意识地 consciousness *n.* 感觉,意识;清醒状态

【近义】aware

【反义】unconscious

27 cope /kəʊp/ *vi.*

succeed in dealing with a difficult problem or situation (成功地)应付,对付

—He wasn't able to cope with the stresses and strains of the job. 对付这项工作的紧张与压力,他无能为力。

【搭配】cope with (成功地)对付,处理

28 plagiarism /ˈpleɪdʒəˌrɪz(ə)m/ *n.*

[U] when sb. uses another person's words, ideas, or work and pretends they are their own 剽窃;抄袭

—The journal accused the professor of plagiarism. 那份刊物指控该教授剽窃。

29 software /ˈsɒftˌweə/ *n.*

[U] the sets of programs that tell a computer how to do a particular job (计算机)软件

—Will the software run on my machine? 这个软件在我的机器上能用吗?

30 plagiarize /ˈpleɪdʒəˌraɪz/ *v.*

take words or ideas from another person's work and use them in your work, without stating that they are not your own 剽窃;抄袭

—He was accused of plagiarizing his colleague's results. 他被指控剽窃同事的成果。

【派生】plagiarist *n.* 剽窃者,抄袭者

31 launch /lɔːntʃ/ *vt.*

(1) start sth., usu. sth. big or important 发动;发起;开始进行

—The organization has launched a campaign to raise $150,000. 为了筹集 15 万美元,该组织发起了一场募捐活动。

(2) make a new product, book, etc. available for sale for the first time 把(新产品、新书等)投放市场;出版;发行

—The company hopes to launch the new drug by next October. 公司希望于明年十月前推出这种新药。

(3) send a weapon or spacecraft into the sky or into space 发射(武器或宇宙飞船)

—A test satellite was launched from Cape Canaveral. 一颗实验人造卫星从卡纳维拉尔角发射升空。

【搭配】launch a campaign 发起一场运动

32 campaign /kæmˈpeɪn/ *n.*

(1) [C] a series of actions intended to achieve a particular result relating to politics or business, or a social improvement 运动;(宣传)活动

—Florida was a key state in his campaign for re-election. 佛罗里达是他再次竞选宣传活动中关键的一个州。

(2) [C] a series of battles, attacks, etc. intended to achieve a particular result in a war 战役

—The army is beating up recruits for the campaign. 军队正在为这个战役招募新兵。

33 eliminate /ɪˈlɪmɪˌneɪt/ *vt.*

(1) get rid of sth. that is not wanted or needed 消除;剔除;根除

—The credit card eliminates the need for cash or cheques. 有了信用卡就不需要使用现金或支票了。

(2) (*usu. passive*) remove sb. from a competition or election (在比赛或竞选中)淘汰

—Our team was eliminated in the first round. 我们队第一轮就被淘汰了。

【派生】elimination *n.* 消除,根除;淘汰

34 attach /əˈtætʃ/ *vt.*

fasten or connect one object to another 系;绑;贴;固定;连接;附上

—Attach a recent photograph to your application form. 申请表上请贴一张近照。

【派生】attachment *n.* 连接物;附件

35 attached /əˈtætʃt/ *a.*

joined or fixed to sth. 连接的;附加的

—Please complete the attached application form. 请填写所附申请表。

36 satisfactory /ˌsætɪsˈfækt(ə)ri/ *a.*

good enough to be accepted in a particular situation 令人满意的

—His progress this term has been satisfactory. 他这学期的进步令人满意。

37 confront /kənˈfrʌnt/ *vt.*

(1) accuse sb. of doing sth., esp. by showing them the proof 对质;当面对证

—I confronted him with my suspicions, and he admitted everything. 我当面向他提出自己的怀疑,他承认了一切。

(2) face sb. so that they cannot avoid seeing and hearing you, esp. in an unfriendly or dangerous situation 面对;对抗;与(某人)对峙

—This was the first time he had confronted an armed robber. 这是他第一次面对一个武装劫匪。

(3) deal with a difficult situation 正视;处理;面对

—She knew that she had to confront her fears. 她心里明白自己必须克服恐惧心理。

【派生】confrontation *n.* 对抗;对峙;冲突

38 reveal /rɪˈviːl/ *vt.*

make known sth. that was previously secret or unknown 揭示;揭露;透露

—Details of the murder were revealed by the local paper. 地方报纸披露了谋杀的细节。

39 applaud /əˈplɔːd/ *vt.*

(*fml.*) express strong approval of an idea, plan, etc. 称赞;赞许

—We applaud her decision. 我们称赞她的决定。

v. hit your open hands together, to show that you have enjoyed a play, concert, speaker, etc. (为……)鼓掌

—The audience applauded loudly. 观众掌声雷动。

【派生】applause *n.* 鼓掌;喝彩

40 awareness /əˈweənəs/ *n.*

[U] knowledge or understanding of a particular subject or situation 认识;意识

—There was an almost complete lack of awareness of the issues involved. 对有关问题几乎是一无所知。

41 imply /ɪmˈplaɪ/ *vt.*

suggest that sth. is true, without saying this directly 暗示;暗指

—Are you implying that I am wrong? 你的意思是不是说我错了?

42 absolute /ˈæbsəluːt/ *a.*

(1) true, correct, and not changing in any situation 绝对的;不会改变的

—You have an absolute right to refuse medical treatment. 你有绝对权利,可以拒绝接受治疗。

(2) complete or total 完全的;纯粹的

—I have absolute confidence in her. 我对她充满信心。

(3) (*only before noun*) (*esp. BrE*) used to emphasize your opinion about sth. or sb. 十足的;绝对的

—Some of the stuff on TV is absolute rubbish. 电视上播放的有些东西是十足的垃圾。

43 induce /ɪnˈdjuːs/ *vt.*

(*fml.*) persuade sb. to do sth., esp. sth. that does not seem wise 劝诱;诱导

—Nothing would induce me to take the job. 没有什么能诱使我接受这份工作。

【派生】inducement *n.* 引诱;刺激;诱因 inducer *n.* 诱导物;引诱者

44 descend /dɪ'send/ *v.*
(*fml.*) move from a higher level to a lower one 下来；下降；走下
—The plane began to descend. 飞机开始降落。
【搭配】descend into 陷入……状况
【反义】ascend
45 chaos /'keɪɒs/ *n.*
[U] a situation in which everything is confused and in a mess 混乱；紊乱；无序状态
—There was total chaos on the roads. 路上完全是一片混乱。
【搭配】in chaos 处于混乱状态；混乱
46 affirmative /ə'fɜːmətɪv/ *a.*
(1) (*fml.*) positive 积极的；乐观的
　—This country's economic outlook is affirmative. 这个国家的经济前景是很乐观的。
(2) showing that you mean "yes" 肯定的
　—He was desperately eager for an affirmative answer. 他非常渴望得到一个肯定的回答。
47 durable /'djʊərəbl/ *a.*
(1) continuing for a long time 持久的
　—His poetry has proved durable. 他的诗已经证明是经得起时间考验的。
(2) staying in good condition for a long time, even if used a lot 耐用的
　—Wood is a durable material. 木头是耐用材料。
【派生】durability *n.* 耐久性 durably *ad.* 经久地；耐久地

(二)短语

1 turn in
(*BrE* hand in) give a piece of work you have done to a teacher, your employer, etc. 上交
—I haven't even turned in Monday's work yet. 我连星期一的作业还没交呢。
2 not to mention sth.
used to introduce an additional thing that makes a situation even more difficult, surprising, interesting, etc. 更不用说某事了
—All they have to do is pressing a button, and they can see shows of every kind, not to mention the latest exciting football match. 他们只需按一下开关就可以看到各种各样的文艺节目。至于最近的激动人心的足球赛，更是不在话下。
3 rip off
(1) (*infml.*) steal sth. 盗窃
　—He was arrested by the police for ripping off a watch after he walked into the store. 他被警察抓了，因为他走进商店后偷了一块手表。
(2) charge sb. too much money for sth. 敲……的竹杠
　—Tourists complain of being ripped off by local cab drivers. 游客抱怨被当地的出租车司机敲了竹杠。
4 if this/that is the case
used to describe what you will do, or what will happen, as a result of a particular situation or event 如果是这样/那样的话
—If that is the case, I'll give it a try. 如果那样的话，我会试一试的。

5 cope with

deal successfully with sth. difficult (成功地)对付,处理

—To my delight, he was able to cope with the stress of his study. 令我高兴的是,他能够处理学习的压力。

6 launch a campaign

plan, organize, and begin a campaign 发起一场运动

—To improve the staff's comprehensive quality, the company launched a massive educational campaign. 为了提高员工的综合素质,该公司发起了一场大规模的教育运动。

7 make a complaint about sth.

complain formally about sth. 因……提出投诉

—They made a complaint about poor service. 他们因服务差提出投诉。

8 the good old days

an earlier time in your life, or in history, when things seemed better than now 过去的好日子

—I often recollect the good old days. 我经常回忆过去的美好时光。

9 be confined to sb. /sth.

exist in or affect only a particular place or group 局限于某人/某事

—For the young, the hunger for knowledge is strong, and it is not confined to any time or place. 年轻人对知识的渴望是非常强烈的,并不受任何时间或地域的限制。

10 descend into

if a situation descends into a certain bad state, it becomes bad 陷入……状况

—They have taken effective measures so as to prevent the city from descending into chaos and bloodshed. 他们采取了有效措施,阻止了整个城市陷入混乱和流血。

三、课文注释

1 As numerous accounts of cheating, lying, and fraud crowd our newspaper pages and TV news, it seems that honesty is a rapidly vanishing value. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】From our newspapers and TV news, we read countless reports about people cheating, lying, and deceiving. Honesty as a valuable merit seems to be disappearing quickly.

【解　析】本句中包含句型 It seems that...,表示"看起来……,似乎……"。

2 And the reports indicate that, around the globe, corruption and dishonesty are so widespread that the health and well-being of society are at risk. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】And the reports show that immoral and dishonest behaviors are so common worldwide that the world may become less healthy and less comfortable to live in.

【解　析】本句中包括结果状语从句 so... that...,表示"如此……,以至于……"。句中 well-being 表示"舒适、健康或幸福"的含义。

3 We have all read or heard accounts such as these, not to mention the stories of dishonesty amongst all layers of society as exemplified by consumers who steal and politicians who demand bribes. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】We all have read or heard stories like these, not even to talk about more disgraceful stories of dishonesty at every level of society, for example, customers stealing things and politicians illegally asking for money or gifts.

4 Should we be alarmed by these accounts of falling standards of principles and morality? (Para. 2)

【Meaning】Should we feel worried when hearing these reports that the standards of moral beliefs and ideas are declining?

【解　析】句中包含短语 be alarmed by...,表示"对……感到恐慌"。

5 If this is indeed the case, it's deeply troubling as today's students are tomorrow's leaders! (Para. 2)

【Meaning】If such a situation does exist, it is very worrying because today's students will become leaders in the future!

6 It's possible that the desire to cheat is no greater than in the past. However, the critical importance of having a university degree may have increased the pressure to cheat in academic environments. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】It's possible that nowadays people's desire to cheat has not become stronger than in the past. However, since it is extremely important to obtain a university degree, this may cause greater pressure for students to cheat in studies.

【解　析】此句中 no greater than 是一种特殊形式的比较级,由 no＋形容词比较级＋than 构成,表示"不比……更……"。

7 The demanding task of writing term papers has always been a source of tense nerves and frustration, if not the ultimate homework nightmare. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】Although the difficult task of writing term papers may not be the most terrible homework, it is so challenging that it has been making students feel very worried, annoyed, upset, and impatient.

【解　析】此句后半句为省略句,完整形式为 if it is not the ultimate homework nightmare。

8 But now, with Internet access, illegal resources are just a few links away. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】But now, with the use of the Internet, one can obtain unlawful resources just by clicking on a website.

9 Modern students who want to fake a term paper don't have to browse long. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】Nowadays, students don't need to spend a long time "stealing" online papers and ideas to be used in their own term paper.

10 Some people worry that the Internet, once hailed as the ultimate learning tool, could become the best aid yet for cheating. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】Some people are worried that the Internet, which was once described as the best learning tool, could become the most effective means of cheating.

【解　析】the best/biggest/worst, etc. (sth.) yet 表示"迄今为止最好/最大/最糟糕的(某物)等"。

11 If students are caught plagiarizing or cheating in any way, they will be immediately expelled from school. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】If students are found copying other people's work or cheating in any way, they will at once be forced to leave school permanently.

【解　析】句中包含短语 be expelled from...,表示"被强迫从……离开,开除"。

12 As 409 students filed out of their Introduction to Psychology exam, they found all but one exit blocked. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】As 409 students walked in a line out of the classroom after they took their Introduction to Psychology exam, they found only one exit was open while all the other exits were blocked.

【解　析】句中 file out of... 表示"排队走出……"。

13 Test monitors asked each student to produce an ID card with an attached photo. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】Those who came to check and observe the test asked each student to show an ID card with a photo on it.

14 The purpose of the campaign was to reveal hired cheaters, students who take tests for other students. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】The purpose of the movement was to uncover those students who were hired to take tests for other students.

15 With awareness of increasing dishonesty in today's society, it's sometimes implied that in "the good old days" people were better, happier, and more honest. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】Noticing more and more dishonest deeds in our today's society, people sometimes suggest that in the good times of the past people were better, happier, and more honest.

16 Long ago, all American schoolchildren knew the historical story of how Abraham Lincoln walked five miles to return a penny he had overcharged a customer. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】According to historical records, Abraham Lincoln walked five miles to return a penny he had overcharged a customer. The story with its moral virtue has been passed on from generation to generation. The author uses this story to show what he is to convey in this article.

【解　析】句中 overcharge 表示"索以高价;对(某人)索价过高"。

17 It is these stories that students need to remember when temptation induces them to cheat. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Students need to remember these very stories when they are tempted to cheat.

【解　析】句中 It is... that...为强调句型,用于强调主句的主语。

18 Whether discovered or not, dishonesty has an undesirable effect on anyone who practices it. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Whether it will be discovered or not, dishonesty has a bad effect on anyone who does dishonest deeds.

【解　析】句中 whether... or not 意为"不管;不论",用于表示无论出现什么情况,某事肯定发生或不发生。

19 Equally importantly, the ill effects are not confined to the dishonest person alone. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Equally importantly, not only the dishonest person but also other people suffer from the harmful effects of dishonesty.

【解　析】句中 ill effect 表示"不良影响;不良反应"。be confined to sb. /sth. 表示"局限于某人/某事"。

20 It's important that we do what we say we will do, pay when we say we will, and create words that are our own. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】It's important that we do as we promised, we pay as we agreed, and we write as we created.

【解　析】此句中 It's important that...属于虚拟语气的用法,从句中主语 we 后面省略了 should 一词。

四、课文译文

当诚实消失时

1."有真正诚实的人吗?"我们的报纸版面和电视新闻充斥着不计其数的有关欺骗、说谎和诈骗的报道,诚实似乎已经成为正在迅速消失的价值观。而且这些报道表明,全球范围内腐败和不诚实现象蔓延范围之广已经危及了社会的安康。这些报道中包括诸如此类的故事:学生因考试前贩卖大学期末考题而面临犯罪指控;一名学生因提交买来的、还夹着收据的学期论文而被勒令退学;一名职员用公司的

邮资机来邮寄自己的圣诞贺卡，他在寄了一张贺卡给公司的财务主管后被发现！我们都读过或听过类似的事情，更别说社会各层面存在的种种不诚实行为，如偷窃东西的顾客和索取贿赂的政客。去年一年，一家大型连锁酒店的大量毛巾被游客偷走，酒店因此花费了300万美元来添置新毛巾。尤其令人担忧的是，世界范围内的有关学生不诚实行为的报道越来越多。

2. 不过这些报道确实是真实的还是言过其实了呢？我们该不该因这些关于行为准则和道德水准下降的报道而感到不安呢？人们认定现在学生中的不诚实现象比20年、50年或100年前更为广泛。如果是这样，其背后的原因是什么呢？如果情况确实属实，那就令人十分担心了，因为今天的学生就是未来的领袖！也许现在学生骗人的欲望并不比以前大。然而，由于大学学位至关重要，这可能给学生带来更大的压力，使他们在学术上造假。毫无疑问，现代科技使人更容易获得造假的方法和机会。写学期论文这一艰巨的任务即便不是最可怕的作业，也一直是导致学生神经紧张和沮丧的原因之一。但是现在，网络唾手可得，点击几下鼠标就能找到非法的资源。

3. 现在的学生如果想要伪造学期论文的话不必在网上浏览太长时间。他们只需要找到合适的网址，然后购买或订购网上论文，或者甚至免费下载论文。一个网络服务站提供"质量最高、价格最低的论文"，每页只需5.95美元。忙碌的、注重节约成本的学生还会找到其他出售"低价"论文的网站，这些网站向顾客许诺："你会既开心又成功。"有些人担心，曾经被奉为最棒的学习工具的互联网会成为作弊者最得力的帮手。

4. 为解决作弊泛滥的问题，世界各地的大学现在都在使用反抄袭软件，并且针对作弊和抄袭行为有严厉的惩罚政策。如果学生被抓到以任何方式抄袭或作弊，他们就会立刻被勒令退学。一些大学的教师不再只是谈论日益增多的学生作弊行为，他们决定采取行动。一所重点大学的教授发起一项运动，努力消除一种作弊行为。当409名学生排队离开"心理学入门"考试的考场时，他们发现除了一个出口以外，其他所有的考场出口都被堵上了。考官们要求学生出示带有照片的身份证件。如果他们能够提供令人满意的身份证件就可以离开。如果他们把证件落在家里了，考官们就会当面质问他们，并拍下他们的照片。这项运动的目的就是要揭露那些雇来的作弊者，即替其他学生考试的学生。这所大学的大部分学生都对这个新举措拍手称快。

5. 随着人们意识到当今社会的不诚实行为日益增多，有时这就暗示着在"过去的好时光"里，人们更好、更快乐、更诚实。过去的人更诚实吗？也许是，也许不是。很久以前，所有的美国学童都知道亚伯拉罕·林肯步行5英里去归还他多收顾客的一便士的历史故事。这是那种我们认为是杜撰出来的故事。但是，发生在林肯身上的这个故事的确是真实的。

6. 就像林肯的故事一样，每个社会都有强调诚实的绝对价值的故事。这些故事正是学生在受到作弊的诱惑时需要记住的。不管是否会被发现，不诚实都会给任何一个作弊者带来不利影响。同样重要的是，作弊不仅仅只给作弊者带来负面影响。没有诚信，有序的社会就会陷入混乱。我们承诺要做的事就一定要做，我们承诺要付出的就一定要付出，自己的东西一定要自己写，这些都是很重要的。也许我们的学校要教给学生的最重要的一课就是大家要彼此信任。当诚实消失时，信任这一积极的、持久的纽带就会消失，我们都会迷失。我们社会的未来依赖于我们彼此间的相互信任。

五、练习答案及详解

Pre-reading activities

1 Work individually. What would you do in the following situations?

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A

2 Work in groups. Compare your choices and explain why you have made such choices.

1. I don't like being too direct or too frank. I might say the color is good or the style is nice. But I wouldn't say the jacket is awful because I don't want to hurt my friend. However, if it is a close friend of mine, I may tell him/her directly the new jacket is awful and why I think so.
2. When I don't want to go to my friend's party for some reason, I would definitely decline the invitation, but with a reasonable excuse. After all, the friend is being nice to invite me and I don't want to appear rude. So, I would make an excuse, for example, I would say that I have another appointment.
3. If I haven't finished an assignment in time, I would tell the professor the truth and explain the reasons. I would then ask for a few more days to finish it. I think the professor would agree because of my honesty. But I will try to submit my assignments in time in the future.
4. Actually, this happened to me once. I told the cashier that one item had not been charged. I wouldn't feel comfortable to keep such a windfall.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

1 Answer the following questions.

1. He was asked to leave the university permanently.
2. The possible reason is the increasing pressure that comes from the importance of having a university degree.
3. The Internet makes it very easy and simple for a student to fake a term paper because of the easy access to illegal resources online.
4. The Internet was once hailed as the ultimate learning tool.
5. They use anti-plagiarism software and have very strict policies regarding cheating and plagiarism.
6. Test monitors asked students to show their photo ID card.
7. The historical story about Abraham Lincoln emphasizes the absolute value of honesty.
8. The author's purpose in writing this essay is to call on people to act honestly and trust each other because the future of our society depends on mutual trust.

Critical thinking

2 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. People tell lies for various reasons. Some people lie to get something they want or get out of trouble. For instance, children may fake a stomachache in order to skip school, or lie about their poor grades for fear of being punished. Some people tell lies because they don't want to upset others. They are white lies. Such people lie just to protect someone they care. Seldom do we say to our friends that their hairstyle looks awful or we don't like their gifts. Some people lie only because they are timid and dare not to face up to the consequences. But the worst reason for people to lie is that some people get into the habit of lying. And some are vicious persons so that they only want to hurt others.
2. Yes, I consider myself an honest person. Being honest is to be straightforward and tell the truth. I'm up to these standards. I don't tell lies and I'm sincere to other people. I never say things to people if I don't mean it; I never make up things that are not true; I never lie to people in order to get myself

out of trouble.

3. • Yes, I think signing an Honesty Declaration will effectively prevent cheating in exams. The declaration is a reminder to students that they have promised to do the right thing, and they should keep their promise as an honest person.
   • No, I don't think so. I doubt the effectiveness of signing an Honesty Declaration, and I don't think it will help promote honest behavior during exams. If students are honest, they will be honest even without signing the declaration. If they are not honest, they will cheat anyway.
4. • Yes, I think people who tell white lies are still honest and acceptable. White lies are harmless and well-meant. We tell white lies not to cheat others or benefit ourselves; instead, we want to make others feel better. It's better to tell a white lie than hurt others' feeling. Lying is sometimes moral, if you do it for others, well-meant lies can possess magic power. It can send out the radiance of love, kindness and humanism. A white lie from parents let the inexperienced child get out of psychological burden; a white lie from a teacher let the diffident student get away from confusion; a white lie from a doctor let the desperate patient get over from destruction. If we are kind-hearted, a white lie can even heal the wounds in heart.
   • No, I don't consider those who tell white lies to be honest. A lie is a lie. Well-meaning or not, if you tell white lies, you are not telling the truth. Telling white lie does not necessarily benefit everybody. Lying destroys trust among people.
5. • Yes, I approve of doctors' not telling the truth to patients. Some patients are not strong-willed enough. Doctors worry about that if the patient was told the truth about their condition, it will risk destroying their hope, which will make the situation even worse—they might refuse to receive treatment or commit suicide. The truth only makes them collapse and lose hope.
   • No, I don't approve of that. I insist that the patients should be informed of the true information about their illness, so that they can make proper decision according to their health. And the laws entitle people to know the truth which concerns themselves, so telling them a lie in fact invades their legal right.

Language focus

Words in use

3 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. reveal

   【译文】如果你保证不会透露我的名字，我就告诉你事情的真相。
2. implying

   【译文】你是在暗指这都怪我吗？我又没做错什么！
3. accurate

   【译文】虽然广告未必传递精确的信息，但是广告确实能让人们意识到这些产品的可用性能够改善他们的生活。
4. exaggerated

   【译文】他刻意夸大了上山的风险，使孩子们不敢去了。
5. eliminate

【译文】在你上交论文之前,你必须剔除文章中的所有错误。

6. facilitate

【译文】新政策将促进这两个城市之间的贸易的发展。

7. frustrated

【译文】她因应聘这个她向往已久的职位失败了而感到灰心丧气。

8. appropriate

【译文】在大多数文化中,穿着红色衣裙出席葬礼是不合适的。

9. conscious

【译文】他突然意识到他是招待会上唯一一个没穿正装的人。

10. launch

【译文】为了将新产品投放欧洲市场,该公司赠送了10000份免费样品给本土消费者试用。

Word building

4 Add -*al*, -*ence*, or -*y* to or remove them from the following words to form new words.

Words learned	New words formed
-al	
continue	continual
emotional	emotion
industry	industrial
part	partial
-ence	
correspond	correspondence
innocence	innocent
present	presence
occur	occurrence
intelligent	intelligence
-y	
worth	worthy
unite	unity
inquiry	inquire

5 Fill in the blanks with the newly-formed words in Activity 4. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. correspondence

【译文】他和他的朋友保持通信很多年了,但是突然间他就停止了和朋友的书信来往。

2. continual

【译文】不断滴答的时钟让我心烦不已,难以入睡。

3. partial

【译文】你对于此次计划失败所要承担的责任仅仅是部分的,你的搭档也应该承担责任。

4. emotion

【译文】她看起来面不改色,镇定自如,但是她一根接一根地吸烟却暴露了她的情绪。

5. occurrences

【译文】报纸应该记录当天发生的重要事件,但是事发当天多家报纸都错过了这个重大事件。

6. innocent

【译文】将一个无辜的人送进监狱,这是法院犯下的严重错误:没有做错任何事情却被判入狱十年。

7. worthy

【译文】我认为对于这位科学家的高度赞扬,他是当之无愧的。

8. industrial

【译文】众所周知,某些工业化学物质和食品添加剂会增加罹患癌症的风险。

9. presence

【译文】在众多竞争者面前,他不像以前那样自信。相反,他感到非常紧张。

10. inquire

【译文】他在街上迷路了,只好到处打听怎么去百货商店。

11. unity

【译文】这是我们一贯的政策,我们将通过和平手段而非武力的方式实现统一。

12. intelligence

【译文】决定人的智力的两个因素:一个人与生俱来的大脑以及他的成长环境。

Banked cloze

6 Fill in the blanks by selecting suitable words from the word bank. You may not use any of the words more than once.

1. L

【解析】根据句子结构,空格处缺少谓语,空格后接 doing 形式,结合语义可以推断应选择 admit,admit doing sth. 表示"承认做过某事"。

2. M

【解析】根据空格前面的 educational,可确定填名词,结合语义,during their educational career 表示"在他们的学习生涯中"。

3. C

【解析】根据句中结构 range from A to B 可判断介词 to 后面接的是由 being +V-ed 组成的名词性短语;根据空格后面的介词搭配 from,故选 C。

4. E

【解析】空格左为定冠词 the,所以选择名词形式,结合上下文 why do students cheat? ("学生们为什么作弊?")因为"在大学里想要取得好成绩的压力是很大的,是不容易的"。

5. H

【解析】空格左面是介词 without,空格右为名词 grades,中间只能选形容词;紧跟题 4 的语义关系,故为"如果没有令人满意的分数的话"。

6. G

【解析】available，意为“有，可获得的”，常置于名词后做后置定语，修饰 information，译为“更多可用的在线信息”。

7. J

【解析】browse，意为“浏览”。根据句型结构 don't have to do 可确定空格处为动词原形，空格右面接 the Internet，故选 J。

8. I

【解析】首先根据句式 colleges do everything they can to do sth. 可知空格处为不定式 to do 做目的状语；空格右面是 cheating，根据句意，“尽管各所大学竭尽所能防止作弊”，故选 I。

9. N

【解析】become more 后面应接形容词，表示“变得更……”；根据题 8 的语义关系 although 可推断“作弊的情况变得更为广泛了”。

10. A

【解析】情态动词 will 后面接动词原形；根据语义关系，“学生们应该考虑他们将要面对的后果”。

Expressions in use

7 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. not to mention

【译文】名人的活动总是吸引人们的目光，更不必说他们的结婚和离婚了。

2. turn in

【译文】你可以随意使用图书馆或者是互联网的各种资源，但是你上交的论文一定得是你自己写的。

3. rip off

【译文】有些出租车上没有安装计程表。这使得某些不诚实的出租车司机很容易宰客。

4. cope with

【译文】为了能在短时间内克服目前的财政困难，所有员工一定要齐心合力来应对困难。

5. launched a campaign

【译文】她已经发起了募捐活动，帮助那些忍受异常疾病痛苦的人们。

6. If this/that is the case

【译文】你真的相信这种药可以包治百病吗？如果是这样的话，我们就不再需要医生和医院了。

7. be confined to

【译文】在我看来，教育改革不应仅仅局限于那些本身条件已经比农村地区先进很多的大城市。

8. descend into

【译文】演说者们和记者们一直都在争论一个严重的问题：如果再发生一起重大罢工的话，该地区是否会陷入混乱？

Structure analysis and writing

Structure analysis

文章以及段落都是由主题句（topic sentence）和细节句（specific details）构成的。主题句表明段落或篇章的中心，细节句是为主题句而服务的，即主题句指明段落及文章的方向，明确主题思想，细节句则是对主题句的中心思想的详细解释，细节句将围绕这个主题逐步展开、定义、论述、分类、解释和举例说明等。根据主题进行扩展的一种有效形式就是举例说明（examples）：用足够的例证去支持主题句所提

出的观点，这就是细节句的任务。这样的句子可以用一些标志性词汇来引出此句，如 such as，for example，for instance。

8 Read Paragraph 4 of Text A and find the topic sentence, examples, and concluding sentences.

Topic sentence：To cope with... and plagiarism policies.

Example 1：If students are... expelled from school.

Example 2：Some college faculty... took their picture.

Concluding sentences：The purpose of... the new strategy.

Structured writing

9 Write a paragraph on one of the following topics. One topic has an outline that you can follow.

My dorm is nice to live in. For example, it has a very convenient location. It is close to everything on campus. It only takes 5 minutes to walk to my classes, 8 minutes to the library, 15 minutes to the swimming pool, and only 2 minutes to the cafeteria. What's more, there are great facilities in the building. There's a laundry room, a gym, a TV room, and even an ATM machine. Most importantly, I like my roommates. We get along very well, and we have a lot of fun together. In one word, I love my dorm.

Translation

10 Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.

在所有美国人的信念中，最基本、最强烈的信念可能就是崇尚个人自由。要理解美国人，最重要的也许就是了解他们对“个人主义”的热爱。生活中他们很早就开始受到教育，把自己看成独立的个体，对人生中自己的处境以及自己的前途命运负责。美国人认为自己的思想和行为高度个性化。他们不愿被视为任何同质群体的代表。如果确实加入了群体，他们也认为自己有特别之处，与同一个群体中的其他成员有着些许的差别。与美国人对个人主义赋予的价值紧密相关的是他们对个人隐私的重视。美国人认为，人“需要有自己的时间”或者“有时间独处”，用来思考事情，或者恢复他们所消耗的心理能量。美国人很难理解那些总想与人结伴、不爱独处的外国人。

11 Translate the following paragraph into English.

Integrity and harmony are traditional Chinese virtues. "Harmony" is demonstrated in various aspects. In regard to interpersonal relations, traditional Chinese thoughts hold that "Harmony is most precious" and "A family that lives in harmony will prosper". A harmonious social environment can be created based on these principles. As for relations between human beings and nature, people should learn to understand, respect and protect nature. Harmony is essential to interpersonal relations, relations between human beings and society, as well as between human beings and nature. Nowadays, harmonious development is still the way of running the country and managing talented personnel. With the development of China's society, economy and culture, the idea of "harmony" goes even deeper into people's hearts. China is on its way toward the goal of building a harmonious socialist society.

Section B

Rays of hope in rising rudeness



一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文首先交代了粗鲁是现代生活中常见的现象。在全世界范围内,人们普遍认为大城市的居民比较小城镇和农村的居民更为粗鲁。随后,作者指责快节奏的现代生活方式催生了人们无暇顾及礼貌的社会,而压力也是造成漠视行为的一个因素。很多人对于如今无礼行为是否会减少不抱什么希望。最后作者表明观点,指出有各种迹象表明,更友善和更富同情心的市民大有人在,并指出友善的行为会给他人带来积极的影响,并有助于减少社会上的压力,希望这样的乐观看法可以流行开来,并给所有人带来一个更加美好、更加光明的世界。

(二)背景知识

随机善举

2010年末,英国网上鲜花服务公司Interflora推出一个SNS推广:向一些在Twitter上表露低落心情的英国人免费派送鲜花。营销小组在Twitter上锁定合适的用户,并在他们的页面上留言:"嗨,XX,听说您近来工作有点不顺,希望我们送点鲜花,振作一下精神吗?"

荷兰航空公司KLM于2010年11月发起名为"让快乐蔓延"的全球活动,在全球各地的机场,KLM向选定的乘客派送适合本人心意的意外礼物。一旦有快要登机的乘客登录了KLM在签到网站Foursquare上的社区,就会有KLM员工上网查询这位乘客的背景信息,选择合适的礼品,在此人出发前意外地将礼物送给他。

这就是近来流行于全球的一种营销方式,"表达善意的随机行动"(Random Acts of Kindness),或者我们暂且称之为"善意营销":品牌通过线上和线下的方式,发起一种营销攻势,给消费者突发的、随机的惊喜,表达出品牌的一种善意、祝福和理解,从而获得消费者的认同与接受,进而通过SNS社交圈子传播。

对于品牌来说,善意营销可以柔化及拉近与消费者的关系,而且如今SNS人际网络的宽度和流畅度,足以使一个成功的营销计划得以快速传播。但实际操作并非易事。送上小礼物,表达一些关怀,好则好矣,但如何创造一种具有传播价值的善意机会,并且不会被视为炒作呢?

那么善意营销在中国能有舞台吗?国内消费者和品牌的信任缺失,已经升级到了敌意、敌对和仇视。百度和腾讯先后走上全民公敌的位置,某种程度上也在于这两家互联网巨头企业完全不适应在微博时代如何与用户建立真实和互动的关系。因此可以说,善意营销,看上去很美,但中国企业还需要慎用。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Paras. 1 - 2 The author describes the phenomenon of rudeness at all layers of society. 作者描述了社会各个层面广泛存在的粗鲁现象。

Paras. 3 - 7 The author analyzes what may have caused rudeness. 作者分析了可能导致人类变粗鲁的

原因。

Para. 8 The author expresses his uncertainty about whether people in the past were more rude than people today, but new hope suggests so, and concludes that the future of our society becomes better. 作者表达了对于过去时代的人们是否比当代人粗鲁这一问题的不确定性，但通过很多希望表明答案是肯定的，并得出了我们社会的未来会变得越来越好的结论。

2. 写作特点

本文总体的写作特点是先提出问题，再分析问题产生的原因，并提出解决办法，最后说明解决该问题的重要性。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 element /ˈelɪmənt/ *n.*

(1) [C] one part or feature of a whole system, plan, piece of work, etc., esp. one that is basic or important 基本部分；要素

—Honesty is a vital element of her success. 诚实是她取得成功的一个重要因素。

(2) [C] a simple chemical substance such as carbon or oxygen that consists of atoms of only one kind 元素

—Sodium is a chemical element. 钠是一种化学元素。

【搭配】in/out of one's element (不)在某人习惯或喜欢的环境中

【派生】elementary *a.* 初级的

2 lump /lʌmp/ *vt.*

(～ it) (*infml.*) accept a situation or decision you do not like because you cannot change it 无奈地接受；勉强同意

—I'm sorry you're not happy about it but you'll just have to lump it. 你不满意我很抱歉，可你只好将就一点了。

n. [C] a small piece of sth. solid, without a particular shape (不定型的)块

—Strain the custard to remove lumps. 滤去牛奶蛋糊里的面块。

【搭配】have a lump in one's/the throat 喉咙哽住

3 inhabitant /ɪnˈhæbɪtənt/ *n.*

[C] one of the people who live in a particular place 居民

—This is a city of six million inhabitants. 这是一个有 600 万居民的城市。

4 encounter /ɪnˈkaʊntə/ *vt.*

(1) experience sth., esp. problems or opposition 遇到，遭遇(尤指问题或反对)

—We encountered a number of difficulties in the first week. 我们在第一周遇到了很多困难。

(2) meet sb. without planning to 偶然碰到(某人)

—I first encountered him when studying at Cambridge. 我第一次遇到他是在剑桥读书时。

n.

(1) [C] an occasion when you meet or experience sth. 遭遇；经历

—The story describes the extraordinary encounter between a man and a dolphin. 这个故事描述了一个男人与一只海豚之间的奇遇。

(2) [C] an occasion when you meet sb., or do sth. with sb. you do not know 相遇;邂逅

—She didn't remember our encounter last summer. 她不记得我们去年夏天的那次邂逅。

【搭配】encounter with sb./sth. 突然或意外相遇

【同义】meet, oppose, run into

5 automatic /ˌɔːtəˈmætɪk/ *a.*

(1) done without thinking, esp. because you have done the same thing many times before 不自觉的;无意识的;不假思索的

—Breathing is an automatic function of the body. 呼吸是一种无意识的功能。

(2) (of a machine, device, etc.) having controls that work without needing a person to operate them 自动的;自动化的

—Automatic doors are widely used. 自动门应用很广泛。

【派生】automation *n.* 自动化

6 bump /bʌmp/ *vt.*

hit sth., esp. a part of your body, against or on sth. (尤指身体部位)碰上,撞上

—Be careful not to bump your head on the beam when you stand up. 当心站起来时头别撞了横梁。

n. [C] an area of skin that is raised because you have hit it on sth. (撞击造成的)肿块

—He had a few injuries, mostly bumps and bruises. 他受了一些伤,基本上都是肿块和青瘀。

【搭配】bump into sb. 碰见某人

【同义】collide, shake, hit

7 prompt /prɒmpt/ *vt.*

(1) make people say or do sth. as a reaction 引起,激起

—The decision prompted an outcry among prominent US campaigners. 那项决定激起了美国著名活动家的强烈抗议。

(2) make sb. decide to do sth. 促使;激励

—What prompted you to buy that suit? 什么原因让你买下了那套西装?

a. done quickly, immediately, or at the right time 迅速的;立刻的;及时的

—Prompt action must be taken. 必须立即采取行动。

【搭配】prompt in doing sth./to do sth. 迅速做某事

【派生】promptitude *n.* 迅速;敏捷

【同义】arouse, evoke

8 chase /tʃeɪs/ *n.*

[C] the act of following sb. or sth. quickly in order to catch them 追逐;追赶;追捕

—The thieves were caught by police after a short chase. 经过短暂追捕,小偷被警察擒获。

v. quickly follow sb. or sth. in order to catch them 追逐;追赶;追捕

—The kids chased each other around the kitchen table. 孩子们围着厨房的桌子相互追逐嬉戏。

【搭配】chase after 追捕

【同义】run after, pursue

【反义】escape, flee

9 reluctant /rɪˈlʌktənt/ *a.*

slow and unwilling 勉强的;不情愿的

—She gave a reluctant smile. 她勉强笑了笑。

【派生】reluctance *n.* 勉强
【同义】unwilling
【反义】ready, eager

10 **elevator** /ˈeləveɪtə/ *n.*
[C] (*BrE* lift) 电梯
—It's on the fifth floor, so we'd better take the elevator. 那是在五楼,我们最好乘电梯。

11 **switch** /swɪtʃ/ *v.*
change from doing or using one thing to doing or using another 转换;转变;改变
—She worked as a librarian before switching to journalism. 她在转行当记者前是图书馆管理员。
n. [C] a piece of equipment that starts or stops the flow of electricity to a machine, light, etc. when you push it 开关;电闸
—Where's the light switch? 电灯开关在哪儿?
【同义】shift, change

12 **beep** /biːp/ *v.*
if a car horn beeps or if you beep your car horn, it makes a loud noise (使)汽车喇叭鸣响;按响
—Leave your message after the beep. 哔声后请留言。

13 **horn** /hɔːn/ *n.*
[C] the thing in a vehicle that you use to make a loud sound as a signal or warning (车辆的)喇叭
—He sounded the car horn. 他按响了汽车喇叭。

14 **subway** /ˈsʌbˌweɪ/ *n.*
[C] (*BrE* underground) a railway that goes under the ground 地铁
—Boston has the oldest subway system in the US. 波士顿拥有美国最老的地铁运输系统。

15 **herd** /hɜːd/ *n.*
(1) [C] a large group of people of the same type 人群
　—She pushed her way through a herd of lunchtime drinkers. 她从一群午餐时饮酒的人中间挤了过去。
(2) [C] a group of animals of one kind that live and feed together 兽群;牧群
　—A herd of goats was feeding on the nearby hillside. 一群山羊在附近的山坡上进食。
【派生】herdman *n.* 牧人

16 **commute** /kəˈmjuːt/ *vi.*
regularly travel a long distance to get to work 长途上下班;通勤
—Jim commutes to Manhattan every day. 吉姆每天长途乘车到曼哈顿上班。
【派生】commutable *a.* 可用不同方式制造、偿付等的

17 **commuter** /kəˈmjuːtə/ *n.*
[C] sb. who travels a long distance to work every day 每天长途上班的人;通勤者
—Every morning and evening the subway is packed with commuters. 每天早晨和傍晚,地铁里挤满了上下班乘客。

18 **elbow** /ˈelbəʊ/ *vt.*
push sb. with your elbows, esp. in order to move past them 用肘挤开(某人)
—He elbowed his way to the bar and ordered a beer. 他挤到吧台前要了一杯啤酒。
n. [C] the joint where your arm bends 肘

—She jabbed him with her elbow. 她用胳膊肘捅他。
【搭配】at one's elbow 非常近
19 intimidate /ɪn'tɪmɪˌdeɪt/ vt.
frighten or threaten sb. so that they will do what you want 恐吓;威胁
—They were accused of intimidating people into voting for them. 他们被控胁迫选民投他们的票。
【派生】intimidation n. 恐吓;威胁 intimidatory a. 恐吓的;威胁的
20 pregnant /'pregnənt/ a.
having an unborn body growing inside the body 怀孕的;妊娠的
—My wife is pregnant. 我妻子怀孕了。
【派生】pregnancy n. 怀孕
21 nuisance /'njuːsns/ n.
[C, usu. sing.] a person, thing, or situation that annoys you or causes problems 讨厌或麻烦的人/事物/情况
—I don't want to be a nuisance so tell me if you want to be alone. 我不想讨人嫌,你要是想一个人待着就说一声。
【同义】annoyance
22 trend /trend/ n.
[C] a general tendency in the way a situation is changing or developing 趋势;趋向;倾向
—Lately there has been a trend towards hiring younger, cheaper employees. 最近有一种趋势,是雇用较年轻、薪酬较低的雇员。
【搭配】set a/the trend 带领潮流
【派生】trendy a. 时髦的
23 traditional /trə'dɪʃn(ə)l/ a.
relating to or based on very old customs, beliefs, or stories 传统的;基于传统的
—It's traditional in America to eat turkey on Thanksgiving Day. 感恩节时吃火鸡是美国的传统。
【派生】traditionalism n. 传统主义
24 minor /'maɪnə/ a.
small and not very important or serious, esp. when compared with other things 小的;不很重要的;不很严重的
—We have made some minor changes to the program. 我们对那个程序作了一些小改动。
【反义】major
25 ignorant /'ɪgnərənt/ a.
(1) (BrE) (spoken) rude or impolite 粗鲁的;不礼貌的
—That is an ignorant behavior. 那是一种粗鲁的行为。
(2) not knowing facts or information that you ought to know 无知的;愚昧的
—Political historians are often rather ignorant of economics. 政治历史学家往往对经济学一窍不通。
【同义】uneducated, untaught
【反义】cultured, literate
26 counsel /'kaʊnsl/ vt.
(1) listen and give support to sb. with problems 忠告;辅导
—The rapists were brought in to counsel the bereaved. 请了治疗专家来劝慰死者的亲属。

(2) (*fml.*) advise sb. 建议

—She counselled them not to accept this settlement. 她建议他们不要接受这个解决方案。

【同义】guide

【反义】declare, dictate

27 counselor /ˈkaʊns(ə)lə/ *n.*

[C] (*BrE* counsellor) a person whose job is to help and support people with problems 顾问;辅导员

—Tom is a good counselor. 汤姆是个好顾问。

28 disgraceful /dɪsˈgreɪsfl/ *a.*

bad, embarrassing, or unacceptable 可耻的;丢脸的;很差劲的

—It's a disgraceful waste of taxpayers' money. 这样浪费纳税人的钱真是可耻。

【同义】ignominious, shameful

【反义】renowned, honorable

29 insult /ˈɪnsʌlt/ *n.*

[C] a remark or action that is offensive or deliberately rude 辱骂;侮辱;冒犯

—She was shouting insults at her boyfriend. 她正对她的男朋友高声辱骂。

/ɪnˈsʌlt/ *vt.*

offend sb. by saying or doing sth. they think is rude 侮辱;冒犯

—Nobody insults my family and gets away with it! 谁也别想侮辱了我的家人之后就这么算了!

【同义】insolence, offense

【反义】compliment

30 target /ˈtɑːgɪt/ *n.*

(1) [C] an object, person or place that is deliberately chosen to be attacked (攻击的)目标,对象

—They bombed military and civilian targets. 他们轰炸了军事和民用目标。

(2) [C] sth. that you try to achieve (试图达到的)目标,指标

—Set yourself targets that you can reasonably hope to achieve. 给自己制订有望达到的目标。

【同义】aim, goal, object

31 staff /stɑːf/ *n.*

[sing., U] the people who work for a particular company, organization or institution 全体职员;员工;全体工作人员

—The entire staff has done an outstanding job this year. 今年全体员工业绩出色。

32 hostile /ˈhɒstaɪl/ *a.*

angry and deliberately unfriendly towards sb., and ready to argue with them 怀有敌意的;敌对的;不友善的

—Southampton fans gave their former coach a hostile reception. 南安普敦队球迷对前任教练很不友善。

【同义】unfriendly, opposed

【反义】favorable, friendly

33 threaten /ˈθretn/ *vt.*

(1) tell sb. that you might or you will cause them harm, esp. in order to make them do sth. 威胁;恐吓

—The attacker threatened them with a gun. 袭击者用枪威胁他们。

(2) be likely to harm or destroy sth. 威胁到;危及

—Poaching threatens the survival of the rhino. 偷猎危及犀牛的生存。

34 threatening /ˈθretnɪŋ/ *a.*

showing or saying that sb. is likely to do sth. that will harm you 威胁（性）的；恐吓（性）的

—His voice sounded threatening. 他的话音里含着威胁。

35 agency /ˈeɪdʒ(ə)nsi/ *n.*

(1) [C] an organization or department, esp. within a government, that does a specific job 机构；（尤指政府内的）局，部，处

—It's a UN agency responsible for helping refugees. 这是一个负责为难民提供帮助的联合国机构。

(2) [C] a business that provides a particular service for people or organizations 代办处；代理处；经销处；中介处

—That is a local housing agency. 那是一家当地房屋中介。

36 perceive /pəˈsiːv/ *vt.*

(1) (*fml.*) notice, see, or recognize sth. 察觉；注意到；发觉

—I perceived a change in his behaviour. 我注意到他举止有些改变。

(2) understand or think of sth. or sb. in a particular way （以某种方式）看待，理解

—She did not perceive herself as disabled. 她没有把自己看成残疾人。

【同义】note, conceive

【反义】overlook, ignore

37 offensive /əˈfensɪv/ *a.*

very rude or insulting and likely to upset people 无礼的；冒犯的；令人恼火的

—His comments were deeply offensive to a large number of single mothers. 他的评论严重触怒了众多的单身母亲。

【同义】attacking, aggressive

【反义】pleasing, defending

38 verbal /ˈvɜːbl/ *a.*

(1) relating to words or using words 与言辞有关的，用言辞的；文字上的

—The job applicant must have good verbal skills. 应聘这份工作的人必须具有良好的语言表达技能。

(2) spoken rather than written 口头的；非书面的

—What is the verbal instructions? 口头指示是什么？

【同义】oral, spoken

【反义】written, recorded

39 slap /slæp/ *vt.*

hit sb. with the flat part of your hand 用手掌打；掴

—She slapped his face hard. 她狠狠给了他一个耳光。

n. [C] a quick hit with the flat part of your hand 一巴掌；一掴

—He gave me a hearty slap on the back. 他热情地在我背上拍了一下。

【搭配】slap sb. down 严厉制止某人谈话

40 curse /kɜːs/ *vi.*

use offensive or impolite language 咒骂；诅咒

—He cursed himself for his stupidity. 他咒骂自己愚蠢。

n. [C] an offensive or very impolite word or phrase 骂人的话；咒骂

—He muttered a curse at the other driver. 他低声咒骂另一位开车的人。

41 complaint /kəm'pleɪnt/ *n.*

[C, U] a written or spoken statement in which sb. says they are not satisfied with sth. 投诉;意见

—I'd like to make a complaint about the noise. 我要就噪声问题提出投诉。

【同义】protest, objection

42 punch /pʌntʃ/ *vt.*

hit sb. or sth. hard with your fist 用拳猛击

—She punched him on the nose. 她一拳打中了他的鼻子。

n. [C] a quick strong hit made with your fist 重拳猛击;揍

—I managed to land a punch on his chin. 我设法一拳打在他的下巴上。

43 utility /juː'tɪləti/ *n.*

(1) [C, usu. pl.] a service such as gas or electricity provided for people to use 公用事业(如煤气、电力等)

—Does your rent include utilities? 你的房租包括公用事业费吗?

(2) [U] the quality of being useful, or the degree to which sth. is useful 效用;实用

—Carney says the administration is now evaluating the utility of that trip. 卡尼表示,政府目前正在评估那趟行程的效用。

44 executive /ɪg'zekjʊtɪv/ *n.*

[C] a manager in an organization or company who helps make important decisions 主管;经理

—He is a top executive in a computer firm. 他是一家计算机公司的高层主管。

【派生】execution *n.* 执行;完成

45 temper /'tempə/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] a tendency to become angry suddenly or easily 坏脾气;暴躁脾气

—That temper of hers will get her into trouble one of these days. 她那种脾气早晚会让她惹麻烦的。

(2) [sing., U] the way you are feeling at a particular time, esp. when you are feeling angry for a short time 情绪;心情;怒气

—It's no use talking to him when he's in a temper. 他在气头上,跟他谈是没有用的。

【搭配】in a bad temper 发怒;发脾气

46 norm /nɔːm/ *n.*

(1) [C] the usual or normal situation, way of doing sth., etc. 标准;准则;规范

—Short term contracts are now the norm with some big companies. 签订短期合同是目前一些大公司的惯常做法。

(2)(~s) [pl.] generally accepted standards of social behaviour 社会准则

—South Korea's move should be in line with its national laws and international norms. 韩方的做法应该符合国际法和国际惯例。

【派生】normal *a.* 正常的

47 random /'rændəm/ *a.*

happening or chosen without any definite plan, aim, or pattern 随意的;任意的;随机的

—The company has introduced random drug testing of its employees. 公司对雇员进行了随机药物测试。

【搭配】at random 随便;任意

48 compassionate /kəm'pæʃnət/ *a.*

feeling sympathy for people who are suffering 充满怜悯同情的

—I allowed him to go home on compassionate grounds. 我出于同情让他回家了。

【同义】sympathizing, kind

【反义】inhuman, merciless

49 volunteer /ˌvɒlən'tɪə/ *v.*

offer to do sth. without expecting any reward, often sth. that other people do not want to do 自愿(做某事);自告奋勇;自愿效劳

—Helen volunteered to have Thanksgiving at her house this year. 海伦主动提出今年的感恩节在她家过。

n. [C] sb. who does a job willingly without being paid 志愿者;自愿参加者

—Most of the relief work was done by volunteers. 大部分救援工作都由志愿人员进行。

50 optimistic /ˌɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/ *a.*

believing that good things will happen in the future 乐观的;乐观主义的

—Bankers are cautiously optimistic about the country's economic future. 银行家对该国的经济前景持谨慎乐观的态度。

【同义】happy, cheerful

【反义】pessimistic

51 prevail /prɪ'veɪl/ *vi.*

(1) (*fml.*) be the strongest influence or element in a situation 占优势;占上风

—He considered lying, but then common sense prevailed. 他想过要说谎,不过后来还是理智占了上风。

(2) (*fml.*) exist at a particular time or in a particular situation 存在;盛行;流行

—Those beliefs still prevail among certain social groups. 这些信念在某些社会群体中仍很盛行。

【同义】win, succeed

【反义】yield, lose

(二)短语

1 mind one's own business

(*spoken*) used for telling sb. rudely that you are not going to tell them about sth. because it does not affect or involve them 别管闲事

—There I was, minding my own business, when this man started yelling at me. 我正在那里做我自己的事,这时这个男人朝我叫喊起来。

2 out of the way

if sb. or sth. is out of the way, they are somewhere where they are not likely to cause a problem, need attention, be annoying, etc. 不碍事

—Instead of staying out of the way, the fire blew right toward them. 火势非但没有远离,而是向他们袭来。

3 crop up

happen or appear suddenly and in an unexpected way (突然)发生,显现

—In daily life, sometimes problems will crop up and hit you before you are ready. 生活中,有时候问题会突然冒出来,让你措手不及。

4 cut in line

(*AmE*) unfairly go in front of other people who are waiting to do sth. 插队

—I get annoyed when people cut in line. 有人插队时，我就会生气。

5 give chase

(*fml.*) follow sb. quickly in order to catch them 追赶

—After the quarrel, his girlfriend ran out and he gave chase. 吵架后，他的女朋友跑了出去，他连忙去追。

6 play a role in (doing) sth.

play a part in (doing) sth. 在某事中起某种作用

—She says the increase reflects a growing recognition on the part of students and government that languages play a role in an ever smaller world. 她说，这种增加的现象反映了政府和学生方面日益认识到语言在一个不断缩小的世界所发挥的作用。

7 correspond with

be connected or related to sth. 相联系；相关

—These goods do not correspond with the list. 这货物与货单不符。

8 cut both ways

(1) affect both sides of sth., as two parties in an argument, etc. 对双方具有同等或同样的效果

—You wouldn't help me now. But remember, it cuts both ways: I won't help you again, either. 你现在不想帮我，但记住，我也一样，我也不会再帮你了。

(2) have both good and bad effects 有利有弊

—He told me that the strategy of finding ways and means to cut cost is a double-edged sword; it cuts both ways. 他告诉我，设法削减成本的策略是一把双刃剑，正反效果都有可能会有。

9 in a... fashion

in a particular way 以……的方式

—He behaved in a strange fashion after he failed to get a raise. 他自从没有得到加薪后就表现得怪怪的。

10 go beyond sth.

be much better, worse, more serious, etc. than sth. else 超出；超过

—We must go beyond imitation and promote innovation. 我们必须跨越模仿阶段，鼓励创新。

11 all but

everything or everyone except sth. or sb. 除……外全部

—So these charges are headline news in all but his own newspaper. 所以这些指控都登上报刊头条，只有他的报纸例外。

12 get lost

(*spoken*) used for telling sb. rudely to go away 滚开；别来烦我

—Get lost! It's none of your business. 别烦我。不关你的事。

13 live with

accept a difficult situation that is likely to continue for a long time 忍受；容忍

—So either you change your friends or live with the envy of others. 所以，要么你换掉你的朋友，要么在别人的嫉妒下生活。

14 show up

(1) be easy to see or notice 显露；显现出来

—Cultural differences can show up when we invite a foreigner to our home. 我们请外国人到家里来做客的时候,文化差异就会显现出来。

(2)(*infml.*) arrive, esp. at the place where sb. is waiting for you 到达

—The delivery boy shows up. He is a friend from school. 送外卖的来了,他是你学校里的朋友。

15 **pass sth. on to sb.**

give sb. sth. that sb. else has given you 传递(某物)

—Much of the discount is pocketed by retailers instead of being passed on to customers. 折扣的大部分进了零售商的腰包,而顾客并没有得到实惠。

16 **point to**

mention sth. because you think it is important 提到

—The board of directors pointed to falling productivity to justify their decision. 董事会提到生产率下降一事为其决策辩护。

17 **a variety of sth.**

a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way 种种

—A variety of factors have led me to do something. 有相当多的因素致使我去做某事。

三、课文注释

1 **Rays of hope in rising rudeness (Title)**

【Meaning】Rude deeds are becoming increasingly common, but when this phenomenon becomes so widespread that it attracts public attention, there appears hope that this situation will be changed.

【解　析】本句中包含短语 a ray of hope/light,表示"一线希望/光明"。

2 **This kind of talk and attitude is cropping up more often in public experiences—on the high ways, in theater lines, on public transport. (Para. 1)**

【Meaning】This kind of rude expressions and attitude are heard and experienced more often in public places, for example, while you are driving, waiting in theater lines, or using public transportation.

3 **Whether it is people smoking in public, or people cutting in line, the examples are almost endless. (Para. 1)**

【Meaning】There are almost countless examples of people being rude, such as smoking in public, or jumping the queue.

4 **It is generally thought around the world that the inhabitants of large cities are ruder than their fellow citizens from smaller towns or the countryside. (Para. 2)**

【Meaning】It is generally thought around the world that people who live in big cities are not as polite as people who are from smaller towns or the countryside.

【解　析】本句中包含短语 fellow citizens,表示 residents。

5 **Walk down streets of any major capital around the world and you will encounter taxi drivers who believe a "Walk" sign at a walkway is an automatic invitation to bump their cars against pedestrians' knees. (Para. 2)**

【Meaning】If you walk down the streets of any big capital city around the world, you will find that some taxi drivers know that they should wait at a "Walk" sign to let pedestrians cross the street, but they keep driving even if that endangers the pedestrians.

【解　析】本句是一个特殊条件句，前半句相当于一个“if”从句。

6 And hardly a day goes by without a reluctant office worker riding an elevator with someone talking loudly on the cell phone, despite the obvious disturbance to fellow passengers. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】And almost every day there are office workers unwillingly getting into an elevator with someone talking loudly on the cell phone, regardless of the fact that he is obviously disturbing other passengers in the same elevator.

【解　析】本句中的 hardly a day/week/month, etc. goes by without... 是双重否定结构，表示“几乎每一天/每个星期/每个月都发生某种情况”。

7 In some big cities, subway terminals are bulging with herds of commuters, elbowing their way to grab seats, intimidating the old, the young, the disabled and the pregnant. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】In some big cities, subway stations are full of crowds of subway rides, who push other people aside with their elbows to take seats, and their behavior makes old, young, disabled people and pregnant women very nervous.

【解　析】本句中的 subway 是美式英语习惯用语，英式英语中习惯用 underground。

8 What can we detect about such incidents? (Para. 3)

【Meaning】What can we discover from those things?

9 Others blame fast-paced modern lifestyles for contributing to a society that has little time to be polite. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】Other people think it is the fault of fast-paced modern lifestyles, which make people too busy to behave politely.

【解　析】本句中的 contribute 表示“捐献；捐助”，可做及物动词，也可做不及物动词。

10 In the city, if you have a minor conflict, it's very unlikely you will ever encounter that person again. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】In the city, if you have a small conflict with someone, most probably you will never meet that person again.

11 Stress also plays a role in incidents of ignorant behavior. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】Stress is also a cause for rude behavior.

12 Rudeness comes with stress and this is becoming strikingly common. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】Because of stress, people become rude. And this phenomenon is becoming extremely common.

13 Disgraceful insults are shouted and even bottles and trash are thrown at road crews by upset drivers because lanes are restricted. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】Unhappy drivers shout dirty and offensive words and even throw bottles and trash at workers working on the road because lanes are limited to vehicles.

14 Public officials are often the target of people's frustration. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】When people become frustrated, they often let out their anger on public officials.

15 Staff assistants in public institutions tell of rude, hostile, and sometimes threatening words from people who feel government agencies are rude or mistreating them. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Those working at public organizations mention that people say rude, unfriendly, and sometimes intimidating words to them, because these people think government organizations are rude to them or treating them badly.

【解　析】本句中的staff在英式英语中即可做单数也可做复数使用。在美式英语中，其后面的动词一般为单数。

16 Sometimes, such behavior goes beyond verbal abuse. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】Sometimes, this kind of behavior becomes much worse than just using rude language.

17 After being told to "get lost", he was beaten with an umbrella by the woman and punched by her companion. (Para. 7)

【Meaning】The woman told him to go away and then hit him with an umbrella; the person with the woman also hit him hard with a fist.

18 For example, one international organization, the Random Acts of Kindness Foundation, inspires people to practice kindness and to pass it on to others! (Para. 8)

【Meaning】For instance, one international organization called the Random Acts of Kindness Foundation encourages people to do kind things and pass kindness on to other people!

19 The organization points to a variety of indicators showing kinder and more compassionate citizens. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】The organization mentions many different kinds of signs which show citizens are becoming kinder, more understanding, and more sympathetic.

20 Let's hope this optimistic view prevails and brings a better, brighter world for us all. (Para. 8)

【Meaning】Let's hope this positive view becomes popular and brings a better, brighter world for all of us.

四、课文译文

粗鲁现象虽增，希望之光初显

1. 粗鲁是现代生活中常见的现象。"你不喜欢，也得忍着"，或者"管好你自己的事"，或者"闪开"。这种粗鲁的语言和态度在公共场合越来越常见——在公路上、在电影院排队的队伍中、在公共交通工具上。不管是有人在公共场所吸烟，还是有人插队，这样的例子几乎数不胜数。

2. 世界范围内，人们普遍认为大城市的居民比较小城镇和农村的居民更为粗鲁。如果你走在世界上任何一座大都市的街上，你都会遇到那种出租车司机，他们把人行通道上的"行人通行"信号当作他们去撞行人膝盖的自动邀请。最近，一位愤怒的行人用踢出租车的方式回应了这样的粗鲁行为，结果却招致该出租车司机下车追赶他。还有，几乎每天都会发生这样的事：办公室职员不得不和一个用手机大声打电话的人同乘一部电梯，而这个人完全不顾自己已经明显干扰到了电梯里的其他乘客。最近，有个在电梯里打手机的人告诉电梯里反对他大声打电话的乘客说："如果你不喜欢，出去换乘另一部电梯。"在纽约和其他城市里，安安静静地步行已成为过去的事了。这是谁的错？是那些打手机声音太大的人的错，也是那些令人讨厌的按喇叭的司机的错。在一些大城市里，地铁站里挤满了通勤的上班族。大家互相推搡，争抢座位，吓坏了老人、小孩、残疾人和孕妇。经常听到有人在公共汽车或地铁上非常大声地打电话，着实令周围的人厌烦。

3. 从这些事件中我们可以看出什么端倪呢？一些专家说，这种趋势早在几十年前人们抵制传统价值观及传统习俗时就已经开始了。还有人指责快节奏的现代生活方式催生了人们无暇顾及礼貌的社会。在人们身边充满陌生人的大城市里尤其如此。正如一位著名心理学家所说的："在小城镇里，你对一个人粗鲁，明天你更有可能还会遇到这个人。"在城市里，如果你和某人有个小摩擦，很可能你不会再碰到这个人。

4. 压力也是造成漠视行为的一个因素。辛迪·克拉特是一位辅导过劳护士的咨询师。她说，医院里的无礼行为与人们总是在生死攸关的环境下工作所面对的压力相关。“如果医院的上层领导粗鲁无礼或不关心员工，粗鲁就会向下层传播，影响每个人的行为。”

5. 人们因为压力而变得粗鲁，这成为非常普遍的现象。机动车司机经常迫使骑自行车的人让路，大货车威逼着他们前面那些开得太慢的汽车。因车道限行，心情烦躁的司机会脱口骂出难听的话，甚至会向养路工人丢掷瓶子和垃圾。

6. 公共机构的官员常常是人们发泄不满的对象。公共机构的工作人员说，一些人对他们说出粗鲁的、充满敌意的、有时是威胁性的话，因为这些人觉得政府机构对他们粗鲁或者没有善待他们。在公共交往中粗鲁行为是双向的，由于市民感到公务员对他们总是熟视无睹，他们反过来也对公务员咄咄逼人、气势汹汹。

7. 有时候，这种行为不只是言语辱骂。当一名餐厅的员工告知一位顾客两小时之内餐厅无空位时，这位顾客扇她耳光并咒骂她。最近美国一名男子起诉一妇女得到了损害赔偿金。说他在抱怨那个妇女大声喧闹、口吐脏字后遭受到身体伤害。那个妇女对他说“滚开”后，又用雨伞打他，她的同伴也挥拳打他。据大城市里的公共事业工作人员反映：对电力公司有怨气的用户对他们施以暴力的行为越来越多。“有些公寓房里的很多住户不得不住在相对狭小的空间里。我们的维修人员去那里工作时很不容易。”一位公共事业公司的管理人员说道，“空间狭小使住户爱发脾气，愤怒和粗鲁的行为也就随之出现。”

8. 这种情况现在是否有所改善，大家对此意见不一。很多人对于如今无礼行为是否会减少不抱什么希望。事实上，有些人看到城市中正在出现一种新的模式，一位心理学家称之为“不介入模式”。另一些人则感到比较乐观。例如，一个叫“随机善举基金会”的国际组织鼓励人们行善，并把友善传递给其他人！该组织指出，有各种迹象表明，更友善和更富同情心的市民大有人在。越来越多的人自愿花时间从事社区项目；而且，捐给慈善机构的钱物也有所增加。这些友善的行为会给他人带来积极的影响，并有助于减少社会上的压力。我们希望这样的乐观看法可以流行开来，并给我们所有人带来一个更加美好、更加光明的世界。

五、练习答案及详解

Reading skills

找出词义

阅读技巧之一就是在一定语境下找出生词的词义。语境指的是该词周围的其他词和句子。找出语境中的线索能帮助你理解一些难的词汇。以下是可以用到的一些语境线索：

1. 同义词。同义词指的是意思相近的词。为了了解一个句子中生词的词义，可以参照同一个句子中相近词的词义。

2. 反义词。反义词指的是意思相反的词。为了了解一个句子中生词的词义，可以看看句中有没有意思相反的词汇。

3. 定义或者解释。定义或者解释就是来说明这个词的词义的，可以参考。

4. 例子。例子提供更多的信息，帮助我们判断生词的含义。

5. 词根。分析生词的构成能帮助我们了解其意义。一旦了解了多音节词的结构，懂得前缀或者后缀的含义，就对生词的大意有所了解了。

1 Read the following sentences from Text B and figure out the meanings of the underlined words.

1. B 2. C 3. B 4. D

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

2 Choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

1. B 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. D 8. B

Critical thinking

3 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. Apart from the reasons mentioned in the text, I think some people are impolite and rude due to the following reasons:
   - Parents do not teach their children good manners. Moreover, some parents do not have good manners themselves, so their children follow bad examples;
   - Schools do not teach manners nowadays. Schools teach math, science, history and foreign languages, but neglect teaching good manners and decent behavior;
   - Some people are very self-centered and not sensitive to other people's feelings. They say or do something rude without knowing that is hurtful;
   - Some people regard themselves superior to others, and they are too proud of themselves to respect other people.
2. Being polite and kind to other people can improve your relationship with others and make life happier for others as well as for you because it can:
   - make others feel good about themselves because they are treated in a polite way;
   - make you feel better about yourself because you behave nicely;
   - make others like you more because you are a nice person;
   - make others respect you more because your politeness makes you a respectable person;
   - bring people closer to you, for they will see you as someone worthy of their time and attention.
3. The world would become a terrible place. People would feel unhappy. Nobody would trust anyone else; nobody would have a real friend. Without politeness and honesty, society would fall apart and people would live a chaotic and miserable life.
4. Everyone can do their share to promote politeness and understanding between people. For example, we can:
   - smile to the people we meet. Smiles on our faces make others smile too;
   - say nice words to others. Nice words make people happy and nice;
   - be ready to offer help. Help people in need, even strangers;
   - always treat people the way we'd like to be treated. If we're nice to others, they will be nice to us.
5. It depends. For example, if someone speaks loudly on his cell phone on the street, or elbows me aside in a crowd, I would ignore them. But if it's in a public place like the library, I will choose to correct them. I once confronted a person who spoke loudly during a Peking opera performance, a person who cut in line at a ticket office, and a person who didn't clean up her dog's droppings. I spoke out and asked them to correct their misbehaviors.

Language focus

Words in use

4 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. encountered

【译文】大多数新生遇到的一个大问题是远离家乡会想家。

2. switch

【译文】珍妮是学习语言的天才。她可以在法语和英语之间自由转换。

3. complaints

【译文】作为一个客服经理，你需要习惯听取顾客的抱怨。

4. volunteered

【译文】许多人自愿帮助我们为无家可归人士修建避难所。

5. perceive

【译文】在学校的考试里成绩较差的学生更容易认为自己是失败者。

6. prevail

【译文】山村里传统陋习仍存是因为与外界缺乏交流。

7. ignorant

【译文】这些年轻人刚从大学毕业，他们对现代商业社会的现实还一无所知。

8. prompt

【译文】由于政府对危机应对迅速，国家经济没有遭受太大损失。

9. threaten

【译文】父母为孩子取得好的成绩给孩子施加了很大压力。一些父母对于好的成绩承诺给予奖励，如果成绩不好则威胁给予惩罚。

10. randomly

【译文】这项研究随机抽取受试者以求结果更有说服力。

Expressions in use

5 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. cropped up

【译文】很遗憾，另一个系统错误突然出现了，所以报告要到明天才能准备好。

2. cut in line

【译文】对我们来说，插队是不礼貌的，我们在公共场所应该保持秩序。

3. pointed to

【译文】董事会提到生产力下降为其聘用海外专家的决策辩护。

4. play an... role in

【译文】国民收入指标对于制定政府短期和长期政策起重要的作用。

5. go beyond

【译文】我们需要透过误导人的证据来看到这起事故的本质。

6. show up

【译文】令粉丝们失望的是，这位著名女演员并没有在派对上露面。

7. gave chase

【译文】抢劫案发生之后,警察立即追捕嫌疑犯,很快就捉到了抢劫犯。

8. mind your own business

【译文】别管闲事,我们井水不犯河水。

9. live with

【译文】你不得不接受你已经不像以前那样强壮的事实。

10. pass... on to

【译文】当我的孩子们不能再穿这些衣服时,我就把衣服传给我的小侄女。

Sentence structure

6 Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English, using "whether or not" or "whether... or not".

1. whether the couple are of the race or not
2. whether or not to read it more carefully
3. Whether the invention can lead to commercial success or not

7 Rewrite the following sentences by using the structure "hardly a day/week/month, etc. goes by without...".

1. Hardly a day goes by without news reports in the media about terrible accidents or natural disasters.
2. Hardly a week goes by without some advance in technology that would have seemed incredible 50 years ago.
3. Hardly a month went by without Tony taking a business trip abroad and coming back with contracts.

Collocation

8 Complete the following comments on honesty and dishonesty with appropriate collocations from the texts. You are provided with the first letter(s) for each of the collocations.

1. traditional values 传统价值观
2. eliminate cheating 消除欺骗
3. undesirable effect 不良影响
4. ill effects 副作用
5. Widespread dishonesty 普遍的不诚实
6. fakes a term paper 抄袭学期论文
7. purchase receipt 购买收据
8. illegal resources 非法资源
9. mutual trust 互相信任
10. academic environment 学术环境
11. durable bonds 持久的联系
12. ultimate nightmare 最终的噩梦

Unit 8

Friendship across gender and border

Section A

Gender variables in friendship: Contradiction or not?



一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文作者通过对身边男性朋友和女性朋友情感的不同表达方式的描述，说明一些人的交流方式是多么因对方的性别不同而不同。对待女性朋友可以是开放的、真情流露的、直截了当的，而对待男性朋友似乎都无法表达。然后，作者进行探究，说明男性和女性似乎有着截然不同的情感和理性处理方式。男性确实往往在情感表达方面比较克制。

(二)背景知识

《男人来自火星，女人来自金星》

《男人来自火星，女人来自金星》是一本有助于改善夫妻关系、保持美满婚姻，使夫妻结伴走完人生旅途的通俗性的心理自助读物。英文版于1992年在美国首次出版。出版后引起了巨大的社会轰动，在美国各年龄层的男男女女中产生了很大影响。《纽约时报》书评根据其销售量，将其排在畅销书排行榜前列，时间竟长达一百五十八周。

作者以男女来自不同的星球这一新鲜、生动、形象的比喻作为他的全部实践活动的理论支撑点：男人和女人无论是在生理上还是心理上，无论是在语言上还是在情感上，都是大不相同的。这一比喻贯穿着他这本通俗的畅销读物之始终。

作者约翰·格雷，心理学博士，国际知名的人际关系和情感问题专家。他继《男人来自火星，女人来自金星》轰动全球后，陆续又推出了三本畅销世界的图书，分别是《男人约会往北，女人约会往南》《男人进卧室向左，女人进卧室向右》和《火星人的秘密食谱，金星人的健康法则》。现在，约翰·格雷被誉为世界上最著名的两性情感问题专家。他同妻子及三个孩子一道，居住在美国加利福尼亚北部。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Para. 1 The author describes the pictures he had of his female friends and male friends are completely different. 作者总体描述了他对男性朋友和女性朋友的不同情感表达方式。

Paras. 2-4 By giving some examples, the author describes his different communication styles with his male friends and female friends. 作者通过具体事例,分析了他是如何对男性和女性朋友表达情感的。

Paras. 5-6 The author expresses gender differences in his communication styles and the explanation. 作者表达了要探究表达情感不同的原因,并得出结论:男性和女性似乎有着截然不同的情感和理性处理方式。

2. 写作特点

本文总体的写作特点是先提出问题,再通过具体事例解释为什么要提出问题,最后提出质疑并解决问题。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 gender /ˈdʒendə/ *n.*

[C, U] the fact of being male or female 性别

—Discrimination on grounds of race or gender is forbidden. 严禁种族歧视或性别歧视。

2 variable /ˈveəriəbl/ *n.*

[C] sth. that may be different in different situations, so that you cannot be sure what will happen 易变的事;可变因素

—There are too many variables in the experiment to predict the result accurately. 实验中可变因素太多,难以准确预测结果。

a. likely to change often 易变的;多变的

—Expect variable cloudiness and fog tomorrow. 预计明天多云有雾。

3 contradiction /ˌkɒntrəˈdɪkʃn/ *n.*

[C] a difference between two statements, beliefs, or ideas about sth. that means they cannot both be true 矛盾;不一致

—There is a contradiction between the ten sets of figures. 这两组数据相互矛盾。

【派生】contradictory *a.* 互相矛盾的

4 intimate /ˈɪntɪmət/ *a.*

having an extremely close friendship 亲密的;密切的

—She's on intimate terms with people in government. 她与政府官员关系密切。

【近义】chummy, friendly

【反义】distant

5 magnetic /mægˈnetɪk/ *a.*

(1) able to attract and interest people very strongly 有吸引力的;有魅力的

—To be a successful businessman you must be enthusiastic and magnetic. 要做一个成功的实业家,

你必须有热情和吸引力。

(2) capable of attracting iron objects 有磁性的；有磁力的

—Their compass is the Sun, the stars and the Earth's magnetic field. 它们的指南针是太阳、星星及地球的磁场。

【近义】pulling, attractive

6 sensitive /ˈsensətɪv/ *a.*

(1) able to understand other people's feelings and problems 善解人意的；体恤的

—It's made me much more sensitive to the needs of the disabled. 它使我更加能够明白残疾人的需要。

(2) easily upset or offended by events or things that people say 敏感的；容易生气的

—Throughout her career she remained very sensitive to criticism. 她在整个职业生涯中一直对批评很敏感。

【近义】perceptive, susceptible

【反义】dull, hard

7 deliberate /dɪˈlɪb(ə)rət/ *a.*

intended, not done by chance or by accident 故意的；有意的；蓄意的

—The speech was a deliberate attempt to embarrass the government. 这一发言蓄意使政府难堪。

【近义】intended, planned

【反义】fortuitous, hasty, accidental

8 comparison /kəmˈpærɪsn/ *n.*

[C, U] the process of considering how things or people are similar and how they are different 比较

—By comparison with other European countries, car prices in the UK are very high. 和欧洲其他国家相比较，英国的汽车价格非常高。

【搭配】by/in comparison (with sb. /sth.) 相比之下

9 ritual /ˈrɪtʃuəl/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] sth. that you do regularly and always in the same way 例行公事；老规矩；老习惯

—Sunday lunch with the in-laws has become something of a ritual. 星期天，和姻亲们共进午餐已经成了例行的公事。

(2) [C, U] a formal ceremony 正式仪式；典礼

—She objects to the ritual of organized religion. 她反对规范的宗教仪规。

【派生】ritualism *n.* 仪式主义

【近义】pomp, ceremony

10 motion /ˈməʊʃn/ *n.*

(1) [U] the process or action of moving 运动；移动

—The rocking motion of the boat made Sylvia feel sick. 小船晃来晃去，使西尔维娅感到恶心。

(2) [C] a single movement of your hand or head, esp. one made in order to communicate sth. (手或头的)示意动作；手势

—He summoned the waiter with a motion of his hand. 他打了个手势，召唤侍者。

【搭配】go through the motions of doing sth. 敷衍

【派生】motionless *a.* 不动的

11 sequence /ˈsiːkwəns/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] a set of related things that happen or are arranged in a particular order 一连串;连续

—He's had a sequence of business failures. 他生意上遭遇了一连串失败。

(2) [C, U] the order in which a set of things happens or is arranged 顺序;次序;先后

—The questions should be asked in a logical sequence. 这些问题应该按逻辑顺序提出。

【近义】chain, series

12 deficiency /dɪ'fɪʃnsi/ *n.*

(1) [C, U] (*fml.*) a lack of sth. that is necessary 不足;缺乏

—Vitamin deficiency in the diet can cause illness. 饮食中缺乏维生素可能导致疾病。

(2) [C, U] (*fml.*) a weakness or fault in sth. 缺点,毛病

—There are deep deficiencies in this law. 这条法律存在严重的缺陷。

【搭配】deficiency in/of sth. 缺少;缺乏

13 narrative /'nærətɪv/ *n.*

[C] (*fml.*) a description of events in a story, esp. in a novel 叙述;记叙

—At several points in the narrative the two stories cross. 叙述中有几处地方两个故事互相交织。

14 retreat /rɪ'triːt/ *vi.*

(1) move away from sb. or sth. 后退;离开;退避

—He saw her and retreated, too shy to speak to her. 他看到她就躲开了,不好意思跟她讲话。

(2) move away from the enemy after being defeated in battle 撤退

—The rebels retreated to the mountains. 叛乱分子撤退到山里。

15 steer /stɪə/ *v.*

control the direction in which a vehicle moves 掌舵;驾驶

—He was steering with only one hand. 他只用一只手驾驶。

vt. guide sb.'s behavior or the way a situation develops 引导;指导

—Teachers try to steer pupils away from drugs. 教师试图引导学生远离毒品。

【近义】manage, guide

16 steering /'stɪərɪŋ/ *n.*

[U] the parts of a car, boat, etc. that allow you to control its direction (汽车、船等的)转向装置,操纵装置

—The two-seat vehicle does not need a gas pedal or steering wheel. 这款两座汽车不需要油门或方向盘。

【派生】steering-wheel *n.* 方向盘

17 intact /ɪn'tækt/ *a.*

(*not before noun*) not broken, damaged, or spoiled 完好无损的;未受损伤的

—Only the medieval tower had remained intact. 只有那座中世纪塔楼保存完好。

18 mission /'mɪʃn/ *n.*

(1) [C] an important job that sb. has been given to do, esp. when they are sent to another place 重要任务;使命

—Her mission was to improve staff morale. 她的任务是鼓舞员工的士气。

(2) [C] sth. that you feel you must do because it is your duty 职责;天职;使命

—Momich's mission was to help young people in his local community. 莫米奇的职责就是帮助他这个社区里的年轻人。

【近义】task, job

19 evident /ˈevɪd(ə)nt/ *a.*
easy to see, notice, or understand 明显的;明白的
—It was evident that she was unhappy. 她显然很不开心。
【派生】evidently *adv.* 明显地;显然
【近义】apparent, clear

20 utter /ˈʌtə/ *vt.*
(*fml.*) say sth. 讲;说出
—She did not utter a word during lunch. 进午餐时,她一言未发。

21 inevitable /ɪnˈevɪtəbl/ *a.*
certain to happen and impossible to avoid 必然发生的;难以避免的
—A further escalation of the crisis now seems inevitable. 危机的进一步升级现在看来已不可避免。
【近义】definite
【反义】uncertain, probable

22 inevitably /ɪnˈevɪtəbli/ *ad.*
used for saying that sth. is certain to happen and cannot be avoided 必然发生地;难以避免地
—The decision will inevitably lead to political tensions. 该决定必然导致政治局势的紧张。

23 microphone /ˈmaɪkrəˌfəʊn/ *n.*
[C] a piece of equipment that you speak into to record your voice or make it louder when you are speaking or performing in public 麦克风;话筒;传声器;扩音器
—She spoke confidently into the microphone. 她自信地对着麦克风说话。

24 spill /spɪl/ *vi.*
(~ out of/from) if people or things spill out of a place, they move out in large groups (人群)涌出
—Crowds from the theatre were spilling onto the street. 人群从戏院里涌到街上。
vt. accidentally pour a liquid out of its container (意外地)使溢出,使泼洒,使溅出
—Water had spilled out of the bucket onto the floor. 桶里的水洒出来了,洒了一地。

25 elaborate /ɪˈlæb(ə)ˌrət/ *a.*
(1) carefully planned and organized in great detail 精心制作的
  —She had prepared a very elaborate meal. 她做了一顿精美的饭菜。
(2) having a lot of small parts or details put together in a complicated way 详尽的;复杂的
  —He made an elaborate hairstyle. 他做了一个复杂的发型。
/ɪˈlæbəˌreɪt/ *vi.*
give more details or information about sth. 详尽说明;阐述
—He said he had new evidence, but refused to elaborate any further. 他声称有新证据,但拒绝进一步详细说明。
【近义】detail, decorated
【反义】simple

26 drama /ˈdrɑːmə/ *n.*
(1) [C, U] sth. unusual or exciting that happens 戏剧性事件
  —Maggie's life is always full of drama. 玛吉的生活总是充满戏剧性事件。
(2) [C] a play for the theatre, television, or radio 戏剧;电视剧;广播剧
  —He plays a Russian spy in the comedy drama "Sleepers". 他在喜剧片《沉睡者》中扮演一名俄罗斯

间谍。

【搭配】make a drama out of sth. 小题大做;夸大其词

27 rigid /ˈrɪdʒɪd/

(1) unable to move because of a strong emotion such as fear or anger (因强烈的感情而)僵硬的,僵直的
—She sat upright, her body rigid with fear. 她直挺挺地坐着,吓得浑身发僵。

(2) (of methods, systems, etc.) very strict and difficult to change (方法、体制等)严格死板的,僵化的
—The curriculum was too narrow and too rigid. 课程设置过于狭窄和死板。

(3) very unwilling to change your ideas or behavior 顽固的;不通融的
—She maintained rigid control over her emotional and sexual life. 她一直对自己的情感生活和性生活很是克制。

【近义】strict, unyielding

【反义】supple, flexible

28 farewell /ˌfeəˈwel/ *n.*

[C, U] (*old-fashioned*) the action of saying goodbye 告别

—Mourners gathered to bid farewell to the victims of the plane tragedy. 哀悼者赶来向空难受害者告别。

29 abrupt /əˈbrʌpt/ *a.*

sudden and unexpected 突然的;出其不意的

—The bus came to an abrupt halt. 公共汽车突然停了下来。

30 abruptly /əˈbrʌptli/ *ad.*

突然地;出其不意地

—But just 48 hours later, it seemed the Saudis had abruptly shifted gears. 但是48小时以后,沙特突然做出了改变。

【近义】sudden, unexpected

【反义】foreseen

31 panic /ˈpænɪk/ *n.*

[C, U] a sudden strong feeling of fear or nervousness that makes you unable to think clearly or behave sensibly 惶恐;惊恐;惊慌

—The whole nation is in a state of panic following the attacks. 袭击过后整个国家一片恐慌。

v. (panicked, panicking) suddenly feel so frightened that you cannot think clearly or behave sensibly, or to make sb. do this (使)恐慌;(使)惊慌失措

—He started to panic when he saw the gun. 他看见枪就慌了起来。

【近义】fear, terror

【反义】tranquillity, calmness

32 splash /splæʃ/ *vi.*

(*also* ~ about/around) make water fly up in the air with a loud noise by hitting it or by moving around in it 哗啦哗啦地使水飞溅

—The children were splashing about in the pool. 孩子们在水池里弄得水花四溅。

33 scare /skeə/ *vt.*

make sb. feel frightened or worried 吓唬;使惊恐;使害怕

—Loud noises can scare animals or birds. 很大的噪声会惊吓到鸟兽。

34 scared /skeəd/ *a.*

frightened or worried 惊恐的;害怕的;担忧的

—She is scared of going out alone. 她不敢一个人外出。

【近义】apprehensive, afraid

【反义】bold, assured

35 spontaneous /spɒnˈteɪniəs/ *a.*

happening in a natural way without being planned or thought about 自然发生的;一时冲动的;自发的

—That is a spontaneous offer of help. 那是一个主动提供的帮助。

【派生】spontaneousness *n.* 自发性;(举止等的)自然

【近义】impulsive, voluntary

【反义】planned, forced

36 spontaneously /spɒnˈteɪniəsli/ *ad.*

自然发生地;一时冲动地;自发地

—In contrast with previous anti-globalisation protests, many of the latest ones seem to have started spontaneously. 和以前的反对全球化的抗议活动相比,近来的很多活动都是自发的。

37 transparent /trænsˈpærənt/ *a.*

(1) honest and open 直率的;坦诚的

—He's so transparent. 他是那样坦率。

(2) (of glass, plastic, etc.) allowing you to see through it 透明的;清澈的

—The insect's wings are almost transparent. 这昆虫的翅膀几乎是透明的。

【派生】transparency *n.* 透明;明显

38 relief /rɪˈliːf/ *n.*

(1) [sing., U] a feeling of comfort when sth. frightening, worrying, or painful has ended or has not happened 宽慰;宽心;轻松

—I felt a huge surge of relief and happiness. 我如释重负,感到一阵欣慰。

(2) [U] the reduction of pain or the effects of an illness (病痛的)减轻,缓解

—Marijuana can provide pain relief for some cancer patients. 大麻可以使一些癌症患者减轻疼痛。

【近义】help, aid, comfort

39 process /ˈprəʊses/ *n.*

[C] a series of actions that are done in order to achieve a particular result 过程;进程

—Repetition can help the learning process. 重复对学习过程有帮助。

vt.

(1) make food, materials, goods ready to be used or sold, for example by preserving or improving them in some way 加工(食品或其他物质)

—Goats' cheese may be processed in many ways. 可以采用很多方法加工山羊奶干酪。

(2) deal with a document officially so that sth. can happen 处理,办理(文件)

—All university applications are processed through this system. 所有大学入学申请都是通过这个系统进行审核的。

【搭配】in the process 在进行中

【近义】method, course

40 nurture /ˈnɜːtʃə/ *n.*

[U] (*fml.*) the education and care that you are given as a child, and the way it affects your later

development and attitudes (儿时所受的)教育;教养;培育

—Like the old song says, there's no place like home, not because of the real estate, but because of the sense of shelter and nurture that it provides. 就像古老的歌中所唱,再也没有地方会像家一样。不是因为它实际的财产价值,而是因为它给予的养育之情和保护之情。

vt.

(1) (*fml.*) help a plan, idea, feeling, etc. to develop 发展(计划、想法等);培养(感情等)

—European union is an ideal that has been nurtured since the post-war years. 建立欧盟是战后多年来一直争取实现的理想。

(2) feed and take care of a child or a plant while it is growing 养育;培育

—These delicate plants need careful nurturing. 这些幼嫩的植物需要精心培育。

【近义】foster

41 genetic /dʒə'netɪk/ *a.*

relating to genes and the study of them 基因的;遗传学的

—It doesn't have same genetic history and genetic code that we have. 它不会有我们有的相同的遗传历史和遗传代码。

【派生】geneticist *n.* 遗传学家 genetics *n.* 遗传学

42 tendency /'tendənsi/ *n.*

[C] a strong chance that sth. will happen in a particular way 倾向;较大的可能性

—The drug is effective but has a tendency to cause headaches. 这种药很有效,但可能会引起头疼。

43 masculine /'mæskjʊlɪn/ *a.*

having qualities considered to be typical of men or of what men do 属于男性的;男子气概的

—She has a very masculine voice. 她的嗓音非常男性化。

44 feminine /'femənɪn/ *a.*

having qualities that are traditionally considered to be typical of women, foe example being gentle and delicate 女性的;优雅的;娇柔的

—Dianne loved pretty feminine things. 黛安娜喜爱漂亮的女性化的东西。

【近义】womanly, girlish

45 tend /tend/ *vi.*

(~ to do sth.) if sth. tends to happen, it happens often and is likely to happen again 易于做某事;往往会做某事

—People tend to need less sleep as they get older. 人年纪大了,需要的睡眠时间往往会减少。

46 restrain /rɪ'streɪn/ *vt.*

(1) control your own emotions or behavior 克制,控制,忍住(情绪、行为)

—Renwick restrained a feeling of annoyance. 伦威克忍住了不悦的情绪。

(2) stop sb. from doing sth., often by using physical force 阻止;制止;抑制

—He had to be restrained from using violence. 不得不制止他使用暴力。

【近义】limit, curb

【反义】incite

47 restrained /rɪ'streɪnd/ *a.*

controlled and not emotional 克制的;自制的;拘谨的

—His face firmed and he spoke with restrained anger. 他把脸一沉,按捺着火气说话。

(二)短语

1 in... terms

used to show what aspect of a subject you are talking about or how you are thinking about it 谈及；就……而言；在……方面

—But it's still as comprehensive as ever, if not more in terms of software development. 但是在软件开发方面，它仍然与以前一样全面——如果不是更全面的话。

2 in comparison

used for talking about the ways in which two things are different 相比之下；比较起来

—Your conclusion is wrong in comparison with their conclusion. 你们的结论与他们的相比是错误的。

3 make up for

do sth. that corrects a bad situation 弥补；补偿

—It's a universal truth that diligence can make up for one's intelligence. 勤能补拙是普遍真理。

4 at the time

at a particular moment or period in the past when sth. happened, esp. when the situation is very different now 当时

—The flight was carrying more than 100 people at the time. 事发时该航班载有 100 余人。

5 on a mission

performing a service or carry on an activity 执行任务

—But now was not the time to proudly reminisce—he was here on a mission of his own. 但是现在还不是进入骄傲追忆模式的时候——他还要完成自己的任务。

6 pull away

start to drive away from a place where you had stopped 开始驶离；开走

—A typical scene of seeing people off is like this: people are waving each other goodbye with tears in their eyes while the train slowly pulls away. 送别的一个典型场景是：随着火车缓缓开动，人们眼中含着热泪相互挥手告别。

7 in a new/bad/different, etc. light

if sb. or sth. is seen or shown in a particular light, people can see that particular part of their character 从新的/不利的/不同的等角度看

—To be creative, we should learn to see things in a different light. 要想具有创造力，我们应当学会从不同的角度看待事物。

8 look sb. in the eye

look directly at sb. when you are speaking to them 正视某人

—I won't be able to look him in the eye if I lie. 我要是撒谎，我就不敢正视他。

9 to sb.'s relief

with a feeling of comfort when sth. frightening, worrying, or painful has ended or has not happened 使某人感到欣慰的是

—Much to my relief the car was not damaged. 令我非常庆幸的是车并没有损坏。

10 be born with sth.

have a particular disease, type of character, etc. since birth 生来就有某种疾病/性格等

—Successful people are those who manage to make the most of the qualities they are born with. 成功人士能够将自己与生俱有的品质发挥到极致。

三、课文注释

1 Gender variables in friendship: Contradiction or not? (Title)

【Meaning】There are differences in the way people treat their male friends and female friends: Do people act inconsistently or not?

【解　析】本句中作者的言外之意:The author finds that his friendship is gender-based when dealing with his male friends and female friends. That is, he treats his male friends and female friends in different ways.

2 When I think of my good friends, I see them in cinematic terms. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】When I think about my good friends in the past, I remember them like I am seeing a movie.

3 The "movie" memories I have of female friends are open and intimate. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】My memories of my female friends are like movies that show the friendship as being very honest and close.

【解　析】本句中的词语 movie 表达很形象。

4 We are talking, interested in each other in a magnetic sort of way. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】We are talking with each other, and we show interest in each other with a feeling of strong attraction.

5 In comparison, memories of male friends are in an entirely different film altogether. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】Compared with my memories of female friends, my memories of male friends are completely different.

【解　析】本句中的 in comparison (with/to) = in contrast (with/to),但前者更侧重于某些共同点的比较,比如在大小、程度或强度等方面的不同。

6 My mind retreats back to my earliest childhood friend, Donald. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】My mind goes back to the days I spent with my first childhood friend, Donald.

【解　析】本句中的 retreat back to = go back to,表示"追忆"。

7 Even now, I remember our daily ritual as we flew along, across Europe, across the Atlantic, on a mission of mercy. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】Even now, I remember our everyday routine of pretending to fly, all the way across Europe, and across the Atlantic, in order to help those who were in difficulty or danger.

【解　析】本句中的 mission of mercy 可以说成 mercy mission。

8 Naturally, not one word of our evident feelings for one another was ever uttered; it was all done in actions. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】Not surprisingly, although we had obviously deep feelings for each other, we never expressed how we felt about each other. Rather, we expressed our feelings through doing things together.

9 Each day, as we were flying over the Atlantic, there inevitably came that wonderful moment... (Para. 3)

【Meaning】Every day, when we pretended we were flying over the Atlantic, the imaginary wonderful experience was certain to happen.

【解　析】本句中的 that wonderful moment 指的是 an engine failure, the shark stacks, and the heroic deeds of their saving each other's life。

10 These days, Jessica is one of my best friends. A recent occurrence made me reexamine and interpret my behavior in a new light. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】Starting from this paragraph, the author goes on to tell about his friendship with a female friend—Jessica. Something that happened recently made the author examine and explain his own behavior in a new way so that he could discover more about himself that had never occurred to him before.

11 We were far from shore when we abruptly turned back. We both thought we detected a shark! (Para. 4)

【Meaning】When we suddenly looked back we found we were far off the shore. Both of us thought that we saw a shark!

12 Water is not only a good conductor of electricity but of panic as well. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】Just as electric currents travel easily in water, the feeling of fear spreads quickly as well from one person to another in water.

【解　　析】本句中作者的意思是 He and Jessica got scared when they thought they had seen a shark, and they became even more scared as their fear affected each other.

13 In my panic, I suddenly realized how much I loved my friend Jessica, and what an irreplaceable friend she was. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】In great fear, I suddenly realized that I loved my friends Jessica very much, and that she was such a special friend that no one could replace her.

14 It felt great back on the beach, a little scared and laughing with the excitement of being alive. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】When we got back on the beach, we felt great. We still felt a little frightened over what had happened. At the same time, we laughed with excitement because we were not killed in the sea.

15 With women, I could be open, emotionally honest, and transparent. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】With women, I could express my feelings openly, honestly, and straightforwardly; I would not hide my feelings.

16 ... not once in my life had I been able to look a male friend in the eye and say the same thing. (Para. 5)

【解　　析】This is an inverted sentence. The normal structure should be "I had not been able to look a male friend in the eye and say the same thing once in my life."

17 Much to my relief, research shows that I am, indeed, a "normal guy". (Para. 6)

【Meaning】I feel great comfort because research shows that I'm actually a man who's behaving normally.

18 Part of it is "nature" and part is "nurture". (Para. 6)

【Meaning】The reason lies partly in biological differences between men and women and partly in the different ways in which they are brought up.

【解　　析】本句中注意两个词形相近的词语的辨析:前者是"自然",后者是"教育,培育"。

19 We are born with very different genetic tendencies which society encourages as either "masculine" or "feminine". (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Ever since we were born, we are likely to behave in very different ways due to different genes, and society encourages us to behave in different ways: Males are encouraged to behave in ways typical of men while females are encouraged to behave in ways typical of women.

【解　　析】本句中 tendency 表示"可以用来指人有某种倾向性",近义词 trend 则表示"指事物的发展方

向、倾向或趋势”。

20 Men do tend to be more restrained with emotional expressions. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】Men are indeed more likely to express their feelings in a more controlled way.

四、课文译文

友情中的性别差异:矛盾还是不矛盾?

1. 想到我的好朋友们,我就会用看电影的眼光看待他们。对男性和女性的拍摄手法是完全不同的。我对女性朋友的“电影式”记忆是开放的、亲密无间的。我们交谈着,像磁铁般互相吸引着。她们直视我的眼睛,她们善解人意,她们用心倾听。相比较而言,我对男性朋友的记忆是完全不同的另一部影片。那是一部动作片或者冒险片!对话不多。习惯性的行动,或者说一系列的动作,弥补了对话及坦诚倾诉方面的不足。

2. 我回想起我儿时最早的朋友唐纳德。那时候我还住在欧洲,我家房子附近有一辆战后遗弃的德国旧卡车。没有轮子,没有挡风玻璃,没有车门。但是方向盘还完好无损。我和唐纳德一直开着这辆卡车,也就是我们的“飞机”,“飞往”美国。即使到现在,我还记得我们每天飞行的那个套路。我们飞过欧洲,飞越大西洋,去执行救援任务。那时候的我们单纯,形影不离,有着最好的朋友之间才有的那种高度安全感。自然,对于我们彼此间显而易见的感情,我们从未吐露过一个字,一切尽付诸行动。

3. 每天,当我们飞翔在大西洋上空时,总是不可避免地会出现那精彩的时刻:“发动机故障!”我总会对着麦克风大叫,“我们必须跳出去。”“啊—啊—啊—啊—啊—!”唐纳德发出像发动机出现故障时的声音。他看了我一眼,说:“我不会游泳啊!”“别怕!我会把你拉上岸的。”我总是勇敢地回答。于是,说完这些后,我们两人都从卡车里扑到满是尘土的街道上。我在尘土中游泳。唐纳德淹没在尘土中,一边咳嗽,一边大叫:“有鲨鱼!”但我总是会把他救上来。第二天,我们交换角色,那精心策划的一幕又重复上演。“我不会游泳啊!”我会喊道,而唐纳德就会来救我。我俩数百次地把对方从必死的境地中救出,直到最终有一天我家真的要去美国了。我和唐纳德在火车站呆呆地站着,准备道别。我们不知道该说些什么,这次我们谁也救不了谁。于是,当火车驶离时,我俩只是默默地流泪。

4. 现在,杰西卡是我最好的朋友之一。最近发生的一件事让我从新的角度重新审视和解释我的行为。当时,我们正在大西洋的一个海滩游泳。就是我曾经和唐纳德坐在德国卡车里“飞越”过的那个大西洋。猛然回头,我们发现我们已经离岸很远了。我俩都认为发现了一条鲨鱼!海水不仅导电性很强,传递恐慌也很快。我们开始发疯似的噼里啪啦地游向海岸。惊恐之余,我突然意识到我有多爱我的朋友杰西卡,而且她是一位多么难以取代的朋友啊。虽然我游得比较快,但是我还是落在后面保护她。最后,所谓的“鲨鱼”证明并不存在。但我对我朋友的深情厚谊却是真真切切的。回到海滩上的感觉真是好极了,我们有点惊魂未定,同时又因逃命成功而激动地大笑。我们互相注视着对方的眼睛,杰西卡脱口而出:“我爱你!”“我也爱你!”我答道。

5. 说这些时,我意识到我的交流方式是多么因对方的性别不同而不同。和女性朋友在一起,我可以是开放的、真情流露的、直截了当的。但和男性朋友在一起时,不管我们之间的友情有多深,我似乎都无法表达对对方的关爱之情。对我的母亲、姐妹和女朋友,我可以轻松地说出“我爱你”;然而,我有生以来从未能做到看着一位男性朋友的眼睛并说出同样的话。这完全不可能!这样的情况只是发生在我一个人身上,还是说世界上所有的男人都面对着类似的困扰呢?是我情感不发达还是因为我只是个“男人”?我决心找出真相!

6. 让我颇感欣慰的是,研究表明我实际上是一个“正常的男人”。男性和女性似乎有着截然不同的情感和理性处理方式。部分是“先天因素”,部分源自“后天养成”。我们生来就有极其不同的基因倾向,

这种倾向被社会强化为“男子气”或“女性化”。约翰·格雷的书《男人来自火星，女人来自金星》使这些行为和交流风格上的差异变得众所周知。这本书和其他文章使我认识到我那样的做法是正常的。男性确实往往在情感表达方面比较克制。我认识到，我其实爱我所有的朋友——只是表达的方式男女有别而已。这真让我松了一口气！

五、练习答案及详解

Pre-reading activities

1 Do the following questionnaire on friendship.

(Omitted.)

2 Work in pairs and compare your answers to see how differently you treat male and female friends.

I prefer to have friends who can share my joy and sadness. Generally speaking, female friends are much closer and more emotionally attached while male friends enjoy doing activities together.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

1 Answer the following questions.

1. His female friends look straight into his eyes, sensitive to his feelings, and listen to him with deliberate attention.
2. Because he and his male friends don't talk much; instead, they show their friendship by what they do.
3. They expressed their feelings in actions rather than in words.
4. He realized how much he loved Jessica and what an irreplaceable friend she was.
5. With women, he could be open, emotionally honest, and transparent while with men, he couldn't express his caring feelings no matter how deep the friendship was.
6. In terms of nature, men and women are born with very different genetic tendencies. In terms of nature, these genetic tendencies are further encouraged by society as either "masculine" or "feminine".
7. Men tend to be more restrained with emotional expressions than women.
8. Because he was assured that he was a "normal guy" and it was fine for him to treat his female friends and male friends in different ways.

Critical thinking

2 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. I usually don't pick a friend. They come to me. In the beginning, they may just be my schoolmates or colleagues. However, once we discover that we share some values or beliefs, we become friends. I value merits such as honesty, truthfulness, generosity, humor, faithfulness, and most important of all, willingness to help others. And I expect my friends to have some of these virtues, if not all.
2. • It is hard for people of different generations to become true friends. While they may share some hobbies or interests, they often don't have much for conversation due to different backgrounds and

life experiences. Another problem is that they don't have the same circle of friends or peers. Most important of all, they may not share the same values and their life outlooks may be different. Therefore, true friends are rare between generations with a big age gap.

- Yes, there can be true friends as long as the older generation and the younger generation try their best to understand each other. For example, I am in my 20s, but I have made some good friends with people in their 50s or 60s. These older friends try their best to put themselves in the shoes of the younger people, and they are more tolerant and considerate. For me, I respect them as they have much more experience and advice to offer. I'm also happy to provide my senior friends with novel ideas. They appreciate that. That's how our friendship strengthens.

3. Men and women differ a lot in their behavior and communication styles. While their physical and mental differences play a basic role, there are other factors which can cause such differences. The following are some examples:
   - They have different expectations from society;
   - They have different social images and roles;
   - They share different values of life; and
   - They have different emotional and rational processes.
4. Men and women have different communication styles, and each style is advantageous in its own way. Women like to speak out how they feel. Men tend to say less but do more for their friends.
5. Conflicts may occur even between good friends and we need to handle them strategically. First, I would think about the cause of the problem and see if I have made any mistake on my part. Second, I would make a friendly gesture to my friend. Third, if the cold wat lasts, I would make a friendly move in person.

Language focus

Words in use

3 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. sequence
   【译文】这种舞蹈基本上是一系列舞步的重复。
2. relief
   【译文】当这个人听到一切就绪的消息后长舒一口气,如释重负。
3. retreated
   【译文】这支军队意识到无法获胜后撤退到附近的山上。
4. restrain
   【译文】当听说他的十来岁的儿子又逃课了,他再也克制不住,大发雷霆。
5. inevitably
   【译文】已经两个月没下雨了,这必然会导致稻米产量下降。
6. tendency
   【译文】我认为给予孩子过多的衣服和玩具的趋势在美国家庭中越来越普遍。
7. deliberate
   【译文】这起车祸不是事故,而是针对司机的蓄意谋杀。

8. process

【译文】当我们的员工被鼓励参与决策过程,他们会更愿意执行决策。

9. evident

【译文】游戏中的暴力对于孩子的行为的影响会立即显现或者在几年之后显现出来。

10. rigid

【译文】当这个女人注意到刹车失灵,她不可避免地撞到墙上,她整个人由于恐惧而变得僵硬。

Word building

4 Add -*ly* or -*or* to or remove them from the following words to form new words.

Words learned	**New words formed**
-*ly*	
present	presently
cost	costly
dead	deadly
approximately	approximate
name	namely
scarcely	scarce
barely	bare
-*or*	
editor	edit
generate	generator
survivor	survive

5 Fill in the blanks with the newly-formed words in Activity 4. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. approximate

【译文】我不知道确切数字,但是这种型号的计算机大致成本在800到1000英镑之间。

2. deadly

【译文】石油运输对野生动物是非常危险的。船舶运输石油时可能导致的漏油会对海洋生物产生致命的影响。

3. presently

【译文】请稍等,经理正在与顾客讨论这个问题。

4. costly

【译文】在美国,大学教育很昂贵,很多学生不得不借钱来支付学费。

5. generator

【译文】船上的发电机坏了,没有电,水泵只能手动操作。

6. bare

【译文】会议上只有勉强多数,即百分之五十二的票数支持修建穿过森林的高速公路,但是有百分之四十的人仍强烈反对这个主意。

7. survive

【译文】由于地球上人口数量不断增加,人类依赖陆地资源生存将会更加困难。

8. editing

【译文】在电脑屏幕上查看和编辑文件比在纸上更快捷。

9. namely

【译文】英国国旗上有三种颜色,分别是红、白和蓝。

10. scarce

【译文】这个国家木材很匮乏,所以房子多是由干泥浆建造的,覆盖以树干搭建的屋顶。

Banked cloze

6 Fill in the blanks by selecting suitable words from the word bank. You may not use any of the words more than once.

1. O

【解析】名词,与 comfort 意思相近。

2. M

【解析】形容词,与 nervous 意思相近。

3. N

【解析】形容词,固定词组 be determined to do sth.,意为"决定做某事"。

4. K

【解析】动词,that 引导的修饰 something 的定语从句中缺少谓语动词。

5. J

【解析】动词,utter 意为"表达"。

6. G

【解析】名词,固定词组 to one's relief,意为"令人欣慰的是"。

7. A

【解析】动词,focus on,固定搭配,意为"注视"。

8. D

【解析】动词,stretch... out,意为"伸出"。

9. E

【解析】动词被动语态。

10. B

【解析】动词,与 and 之前的句子在句式和意义上是相近的,都是 friendship 的定语从句。

Expressions in use

7 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. in... terms

【译文】调查显示,一般情况下,同样的问题在乡村出现得比在城市快。

2. pulled away

【译文】我们冲向汽车站，恰好在公交车开车之前上了车。

3. to... relief

【译文】令我多少感到欣慰的是，警察最终决定把我弟弟从嫌疑人名单中排除掉。

4. be born with

【译文】一个孩子可能与生俱来一些严重的障碍或者需要引起长期关注的成长问题。

5. in a new light

【译文】萨缪尔曾被视为问题少年。然而当他救了小女孩的命之后，人们开始从另一个角度重新认识他。

6. on a mission

【译文】为了完成停止战争的任务，他来到伦敦，拜见首相以寻求帮助。

7. In comparison

【译文】与其他应聘者相比，我们面试的最后一个女孩更专业、更聪明。

8. make up for

【译文】我忘记了妈妈的生日，所以第二天我给她买了一束花来补偿一下。

9. spilled out

【译文】电影结束之后观众就涌到大街上。

10. At the time

【译文】当时公司正在为生存而挣扎，由于要缩减成本而被迫裁掉工程师。

Structure analysis and writing

Structure analysis

对比法，就是把对立的事物，通过一定的方式组合在一起进行对照比较，使形象更加鲜明，性质更加突出，在两个或者更多的事物中关注其区别而不是共同点。例如本单元第一篇文章重点描写作者分别与男性朋友和女性朋友的交流方式的区别，以及男人与女人在情感与理性思维过程中的不同之处。这就是运用对比的写法。

8 Read Paragraph 5 of Text A and analyze the pattern of contrast.

Topic sentence: As I spoke... styles were.

Details of contrast: With women.../With male friends...

I could easily.../... yet not once...

Contrast result: Was this just... to find out!

Structured writing

9 Write a paragraph on one of the following topics. One topic has an outline that you can follow.

College life and high school life differ in many ways. High school offers fundamental courses such as math, physics and English, whereas college offers more specialized courses, most of which are related to students' majors. In high school, all classes are arranged by the school, so students just follow a fixed schedule; in contrast, college students can choose the courses in which they are interested and arrange their own schedule, so their schedule is more flexible. Moreover, high school students acquire knowledge and skills mainly through teacher's instructions. In contrast, besides attending lectures, college students are expected to learn on their own, and develop critical thinking.

Translation

10 Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.

作为世界上唯一一个真正具有普遍性的世界组织，联合国已经成为处理超越国界，而且任何一个国家都无法独立解决的问题的首要论坛。联合国最初的宗旨是维护和平、保护人权、建立国际公平正义的框架以及促进经济和社会进步。近年来，联合国又面临着新的挑战，诸如气候变化、国际恐怖主义和艾滋病等。现在，解决争端及维护和平仍然是联合国最主要的任务。除此之外，联合国及其专门机构还致力于各种旨在改进世界人民生活的活动，从赈灾到教育和妇女进步，再到原子能的和平使用。联合国及其专门机构推动世界成为一个更加友好、更加宜居的地方，为全世界人民带来了福祉。

11 Translate the following paragraph into English.

Since the founding of the People's Republic of China, China has persisted in the independent foreign policy of peace, and made tremendous progress in foreign affairs. By 2011, China had established diplomatic relations with 172 countries. Over recent years, with the enhancement of its comprehensive national strength, China has been playing an increasingly important role in international affairs, and China's international status has been further enhanced. In regional affairs, China actively promotes all kinds of regional cooperation. It has made important contributions in maintaining regional peace and promoting regional development. China's diplomacy will hold high the banner of "peace, development, cooperation and mutual benefit". On the basis of the Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence and through all-round and friendly cooperation with various countries, China will make unremitting efforts to build a harmonious world of enduring peace and common prosperity.

Section B

Similarities and differences: Friendship across cultures

一、课文导读

(一)内容介绍

本文通过介绍在美国、法国、德国和英国友谊的含义，向我们展示了友谊的文化差异，讨论了在不同文化下如何去接受和尊重不同种类的友谊，从而增强了我们的文化多样性意识。在外国人眼里，美国人对待不同类型朋友的方式是相同的，但是在美国人眼中，这些关系有真正的不同，从肤浅到一般，从深厚到持久。在法国，朋友一般都是同性的，友谊是一对一的关系，需要十分了解对方的个性和特殊兴趣。在德国，友谊更多的是一种感觉和喜爱。在英国，友谊可以建立在同性之间，也可以是异性之间，但是友谊的基础是必须共同参与活动。最后作者指出，尽管友谊各不相同，但是友谊的奇妙之处是一样的，它会极大地丰富你的人生经历，使你无论在哪里都会感到舒适自在。

(二)背景知识

中美友谊观对比

中国人希望朋友是能够雪中送炭的人，对于朋友和友谊期望回报值相对较高。而美国人却对于朋友的实质性的帮助不是很多，因此对于友谊的期望回报值就相对较低。所以中国朋友会动用自己的私人关系去帮助朋友获得不易得到的东西。

美国人很少给朋友实际的帮助，对他们而言这样彼此依靠的情形是超出想象的。和其他的西方人一样，美国人认为朋友是“在情感上相互支持”“共度时光”的人。

美国人很少在金钱上给予朋友支持和帮助，即使是一家人，父母和子女之间一旦在金钱上需要帮助时都是需要白纸黑字写借据、讲条件的。可是在中国，父母给予子女经济上的帮助是天经地义的事情。

美国人刚开始和陌生人建立友好关系时，内心的防线是非常低的。但是当最初的这种友好关系进一步发展时，也就是要建立“真正的友谊”时，内心的墙体会不断升高，因为在美国文化中人们强调“隐私”和“独立”。而对于中国人来说建立友谊的过程恰好相反。也就是第一道心理防线是非常高的，所以当他们和陌生人见面时往往比较谨慎。但是和对方多次接触并产生信任后，中国人会向对方吐露心声，此时内心的防线逐渐降低。

中国是典型的集体主义社会，美国是典型的个体主义社会，美国人往往比较独立，强调自由，变动非常多。因此中国人的互依自我构元起主导地位，相反，美国人的独立自我构元起决定作用，由此也导致了中美两国人民对友谊和朋友的观念定义的不同，以及由此引起的待友方式等的差别。

美国人的流动性比较大，经常换工作、换住房，喜欢租房，因此相比较喜欢买房的中国人，友谊的流动系数和变动频率要高得多。美国人把变化看作生活的一部分。所以对于美国人，认识新的朋友、结交陌生人、获得新的友谊是非常值得做的事情。而中国人却更愿意和老朋友、旧朋友交流，对于陌生人和一份新的友谊往往会慎重考虑、思考再三才会采取行动。

(三)课文分析

1. 篇章结构

Para. 1 The author points out that the framework and value of friendship is universal and comparable around the world, but the way friendship is expressed differs greatly from country to country. 作者指出友谊的准则和价值在全世界都是普遍存在的,而且是相似的,但是友谊的表达方式则因国家的不同而有着巨大的差别。

Paras. 2-5 The author analyzes how American people, French people, German people, and English people cope with friendship respectively. 作者分别分析了美国人、法国人、德国人和英国人都是怎样处理友谊的。

Para. 6 Friends are different from each other, but the miracle of friendship is the same, i. e. profoundly enriching your life and making you feel at home wherever you are. 尽管友谊各不相同,但是友谊的奇妙之处是一样的,它会极大地丰富你的人生经历,使你无论在哪里都会感到舒适自在。

2. 写作特点

本文总体的写作特点是先整体概括观点,然后分层叙述、说明,最后又对整体进行总结。

二、词汇与短语

(一)词汇

1 privilege /ˈprɪvəlɪdʒ/ *n.*

(1) [sing.] sth. that you are lucky to have the chance to do, and that you enjoy very much 荣幸;光荣

—I hope to have the privilege of working with them again. 但愿有幸与他们再度合作。

(2) [C] a special advantage that is given only to one person or group of people 特权;特殊待遇

—He had no special privileges and was treated just like every other prisoner. 他不享受特殊待遇,对待他就像对待其他犯人一样。

【派生】privileged *a.* 有特权的;受特别优待的

2 co-worker /ˈkəuˌwɜːkə/ *n.*

[C] sb. who works with you and has a similar position 同事;同僚

—Instead of sending an email to your co-worker, walk to her desk. 与其发电子邮件给你的同事,不如走到她的办公桌前。

【近义】colleague, associate

3 framework /ˈfreɪmwɜːk/ *n.*

(1) [C, usu. sing.] a set of ideas, rules, or beliefs from which sth. is developed, or on which decisions are based 体系;体制;参照标准;准则

—This paper provides a framework for future research. 这篇论文为今后的研究提供了一个框架。

(2) [C] the main supporting parts of a building, vehicle, or object (建筑物、车辆或物体的)构架,框架,结构

—The framework of the roof is made of steel. 屋顶的框架是铁制的。

4 diverse /daɪˈvɜːs/ *a.*

very different from each other 各种各样的;形形色色的

—Methods of communication are diverse and inventive. 通信手段是多种多样而又富有创意的。
【派生】diversify *vt.* (使)多样化,不同 diversification *n.* 变化,多样化 diversely *ad.* 不同地;各色各样地
【近义】various

5 **subtle** /ˈsʌtl/ *a.*
not obvious, and therefore difficult to notice 细微的;微妙的;难以察觉的
—There are subtle differences between the two versions. 两个版本之间有一些细微的差异。
【派生】subtly *ad.* 细微地;巧妙地 subtlety *n.* 细微;微妙;巧妙

6 **constitute** /ˈkɒnstɪtjuːt/ *v.*
(1) (*not in progressive*) be considered to be sth. 被视为;被算作
—Failing to complete the work constitutes a breach of the employment contract. 未能完成工作被视为违反员工合同的行为。
(2) (*not in progressive*) be the parts that together form sth. 组成;构成
—Male workers constitute the majority of the labour force. 男性雇员占劳动力的多数。
【派生】constitution *n.* 宪法;章程;构成;构造 constitutional *a.* 宪法的;章程的
【近义】comprise

7 **forth** /fɔːθ/ *ad.*
forwards or out 向前;往外
—The house was still burning, pouring forth thick black smoke. 房子仍在燃烧,冒出浓浓的黑烟。
【搭配】back and forth 来回地 and so forth 等等

8 **casual** /ˈkæʒuəl/ *a.*
(1) relaxed and not worried, or seeming not to care about sth. 漫不经心的;随随便便的;不放在心上的
—His eyes were angry, though he sounded casual. 虽然他的话听起来漫不经心,但他的眼神是气愤的。
(2) not formal or not for a formal situation 非正式的;随便的
—He felt more comfortable in casual clothes. 他穿上便服感到更舒服。
(3) (*usu. before noun*) without deep affection 感情不深的;疏远的
—She will never be more than a casual acquaintance. 她从来就只是个泛泛之交。
【近义】informal

9 **casually** /ˈkæʒuəli/
ad. 漫不经心地;随随便便地;非正式地
—They chatted casually on the phone. 他们在电话上闲聊。

10 **worship** /ˈwɜːʃɪp/ *v.*
show respect and love for a god, esp. by praying in a religious building 敬奉(神)
—They all worship the same god. 他们信奉同一个神。
vt. admire and love sb. very much 景仰;十分喜爱
—He absolutely worships her. 他太喜欢她了。
【派生】worshipful *a.* 崇敬的;敬重的;爱慕的
【近义】adore

11 **ally** /ˈælaɪ/ *n.*
[C] sb. who helps and supports you when other people are trying to oppose you 盟友;支持者
—She knew she had found an ally in Ted. 她知道特德已经是她的盟友了。

vt. help and support other people or countries, esp. in a war or disagreement 与……结盟
—The prince allied himself with the Scots. 王子与苏格兰人结盟。
【近义】alliance

12 committee /kə'mɪti/ *n.*
[C] a group of people chosen to do a particular job, make decisions, etc. 委员会
—She's on the management committee. 她任管理委员会委员。
【近义】council

13 client /'klaɪənt/ *n.*
[C] sb. who gets services or advice from a professional person, company, or organization 客户;顾客
—He was my first client when I became a party planner. 他是我做宴会规划的第一位客户。
【近义】consumer, customer

14 superficial /ˌsuːpə'fɪʃl/ *a.*
(1) not concerned with anything serious or important and lacking any depth of understanding or feeling 浅薄的;肤浅的
—This girl seemed silly and superficial to Mike. 对迈克来说,这个女孩看起来很愚蠢和肤浅。
(2) seeming to have a particular quality, although this is not true or real 表面(上)的
—Despite their superficial similarities, the two novels are in fact very different. 这两本小说尽管表面上有相似之处,但实际上大不一样。
【近义】shallow
【反义】profound

15 scarcely /'skeəsli/ *ad.*
almost not or almost none at all 几乎不;几乎没有
—The city had scarcely changed in 20 years. 这城市在 20 年中几乎没有什么改变。
【近义】rarely, hardly

16 variation /ˌveəri'eɪʃn/ *n.*
[C, U] a difference between similar things, or a change from the usual amount or form of sth. 差异;变化;变动
—The dial records very slight variations in pressure. 该刻度盘能显示很微小的压力变化。

17 visible /'vɪzəbl/ *a.*
(1) able to be seen 看得见的;可见的
—The house is clearly visible from the beach. 从海滩可以清楚地看到那所房子。
(2) clear, obvious, or noticeable 清晰的;明显的;引人注目的
—There has been a visible change in his attitude. 他的态度有明显的转变。
【派生】visibility *n.* 可见度;能见度;能见距离
【反义】invisible *a.* 看不见的; 暗藏的

18 arbitrary /'ɑːbɪtrəri/ *a.*
decided or arranged without any reason or plan, often unfairly 任意的;专横的;武断的
—The choice of players for the team seemed completely arbitrary. 看来这个队的队员完全是随意选定的。
【派生】arbitrarily *ad.* 任意地;专横地;武断地 arbitrariness *n.* 任意;霸道;恣意

19 mood /muːd/ *n.*

(1) [sing.] the way that a place, event, book, film, etc. seems or makes you feel 氛围;基调

—The mood of the meeting was distinctly pessimistic. 这次会议的气氛显然很悲观。

(2) [C] the way you feel at a particular time 心情;心境;情绪

—You're in a good mood this morning! 你今天早晨心情不错啊!

【搭配】in a good mood 心情好 in a bad mood 心情差

20 **ceremony** /'serəməni/ *n.*

(1) [U] the formal traditions, actions, and words used to celebrate a traditional or religious event 礼仪;礼节

—The queen was crowned with due ceremony. 女王按照规定的礼仪加冕。

(2) [C] a formal public event with special traditions, actions, or words 典礼;仪式

—They are here to take part in the Olympic closing ceremony. 他们来这里是为了参加奥运会闭幕式。

【搭配】an awards/opening ceremony 颁奖/开幕仪式

【派生】ceremonial *a.* 礼仪的;礼节的;用于礼仪的

21 **complicated** /'kɒmplɪˌkeɪtɪd/ *a.*

(1) difficult to understand or deal with, because many parts or details are involved 难懂的;难处理的

—For young children, getting dressed is a complicated business. 对小孩子来说,穿衣服是件复杂的事。

(2) consisting of many closely connected parts 结构复杂的

—The human brain is an incredibly complicated organ. 人脑是一个结构极其复杂的器官。

22 **keen** /kiːn/ *a.*

(1) very strong 非常强烈的

—As she walked away, Joe felt a keen sense of loss. 她走了,乔感到一阵强烈的失落感。

(2) wanting to do sth. or wanting other people to do sth. 渴望的;迫切想要的

—He told me that he was keen to help. 他告诉我说他很想帮忙。

(3) very interested in an activity that you do often because you enjoy it 热衷的;着迷的

—Daniel's very keen on tennis. 丹尼尔对网球有强烈的兴趣。

【搭配】be keen on sb./sth. 喜欢某人/某物

23 **compatible** /kəm'pætəbl/ *a.*

(1) ideas or systems that are compatible can exist together 能共存的;协调一致的

—Are measures to protect the environment compatible with economic growth? 保护环境的措施与经济的增长协调吗?

(2) (*computing*) if one piece of computer equipment or software is compatible with another, they can be used together (计算机设备或软件)兼容的

—The new software is IBM compatible. 这个新软件与IBM电脑兼容。

(3) likely to have a good relationship because of being similar 合得来的;意气相投的

—You should choose a roommate more compatible to your tastes. 你应该挑个和你意气更相投的人同住一室。

24 **compatibility** /kəmˌpætə'bɪləti/ *n.*

(1) [U] the fact that different ideas or systems can exist together 共存

—Free enterprise, he argued, was compatible with Russian values and traditions. 他认为自由企业

制并不违背俄罗斯的价值观和传统。

(2) [U] (*computing*) the fact that different pieces of computer equipment and software can be used together (计算机设备或软件的)兼容

—This illustrates the application compatibility with the new version. 这说明了新版本的应用程序兼容性。

(3) [U] the fact that two people are likely to have a good relationship because they are similar 和睦相处

—Compatibility is a condition of a successful marriage. 和谐与否是婚姻成功的先决条件。

25 corresponding /ˌkɒrɪˈspɒndɪŋ/ *a.*

(1) (*only before noun*) similar to or the same as sth. 类似的;相同的

—Their friendship is based on a corresponding appreciation of artistic expression. 他们的友谊是基于对艺术表现的共同欣赏。

(2) (*only before noun*) related to or connected with sth. 相应的;相关的

—A change in the money supply brings a corresponding change in expenditure. 货币供应量的改变随即引起支出的相应改变。

【派生】correspondence *n.* 相关;相似;通信;通信联系

26 philosophy /fɪˈlɒsəfi/ *n.*

(1) [C] the attitude or set of ideas that guides the behavior of a person or organization 人生哲学;生活/工作准则

—The company explained their management philosophy. 公司阐述了他们的管理原则。

(2) [U] the study of the nature and meaning of existence, truth, good and evil, etc. 哲学

—Tom studies philosophy at university. 汤姆在大学学习哲学。

27 boundary /ˈbaʊnd(ə)ri/ *n.*

(1) [C, usu. pl.] the limits of an activity or experience 界限;范围

—The boundaries between history and storytelling are always being blurred and muddled. 历史和逸闻的分界向来是模糊而混乱的。

(2) [C] sth. such as a line on a map that marks where one area of land ends and another begins 分界线;边界

—The fence marks the boundary between my property and hers. 那道篱笆是我和她的地之间的分界线。

28 poetry /ˈpəʊɪtri/ *n.*

[U] poems in general 诗;诗歌

—He reads a lot of poetry. 他经常读诗歌。

29 affection /əˈfekʃn/ *n.*

[sing., U] a feeling of liking or love and caring 喜爱;慈爱;挚爱

—Mike had a deep affection for the old man. 迈克对这位老人有很深的感情。

30 alliance /əˈlaɪəns/ *n.*

[C] a group of two or more countries, groups, etc. who work together to achieve sth. 结盟团体;同盟

—These countries formed an alliance. 这些国家结成了同盟。

【近义】ally

31 wit /wɪt/ *n.*

(1) (~s) [pl.] the ability to think quickly and make the right decisions 机智

—Alone and penniless, I was forced to live on my wits. 孤身一人又身无分文，我只得靠我的机智来过活。

(2) [sing., U] the ability to use words in a clever way to make people laugh (说话)风趣

—She is a woman of great wit and charm. 她是一位说话风趣、风韵动人的女人。

【派生】witty *a.* 言辞诙谐的；巧妙的；妙趣横生的；机智的

32 ideal /aɪˈdɪəl/ *n.*

[C] a principle about what is morally right or a perfect standard that you hope to achieve 理想

—She found it hard to live up to his high ideals. 她觉得很难做到他的高标准要求。

a. of the best or most suitable type 理想的；最适宜的

—This beach is ideal for children. 这个海滩是孩子的理想去处。

【派生】idealistic *a.* 理想主义的；空想的 idealist *n.* 理想主义者；空想家

33 inner /ˈɪnə/ *a.*

(*only before noun*) private, personal, or secret 内心的；个人的；隐秘的

—She never shared her inner thoughts with anyone. 她从不告诉别人她内心的想法。

34 loyalty /ˈlɔɪəlti/ *n.*

[U] the quality of remaining faithful to your friends, principles, country, etc. 忠诚；忠实；忠贞

—Elizabeth understood her husband's loyalty to his sister. 伊丽莎白理解丈夫对他姐姐的一片忠心。

35 enhance /ɪnˈhɑːns/ *vt.*

improve sth. 提高；改进；增强

—This is an opportunity to enhance the reputation of the company. 这是提高公司声誉的机会。

【近义】intensify, strengthen

36 integrate /ˈɪntɪˌgreɪt/ *v.*

(1) become part of a group or society and be accepted by them, or to help sb. do this (使)融入(某群体或社会)；(使)成为一体

—We're looking for people who can integrate with a team. 我们在寻求能融入团队的人员。

(2) if two or more things integrate, or if you integrate them, they combine or work together in a way that makes sth. more effective (使)合并；(使)结合

—Transport planning should be integrated with energy policy. 运输计划应与能源政策整合起来。

【派生】integration *n.* 结合；整合；一体化

37 integrated /ˈɪntɪˌgreɪtɪd/ *a.*

combining things, people, or ideas of different types in one effective unit, group, or system 融合的；整体的；综合的；互相协调的

—They need to be integrated for the boom of the human culture. 他们要为人类文明的发展互相协调。

38 significance /sɪgˈnɪfɪkəns/ *n.*

[sing., U] the importance of an event, action, etc. esp. because of the effects or influence it will have in the future (尤指对将来的)重要性，意义

—The new drug has great significance for the treatment of the disease. 这种新药对于这种病的治疗有重大的意义。

【近义】importance

【反义】insignificance

39 vital /ˈvaɪtl/ *a.*

extremely important and necessary for sth. to succeed or exist 极其重要的;必不可少的
—The work she does is absolutely vital. 她所做的工作至关重要。
【搭配】be vital to 对……极其重要
40 **conversely** /ˈkɒnvɜːsli/ *ad.*
used when one situation is the opposite of another 相反地;另一方面
—You can add the fluid to the powder, or, conversely, the powder to the fluid. 可把液体加入粉末,或者相反,把粉末加入液体。
41 **guarantee** /ˌɡærənˈtiː/ *vt.*
(1) make it certain that sth. will happen 使必然发生;确保
—Tonight's victory guarantees the team's place in the final. 今晚的胜利确保这个队能进入决赛。
(2) promise to do sth. or promise that sth. will happen 保证
—I guarantee you'll love this film. 我保证你会喜欢这部电影的。
【近义】ensure
42 **gratitude** /ˈɡrætɪˌtjuːd/ *n.*
[U] the feeling of being grateful 感激(之情)
—He smiled at them with gratitude. 他向他们笑了笑表示谢意。
【搭配】debt of gratitude 人情债
43 **extend** /ɪkˈstend/ *vt.*
(1) stretch out a hand or leg 伸出;舒展
—He extended his hand to the new employee. 他伸出手来与新雇员握手。
(2) (*fml.*) officially offer sb. help, sympathy, thanks, etc. 提供;给予;表示
—I'd like to extend my thanks to all the catering staff. 我想对承办酒席的全体工作人员表示感谢。
v. continue for a longer period of time, or to make sth. last longer 持续;延长,推延(期限)
—Management have agreed to extend the deadline. 管理层已同意延长最后期限。
【派生】extended *a.* 延长了的;扩展了的 extendable *a.* 可延长的;可延伸的;可展期的
44 **profound** /prəˈfaʊnd/ *a.*
(1) having a strong influence or effect (影响)深刻的,极大的
—The mother's behavior has a profound impact on the developing child. 母亲的行为对于正在成长的孩子有极大的影响。
(2) showing strong, serious feelings (感情)强烈的,深切的,严肃的
—He has a profound sense of guilt. 他有强烈的内疚感。
45 **profoundly** /prəˈfaʊndli/ *ad.*
(影响)深刻地,极大地;(感情)强烈的,深切的
—We are profoundly affected by what happens to us in childhood. 童年发生的事深深地影响着我们。
46 **miracle** /ˈmɪrəkl/ *n.*
[C] sth. very lucky or very good that happens which you did not expect to happen or did not think was possible 意外的幸运事;不可思议的事;奇迹
—By some miracle, we managed to catch the plane. 我们奇迹般地赶上了飞机。

(二)短语

1 shower sb. with sth.
give sb. a lot of things 大量给予
—The best way to help troubled children is to shower them with more love. 帮助问题儿童的最好方法是给予他们更多的关爱。

2 a lack of
when there is not enough of sth. or none of it 没有;不足;缺乏
—This group suffers from a lack of money and has to use its resources carefully. 该小组资金匮乏,因而必须慎重利用其资源。

3 come into being
start to exist 诞生;出现;存在
—This law first came into being in 1912. 这条法律诞生于1912年。

4 back and forth
going in one direction and then in the opposite direction, and repeating this several times 来回地
—Ferries are sailing back and forth between the islands. 渡船在岛屿之间来回航行。

5 apply to
have an effect on or concern a particular person, group, or situation (对……)适用;(对……)有效
—Do the same rules apply to part-time workers? 这些规定对兼职人员也适用吗?

6 a range of
a number of people or things that are all different, but are all of the same general type 一系列
—The hotel offers a wide range of facilities. 这家酒店提供一系列的设施。

7 not so much... as...
used to say that one description of sb. or sth. is less suitable or correct than another 与其说是……不如说是……
—He isn't so much ill as depressed. 他与其说是生病,不如说是情绪低落。

8 debt of gratitude/thanks
the fact of being grateful to sb. who has helped you 恩情;人情债
—I owe a debt of gratitude to my tutors. 我要感谢我的导师。

9 feel/be at home
(1) feel comfortable in a place or with a person 舒适自在;不拘束
—I feel at home living here; the landlady is very kind to me. 我觉得住在这里很舒适,女房东对我很好。
(2) feel happy or confident about doing or using sth. 驾轻就熟;应用自如
—Tom feels very at home on a horse. 汤姆骑起马来得心应手。

三、课文注释

1 Since I was five years old, I have had the good fortune to travel all over the world. (Para. 1)
【Meaning】Since I was five years old, I have been very lucky to be able to travel all over the world.
【解　析】本句中的fortune意为"运气;机遇",还可以表示"命运"。

2 I have had the privilege of living in Europe, Africa and North America and have made many foreign friends there. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】I have been lucky to have had the chance to live in Europe, Africa and North America and have made my foreign friends there.

3 In fact, the framework and value of friendship is universal and comparable around the world. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】Actually, the ideas and beliefs on which friendship is based are the same or similar all over the world, and so is the value of friendship.

【解　析】本句中的 universal 表示"普遍存在的,广泛适用的"。

4 The difficulty when strangers from two countries meet is not a lack of appreciation for friendship but the assumption of sameness. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】It is difficult for strangers from two countries to become friends not because they do not appreciate friendship, but because they assume that they have the same ideas about friendship.

5 They do not anticipate the diverse expectations and subtle differences of what constitutes friendship, how it comes into being and how it should be expressed. (Para. 1)

【Meaning】They fail to realize that people in different cultures may have different expectations of friendship, and they don't know there are many hardly noticeable differences in what is considered to be friendship, how friendship is started, and how people should express it.

【解　析】本句中的 anticipate 表示"预料,预期"。

6 In the United States, society is highly mobile and it is quite common for people to move back and forth across the country for a new job, education, or many other reasons. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】The United States is a society where people frequently move. It is quite common for them to move from one place to another in the country for a new job, education, or many other reasons.

7 For Americans, there are real differences among these relations; a friendship may be superficial, casual, situational or deep and enduring. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】In the eyes of Americans, these relations are actually different: Their relationship with some friends may be shallow; they may just know each other without involving any strong feelings; they may treat each other like friends in order to act appropriately on certain occasions; with some other friends, their relationship may be deep and may last for a long time.

【解　析】本句中的 situational 表示"情况的,形势的",enduring 表示"持久的,持续的"。

8 But a foreign visitor who comes to an American home can scarcely find any variations. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】But a foreign visitor coming to an American home can hardly find any differences in the way Americans treat different types of friends.

9 For an outsider, who sees only behavior visible on the surface, the differences seem arbitrary if they find any. (Para. 2)

【Meaning】A person who is not American only notices Americans' behavior shown on the surface. Even if they find that the Americans treat their friends in different ways, they would think that the Americans do so without any serious reasons.

10 Comparatively, friendship in other countries seems more complicated. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】Compared with friendship in the United States, friendship in other countries seems to involve more different aspects and thus more difficult to understand.

11 For the French, friendship is a one-to-one relationship that demands a keen awareness of the other person's personality and specialized interests. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】For the French, friendship exists between two people who clearly know and well understand each other's personality and special interests.

12 French friendships are private relationships with distinct boundaries. A man may play chess with one friend or discuss poetry with another for 30 years without learning about either of his friend's personal lives or families. (Para. 3)

【Meaning】For the French, friendship is a one-to-one relationship. It is based on what the two people have in common and is not extended to areas other than their common interests. For example, a man may have a friend with whom he plays chess for 30 years, or another friend with whom he discusses poetry for 30 years, but he may know nothing about their personal lives or families.

【解　　析】本句中的 learn about 表示"得知、获悉、听到"。

13 In Germany, friendship is much more a matter of feeling and affection. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】In Germany, feeling, love and caring are more important in a friendship.

14 Young boys and girls from deeply sensitive alliances, walk and talk together—not so much to polish their wits as to share their hopes, fears, and ideals, and to join in a kind of mutual discovery of each other's own inner life. (Para. 4)

【Meaning】Young boys and girls become friends with a common aim, and they are keenly aware of and responsive to each other's feelings, and they walk and talk together. Their common aim is not to make themselves more intelligent, but to share their hopes, fears, and dreams, and to discover each other's true thoughts and feelings that are seldom shown to others.

15 English friendships follow a still different pattern. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】English people develop their friendships in another different way.

【解　　析】本句中的 follow a pattern 表示"按照某一模式"。

16 Close English friendships may be of the same sex or of mixed gender; friends may be found in two people, two couples or even in a small group. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】For English people, close friendships can be formed among women, among men, or between men and women. It can be between two people or two couples. There may even be cases where a small group of people make friends with each other.

【解　　析】本句中的 mixed 表示"混合的、混杂的"。除此之外，该词还可以表示"复杂的、矛盾的"。

17 English friendships are made outside the family but can often be enhanced by becoming an integrated part of a family's social life. (Para. 5)

【Meaning】English friendships are made outside the family. But if a person is accepted by his or her friend's family and takes part in their social life, their friendship can often become stronger.

18 To summarize, it's a vital human quality that can bind people together for life. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】To conclude, friendship is a very important human quality that can form a strong emotional connection between people for their whole life.

19 Whatever the continent or country, people have extended the hand of friendship and welcomed me into their lives. By opening the doors of friendship to me, they occupy a special place in my heart. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】No matter which continent or country they are from, people have offered me friendship and welcomed me into their lives. Because they are willing to make friends with me, they have become a special part of my life and I value them greatly.

【解　　析】本句中的 open its/the doors 表示"(尤指首次)开放，接纳"。

20 They have profoundly enriched my life experience, because wherever I am, when I'm with friends, I feel at home. The miracle of friendship is the same. (Para. 6)

【Meaning】My friends have greatly enriched my life experience because no matter where I am, as long as I'm with friends, I feel comfortable. The magical power of friendship is not different.

四、课文译文

各有异同:不同文化中的友谊

1. 从五岁起,我就有幸周游世界各地。我很幸运,曾在欧洲、非洲和北美洲生活过,并且在那里结交了很多外国朋友。我的家人、朋友和同事总是饶有兴趣、充满好奇地向我提出一大堆的问题,例如:在外国你怎么开始一段友谊?外国人跟我们有区别吗?那些国家的人看重友谊吗?其实,友谊的准则和价值在全世界都是普遍存在的,而且是相似的。但是友谊的表达方式则因国家的不同而有着巨大的差别。当来自两个国家的陌生人,相遇时交友的困难不是不珍视友谊,而是想当然地认为对方跟自己一样,他们没有想到的是在什么是友谊、如何建立友谊、如何表达友谊这些方面,双方有着不同的期待和微妙的差异。因此,谁是朋友?朋友之间该如何相待?这都取决于你身在何处!

2. 在美国,社会流动性极高,人们因为新工作、教育和其他许多原因而在国内搬来搬去是司空见惯的事儿。所以,"朋友"这个称谓可以宽泛地适用于一系列关系——朋友可以是与你一起做礼拜的人,可以是亲密的生意伙伴,可以是儿时的玩伴,也可以是可依赖的盟友。朋友可以是男的,也可以是女的。他们可以是孩子朋友的家长、邻居家的客人、某个委员会的委员,或者来自另一个城镇,甚至另一个国家的生意上的客户。对美国人而言,这些关系是有着真正的区别的;友谊可以是浅浅的、泛泛的、应景的,也可以是深厚而长久的。但是,一个到美国家庭做客的外国人几乎看不出其中的任何差别。对一个外来人而言,他们只看到表面的表现。即使他们发现其中有任何差别,他们也觉得这种差别似乎并非美国人有意为之。朋友之间气氛很轻松,也不太讲究礼数。不管老少,多数人都直呼其名。而且家人和朋友们都自由地交流,轻松随意地谈话。

3. 相比之下,在其他国家,友谊似乎更为复杂。在法国,如同在许多其他欧洲国家一样,朋友一般是同性的。许多法国人都对异性之间的友谊持怀疑态度。对法国人而言,友谊是一种一对一的关系,需要十分了解对方的个性和特殊兴趣。友谊作为一种特殊关系,是基于法国人最为重视的一些方面,即拥有共同的思想、一致的世界观、对艺术表现的共同欣赏、对美食的喜爱、相同的人生哲学或者对体育的喜爱。法国人的友谊,是带有明确界限的一种私人关系。一个人可以30年来与一位朋友下棋或者与另外一位朋友讨论诗歌,但他可能对这两位朋友的私生活和家庭情况一无所知。

4. 在德国,友谊更多的是一种感觉和喜爱。年轻男孩和女孩结成灵犀相通的盟友,一起漫步、交谈,其目的与其说是变得更有智慧,不如说是分享他们的希望、忧虑和理想,以及共同参与对彼此内心世界的挖掘。在家庭中,一生中最亲密的关系是兄弟姐妹之间的关系。德国男性和女性在他们最亲密的同性朋友身上可以找到兄弟般的忠诚或者姐妹般的挚爱。

5. 英国人的友谊则又是另一种模式。英国人友谊的基础是共同参与活动。他们或许拥有共同的文学爱好、在一个委员会共事、一起享受体育活动或都喜欢散步。英国人之间的亲密友谊可以建立在同性之间,也可以是异性之间;朋友关系可以建立在两个人、两对夫妻甚至是一小群人之间。英国人的友谊是在家庭以外形成的,但是往往因其成为家庭社交生活的组成部分而得到进一步发展。

6. 那么,什么是友谊?友谊的意义何在?概括而言,友谊是人类的一个重要品质,它能使人们一生紧密相连。而且,和家庭不同的是,友谊具有选择的自由。朋友就是你选择了他,他也选择了你。我的朋友们各不相同。他们中有些彼此也是朋友。另一些则相反,他们甚至互不喜欢!这就是友谊的奇怪

之处。仅仅因为我喜欢两个人并不能保证这两个人也彼此喜欢。不过，我对他们都心怀感激。无论在哪个大陆、哪个国家，人们都伸出友谊之手，欢迎我走进他们的生活。通过向我打开友谊之门，他们在我的心中占据着一个特殊的位置。他们极大地丰富了我的生活经历，因为无论我在哪里，只要跟朋友们在一起，我就感到舒适自在。友谊的奇妙之处是一样的。只是人们需要时间去理解世界各地表达友谊的许多不同方式。

五、练习答案及详解

Reading skills

找出段落的主题思想

主题思想(the main idea)，也称作中心思想，是作者在文章或段落中要表达的核心内容，也是作者自始至终要说明的问题。能否抓住主题思想，体现了读者总结、概括和归纳事物的能力。把握主题思想也有助于对文中具体内容的理解。因此，找出段落的主题思想是一项重要的阅读技能。

段落的主题思想体现和贯穿于整个段落，也是作者在这个段落想要表达的核心内容。段落中的大部分句子都是用来支持、说明段落的主题思想的。因此要想更好地理解段落的内容，就一定要学会找到和把握段落的中心意思。

体现段落中心意思的句子叫主题句(topic sentence)，主题句常常位于段首或段尾处，间或出现在段落中间。然而某些段落有着暗含的中心意思，通常没有明确的主题句来体现。这个暗含的中心意思需要从这个段落的整体来把握，读者可以通过提出几个问题来把握段落中暗含的主题思想。

1. 这个段落的主题是什么？

2. 讨论这个主题的主要目的是什么？它是要告诉读者一件事情，还是解释说明，抑或是详细叙述？它是要与其他某事或某物作比较，还是要反驳某件事，抑或是就某观点说服读者？

3. 关于这个主题，作者想要传达的是什么？

1 Read Paragraph 2 and Paragraph 4 of Text B and find out their main ideas by answering the following questions.

Paragraph 2

1. Friendship in the US.
2. To describe how American friends treat each other.
3. For Americans, a friendship may be superficial, casual, situational or deep and enduring.

Paragraph 4

1. Friendship in Germany.
2. To describe the characteristics of German friendship.
3. In Germany, friendship is much more a matter of feeling and affection.

Reading comprehension

Understanding the text

2 Choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

1. A 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. C 8. D

Critical thinking

3 Work in pairs and discuss the following questions.

1. • Unlike French people, Chinese people make cross-gender friends as well as friends of the same sex. Chinese people tend to know almost everything about their friends, including their family, work, and hobbies.

   • Germans base their friendship mainly on affection while English people on shared activity. In comparison, the friendship of Chinese people can be built on both. Sometimes, it may be built on mutual interests; Chinese people may ask their friends to help with their business or work.

   • Chinese people and English people are similar in many ways when making friends. But unlike English people who develop friendships outside the family, many Chinese people have old family friends, who are actually very close and like family members.

2. • According to my experience, it is not easy to make friends with foreign people, especially in the beginning. First, they may not share the same values due to cultural differences. Second, they may like different food and sports as they come from different ethnic groups or grow up in different parts of the world. Third, they may have difficulties in communication as they speak different languages. All these may be barriers to making friends with people from other countries.

   • No, I have no difficulty in making friends with people from other countries. No matter where people come from, the desire for friendship is the same. Besides, people from different countries are willing to share the best part of their culture. And by talking to people from different cultures, you can always learn something new. This way, it is much easier to strike a conversation and explore interesting topics together.

3. • I like the seemingly casual and friendly way Americans treat their friends. For one thing, friendship is to help make our leisure life more colorful and relaxing. There are countless people in this world, but we can encounter only a limited number. So it would be nice to be friendly to each other and make each other happy. For another, intimate friendship develops from casual friendship. We should first reach out to offer care and support to a potential friend, and then over time we may build a deeper friendship.

   • I don't like the seemingly casual way in which Americans treat their friends. First, friendship means willingness to listen to, care about, and help each other. If friends treat each other in a casual manner, why did they become friends in the first place? Second, the casual way in which Americans treat their friends may be misleading. Not everyone can become true friends. True friends will have mutual understanding and will do what is best for each other. When you fail to do what you are expected as a friend, your friends may feel disappointed or even hurt. So we'd better take friendship seriously.

4. • Yes, I like to maintain "distinct boundaries" for friendship. Everybody has some privacy or secrets which they don't want to share with other people, not even with their friends. Sometimes friendship doesn't last forever, so the boundaries may protect you from being hurt if the relation ends one day. Besides, friendship, in my view, should focus on sharing feelings and hobbies instead of work problems or family matters. If you ask your friends to share your problems and burdens, it will eventually hurt your friendship.

   • No, I don't like the idea of friendship with "distinct boundaries". First, true friends should trust

each other and there is nothing they cannot share. For example, if you know each other's family, the two families can become friends too. This will in turn strengthen your friendship. Second, "A friend in need is a friend indeed." If you have a problem at work, you can share it with your friends, and they may be happy to help. Third, the more you share with your friends, the more you will have in common. "Distinct boundaries" will only undermine your relationship.

5. There are many ways to strengthen friendship. For example, you can:
   - see your friends more often and talk to them whenever possible;
   - give them gifts on special occasions to show that you care about them;
   - be there for help in times of difficulty so that they can always have someone to count on;
   - invite them to join you for outdoor activities and share the fun experiences; and
   - call them and send them messages regularly to keep each other updated.

Language focus

Words in use

4 Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary. Each word can be used only once.

1. compatible

   【译文】将近三分之一的受访者认为来自不同文化背景的人们是不应该结婚的,他们认为不同的文化传统习俗是不相容的。

2. (been) integrated

   【译文】电信技术深入广泛地融入日常生活,如果没有了电信技术,现代社会就不能正常运转。

3. diverse

   【译文】很久以来,美国被认为是一个熔炉。这意味着在美国一切多元文化都可以被融合为百分百美国式文化。

4. constitute

   【译文】在高达六百万游客的惊人的年度数据当中,外地游客大约占总人数的三分之一。

5. significance

   【译文】这种新药的发现对于患有心脏问题的人们具有重要意义。

6. guarantee

   【译文】拥有昂贵的装备实际上并不能保证你能打高尔夫球,并且为了能够打好高尔夫球,或许你还需要学习一些课程。

7. complicated

   【译文】向市场推广一项新产品是件复杂的事情,需要好好地策划。

8. keen

   【译文】许多年轻女性如此热衷于保持身材以至于她们过度地节食。

9. enhance

   【译文】该组织的目标是改善残障人士的生活质量和为他们增加更多的就业机会。

10. extend

   【译文】我想对选择向艾滋病患者们施以援手的那些组织表示感谢。

Expressions in use

5 Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the form where necessary. Each expression can be used only once.

1. a range of
   【译文】当地农民把黑土地视为"上古的遗赠"，因为它们是天然的沃土，能够为庄稼提供充足的营养。
2. back and forth
   【译文】有多少晚上我在图书馆里踱来踱去，力图定下论文题目，并选择出我的论点。
3. showered with
   【译文】作为一名著名的女演员，卡洛琳总是被喜爱她的观众以及观众们赠送给她的大量的礼物所环绕。
4. debt of gratitude/thanks
   【译文】在他的讲话当中，他对在工作上给予他帮助的所有人表达了他的感激之情。
5. feel/be at home
   【译文】我们将竭尽所能为您提供优质的服务，并且我希望您下榻我们酒店能够感到宾至如归。
6. come into being
   【译文】随着越来越多的外国人使用英语这门语言，一种新类型的英语应运而生。
7. apply to
   【译文】能够确定一篇文章的主题思想是可以应用于任何类型的阅读的重要技能之一。
8. a lack of
   【译文】缺乏公众的支持使得很多公立学校的教师离开了这个行业。

Sentence structure

6 Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English, using the structure "(much) to one's relief/delight/surprise, etc.".

1. Much to my surprise
2. To the general manager's delight
3. Much to my cousin's disappointment

7 Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English, using the structure "not so much... as...".

1. not so much to make an apology as to defend himself
2. not so much on luck as on hard work
3. not so much a discussion as a long speech by herself

Collocation

8 Complete the following passages by filling in the blanks with appropriate collocations from the texts. You are provided with the first letter(s) for each of the collocations. Change the form where necessary.

1. value friendship 珍惜友谊
2. make friends 结交朋友
3. begin a friendship 建立友谊
4. enduring friendship 持久的友谊
5. shared activities 共同的活动

6. emotional expressions 情绪表达
7. emotional feelings 情绪感受
8. emotionally honest 情感真挚
9. enhance their friendship 增进彼此的友谊
10. distinct boundaries 清楚的界限
11. situational friendship 随机的友谊
12. one-to-one relationship 一对一的关系
13. cross-gender friendships 两性友谊
14. keen awareness 敏锐的意识
15. specialized interests 专长
16. private relationships 私人关系



词类(一)

词是能够自由运用的最小语言单位。根据词的形式、意义及其在句中的作用所做的分类叫词类(parts of speech)。我们通常从两个方面对词进行分类:第一是根据词的构成进行分类;第二是根据词的句法功能进行分类。

(一)词的构成分类

从构词法角度,可把英语的词分为单词素词(morpheme word)、派生词(derivative)、复合词(compound)和原始派生词(primary derivative)。

1. 单词素词:又叫简单词,是由单一自由词素构成的词。例如:this,good,place,food,thing,who,head 等。这类词是构成基本词汇的主体,比较稳定,能够与派生词广泛结合,构成众多的派生词。

2. 派生词:派生词是由词根+派生词缀构成的词。词根是派生词的基础,同一词根加不同的派生词缀可以表示不同的意义,还可表示不同的词性。例如:tell→foretell→foreteller,词根为动词 tell(告诉),加一个前缀 fore-,词性未变,意思变为"预告";再加一个后缀-er,词性发生了变化,变成了名词,意为"预言者,预言家"。可见,英语的前缀和后缀就其语法功能、语义以及与词根关系的密切程度来说,是有所不同的。大多数的前缀并不影响词根的词性而仅对词根的意义加以修饰或限制。例如:unhappy(不高兴),dislike(不喜欢),impossible(不可能),informal(非正式的),illegal(不合法的),irresponsible(不负责任的),devalue(贬值),pro-British(亲英派),pro-communist(支持共产主义的),anti-war(反战),anti-Japanese(抗日),counter-revolution(反革命),counter-act(反作用),mini-bus(小公汽),miniskirt(迷你裙),underground(地铁),underestimate(低估),overeat(吃得过多),overconfident(过分自信),supermarket(超市),superman(超人),transatlantic(横渡大西洋的),transcontinental(洲际的),international(国际的),interdependent(互相依赖),subtitle(副标题),subway(地铁),pre-war(战前的),pre-school(学前的),post-election(选举后的),post-graduate(研究生)等。从以上的例词中可以看出,大多数前缀通常只有词汇意义,没有语法作用。但也有少数几个前缀会引起词性的改变。例如:befriend(亲近),enslave(奴役),embody(体现),asleep(睡着)等。英语的后缀具有较强的语法作用,加在词根上便可改变词性。例如:

(1)动词变名词:-er,-age,-ment,-al,-ee 等。teacher(教师),coverage(范围),movement(运动),arrival(到达),employee(雇员)等。

(2)名词、形容词变动词:-en,-ize,-ify 等。soften(变软),realize(实现),beautify(美化)等。

(3)形容词变名词:-ness,-ist,-ity 等。happiness(幸福),nationalist(民族主义者),responsibility(责任)等。

(4)名词变形容词:-ish,-like,-less,-ful 等。childish(幼稚的),childlike(孩子般天真的),useless(无用的),useful(有用的)等。可见,大多数后缀改变词性,词义也略有改变。当然,也有一些后缀只改变词义,而不改变词性。例如:New Yorker(纽约人),spoonful(一匙的量),friendship(友谊),neighborhood

(邻居),tigeress(雌老虎),kingdom(王国)等。

3. 复合词:由两个自由词素构成的词,分为复合名词、复合形容词、复合动词等。

(1)复合名词:weekend(周末),network(网状系统),textbook(课本),boyhood(少年时代),toothache(牙痛)等。

(2)复合形容词:well-known(著名的),dark-blue(深蓝色),first-rate(一流的),duty-free(免税的)等。

(3)复合动词:overcome(战胜),outline(轮廓),undergo(经历),uphold(坚持),mass-produce(成批生产)等。

4. 原始派生词:由两个黏着词素构成的词,这些词素不能单独存在。例如:receive(收到),during(在……期间),detain(拘留,阻止),credit(信用)等。

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Classify the following words under four headings: (1) morpheme words, (2) derivatives, (3) compound words and (4) primary derivatives.

1. appeal	2. background	3. farmhouse	4. field
5. remittance	6. ship	7. deceive	8. station
9. morning	10. knit	11. conduct	12. concealment
13. shipbuilding	14. calculation	15. vegetable	16. sweet
17. refer	18. detain	19. draining-board	20. policewoman

Ⅱ. Form nouns by adding suffixes to the following.

attend, improve, discuss, add, explain, mix, inform, popular, include, announce, possible, honest, complete, useful, govern, similar

Ⅲ. Form adjectives by adding suffixes to the following.

help, nation, response, comfort, child, friend, fear, thirst, America, second, suit, power, science, fame, gold, act

Ⅳ. Form the opposites of the following by adding prefixes to them.

like, responsible, possible, formal, logical, value, load, certain, happy, comfortable, polite, charge, cover, exact, agree, accurate

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. (1) morpheme words: appeal, field, ship, station, morning, knit, vegetable, sweet

(2) derivatives: remittance, concealment, calculation

(3) compound words: background, farmhouse, shipbuilding, draining-board, policewoman

(4) primary derivatives: deceive, conduct, refer, detain

Ⅱ. attendance, improvement, discussion, addition, explanation, mixture, information, popularity, inclusion, announcement, possibility, honesty, completion, usefulness, government, similarity

Ⅲ. helpful, national, responsible, comfortable, childish/childlike, friendly, fearless, thirsty, American, secondary, suitable, powerful, scientific, famous, golden, active

Ⅳ. dislike, irresponsible, impossible, informal, illogical, devalue, unload, uncertain, unhappy, uncomfortable, impolite, discharge, uncover, inexact, disagree, inaccurate

词类(二)

(二)词的句法功能分类

英语词就其句法功能来说分为功能词(function word)和实义词(content word)。

1. 功能词:又叫结构词(structural word)或虚词(empty word),指只有语法功能或语法意义,没有完整词汇意义的词。这类词包括:

(1)助动词(auxiliary verb),分为基本助动词、情态助动词和半助动词三类。

A. 基本助动词:和主要动词一起构成各种时态、语态、语气的一种动词形式,以及用于否定和疑问等结构中,只有 do, be, have。

B. 情态动词:表示能力、义务、必要、猜测等说话人的语气或情感。情态动词只能和动词原形一起构成谓语动词。情态动词主要有 can(能够),may(可以,也许),must(必须),will(愿意),shall(将要)及其相应的过去形式。

C. 半助动词:指在功能上介乎主要动词和助词之间、本身有词汇意义的一类结构。半助动词常见的有 have to(不得不),have got to(必须,应该),had better/best(最好),be able to(能),be going to(将要),seem to(似乎,看起来),turn out to(证明、结果是)。

(2)限定词(determiner),主要指冠词、代词和数词等。

A. 冠词:放在名词之前,帮助说明该名词所指的对象。冠词又分为不定冠词和定冠词两种。不定冠词为 a(an),用在单数名词之前,表示某一类人或事物的一个。a 用于以辅音开头的名词之前,而 an 则用于以元音开头的名词之前。例如:a school(一所学校),a double room(双人房间),an hour(一小时),an old man(一个老人)等。定冠词只有一个,即 the,表示某一类人或事物中特定的一个或者一些。它可用于可数或不可数名词之前。例如:the hotel(这家旅店),the United Nations(联合国),the water(这水),the Olympic games(这届的奥林匹克运动会)等。

B. 代词:用来指代的词。代词包括:指示代词,如 this(这个),that(那个),these(这些),those(那些),such(这样的)等;人称代词,如 I(我),you(你),he(他),she(她),it(它),they(他们)等;物主代词,如 my(我的),mine(我们的),his(他的),hers(她的),theirs(他们的)等;不定代词,如 some(一些),any(任何),every(每一个),something(某事),one(一个)等;疑问代词,如 who(谁),what(什么),which(哪一个),whom(谁)等;关系代词,如 that(那个),who(那人),whose(谁的),which(这个)等;反身代词,如 myself(我自己),yourself(你自己),oneself(自己),ourselves(我们自己)等;相互代词,如 each other(互相),one another(互相)等。

C. 数词:表示"数量"和"顺序"的词。前者为基数词,如 one(一),ten(十),twenty-two(二十二),one hundred and eighty(一百八十)等;后者为序数词,如 first(第一),second(第二),twentieth(第二十),sixty-third(第六十三)等。

(3)介词:又叫前置词,放在名词、代词或相当于名词的词前面,表示他后面的词与其他句子成分的关系。根据介词的构成,介词又可分为:简单介词,如 in(在……里面),on(在……上面),after(在……后面),before(在……前面)等;复合介词,如 into(进入到),as for(至于)等;短语介词,如:in front of(在……前面),according to(根据),as a result of(作为……的结果)等;分词介词,如 concerning(关于),regarding(关于),considering(考虑到),including(包括)等。

(4)连词:连接词、短语、从句或句子的词。

A. 按其本身的含义及其所连接的成分的性质，可分为：并列连词，如 and(和)，but(但是)，for(因为)，not only... but also...(不仅……而且……)等；从属连词，如 because(因为)，if(如果)，although(尽管)，so that(因此)等。

B. 按连词本身的结构形式看，又可分为：简单连词，如 but(但是)，and(和)，if(假如)等；关联连词，如 as... as...(和……一样……)，not only... but also...(不但……而且……)等；分词连词，如 supposing(假定)，provided(假如)等；短语连词，如 as soon as(一……就……)，as if(好像……)等。

(5)感叹词：表示喜怒哀乐等感情的词。例如：oh，ah，hello 等。

2. 实义词：又叫内容词，是相对于功能词而言的，指本有完整的词汇意义的词。这类词包括：

(1)名词(noun)：表示人、事物、地点或抽象概念的名称。例如：worker(工人)，bread(面包)，peace(和平)，Shakespeare(莎士比亚)，law(法律)，friendship(友谊)。

A. 英语名词分为两大类：

普通名词(common noun)：某一类人、事物、某种物质或抽象概念的名称。例如：lawyer(律师)，flour(面粉)，book(书)，light(光)，production(生产)等。

专有名词(proper noun)：特定有某个人、地方或机构的名称。例如：Newton(牛顿)，Beijing(北京)，China(中国)等。

B. 名词又可分为可数名词和不可数名词。可数名词有单、复数之分。绝大多数名词的复数形式构成方法是在单数形式后面加-s 或-es。例如：job→jobs(工作)，bus→buses(公共汽车)，watch→watches(手表)，wife→wives(妻子)，library→libraries(图书馆)。当然，英语中也有一些名词的复数形式是不规则的。例如：man→men(男人)，child→children(儿童)，tooth→teeth(牙齿)，medium→media(媒介)。

(2)实义动词(verb)：表示动作或状态的词。有完全的词义，并能独立作谓语。例如：teach(教)，work(工作)，exist(存在)，sign(签字)等。实义动词还可分为及物动词、不及物动词和系动词。

A. 及物动词：后面需要跟宾语，意义才完整。例如：I am going to visit Shanghai next week. 下周我要到上海。(Shanghai 是及物动词 visit 的宾语)

B. 不及物动词：本身意义完整，后面不需要跟宾语。例如：I slept very late last night. 昨晚我睡得很晚。(slept 是不及物动词)

C. 系动词：表示一种状态，作谓语时，后面接表语。常见英语的系动词有 be(是)，look(看起来)，become(变成)，seem(似乎)，get(变得)，turn(变成)，appear(显得)等。

(3)形容词(adjective)：用来修饰名词，表示名词属性的词。例如：black(黑色的)，weak(体弱的)，beautiful(美丽的)，happy(幸福的)，cheap(便宜的)等。形容词一般放在它所修饰的名词之前，例如：old man(老年人)，busy street(繁华的街道)，public library(公共图书馆)等。

(4)副词(adverb)：修饰动词、形容词和其他副词的词。它通常用来说明时间、地点、方式、程度等。例如：quickly(快地)，late(晚)，there(在那里)，often(经常)等。副词也可分为：普通副词，如 wonderfully(惊人地)，really(真实地)，well(好)；疑问副词，如 who(谁)，what(什么)，when(何时)，where(何地)；连接副词，如 however(然而)，therefore(因此)，then(然后)；关系副词，如 which(哪一个)，when(何时)，where(何地)等。

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. **Name the parts of speech of the following words.**

weather, backwards, third, person, speak, happy, not, lately, than, because, what, even, useful, eat, illogical, some, onto, ah, be, develop

Ⅱ. **Name the parts of speech of the underlined words in the following sentences.**

1. Where there is a will, there is a way.
2. Most people disagree with this statement.
3. The vegetable remains fresh for two weeks.
4. Every means has been tried but without much result.
5. Oh, even a child can do it.
6. I had a visit from Smith last week.
7. There are a number of people interested in the story.
8. My parents are very strict and make me study very hard.
9. The television news will have a live report of the important meeting in Beijing.
10. I will ask leave to call him on Sunday if he can spare me the time.

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. 名词:weather, person
2. 动词:speak, eat, be, develop
3. 形容词:happy, useful, illogical
4. 副词:backwards, not, lately, even
5. 代词:what, some
6. 数词:third
7. 介词:onto
8. 连词:than, because
9. 感叹词:ah

Ⅱ. 1. 名词:will, visit, number, news, meeting, leave
2. 动词:remains, study, call, spare
3. 形容词:most, fresh, strict, live
4. 副词:even, very
5. 冠词:the
6. 代词:every, it
7. 数词:two
8. 介词:with, without
9. 连词:where, but
10. 感叹词:oh

句子成分

不同词类的单词，按照一定的语法规则组合在一起，能表达一个完整意思的语言单位就叫作句子。组成一个句子的功能不同的构成部分叫作句子成分。英语的主要句子成分有以下八种：主语、谓语、表语、宾语、定语、状语、主语补足语和宾语补足语。

（一）主语

主语是句子所要说明的人或事物，是句子的主体。其位置通常放在句首，一般不省略。名词、代词、数词、动词不定式、动名词以及从句都可以充当主语。例如：

Women should have the equal right in all affairs.

妇女应该在所有事务上享有同样的权利。（名词作主语）

He wants to know why sea water is salty.

他想知道海水为什么是咸的。（代词作主语）

Two and two is four.

二加二等于四。（数词作主语）

To see is to believe.

眼见为实。（动词不定式作主语）

Seeing is believing.

眼见为实。（动名词作主语）

Whether or not they will have a picnic tomorrow depends on the weather.

明天是否去野餐要看天气情况来定。（从句作主语）

（二）谓语

谓语是说明主语的动作或状态的句子成分。谓语动词的位置一般放在主语之后。通常实义动词充当谓语。助动词或情态动词加其他动词的适当形式也构成谓语。例如：

She is a very beautiful girl.

她是个非常漂亮的女孩。（系动词作谓语）

I will take you to the hospital.

我要带你到医院去。（情态动词加动词原形作谓语）

He said that the climate affects his health.

他说气候影响他的健康。（实义动词作谓语动词）

Wang Ming has been studying English since 1988.

王明从1988年以来一直在学英语。（助动词加动词原形作谓语）

（三）表语

表语是用来说明主语的身份、特征和状态的，它的位置在系动词之后。名词、代词、形容词、分词、数词、动词不定式、动名词、介词短语、副词以及从句都可以作表语。例如：

I am a teacher.

我是一个教师。（名词作表语）

Who is that? It's me.

是谁？是我。(代词作表语)

Everything is clear.

一切都清楚。(形容词作表语)

We are very interested in reading.

我们对阅读非常感兴趣。(分词作表语)

Everything in the room is out of order.

房子里到处是乱七八糟的。(介词短语作表语)

Two times two equals four.

二乘以二等于四。(数词作表语)

His purpose is to look for a suitable job in the city.

他的目的是在城里找个合适的工作。(动词不定式可作表语)

My idea is that you may go first.

我的意见是你可以先去。(从句作表语)

(四)宾语

宾语表示动作的对象，是动作的承受者。宾语的位置一般放在及物动词之后，叫动词宾语；放在介词后面的宾语叫介词宾语。通常，名词、代词、数词、动名词或不定式可作宾语。例如：

Walls have ears.

隔墙有耳。(名词作动词宾语)

I have been waiting for you.

我一直在等你。(代词作介词宾语)

Do you mind closing the door?

你介意关门吗?(动名词作动词宾语)

How many apples do you want? Give me two, please.

你要几个苹果？请给我两个。(数词作动词宾词)

My daughter wants to be a doctor.

我女儿想当医生。(动词不定式作动词宾语)

We know that a parrot can't really speak.

我们知道鹦鹉实际上是不能说话的。(从句作动词宾语)

I was born in Beijing in 1970.

1970 年我出生在北京。(名词和数词作介词宾语)

(五)定语

定语是修饰名词或代词的词、短语或从句。单词作定语时，一般放在被修饰的名词前面；短语和从句作定语时，一般放在被修饰的名词后面。名词、数词、分词、形容词、分词短语、介词短语、不定式以及从句均可作定语。例如：

I am a English teacher.

我是一名英语教师。(名词作定语)

She has got three brothers.

她有三个兄弟。(数词作定语)

China is a developing country, while the United States is developed one.

中国是一个发展中国家，而美国是一个发达国家。(分词作定语)

We should have equal pay for equal work.

我们应该同工同酬。(形容词作定语)

The man reading books over there is my father.

在那儿读书的那个人是我父亲。(分词短语作定语)

This is my first trip to Shanghai.

这是我第一次到上海旅行。(代词、数词和介词短语作定语)

She was the only one to look after the child.

她是唯一照看孩子的人。(动词不定式作定语)

Some people who (that) are successful language learners often fail in other fields.

一些在语言方面成功的人在其他领域却常常失败。(从句作定语)

(六)状语

状语是修饰动词、形容词、副词等的句子成分。它表示时间、地点、原因、目的、条件、结果、让步、方式、程度、伴随情况等。名词、副词、分词、介词短语、分词短语、动词不定式以及从句等都可作状语。例如:

He was knee deep in snow.

他踩在齐膝深的雪中。(名词作状语)

The reading-room in our library is very modern.

我们图书馆的阅览室很现代。(副词作状语)

United, we stand; divided, we fall.

团结起来,我们就能成功;分裂了,我们就会失败。(过去分词作状语)

I sat there doing nothing.

我坐在那儿,无所事事。(分词短语作状语)

She studies very hard at school.

她在学校很用功。(介词短语作状语)

My brother went to Japan to study medical science.

我弟弟去日本学医学。(动词不定式作状语)

We must strike while the iron is hot.

我们必须趁热打铁。(从句作状语)

(七)宾语补足语和主语补足语

有些及物动词除了需要宾语之外,还需要加上宾语补足语才能使句子的意义完整,宾语和宾语补足语一起构成复合宾语。当上述结构变为被动语态时,原来的宾语就变成了主语,原宾语补足语也就相应地变为主语补足语。通常,名词、形容词、介词短语、动词不定式以及分词可担当补足语。例如:

We call him little tiger.

我们叫他小虎。(名词短语作宾语补足语)

His success made me proud of him.

他的成功使我为他骄傲。(我为他的成功而骄傲。)(形容词短语作宾语补足语)

My mother put everything in order.

我妈妈把一切整理得井然有序。(介词短语作宾语补足语)

Would you like me to go with you?

你想让我和你一起走吗?(不定式短语作宾语补足语)

Don't you see her coming towards us?
你没看见她朝我们走过来吗?(分词短语作宾语补足语)
The children were heard singing the song.
人们听到孩子们唱歌了。(分词短语作主语补足语)
He was asked to make a speech at the meeting.
他被要求在会上发表演讲。(不定式短语作主语补足语)

词类与句子成分的关系可用下表表示:

	主语	宾语	表语	定语	状语	宾(主)语补足语
名词	√	√	√	√	√	√
代词	√	√	√	√		√
形容词			√	√		√
副词			√		√	
数词	√	√	√	√		√
不定式	√	√	√	√	√	√
分词			√	√	√	√
动名词	√	√	√	√		√
介词短语			√	√	√	√

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. **Name each of the underlined members of the following sentences.**

1. I read a book after breakfast this morning.
2. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
3. The doctor warned me not to smoke again.
4. God help those who help themselves.
5. Your plan to build a good library considers first the interest of the students.
6. In those years the cost of living rose by nearly 5 percent.
7. There are a number of students interested in psychology.
8. A university consists of teachers, administrators and students.
9. They have a four-month-old baby.
10. Telephoning a place outside your area is called telephoning long distance.

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. 主语:a number of students
2. 谓语动词:consists of
3. 宾语:a book, those, themselves

4. 表语：a friend indeed
5. 定语：in need, to build a good library, of the students, interested in psychology, four-month-old, outside your area
6. 状语：this morning, in those years, by nearly 5 percent
7. 宾语补足语：not to smoke again
8. 主语补足语：telephoning long distance

基本句型

句子（指简单句）通常由主语和谓语两个部分构成。主语相当于句子的主题，指明句子讲的是什么，一般是对方已知的信息；谓语是对有关问题加以说明的部分，一般是向对方提供新的信息。主语主要由名词词组担任，而谓语由动词词组担当。

动词词组的不同结构形式决定着不同的基本句型，所谓的基本句型就是几种基本的谓语结构的格局。英语的基本句型主要有五种。这些基本句型可以转化为千变万化的句子。

（一）主系表（SVC）（或主动补）

本结构中谓语动词是系动词，后面接表语，也有的称其为补语。常见的系动词有 be（是），become（变成），look（看起来），seem（似乎），get（变得），feel（感到），grow（变得），hold（保持），remain（仍然是），stay（保持），turn（变成），smell（闻起来），come（变得），taste（尝起来），sound（听起来），stand（保持），fall（变得）等。例如：

The small baby has finally fallen asleep.

这个小孩子终于睡着了。

The weather is getting warmer and warmer.

天气越来越暖和了。

My job is to teach English.

我的工作是教英语。

The plan sounds perfect.

这个计划听起来完美无缺。

She looks more beautiful than before.

她看上去比以前更漂亮了。

Silk feels soft and smooth.

丝绸摸起来柔软而光滑。

（二）主动（SV）

此句型中的谓语动词是不及物动词，常带有状语。例如：

He has been singing and dancing for nearly three hours.

他唱歌，跳舞，差不多持续了 3 个小时。

I'm going to fly to Shanghai.

我要坐飞机到上海去。

The tourists have not arrived.

那些旅游者还没有到达。

The old man walked very slowly.

这位老人走得很慢。

She didn't sleep well because of noise last night.

昨晚，因为有噪声，她没有睡好。

The plane will take off ten minutes later.

飞机将在10分钟后起飞。

(三)主动宾(SVO)

本结构中的谓语动词是及物动词,后接宾语。例如:

He has studied English for years.

他学英语已经好多年了。

We had a lot of snow last winter.

去年冬天我们这儿下了很多雪。

The additional work will take another five days.

额外的工作还得需要5天。

A little care would have prevented the accident.

稍微小心就将避免事故。

In those days they sowed the wheat by hand.

在那些日子里,他们靠手来播种小麦。

(四)主动宾宾(SVOO)

本结构中的谓语动词是带双宾语的及物动词。两个宾语中,前者为间接宾语,后者为直接宾语。常见的这类及物动词有 bring(带来), give(给予), tell(告诉), leave(留下), read(读给), write(写给), send(送给), teach(教给), get(得到), show(出示), pass(递给), take(带走), lend(借给), hand(传递), award(授予), rent(租), buy(买), pay(支付)等。例如:

My parents gave me a book as a birthday gift.

我父母送给我书当生日礼物。

Could you do me a favour?

你能帮我一个忙吗?

Show the driver your ticket, please.

请给司机看看你的车票。

I bought him a new shirt.

我给他买了一件新衬衣。

Can you spare me a few minutes of your valuable time?

你能抽出点宝贵的时间给我吗?

(五)主动宾补(SVOC)

本句型中的谓语动词是一个可以带复合宾语的及物动词,即除了有一个直接宾语外,还要加上宾语补足语,句子的意义才能完整。名词、形容词、动词不定式、分词以及介词短语都能充当宾语补足语。在宾语加宾语补足语构成的复合宾语中,宾语与它的补足语之间存在着逻辑(即意义上)的主谓关系。这样的动词有很多,例如:see(看见), warn(警告), need(需要), hear(听到), catch(发现), call(称), like(喜欢), make(使), discover(发现), leave(听任), find (发现), appoint(任命), elect(选举), prefer(宁愿)等。例如:

We elected him our monitor.

我们选他做班长。

The president made him our spokesman.

主席让他作为我们的发言人。

The doctor warned him to drink less.

医生警告他少喝酒。

I like my guests to feel at home.

我想让我的客人感到无拘无束。

The policeman found the check hidden under the mattress.

警察发现了在床垫下的支票。



Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Write SV, SVC, SVO, SVOO, or SVOC after each of the following sentences.

1. The sun rises in the east.
2. My mother saw him steal the money.
3. He found me a new magazine.
4. The worker is running the machine.
5. The room is in a mess.
6. The department store has closed.
7. That flower smells sweet.
8. Retelling the story has many advantages in improving oral English skills.
9. I paid the repairman thirty dollars.
10. You may get everything ready before seven o'clock.
11. She often teaches these children to sing English songs.
12. The story sounds very interesting, but it is not true.
13. Would you please pass me a cup of coffee?
14. That Italian can speak Chinese very well.
15. When did you get up this morning?

Ⅱ. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate verbs given below.

remember	care	taste	appointed	matters	insisted	sounds	worked	look	prefer

1. I ______ cycling to walking to work.
2. I don't ______ what you do, but please do something.
3. When you listen to him carefully, his plan ______ true.
4. That fish doesn't ______ so good as it looks.
5. My mother couldn't ______ having ever promised me that.
6. The president ______ Mr. Shaw director of public relations.
7. He ______ on going to school with me.
8. I have to ______ very late to make up my absence last week.
9. The roses ______ especially pleasant after the rain.
10. Quality ______ more than quantity.

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. SV：1，6，15

SVC：5，7，12

SVO：4，8，14

SVOO：3，9，13

SVOC：2，10，11

Ⅱ. 1. prefer　2. care　3. sounds　4. taste　5. remember

6. appointed　7. insisted　8. worked　9. look　10. matters



构词法

任何一种语言的词的构成都是有一定规律的。这种规律就称为构词法。掌握了构词法的知识,能使我们更好地理解词义、认识新词和扩大词汇量。构词方法有许多,我们主要分为三种:派生法、合成法和转换法。

(一)派生法(derivation)

在一个词根的前面或后面加上一个词缀,从而产生一个新词,这种构词方法称为派生词。加在前面的词缀叫前缀(prefix),加在后面的词缀叫后缀(suffix)。

前缀:大多数的前缀并不影响词根的词性而仅对词根的意义加以修饰或限制,表示否定、相反、程度、重新、方位等。最常见的前缀如下:

1. 表示相反的意义。常见的有 un-, dis-, im-, in-, il-, ir-, de-等。例如:uncomfortable(不舒服),unlike(不像),impossible(不可能),abnormal(不正常的),illogical(不合逻辑的),irregular(不规则的),decode(解码)等。

2. 表示向背的意义。常见的有 pro-, anti-, counter-等。例如:pro-American(亲美派),pro-communist(支持共产主义的),antibiotic(抗菌),anti-Japanese(抗日),counterattack(反击),counter-act(反作用)等。

3. 表示程度的意义。常见的有 mini-, under-, over-, super-等。例如:mini-car(小轿车),miniskirt(迷你裙),underground(地铁),undercharge(过低的索价),over-dressed(穿多了),oversimplify(过于简单化),superpower(超级大国),supernatural(超自然的)等。

4. 表示方位的意义。常见的有 trans-, inter-, sub-等。例如:transpacific(横渡太平洋的),transcontinental(洲际的),international(国际的),interdependent(互相依赖的),subconscious(下意识的),submarine(潜水艇)等。

5. 表示时序的意义。常见的有 per-, post-等。例如:pre-announce(宣布之前的),post-war(战后的),post-election(选举后的)等。

6. 表示其他意思的前缀有 re-(重新),mis-(错误的),ex-(前),pre-(预先),fore-(先的),self-(自我的),ultra-(外、极),semi-(半),vice-(副),bi-(双),multi-(多),auto-(自动的)等。例如:retell(复述),misunderstand(误解),ex-wife(前妻),prepare(预备),foresee(预见),self-control(自我控制),ultraviolet(紫外线),semicolon(分号),vice-president(副总统),bimonthly(双月的),multinational(多国的),automobile(汽车)等。从以上的例词中可以看出,大多数前缀通常只有词汇意义,没有语法作用。但也有少数几个前缀会引起词性的改变。例如:befriend(亲近),enslave(奴役),embody(体现),asleep(睡着)等。

后缀:英语的后缀具有较强的语法作用,加在词根上便可改变词性。许多名词、形容词、副词以及动词都是由词根加后缀构成的。

1. 名词的常用后缀有:(1)-er, -ee, -or, -ian, -ese, -ist, -ant 等用于构成表示人或物的名称。例如:teacher(教师),employee(雇员),translator(译员),physician(内科医生),Chinese(中国人),dentist(牙医),assistant(助手)等。(2)-ance, -ence, -(a)tion, -sion, -age, -ment, -al, -ness, -ing, -ics, -th, -ure, -ship 等用于表示行为、性质、状态等的抽象名词。例如:acceptance(接受),dependence(依赖),preparation(准备),decision(决定),coverage(所包括的范围),movement(运动),arrival(到达),happiness

（幸福），wedding（婚礼），economics（经济学），width（宽度），literature（文学），friendship（友谊）等。

2. 形容词的常用后缀有-ful，-able，-ible，-ish，-less，-al，-ous，-ive，-an，-ant，-ent，-ic，-ary，-en，-ly，-y，-like 等。例如：beautiful（美丽的），comfortable（舒适的），responsible（负责的），childish（幼稚的），useless（无用的），international（国际的），famous（著名的），active（积极的），Italian（意大利的），pleasant（令人愉快的），consistent（一贯的），scientific（科学的），elementary（基础的），wooden（木制的），friendly（友好的），cloudy（多云的），childlike（天真的）等。

3. 副词的常用后缀有-ly，-wise，-ward 等。例如：beautifully（美丽的），horribly（可怕的），otherwise（否则），likewise（同样地），forward（向前），upward（向上）等。

4. 动词的常用后缀有-en，-fy，-ise（-ize）等。例如：soften（使……变软），thicken（加厚），simplify（使……简单化），beautify（美化），industrialize（使……工业化），modernise（使……现代化）等。

（二）合成法（compounding）

由两个或两个以上的词合成一个新词，这种构成法就叫合成法。合成词之间有的要用连字符连接，有的直接连在一起。

1. 合成名词，例如：birthplace（出生地），sportsman（运动员），dining-room（餐厅），mother-in-law（婆婆，岳母），textbook（教科书），toothbrush（牙刷），typewriter（打字机），weekend（周末）等。

2. 合成形容词，例如：world-famous（世界闻名的），duty-free（免税的），well-prepared（准备充分的），warm-hearted（热心的），first-class（第一流的），light-gray（浅灰色的），dog-tired（累极了的），bloodthirsty（嗜血的，残忍好杀的）等。

3. 合成动词，例如：overthrow（推翻），sightsee（观光），whitewash（粉刷），mass-produce（大批量生产），outline（概括），honeymoon（度蜜月），nickname（给……起绰号），counter-attack（反击）等。

（三）转换法（conversion）

由一个词性转化为另一个词性而词的原形不变的构词法叫转换法。转换后的词义与转换前的词义通常有密切的联系，但有时差异很大。

1. 动词转换为名词。例如：

to laugh heartily→a heart laugh

to cry bitterly→a bitter cry

2. 名词转换为动词。例如：

fresh water→to water the flowers

a hand →to hand in the exercises-books

3. 形容词转换为动词。例如：

an empty box→to empty one's box

a slow train→the train slowed down

有些双音节词转换后，重音发生变化。通常名词的重音在前，动词的重音在后。当然，有的读音也不变。例如：

	名词	动词
record	/ˈrekɔːd/ 唱片	/rɪˈkɔːd/ 录制
increase	/ˈɪnkriːs/ 增加	/ɪnˈkriːs/ 增加

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. **Give nouns corresponding to the following words.**

safe, build, act, locate, possible, begin, enter, hate, enthusiastic, succeed, difficult, free, happy, heroic, lead, industrial, liberate, assign, exposed, beautiful

Ⅱ. **Change the noun form into its verb form.**

meaningfulness, communication, memory, repetition, improvement, visualization, strength, ability

Ⅲ. **Analyze the formation of the following words.**

1. useless, selfless, hopeless
2. illness, darkness, carelessness
3. misrule, misspell, mispronounce
4. reading-room, drinking water, writing-desk
5. well-written, well-cultivated, well-known
6. kind-hearted, short-sighted, gray-haired
7. sister-in-law, brother-in-law, father-in-law
8. beautiful, careful, cheerful

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. safety, building, action, location, possibility, beginning, entrance, hatred, enthusiasm, success, difficulty, freedom, happiness, hero, leading, industry, liberation, assignment, exposure, beauty

Ⅱ. mean, communicate, memorize, repeat, improve, visualize, strengthen, enable

Ⅲ. 1. *n.* +less→*adj.* 派生词

2. *adj.* +ness→*n.* 派生词

3. mis+*v.* →*v.* 派生词

4. gerund+*n.* →*n.* 合成词

5. well+*p. p.* →*adj.* 合成词

6. *adj.* +*n.* +ed→*adj.* 合成词

7. *n.* +prep. +*n.* →*n.* 合成词

8. *n.* +ful→*adj.* 派生词



句子的用途分类

英语的句子按其用途分为陈述句、疑问句、感叹句和祈使句。

(一)陈述句(declarative sentence)

叙述一项事实的句子就叫陈述句。陈述句又可分为肯定句和否定句。例如:

She has been working in Shanghai since 1985.

她自1985年以来一直在上海工作。

The picture is worth a thousand dollars.

这幅画值1000美元。

Doctors say that sleepwalking is much more common than is generally supposed.

医生说,梦游症症状比人们通常认为的要多得多。

I am no more mad than you are.

我和你一样都没疯。

Nothing can prevent him.

什么也阻止不了他。

(二)疑问句(interrogative sentence)

用来提问的句子叫疑问句。疑问句分为四种:一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句和反义疑问句。

1. 一般疑问句(general question)

用 yes 或 no 来回答的疑问句叫一般疑问句。其结构是在陈述句的主语前加助动词或情态动词。在特殊情况下,如表示惊异、怀疑、猜测时,可用自然语序。例如:

Do you find it difficult to learn English?

你认为学英语很难吗?

Have you finished doing your homework?

你作业写完了吗?

Are you going to Beijing this summer vacation?

今年暑假你要去北京吗?

Did he stop the car and waited for the red light to change to green?

他停下车来等待红灯变绿灯了吗?

Will Prof. Smith come to give us a lecture on current affairs next week?

史密斯教授下周会给我们做时事报告吗?

2. 特殊疑问句(special question)

针对句中某一部分提问的叫特殊疑问句,它由疑问词引出,常用的疑问词有 who(谁),whose(谁的),which(哪个,哪些),what(什么),when(何时),where(何地),why(为什么),how(怎么样)等。例如:

Who has been waiting for her boss for almost an hour?

谁等老板一直等了差不多一个小时?(提问部分为主语)

Whom did you visit yesterday evening?

昨晚你去看谁了？(提问部分为宾语)

Whose sister works in the retail store?

谁的妹妹在零售商店工作？(提问部分为主语的一部分，whose 要和它所修饰的名词连用)

Which do you prefer, coffee or tea?

你喜欢喝咖啡还是茶？(提问的是指示代词、指示形容词)

What does his brother look like?

他的兄弟长得什么样？(提问的是物，主语或宾语)

When do you usually get up every morning?

你每天早晨几点起床？(提问的是时间。when 所涉及的时间范围比较大，可以指"几年前""上午"这些大范围时间，也可以指具体的时刻)

Where did you put your notebook?

你把笔记本放哪儿了？(提问的是地点)

Why does the moon look much bigger than any other star except the sun?

为什么月亮看上去比除太阳以外的其他任何恒星都要大？(提问的是原因)

How often do you visit your parents?

你多长时间去看一次父母？(提问长度、数目、数量、状况、距离和频率等用 how)

3. 选择疑问句(alternative question)

提供两种或两种以上的情况供对方选择的疑问句叫选择疑问句。选择疑问句通常由两个一般疑问句中间加 or 构成，后一个问句常用省略结构。例如：

Are you going to the cinema or to the theater?

你要去看电影还是看戏？

Did he like listening to light music or pop music?

他是喜欢听轻音乐还是流行音乐？

4. 反义疑问句(disjunctive question)

对陈述句所叙述的事实提出相反的疑问的句子。反义疑问句的构成由"陈述部分＋反义疑问部分[助动词 do(does)，have(has)，be 或情态动词＋主语]"构成。陈述部分如果是肯定结构，反义疑问部分则用否定结构；陈述部分如果是否定结构，反义疑问部分则是肯定结构。反义疑问句通常表示说话人怀疑或没有把握，要求对方用 yes 或 no 来回答。答案是肯定时，回答就用 yes，答案是否定时，回答就用 no。例如：

You are waiting for your daughter, aren't you?

你在等你女儿，是不是？

You haven't seen him for a long time, have you?

你好久没看到他了，不是吗？

Yesterday Mary didn't finish her homework, did she?

昨天，玛丽没完成作业，是不是？

They had no way to communicate with the company, did they?

他们无法与公司取得联系，是不是？

(三)感叹句(exclamatory sentence)

感叹句也叫惊叹句，用来表示喜、怒、哀、乐等强烈感情，通常用 how 或 what 来引导。其构成为 how 或 what ＋被强调的部分＋陈述句的其他部分。例如：

How beautiful the girl is!

那个女孩儿多么漂亮！

How happy they were when they passed the CET-4.

他们通过了大学英语四级考试，多高兴啊！

What a lovely day it is!

多好的天气啊！

What an interesting story she is telling us!

她在给我们讲一个多么有趣的故事啊！

当然，感叹句也不仅限于由 what 或 how 引导的句子，有时一个陈述句、祈使句或疑问句，用较强的语调，也可以表示惊叹。例如：

Wonderful!

太好了！

Goodness (me)!

天啊！

Long live the friendship between our two nations!

愿我们两国的友谊地久天长！

So you are here at last!

你终于来了！

(四)祈使句(imperative sentence)

表示请求、命令的句子叫祈使句。祈使句的主语，即听话者(you)，常常被省略。谓语没有时态变化，用原形动词，句尾常用惊叹号。否定式是由原形动词前加 don't 或 never 构成。有些祈使句涉及第一和第三人称，通常用动词 let 引出。let's 表示说话者一方和听话者一方都包括在内，let us 则指说话者一方。例如：

Tell me the truth, please.

请把真实情况告诉我。

Don't be late for class again!

上课不要迟到了！

Let's learn the new lesson today!

咱们今天学新课！

Don't let us go there on Sunday.

(你)不要让我们星期天去那儿。

Never ask him for help!

永远不要找他帮忙！



Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Decide whether each of the following is a declarative, interrogative, imperative or exclamatory sentence.

1. What a pity it is to lose the game again!
2. Don't be afraid of making mistakes.
3. Who are responsible for the company's advertisement?
4. He advised me not to smoke any more.

5. Believe in yourself and your ability to deal with difficult problems.

6. Something is not arranged in a good order, is it?

7. The doctor told me to take the medicine three times a day.

8. How brave you were to save the drowning boy!

9. Do you expect the price to rise or to fall?

10. Let us try!

Ⅱ. Change each of the following sentences into a special question to which the underlined part is the answer.

1. We came here to study English.

2. The doctor advised me to eat more vegetable.

3. Liaoning Normal University is in Dalian.

4. His mother lost her job again.

5. I have to take No. 19 Bus to go to school.

6. She can tell me the result next week.

7. Karl Marx could speak seven languages.

8. There is little water in the bottle.

9. His seventy-year-old grandmother is quite all right.

10. Lucy's father graduated from college in 1985.

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. declarative sentence: 4, 7

2. interrogative sentence: 3, 6, 9

3. imperative sentence: 2, 5, 10

4. exclamatory sentence: 1, 8

Ⅱ. 1. Why did you come here?

2. What did the doctor advise you to do?

3. Where is Liaoning Normal University?

4. Who lost her job again?

5. Which bus do you have to take to go to school?

6. Whom can she tell the result next week?

7. How many languages could Karl Marx speak?

8. How much water is there in the bottle?

9. How is his seven-year-old grandmother?

10. When did Lucy's father graduate from college?

句子的结构分类

英语句子除了按其用途分类以外，还可按照结构分类。在这种情况下，句子可以分为简单句、并列句和复合句。

(一)简单句(simple sentence)

只有一个主语(或并列主语)和一个谓语动词(或并列谓语动词)的句子叫作简单句。例如：

I'm going to Beijing to take the examination.

我要到北京去参加考试。

Pride goes before a fall.

骄者必败。

She locked the door and took on the bus to downtown.

她锁了门，坐上了去城里的公共汽车。

(二)并列句(compound sentence)

由两个或两个以上的简单句通过并列连词而连在一起的句子叫作并列句。常用的并列连词有 and(和)，but(但是)，so(因此，所以)，yet(然而)，still(仍然)，however(然而，但是)，or(或者，否则)，otherwise(否则)，while(而)，whereas(而，反过来)，for(因为，由于)，not only... but also...(不仅……而且……)，neither... nor...(既不……也不……)，either... or...(不是……就是……)等。例如：

The old man was dying, and he knew it.

这个老人快不行了，他自己也很清楚。

George took a test three times, but each time he failed it.

乔治参加了三次考试，但每次都没及格。

He was ill, so he didn't attend the meeting today.

他今天病了，所以没开会。

She worked very hard, yet she couldn't finish the task on time.

她工作很努力，然而还是没能按时完成任务。

I see your point of view; still, I don't agree with you.

我明白你的观点，但是我并不同意。

You ask me to do the work. I'm afraid, however, that I am not able to do it.

你让我做这事，然而我恐怕不能胜任。

We must hurry, or we'll be late for class.

我们得快点，否则上课就会迟到。

Do what you are told; otherwise, you will be punished.

让你干啥就干啥，否则将被惩罚。

He went out, while I stayed at home.

他出去了，而我却留在家里。

Some people like fish, whereas others hate it.

有人喜欢吃鱼，而有人不喜欢。

We can't go, for it is raining.

我们不能去,因为正在下雨。

She is not only my teacher, but also my best friend.

她不仅是我的老师,还是我的好朋友。

Neither you nor I know the answer.

你我都不知道答案。

Either your mother or father is expected.

你的妈妈或爸爸谁来都行。

(三)复合句(complex sentence)

由一个主句和一个或一个以上的从句所构成的句子结构叫复合句,也称为主从复合句。主句和从句之间由关联词连接。根据从句在复合句中所起的作用,从句又分为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句、定语从句和状语从句。例如:

That the earth moves round the sun is well known to all of us.

地球绕着太阳转,这是我们大家都熟悉的。(由 that 引导的主语从句)

He asked the teacher why some words were hard to remember.

他问老师为什么有些词很难记住。(由 why 引导的宾语从句)

China is not what it used to be.

中国已经不再是过去的中国了。(由 what 引导的表语从句)

I have an idea that we should go out for a picnic tomorrow.

我有个想法,明天去野餐。(由 that 引导的同位语从句)

I feel just the same as you do.

我的感觉和你一样。(由 as 引导的定语从句)

Since you are busy, I won't trouble you.

既然你很忙,我就不打扰你了。(由 since 引导的状语从句)

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Decide whether each of the following sentences is a simple, compound or complex sentence.

1. Who will chair the meeting is of interest to many of them.
2. I've just had some good news: I've been admitted to Dalian Foreign Languages Institute.
3. Voices and music have been added to colour and pictures to catch the ear as well as the eye.
4. She is fat, whereas her husband is thin.
5. The reason for her success is that she works very hard.
6. At the class meeting, he suggested forming a football team.
7. If you fill out this form, you can take books out of the library.
8. Sometimes I am very excited, sometimes I am in low spirits.
9. Every day the newspapers carry a few pages of classified ads; in the large Sunday editions there may be several sections of them.
10. The sooner, the better.

Ⅱ. Choose the one that best completes the sentence.

1. You may ______ do it yourself ______ leave it to me.
   A. either; or B. both; and
   C. not only; but also D. whether; or
2. ______ you open an account you can talk to several banks to find the one with the best services, hours and interest rates.
   A. Before B. Where
   C. After D. Until
3. My daughter did not have her dinner ______ she finished her homework.
   A. as B. that
   C. until D. if
4. The man ______ works in that company is her friend's father.
   A. which B. who
   C. what D. whom
5. You do not have to do it ______ you don't want to.
   A. whether B. how
   C. or D. if
6. Go to see the doctor, ______ your cold may get worse.
   A. while B. or
   C. while D. yet
7. ______ many people benefit from the new method, it has some clear disadvantages.
   A. If B. As
   C. Although D. Provided
8. He is not aware of the reasons ______ his mother lost her job.
   A. how B. when
   C. where D. why
9. The fact is ______ it must take time to study any foreign languages.
   A. that B. what
   C. how D. if
10. He hasn't decided with ______ he should first make contact.
    A. which B. how
    C. whom D. that

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. simple sentence: 3, 6
2. compound sentence: 2, 4, 8, 9
3. complex sentence: 1, 5, 7, 10

Ⅱ. 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. C

时态（一）

英语动词从时间上看，有现在、过去、将来及过去将来之分。从体上看，有一般、进行、完成以及完成进行的区别。动词的"时"和"体"都是语法范畴，"时"是表示时间区别的动词形式，而"体"是表示动作或过程在某一时间内处于何种状态的动词形式。因此，我们通常把英语动词的"时"和"体"结合起来，即时态。

英语时态共有十六种。现以动词 do 为例，将其十六种形式列表如下：

时间 体	现在	过去	将来	过去将来
一般	do(es)	did	shall (will) do	should (would) do
进行	am (is, are) doing	was (were) doing	shall (will) be doing	should (would) be doing
完成	have (has) done	had done	shall (will) have done	should (would) have done
完成进行	have (has) been doing	had been doing	shall (will) have been doing	should (would) have been doing

以上十六种时态中，过去将来进行时、过去将来完成时、将来完成进行时以及过去将来完成进行时很少使用，所以我们将不做介绍。我们主要对其他十二种时态做简单介绍。

（一）一般现在时(simple present tense)

一般现在时有以下主要用法：

1. 表示客观真理、科学事实、格言及其他不受时间限制的客观存在。例如：

One and one makes two.

一加一等于二。

The earth moves round .he sun.

地球围着太阳转。

Water freezes at 0 ℃.

水在 0 摄氏度时结冰。

Patience wears out stones.

水滴石穿。

2. 表示经常性、习惯性或反复发生的动作或存在的状态。常用的表示重复和频率的时间状语的副词有 often(经常)，usually(通常)，always(总是)，sometimes(有时)，never(从不)，generally(一般说来)，occasionally(偶尔)，every day(每天)，once a week(一周一次)，seldom(很少)等。例如：

He does morning exercises before breakfast every day.

他每天早饭前都要晨练。

Mary's mother teaches English at a college.

玛丽的妈妈在一所大学里教英语。

How often do you usually see a film?

你多长时间看一次电影?

3. 表示主语的现在的特征、性格、能力等。例如：

He is always ready to help others.

他总是乐于助人。

The Yangtze River flows through Wuhan.

长江流经武汉。

She can speak both French and German very well.

她的法语和德语说得都很好。

4. 表示按规定、计划和安排好的将来发生的动作。例如：

The train leaves for Beijing at 6:15.

开往北京的火车在6:15发车。

When does the plane for Shanghai take off?

到上海的飞机什么时候起飞?

Tomorrow is Monday.

明天星期一。

注意：这种用法仅限于少数动词，如 arrive, be, begin, close, come, depart, dine, end, go, leave, open, return, sail, start, stop 等。

5. 在条件或时间状语从句中表示将来的动作。例如：

I will discuss this with you when I see you tomorrow.

我明天见到你时再与你讨论这件事。

We will start out as soon as he comes.

他一来，我们就动身。

The Smiths will go for an outing if it is fine next weekend.

下个周末如果天气好，史密斯一家就去郊游。

I will let you use the room provided (providing) you keep it clean and tidy.

我可以让你用这个房间，但你要保持房间整洁。

6. 表示某些文学作品中的情节描写、电影说明、剧情介绍、新闻标题、小说章节题目、电视动作解说词、舞台动作说明和图片说明或用来引述书刊材料等。例如：

The little boy goes up to the policeman and says, "There's a car accident over there". (小说的描写)

那个小男孩儿走过来对警察说:"那边出了车祸"。

The Queen arrives for the Opening of Parliament. (图片解说)

女王出席国会开幕式。

(二)一般过去时(simple past tense)

一般过去时主要用来表示过去某时发生的动作或状态，常和表示过去的时间状语，如 yesterday(昨天), last year(去年), in 1988(在1988年), two months later(两个月之后)等连用。例如：

He began to study English when he was five years old.

他五岁时就开始学英语了。

I spent my winter vocation in my hometown last year.

去年寒假我是在老家度过的。

I am sorry, I thought I had told you about it.

对不起,我还以为告诉你了呢。

My mother often came to help me at that time.

那时,我妈经常来帮助我。

(三)一般将来时(simple future tense)

一般将来时表示将要发生的动作或状况。英语中没有一种单一的表示将来时间的动词形式,通常采用以下几种形式表示将来时。

1. will/shall+动词原形表示将要发生的动作或状态。will 用于第一、二、三人称,shall 只用于第一人称。例如:

They will be free tomorrow.

他们明天有空。

We'll have to be careful in doing business with them.

我们跟他们做生意时要小心。

I shall be forty years on my next birthday.

我再过生日就 40 岁了。

2. be going to+动词原形

这种形式主要表示最近打算、准备去做的事情或即将发生或肯定要发生的事情。例如:

How are you going to spend your summer vocation?

暑假你准备怎样过?

There's going to be a lecture on psychology this evening.

今晚有一场心理学讲座。

We are going to visit the Great Wall tomorrow.

我们明天要去长城。

3. be about to+动词原形

这种形式表示即将发生的动作。例如:

Please get everything ready. We have no time.

请把一切都准备好,我们没有时间了。

We are about to leave. Do you have anything to say?

我们要走了,你还有什么要说的吗?

4. be to+动词原形

这种形式表示必须或按计划要发生的事或用来征求对方意见。例如:

The president is to visit Europe next year.

总统来年要出访欧洲。

The school children are to go to school next week.

学生们下周该上学了。

5. 一般现在时:一种情形是限于某些动词,表示按计划或时刻表要发生的事。例如:

When does the summer vacation end?

暑假什么时候结束?

School begins on September 1.

9 月 1 日开学。

另一种情形是在条件状语和时间状语从句中,用一般现在时表示将来时间。例如:

You'll see many lovely animals if you go to the zoo.

如果你到动物园,就能看到可爱的小动物。

I will let you have the book when I'm through.

书看完了就给你。

It won't be long before the rain stops.

很快雨就会停的。

6. 现在进行时:限于某些动词(arrive, come, go, leave, start, die, have 等),表示按计划安排要发生的事。例如:

They are having an English evening tomorrow evening.

明晚,他们有英语晚会。

We are going to Shanghai by train next week.

下周,我们坐火车去上海。

(四)过去将来时(future-in-the-past tense)

过去将来时主要表示过去某一时间内将要发生的动作或存在的状态。其构成为 should (would)+动词原形。例如:

He told me that he would meet me at the airport.

他告诉我他要到机场接我。

I didn't expect that all of them would be there.

我没想到他们都在那儿。

与一般将来时一样,过去将来时也可用 was (were) to+动词原形,was (were) about+动词原形,或 was (were) to+动词原形等形式表示过去某时间内计划、打算或一定要进行的动作。例如:

He was about to go out when telephone rang.

他刚要出门,电话铃响了。

She said she would help her husband wash the car the next day.

她说她第二天要帮助丈夫刷车。

(五)现在进行时(present continuous tense)

现在进行时主要表示现在或现在这一阶段正在进行的动作。其构成为现在时的 be+现在分词。

1. 表示说话时正在进行中(尚未完成)的动作。例如:

Listen, who are they talking about?

听,他们正在谈论谁?

Someone is asking for you on the phone.

有人找你接电话。

2. 表示包括说话时间在内的一段时间内正在进行的行为(持续性)。当然,说话时不一定正在从事该行为。例如:

He is studying French in the foreign languages department of Liaoning Normal University.

他正在辽师大外语系学法语。

We are making Dalian more beautiful.

我们正在把大连建得更美好。

3. 有些动词(如 come, go, leave, start, stay 等)的现在进行时形式也可以表示即将发生的动作。例如:

My parents are coming to see me next week.

下周我父母要来看我。

The train is leaving for Shenzhen.

这火车是开往深圳的。

4. 有些表示状态和感觉的动词不用于(或在某个词义上)进行时,这样的词有 love(爱),like(喜欢),hate(很不喜欢),want(想要),need(需要),prefer(更喜欢),wish(希望),know(知道),believe(相信),think(以为),look(看起来),feel(感觉),seem(看起来),show(说明),mind(介意),have(有),sound(听起来),taste(尝起来),desire(期望),matter(要紧),remain(保持)等。例如:

That doesn't matter.

那没关系。

I feel a sharp pain in my chest.

我胸口疼得厉害。

(六)过去进行时(past continuous tense)

过去进行时由 be 的过去式+现在分词构成,主要表示过去某个时刻或某段时间内正在进行的动作。例如:

What were you doing at ten last night?

昨晚 10 点钟你在干什么?

In those years I was having a hard time.

在那些日子里,我的处境很艰难。

当然,与现在进行时相类似的 come, go, leave, start, stay 等动词的过去进行时形式可以表示将要发生的动作。例如:

He said that he was coming to see me.

他说他要来看我。

He was leaving early the next morning.

他第二天一早就走。

(七)将来进行时(future continuous tense)

1. 将来进行时是站在现在的立场顺着时间的长河向前看,预见未来。其构成为 be 的将来式+现在分词。主要用法如下:

预见将来某一特定时刻已处于进行过程中或按计划在未来将要进行的行为。例如:

This time next week I will be studying English in Shanghai.

下星期的这个时候我将在上海学英语了。

She will be waiting for me at the hotel after dinner.

晚饭后她将在旅馆等着我。

2. 将来进行时常和某些动词一起表示不需要特意安排,而自然会发生或势必要发生的动作。例如:

When shall we be meeting again?

我们什么时候再碰头?

I will be seeing him in the office tomorrow.
明天我在办公室能见到他。
The train won't be leaving until 11:50.
火车11:50才开。

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Put the verb in the bracket into the most suitable tense of the verbs given in the brackets.

1. I (tell) you the news when you ask me to.
2. John was 20 when his mother (die).
3. She finally realized that it (be) wise to think about the cost of going abroad.
4. The two brothers already (speak) the third foreign language and now they (learn) the fourth.
5. I am sure you (find) a job when he (return) to China.
6. The mother (advise) his son not to get married till he was 30.
7. I never (stop) working so long as I (live).
8. In a hundred years time people (go) to other planets for their holidays.
9. Look, father (smoke) his after-dinner cigarettes.
10. As a result of the bad weather, aeroplanes (not take) off tonight.

Ⅱ. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 我的家乡冬天经常下雪。
2. 按计划,期末考试将在大下周进行。
3. 昨天的这个时候我在弹钢琴。
4. 前天我朋友给我送来了生日礼物。
5. 今天下午我喝的是茶,可我平时喜欢喝咖啡。
6. 爸爸每天吃完晚饭都要抽烟。
7. 我每周有两次英国文学课。
8. 金钱并不一定会给我们带来幸福。
9. 今晚七点,我们不要去拜访他们,那会儿他们一定在吃饭。
10. 小声点! 孩子在睡觉。

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. shall tell 2. died 3. would be 4. speak, are learning 5. will find, returns
6. advised 7. will never stop, live 8. will go 9. is smoking 10. are not taking

Ⅱ. 1. It snows very often in winter in my hometown.
2. According to our schedule, the examinations take place the week after the next.
3. At this time yesterday I was playing the piano.
4. The day before yesterday, my friend brought me my birthday gift.
5. This afternoon I drank tea, but I usually drink coffee.
6. Father smokes a cigarette after dinner.

7. I come to the English Literature class twice a week.

8. Money does not necessarily bring happiness.

9. We should not call on them at 7 this evening. They will be having dinner then.

10. Be quiet. The baby is sleeping.

时态（二）

（八）现在完成时（present perfect tense）

现在完成时用来表示过去开始，但持续到现在的动作；或表示过去发生的动作，但对现在仍留下某种后果和影响。其构成为助动词 have (has)＋过去分词。例如：

I have never made such a mistake.

我从未犯过这样的错误。

I have studied English for more than ten years.

我学英语已经十多年了。

My mother has seen the film many times.

这电影我妈妈已经看了好多遍了。

He has done a lot for us.

他为我们做了许多。

注意：现在完成时和一般过去时的区别：

1. 当有表示具体的过去时间状语（包括 when）时，只能用一般过去时。例如：

When did you graduate from college?

你什么时候大学毕业的？

She bought a new car last week.

她上周买了一辆新车。

I lived in Shenyang when I was a child.

我小的时候住在沈阳。

2. 当有表示到现在为止这段时间的状语时，多用现在完成时。例如：

I have been very busy recently.

最近我很忙。

We have learned a lot about English Literature up till now.

到目前为止，我们学了很多英国文学方面的知识。

She has not seen me since 1990.

自 1990 年以来她就再没见到我。

常用的表示从过去某一时刻起至说话时为止的时间状语有 this morning（今天，早上），this week（这周），this month（这个月），this term（这学期），this spring（今年春天），this year（今年），in the last few days（在过去的几天里），these days（这些日子），up to now（直到现在），up till now（直到现在），for two years（两年），so far（到目前为止），lately（最近），recently（最近，近来）等。

3. 在用 already，just，ever，never，yet，as yet，even 这类副词作状语时，多用现在完成时。例如：

I have already finished my homework.

我的作业已经写完了。

He has just got a letter from his parents.

他刚收到父母的来信。

Have you ever been to Summer Palace?

你去过颐和园吗？

We haven't reached an agreement as yet.

我们还没有达成协议。

4. 当强调一个过去的动作，而不涉及它对现在的影响时，通常用一般过去时；如果谈一个过去发生的事，不考虑它发生的时间，而主要考虑它对现在的影响，则多用现在完成时。例如：

I worked as a Chinese teacher for fifteen years.

我当过15年的语文老师。（这已成为过去，我现在已不再是语文老师了）

I have worked as a Chinese teacher for fifteen years.

我已经当了15年的语文老师了。（我现在仍然在教语文。从过去15年前一直到现在一直教语文）

Did you get up very early?

你起床很早吗？（强调动作本身）

Have you got up?

你起床了吗？（强调现在的状态、情况）

（九）过去完成时（past perfect tense）

过去完成时是用来表示过去某个时间或某个动作之前已经完成的动作（也叫“过去的过去”）；或表示过去某个时间开始一直延续到过去另一个时间的动作。其构成为 had＋过去分词。例如：

When we came to the railway station, he had already left.

当我们到了火车站时，他已经离开那儿了。

I waited until she had finished her homework.

我一直等到她写完作业。

He had already studied English for two years before he came to college.

上大学以前，他就已经学习了2年英语了。

When the doctor arrived, the patient had died ten minutes before.

当医生到达时，病人已经死了10分钟了。

（十）将来完成时（future perfect tense）

将来完成时用来表示在将来某一时刻以前已经完成的动作。其构成为 shall (will) have＋过去分词。例如：

How many words shall we have learned by the end of this term?

到这学期末我们将可能学会多少词汇？

I am sure I will have finished the work by this time tomorrow.

我相信到明天的这个时候，我将做完这项工作。

If you don't hurry, the train will have left when you get there.

如果你不赶紧点，等你到那里，火车将已开走了。

（十一）现在完成进行时（present perfect continuous tense）

现在完成进行时用来表示从过去某一时间开始一直延续到现在的动作，这个动作可能刚刚结束，或可能要继续进行下去。其构成为 have (has) been＋现在分词。例如：

We have been waiting for you for almost an hour.

我等你差不多有一个小时了。

I have been working in college since I graduated in 1985.

我自1985年毕业以来一直在大学工作。

He has been reading today's newspaper this morning.

他一上午都在看报纸。

(十二)过去完成进行时(past perfect continuous tense)

过去完成进行时用来表示过去某个时间以前已经开始又延续到过去这个时间的动作。其构成为had been+现在分词。例如：

He told me that he had been working here for more than ten years.

他告诉我他在这儿工作已经10多年了。

Finally she got the letter she had been expecting.

最后，她总算收到了期盼已久的信。

Nobody knew what this man had been doing all these years.

谁也不知道这个人这些年来在忙些什么。

(十三)时态的呼应(the sequence of tenses)

名词从句，尤其是宾语从句中的动词时态，常要受主句谓语中动词时态的影响。例如：She thought I was free today. 本句中的"我今天有空"应该用 I am free 表示。但主句的谓语动词是过去式 thought，所以就要用 I were free 这种形式。这就叫时态呼应。时态呼应只出现在主句谓语是过去时或过去完成时的时候。例如：

I thought you were listening to the music.

我还以为你在听音乐呢。

He said that he had been waiting for us.

我说他一直在等我们。

时态呼应的规则是从句的谓语动词由一般现在时变成一般过去时，一般过去时变成过去完成时，一般将来时变成过去将来时。

下列情况可以不遵守时态呼应的规则：

1. 从句的谓语表示的是一个人或物的经常性特点。例如：

My daughter learned the common sense yesterday that light travels faster than sound.

我女儿昨天知道了一个常识，即光比声音传播得快。

2. 从句中有表示绝对过去的时间状语。例如：

I told him that I joined the Party in 1985.

我告诉他，我是1985年入党的。(不用 had joined)

3. 说话者强调动作现在正在进行或将要发生。

He said that the plane takes off at ten.

他说飞机10点起飞。(不用 took off)

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate tense of the verbs in the brackets.

1. By the next Sunday George ______(live) in the countryside for nearly five years.
2. His father ______(travel) a great deal. After his next journey, he ______(visit) almost every country in the world.
3. Hurry up! The lecture is about to start. They ______(close) the doors by the time we ______(get) there.
4. When you ______(finish) this book, you ______(learn) over two thousand words.
5. By seven o'clock my parents ______(return) from their work.
6. I ______(leave) home at eight o'clock, but I ______(not go) far when I ______(remember) that I ______(forget) to lock the door.
7. Yesterday I ______(buy) a new pair of shoes, because I ______(lose) my old ones.
8. The teacher ______(be) very angry when she ______(see) what the students ______(do).
9. I am sorry. I ______(think) I ______(tell) you.
10. He ______(visit) many countries in the last three years.
11. Since his father died three years ago, he ______(not, pay) any taxes.
12. My brother went to Guangzhou in 1995 and he ______(work) there ever since.
13. Smith ______(go) to ask you to help him, but you ______(sleep) so peacefully when he ______(look) into your room that he ______(decide) to do it alone.
14. Scott Shaw ______(plan) to learn Chinese. I don't know why he ______(not start) to do so.
15. When I entered the lab, my teacher ______(make) an experiment.

Ⅱ. Choose the one that best completes the sentence.

1. You ______ the result of the experiment by next Wednesday.
   A. have learnt　　B. are learning
   C. will have learnt　　D. would have learnt
2. At last the girl received the letter she ______ for so long a time.
   A. has been expecting　　B. was expecting
   C. had expected　　D. had been expecting
3. We were all surprised when he made it clear that he ______ office soon.
   A. leaves　　B. would leave
   C. left　　D. had left
4. —How long ______ each other before they ______ married?
   —For four years.
   A. have they known; get　　B. did they know; were going to get
   C. do they know; are going to get　　D. had they known; got
5. The last time I ______ Jane she ______ cotton in the fields.
   A. had seen; was picking　　B. saw; picked

C. had seen; picked　　D. saw; was picking

6. —Do you know our town at all?

—No, this is the first time I ______ here.

A. was　　B. have been

C. came　　D. am coming

7. Mary ______ a dress when she cut her finger.

A. made　　B. is making

C. was making　　D. makes

8. —I'm sorry to have kept you waiting.

—Oh, not at all. I ______ here only a few minutes.

A. have been　　B. had been

C. was　　D. will be

9. —Can I join your club, Dad?

—You can when you ______ a bit older.

A. get　　B. will get

C. are getting　　D. will have got

10. —Don't forget to come to my birthday party tomorrow.

—______.

A. I don't　　B. I won't

C. I can't　　D. I haven't

11. I don't really work here; I ______ until the new secretary arrives.

A. just help out　　B. have just helped

C. am just helping out　　D. will just help out

12. You don't need to describe her. I ______ her several times.

A. had met　　B. have met

C. met　　D. meet

13. I don't think Jim saw me; he ______ into space.

A. just stared　　B. was just starting

C. has just stared　　D. had just stared

14. The detective ______ on the street corner since this morning opposite which is a famous church which ______ there for six centuries.

A. is standing; has been standing　　B. has been standing; has stood

C. is standing; has stood　　D. has been standing; has been standing

15. Since the road is wet this morning, ______ last night.

A. it must rain　　B. it must be raining

C. it must have rained　　D. it must have been rained

16. We'd better go out tomorrow because Mary ______ the piano all day.

A. will be practiced　　B. practices

C. will be practicing　　D. would be practiced

17. She says that she ______ me the book, because I never give books back.

A. won't be lent　　B. wasn't lent

C. won't lend D. isn't lending

18. This is the first time I ______ tennis.

A. played B. have played

C. am playing D. play

19. —So far ______.

—That is too bad.

A. we received nothing from him B. there is nothing from him

C. nothing from him has been received D. he sent no message to us

20. I wondered ______ to come to the party.

A. if he should have been asked B. if he should be asked

C. if he is asked D. should he been asked

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. will have lived

2. travels/has traveled, will have visited

3. will have closed, get

4. have finished, will have learned

5. will have returned/had returned

6. left, hadn't gone, remembered, had forgotten

7. bought, had lost

8. was, saw, had done/were doing; will be, see, are doing/have done

9. thought, had told

10. has visited

11. has not paid

12. has been working/worked

13. went, were sleeping, looked, decided

14. has planned/has been planning, hasn't started

15. was making

Ⅱ. 1. C 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. A 10. B

11. C 12. B 13. B 14. B 15. C 16. C 17. C 18. B 19. C 20. A



被动语态

语态(voices)是用来表示主语和谓语的关系的。当主语是谓语动作的执行者时,动词的形式为主动语态(active voice);而当主语是谓语动作的承受者时,动词的形式就是被动语态(passive voice)。一般来说,只有及物动词才有被动语态。但一些动词词组做及动词使用时也有被动语态。我们必须注意:主动语态的谓语说明主语做了些什么,而被动词态的谓语则说明对主语做了些什么。

(一)被动语态的构成

被动语态由助动词 be+及物动词的过去分词构成。助动词 be 有人称、数和时态的变化。现以 make 为例,将各种时态的形式列表如下:

体 时间	一般	进行	完成
现在	is (am, are) made	is (am, are) being made	has (have) been made
过去	was (were) made	was (were) being made	had been made
将来	will (shall) be made	—	—
过去将来	would (should) be made	—	—

理论上讲,被动语态的时态有十二种,而实际上常用的就是以上八种语态。

(二)被动语态的用法

1. 当动作的执行者不明、不重要或不言而喻时。例如:

The film *Titanic* will be shown again next week.

《泰坦尼克》这部影片下周要再次上映。

My bicycle was stolen a month ago.

一个月以前我的自行车被偷了。

The conference was held in July.

那次会议是 7 月召开的。

2. 当我们认为没有必要指出谁是动作的执行者时。例如:

You are wanted on the phone.

有人给你打电话。

No decision has been made so far.

至今还没有做出决定。

That man was fired yesterday.

昨天,那个人被解雇了。

3. 即使有必要指出动作的执行者,但我们强调突出的是动作的承受者,此时动作的执行者用介词by+代表动作执行者的名词或代词表示。例如:

History is made by the people.

历史是人民创造的。

Hamlet was written by Shakespeare.

《哈姆雷特》是莎士比亚创作的。

His plan has not been approved by the authoritative.

他的计划还未得到上级部门的批准。

(三)被动语态的几种特殊结构

1. 带有情态动词的被动语态结构

这种结构的构成是情态动词+be+及物动词的过去分词。例如:

Sometimes bad things can be turned into good things.

有时候,坏事可能变成好事。

You should be criticized for your carelessness.

你粗心大意应当受到批评。

Your homework must be done on your own.

你的作业要独立完成。

2. 短语动词的被动语态结构

短语动词指的是某些动词和其他词类,如"介词、副词或名词+介词"等构成的固定词组。短语动词在句中作为一个整体充当谓语,因此变为被动语态时不能丢掉构成短语动词的介词、副词或名词+介词等成分。例如:

Has the doctor been sent for?

去请医生了吗?

Women were looked down upon in the past.

妇女在过去被人瞧不起。

This plan has to be thought over carefully.

必须仔细考虑这个计划。

3. 双宾语的被动结构

英语中有些及物动词,如 allow(允许),buy(买),give(给),promise(答应,许诺),show(出示),tell(告诉),teach(教)等带有两个宾语:直接宾语和间接宾语。所以,这些动词的被动语态也就有两种形式:保留直接宾语或间接宾语。保留的宾语成为保留宾语(remained object)。

主动语态:

His parents bought him a present for his birthday.

他的父母给他买了生日礼物。

被动语态:

(1)He was bought a present for his birthday.

(2)A present was bought for him for his birthday.

主动语态:

I told my daughter a funny story.

我给我女儿讲了一个有趣的故事。

被动语态:

(1)My daughter was told a funny story.

(2)A funny story was told to my daughter.

4. 复合宾语的被动结构

复合宾语由宾语和宾语补足语构成。变为被动结构时，只将复合宾语中的主体部分——宾语变为主语，宾语补足语不变，但语法上称为主语补足语(subject complement)，与被动语态的谓语一起共同构成复合谓语。例如：

主动语态：

I warned him not to smoke again.

我警告他别再抽烟了。

被动语态：

He was warned not to smoke again.

主动语态：

I saw her coming into the classroom this morning.

今天上午我看见她进了教室。

被动语态：

She was seen coming into the classroom this morning.

5. 英语中有很多动词可用主动形式表示被动意义。当把行为看作一个独立的事实而根本不涉及行为主体时，就用主动形式表示被动意义。例如：

The pen writes very smoothly. (The pen is written with smoothly.)

这支笔很容易写字。

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Give the correct forms of the verbs in the brackets.

1. Most of the waste metal can ______(put) to use again.
2. Some rocks in the sea may ______(see) in the daytime.
3. This part of the sea bed ______(explore) many times.
4. Much useful information about these planets ______(collect) since 1971.
5. Outer space ______(not explore) by people before 1957.
6. Much parking space in cities ______(save) by using small cars.
7. The streets ______(light) by electricity.
8. Computer science ______(teach) now almost in all universities and institutes.
9. A new kind of space suit ______(make) last September in our factory.
10. In most parts of the world human problems ______(study).

Ⅱ. Change these sentences into passive voice.

1. In 1951, the Chinese People's Liberation Army liberated Tibet.
2. The professors and the students are making an important experiment.
3. The Student Union will hold a meeting in classroom 203 at nine this morning.
4. The Physics Department will build a new laboratory this year.
5. The workers in the chemistry plant can change the state of gas into that of liquid.

6. The children have asked some questions.
7. Many people are reading this book.
8. He has never heard of the name.
9. My mother gave me a picture.
10. My friend told me all this.

Ⅲ. Choose the one that best completes the sentence.

1. Robert is said ______ abroad, but I don't know what country he studied in.
A. to have studied
B. to study
C. to be studying
D. to have been studying

2. The price ______, but I doubt whether it will remain so.
A. went down
B. will to down
C. has gone down
D. was going down

3. —Hey, look where you are going?
—Oh, I'm terribly sorry. ______.
A. I'm not noticing
B. I wasn't noticing
C. I haven't noticed
D. I don't notice

4. —Nancy is not coming tonight.
—But she ______!
A. promises
B. promised
C. will promise
D. had promised

5. Shirley ______ a book about China last year but I don't know whether she has finished it.
A. has written
B. wrote
C. had written
D. was writing

6. Cleaning women in big cities usually get ______ by the hour.
A. pay
B. paying
C. paid
D. to pay

7. —Hi, Tracy, you look tired.
—I am tired. I ______ the living room all day.
A. painted
B. had painted
C. have been painting
D. have painted

8. —Where ______ the recorder? I can't see it anywhere.
—I ______ it right here, but now it's gone.
A. did you put; have put
B. have you put; put
C. had you put; have put
D. were you putting; have put

9. —When ______ again?
—When he ______, I'll let you know.
A. he comes; come
B. will he come; will come
C. he comes; will come
D. will he come; comes

10. Hello, I ______ you ______ in London. How long have you been here?
A. don't know; were
B. hadn't known; are
C. haven't known; are
D. didn't know; were

11. They asked me to have a drink with them. I said that it was at least ten years since I ______ a good drink.

A. had enjoyed
B. was enjoying
C. enjoyed
D. had been enjoying

12. No permission has ______ for anybody to enter the building.

A. been given
B. given
C. to give
D. be giving

13. Tom was disappointed that most of the guests ______ when he ______ at the party.

A. left; had arrived
B. had left; had arrived
C. left; arrived
D. had left; arrived

14. My brother ______ while he ______ his bicycle and hurt himself.

A. fell; was riding
B. fell; were riding
C. had fallen; rode
D. had fallen; was riding

15. I ______ ten minutes to decide whether I should reject the offer.

A. gave
B. was given
C. was giving
D. had given

16. The new secretary is supposed to report to manager as soon as she ______.

A. will arrive
B. arrives
C. is arriving
D. is going to arrive

17. —Come in, Peter, I want to show you something.
—Oh, how nice of you! I ______ you ______ to bring me a gift.

A. never think; are going
B. never thought; were going
C. didn't think; were going
D. hadn't thought; were going

18. When I was at college I ______ three foreign languages, but I ______ all except for a few words of each.

A. spoke; had forgotten
B. spoke; have forgotten
C. had spoken; had forgotten
D. had spoken; have forgotten

19. The police found that the house ______ and a lot of things ______.

A. has broken into; has been stolen
B. had broken into; had been stolen
C. has been broken into; stolen
D. had been broken into; stolen

20. The volleyball match will be put off it ______.

A. will rain
B. rains
C. rained
D. is raining

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. be put 2. be seen 3. has been explored 4. has been collected 5. had not be explored
6. has been saved 7. are lit 8. is being taught 9. was being made 10. was being studied

Ⅱ. 1. In 1951, Tibet was liberated by the Chinese People's Liberation Army.
2. The important experiment is being made by the professors and students.
3. A meeting will be held in classroom 203 at nine by the Student Union this morning.
4. This year a new lab will be built by the Physics Department.
5. The state of gas can be changed into that of liquid by the workers in the chemistry plant.
6. Some questions have been asked by the children.
7. This book is being read by many people.
8. The name has never been heard of.
9. A picture was given to me by my mother.
I was given a picture by my mother.
10. I was told all this by my friend.
All this was told to me by my friend.

Ⅲ. 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. D
11. A 12. A 13. D 14. A 15. B 16. B 17. B 18. B 19. D 20. B



不定式(一)

英语动词就其在句中是否单独作谓语动词可分为谓语动词(限定动词)和非谓语动词(非限定动词)。当然,非谓语动词在句中不能单独作谓语。动词不定式是非谓语动词的一种形式,指动词的一种不带词形变化从而不指示人称、数量、时态的形式。

(一)不定式的构成

不定式(infinitive)通常由 to+动词原形构成(to do)。及物动词的不定式可以带宾语,例如:to do one's homework。不定式还可以被状语修饰,例如:to read a book slowly。不定式有进行式和完成式,也分主动语态和被动语态。不定式的否定形式是在 to 前加否定词 not。不定式的主要形式如下表所示:

	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	to do	to be done
完成式	to have done	to have been done
进行式	to be doing	——
完成进行式	to have been doing	——

不定式在句中能担任许多句子成分,但它毕竟是一个动词,因此它具有动词的许多特点,它可以有自己的宾语和状语,和其一起构成不定式短语。不定式在语法上不能有主语,可是由于不定式表示的是动作,在意思上是可以有主语的,这个主语叫作逻辑主语(the logical subject),以便区别于语法上的主语。例如:I asked him to read the text. 句中的 him 是动词 asked 的宾语,而且同时又是不定式 to read the text 的逻辑主语。不定式的逻辑主语可以作句子的主语或宾语,也可以用一个 for 引导的短语表示,例如:It is important for us to study a foreign language.

(二)不定式的用法

不定式在句中可以作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、宾语补足语和主语补足语等。

1. 主语

To master a foreign language is not easy.

掌握一门外语是不容易的。

How to get enough money is still a problem.

如何筹集到足够的资金仍然是个问题。

不定式短语作主语时,特别是在口语中,我们通常用代词 it 来代替不定式短语作主语,叫作形式主语,放在谓语动词的前面,而把真正的主语——不定式短语放在谓语动词的后面。上述两句可以改为:

It is not easy to master a foreign language.

It is still a problem how to get enough money.

2. 宾语

George expects to begin studying law next semester.

乔治希望下学期开始学法律。

He decided not to buy that car.

他决定不买那辆车了。

We should continue to learn as long as we live.

我们应该活到老学到老。

不定式作宾语的时候很多,常用的及物动词有 agree(同意),begin(开始),care(关心),choose(选择),continue(继续),decide(决定),desire(想要),expect(期望),fail(未能),forget(忘记),hate(厌恶),hope(希望),intend(想要),learn(学习),like(喜欢),manage(设法),mean(打算),offer(提出),pretend(假装),plan(计划),refuse(拒绝),start(开始),try(努力),want(想要),wish(祝愿)等。例如:

I like to go for a walk after dinner.

我喜欢晚饭后散步。

Mary can't decide whether to go or stay.

玛丽决定不了是去还是留。

What do you plan to do in summer vacation?

你打算暑假做什么?

3. 表语

Her wish is to become a doctor.

她的愿望是当一名医生。

To do this would be to cut the foot to fit the shoe.

这样做是削足适履。

The problem is how to find a solution.

问题是如何找到一个解决办法。

4. 定语

不定式作定语时其位置必须放在被修饰的名词或代词后。例如:

They had not chance to go to college in those years.

那时他们没有机会上大学。(修饰名词 chance)

He should leave that company, for there is nothing for him to do.

他应该离开那家公司,在那儿他没什么好干的。(修饰代词 nothing)

能用不定式作定语的很多,常见的有 need(必要),courage(勇气),time(时候),movement(运动),opportunity(机会),right(权利),way(方法),ambition(雄心壮志,野心勃勃),campaign(运动),reason(理由),decision(决定),tendency(趋势),struggle(斗争),effort(努力),determination(决心),intention(打算),wish(愿望)等。

5. 状语

不定式作状语主要用来修饰动词、形容词、副词或整个句子,表示目的、结果、原因和程度等。例如:

I came here to study English.

我来这儿是学英语的。(作目的状语)

She lifted a rock only to drop it on her own feet.

她搬起石头砸了自己的脚。(作结果状语)

We all rejoiced to hear of your success.

听说你们成功了我们都很高兴。(作原因状语)

She would not be so careless as to forget her key.

她还不至于粗心到把钥匙给忘了。(作程度状语)

6. 宾语补足语

不定式可以和名词或代词构成复合结构，作动词的宾语，我们称之为宾语补足语，或叫复合宾语。例如：

I want him to call me back at ten o'clock.

我要他10点钟给我回电话。

I never allow such things to happen again.

我绝不允许再发生这样的事。

Would you like me to go with you?

你愿意我和你一起去吗?

常见的这类动词有ask(要求)，tell(告诉)，invite(邀请)，force(迫使)，oblige(强迫)，get(让)，beg(乞求)，allow(允许)，help(帮助)，wish(希望)，want(要)，like(喜欢)，hate(厌恶)，prefer(更喜欢，宁愿)，intend(打算)，leave(留给)，expect(期望)，encourage(鼓励)，advise(劝告)，persuade(劝说)，permit(允许)，remind(提醒)，request(要求)，order(命令)，warn(警告)，urge(敦促)，cause(使得)，mean(打算)等。

另外，有些及物动词的复合宾语中作宾语补足语的不定式不带to，如make(使)，let(让)，have(使、让)，see(看见)，hear(听到)，watch(观看到)，notice(注意到)，feel(感觉到)等。例如：

Don't forget to have her come with you.

别忘了让她和你一起来。

Did you hear him sing a folk song yesterday evening?

昨晚你听到他唱民歌了吗?

7. 主语补足语

带有宾语或宾语补足语结构的动词，变为被动语态时，原宾语变为主语，原宾语补足语则变为主语补足语。不定式作主语补足语时，即使在let，make，see，watch等动词后，也要加to。例如：

She was made to tell him everything.

她被迫告诉了他一切。

The students are always encouraged to put forward their views.

(我们)总是鼓励学生提出自己的观点。

(三)不定式的时态与语态

1. 一般式

不定式的一般式所表示的动作，通常与主要谓语动词的动作或状态几乎同时发生或在其后发生。例如：

Who heard him say that?

谁听见他说这话的?(hear与say两个动作同时发生)

I am waiting to hear your answer.

我在等着你的答复。(不定式to hear在wait发生之后)

2. 完成式

假如不定式所表示的动作，在谓语所表示的动作或状态之前发生，这时不定式就要用它的完成式。例如：

I am sorry to have kept you waiting for an hour.

对不起，让你等了一个小时。(to have kept发生在am所表示的时间之前)

She is said to have passed CET-4 in July.

据说她已在7月通过了大学英语四级考试。(to have passed 发生在 is said 所表示的时间之前)

3. 进行式

不定式的进行式表示动作正在进行,与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生。例如:

They pretended to be listening attentively.

他们装出专心听讲的样子。

I happened to be going there too.

我恰好也是到那儿去。

4. 完成进行式

不定式的完成进行式主要表示的不是正在进行的动作,而是在谓语所表示的时间之前一直进行的动作。例如:

I am happy to have been working with you.

我很高兴这一段时间和你们在一起工作。

We wished to have been studying as hard as the others.

我们真希望也曾像其他人一样一直在努力学习。

5. 被动式

当不定式的逻辑主语是这个不定式所表示的动作的承受者时,不定式一般要用被动形式。例如:

I dislike to be flattered.

我讨厌被人奉承。(逻辑主语是 I)

It is an honor for me to be asked to speak here.

我很荣幸被邀请在这里讲话。(逻辑主语是 me)

She didn't expect the book to be sold out so quickly.

她没想到这本书卖得这么快。(逻辑主语是 the book)

在有些句子中,虽然不定式与最近的名词或代词有动宾关系,但与句中的另一个名词或代词却有可能是主谓关系,这时不定式常用主动式。例如:

I still have a lot of difficulties to overcome.

我还有许多困难要克服。(I 与 overcome 有主谓关系)

He found the lecture hard to understand.

他发现这个讲座挺难懂。(he 与 understand 有主谓关系)



Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Transform the following finite clauses into infinitive constructions.

1. We thought it wrong that he should be punished.
2. She asks that every citizen watch closely any developments in this matter.
3. They consider that the boy is trustworthy.
4. Is your teacher really a person who can be trusted?
5. My mother got up early that she would have enough time to pack.
6. He stood up so that he could be seen better.
7. If you should hear him talk, you would think he was a celebrity.
8. We went via Hong Kong so that we could miss the traffic jam.

9. His work was so good that it made him internationally famous.

10. The girl you should consult is Ann.

Ⅱ. Fill in the blanks with the given verbs in their proper infinitive forms.

1. Give her some books ________(read), please.
2. He wanted the letter ________(mail) at once.
3. I seem ________(read) the book before.
4. They are said ________(collect) folk songs in Yunnan.
5. We didn't expect you ________(wait) for us here.
6. He was seen ________(enter) the hall.
7. The man was warned ________(not smoke) in the public places.
8. We were having lunch when I heard the telephone ________(ring).
9. Lei Feng lived ________(serve) the people heart and soul.
10. He asked ________(send) ________(work) on a farm after he finished his study at the college.

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. We thought it wrong to punish him. (We thought it wrong for him to be punished.)

2. She asks every citizen to watch closely any developments in this matter.
3. They consider the boy to be trustworthy.
4. Is your teacher really a person to be trusted?
5. My mother got up early in order to have enough time to pack.
6. He stood up to be seen better.
7. To hear him talk, you would think he was a celebrity.
8. We went via Hong Kong as to miss the traffic jam.
9. His work was so good as to make him internationally famous.
10. The girl to consult is Ann.

Ⅱ. 1. to read　2. to be mailed　3. to have read　4. to have been collecting

5. to be waiting　6. to enter　7. not to smoke　8. ring

9. to serve　10. to be sent, to work

不定式（二）

不定式短语结构中需要注意的几个问题。

（一）不带 to 的不定式的使用

动词不定式通常都要带 to，但在下列情况下，to 总是被省略掉。

1. 在一般的助动词或情态动词（如 will/would，shall/should，can/could，may/might，must，need，dare 等）之后。例如：

May I come in?

我可以进来吗？

注意：在 ought，be，have 后不能省。

2. 在“动词＋宾语＋不定式”结构中，当动词表示感觉，如 feel（感到），smell（嗅到，闻到），taste（品尝到），see（看见），watch（注视），listen to（听），hear（听）等，或是表示使役、致使，如 make（使），let（让），have（使）等，其后的不定式不带 to。例如：

I will have my son tell the truth.

我要让我儿子说实话。

He saw me enter the classroom.

他看见我进教室了。

注意：help（或 help＋宾语）之后可用不带 to 的不定式，也可用带 to 的不定式。例如：

He helps me (to) do my homework.

他帮我做作业。

3. 在 had better（还是……好），had best（最好），would rather（宁愿），would sooner（宁愿，宁可），would rather... than（宁愿……而不……），would just as soon（不妨），might (just) as well（不妨，正好，幸好），cannot but（不得不，不能不），to nothing but（仅仅，只不过）等结构后面，不定式不带 to。例如：

I could do nothing but wait for the doctor to arrive.

我无计可施，只好等医生来。

You had better stay at home in such bad weather.

这样的坏天气，你最好待在家里。

4. 在 make do（勉强应付），make believe（假装，假扮），let drop（掉落），let fall（掉下，脱口而出），let fly（向……发射），let slip（放开，放手），let drive（朝……打/发射），let go of（放弃），hear say（听人说），hear tell（听人说），leave go of（放开）等固定搭配中，用不带 to 的不定式。例如：

Sometimes when children play they make believe they are grown-ups.

孩子们有时在做游戏时假装大人。

He picked up a stone and let fly at my dog.

他拾起一块石头，朝我的狗投掷过来。

5. 在 why... 或 why not... 结构中，紧接其后的动词不定式不带 to。例如：

Why not ask him for help?

为什么不让他帮忙？

Why spend such a lot of money?

为什么要花这么多钱?

6. 用作补足语的不定式,如果主语是由"all+关系分句""thing+关系分句""what-分句"或"thing+不定式结构"等构成,并带有动词 do 的某种形式,这时,作为主语补足语的不定式可以省略 to,也可以不省。例如:

All you do now is complete the form.

你现在要做的事情就是把表填好。

What a fire-door does is delay the spread of a fire long enough for people to get out.

消防门的作用就是延缓火势蔓延,为人们争取足够时间逃生。

(二)不定式作状语

不定式用在作表语的形容词或过去分词之后作状语,说明产生这种情绪的原因或是在哪方面存在谓语所表示的情况等。例如:

I am glad to meet you.

很高兴见到你。

We should "not feel ashamed to ask and learn from people below".

我们要"不耻下问"。

He is always ready to help others.

他总是乐于助人。

类似的形容词和过去分词很多,常见的有:happy(幸福的),glad(高兴的),lucky(幸运的),fortunate(幸运的),ashamed(可耻的),apt(易于的),foolish(愚蠢),eager(热切的),able(能够的),unable(不能的),surprised(惊奇的),quick(迅速的),slow(慢的),anxious(忧虑的),sorry(遗憾的),unfortunate(不幸的),considerate(考虑周到的),inconsiderate(不体贴别人的),cruel(残酷的),willing(愿意的),unwilling(不情愿的),shocked(震惊的),frightened(惊恐的),delighted(高兴的),proud(自豪的),disappointed(感到失望的),angry(生气的),fit(健康的),ready(准备好的),clever(聪明的),wise(聪明的),unwise(不明智的),right(正确的)等。

(三)不定式结构与副词 too 和 enough 的搭配使用

1. too... to... 结构通常表示否定意义,而 enough to 则表示肯定意义。例如:

He is too young to join the army.

他年龄太小不能参军。

The room is not big enough to hold so many people.

这个房间不够大,装不下这么多人。

2. too... to 可用反义的形容词转换为 enough to 结构。例如:

The room is too small to hold so many people. (= The room is not big enough to hold so many people.)

3. not too, but too, all too, only too 等和不定式连用时,不定式一般不表示否定意义,too 的意思是"非常、很、极"。例如:

I am only too pleased to help you.

我非常愿意帮助你。

You cannot be too careful.

你应该特别小心(怎么小心都不过分)。

We are but too glad to visit your country.

我们非常高兴访问贵国。

4. 当 too 与 ready,apt,easy,eager,inclined,willing 等形容词连用时,通常不表示否定意义,too 的意思是“非常、很”。例如:

He is too ready to read science fiction.

他最愿意读科幻小说。

We are too apt to overlook our faults.

我们很容易忽视自己的错误。

John is too eager to meet his girl friend.

约翰急于要见他的女朋友。

5. 当不定式前有否定词 not 时,too... not to... 意为“太……不会不,非常……一定能”。例如:

She is too careful not to have noticed it.

她那么细心,不会不注意这一点的。

He is too angry not to say it.

他在盛怒之下,难免要说出这样的话来。

Tom is too clever not to solve the difficult problem.

汤姆非常聪明,一定会解决这个难题的。

(四)不定式的省略

有时为了避免重复前面的动词,可以把一个不定式省略掉,单留下一个 to。例如:

You may go if you want to.

如果你愿意你就去。

Did you get a ticket? —No, I tried to, but there weren't any left.

你买到票了吗? ——没有,我去买了,但卖完了。

注意:在某些个别情况下,to 可以保留也可以不保留。例如:

He says he will come as soon as he has got a chance (to).

他说一有机会就来。

在 used to,be going to,mean to,ought to,try to,plan to 等结构中,当不定式被省略掉时,to 通常都是保留的。

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Add to where necessary.

1. Rather than ________ run the risk of losing everything they accepted his term.
2. I noticed them ________ have come early.
3. Don Jose had grown morose and rarely left the house except ________ attend Mass.
4. Why not ________ urge him ________ reconsider his decision?
5. After he had finished speaking, Mr. Jones was made ________ answer innumerable questions.
6. Why don't you get your wife ________ explain it to you?
7. Let things go ________ hang.
8. They have been known ________ get very angry.
9. What could I do then except ________ watch them ________ carry you away?

10. Let's make ________ believe that we're explorers in the forests of Africa.

Ⅱ. **Translate the following sentences.**

1. Mr. Smith is far too wise a man not to see that.
2. We are only too pleased to meet you.
3. He is kind enough to help us.
4. The light is too dim to read by.
5. He is not fool enough to believe that.
6. 她很容易相处。
7. 在这条河里游泳很危险。
8. 这事得由你来决定。
9. 这条路不够宽,不能同时通过两辆汽车。
10. 初学者很容易忽视这些语法错误。(apt)

Ⅲ. **Choose the one that best completes the sentence.**

1. If you are so stupid as to lend him your car, you must expect it ________.

A. to be damaged
B. to damage
C. damaging
D. being damaged

2. Professor Black had us ________ compositions every Friday.

A. to write
B. written
C. write
D. writing

3. Mr. Green ran all the way up to the station, only ________ that the train had left fifteen minutes before.

A. to find
B. finding
C. found
D. having found

4. The last man ________ the sinking ship was the captain.

A. left
B. to be leaving
C. to leave
D. leaves

5. We regret ________ you that we don't make the item you have ordered.

A. to advise
B. advise
C. advised
D. advising

6. We observed the store keeper ________ the store early that day.

A. being closed
B. to have closed
C. close
D. to close

7. This palace is said ________ in three years.

A. to build
B. to have built
C. to be building
D. to close

8. No one likes ________.

A. to be laughed at
B. to laugh at
C. to laughing at
D. to be laughing at

9. The children appear ________ themselves at the party.

A. to be enjoyed
B. to be enjoying
C. being enjoyed
D. to have been enjoyed

10. She likes her children ________ in the garden.
A. to play
B. playing
C. play
D. played

11. If he had another child ________, he would be happier.
A. playing
B. playing with
C. to play
D. to play with

12. At the age of fourteen, Bell was sent to London ________ by his grandfather.
A. to be educated
B. to educate
C. to have been educated
D. to have educated

13. He seems ________ the instructions that were given him.
A. not to be understood
B. not to have been understood
C. not to have understood
D. not to be understanding

14. All matter is made of atoms, which are too small ________ even through the most powerful microscope.
A. to be seen
B. to seeing
C. to have seen
D. to be seeing

15. The public regarded Bell's telephone as little more than a toy ________ at lectures.
A. to be exhibited
B. to exhibit
C. to be exhibiting
D. to have exhibited

16. There is more land in Australia than the government knows ________.
A. what to do with
B. to do with it
C. how to do
D. to do it

17. *A Dream of the Red Chamber* is said ________ into dozens of languages in the last decade.
A. to have been translate
B. to translate
C. to be translated
D. to have translated

18. It's no use ________ me not to worry.
A. you tell
B. for you to have told
C. your telling
D. having told

19. It's very kind ________ invite me.
A. from you to
B. of you to
C. by you to
D. that you

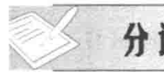
20. It takes about 8 1/3 minutes ________.
A. for light to reach us from the sun
B. light to reach us from the sun
C. light reaching us from the sun
D. for light reaches us from the sun

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. / 2. to 3. to 4. /, to 5. to 6. to 7. / 8. to 9. to, / 10. /

Ⅱ. 1. 史密斯先生很聪明,不会看不出那一点的。
2. 我们很高兴见到你。
3. 他真好,帮了我们的忙。
4. 灯太暗了不能看书。
5. 他还不至于愚蠢到会相信那件事。
6. She is easy to get along with.
7. The river is dangerous to swim in.
8. This is for you to decide.
9. The road is not wide enough for two cars to pass.
10. Beginners are too apt to overlook such grammatical errors.

Ⅲ. 1. A 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. A
11. D 12. A 13. C 14. A 15. A 16. A 17. A 18. B 19. B 20. A



分词(一)

分词(participle)是动词的另一种非限定形式。它有两种形式,即现在分词和过去分词。现在分词(present participle)是由动词原形加词尾-ing构成,如working;而过去分词(past participle)是由动词原形加词尾-ed构成,如worked。不规则动词的过去分词的构成没有一定的规律,需要单独记忆。如do→done;give→given。

分词是动词的一种形式,所以分词有自己的状语,如reading fast,made in China;及物动词的现在分词还可以有宾语,如reading a book。带有宾语和(或)状语的分词叫作分词短语(participle phrase)。

(一)现在分词和过去分词的区别

1. 现在分词表示主动的意思,而过去分词表示被动的意思。例如:

boiling water=water that is boiling

正在沸腾的水(主动,即水自己在沸腾)

boiled water=water that was boiled

开(过了的)水(被动,即被烧开了的水)

2. 现在分词表示动作正在进行,而过去分词则表示动作的完成。例如:

developing countries=countries that are developing

发展中国家(这些国家正在发展)

developed countries=countries that have already developed

发达国家(这些国家已经得到发展)

falling leaves=leaves that are falling

飘然而落的树叶

fallen leaves=leaves that have already fallen

落叶(已经落下的树叶)

(二)分词的用法

分词在句中主要起形容词和副词的作用,可以作定语、表语、状语、宾语补足语和主语补足语等。

1. 定语

单个的分词作定语,通常分词放在被修饰的名词之前,但有时单个的过去分词也可放在被修饰的名词之后。例如:

He is a promising young man.

他是一个很有前途的青年。

He has my written promise.

他有我的书面承诺。

They decided to change the material used.

他们决定改变所用的材料。

All parties concerned will be present.

所有相关的团体都将到场。

分词短语作定语一般放在被修饰的名词之后。

(1)现在分词短语作定语时,要注意分词所表示动作发生的时间。

①分词表示正在进行的动作(变为从句时需用进行时态)。例如:

Who is that lady standing by the door (=Who is standing by the door)?

站在门口的那位女士是谁?

Tell the children playing (=who are playing) there not to make so much noise.

告诉在那边玩的小孩们别这么吵。

②分词表示经常性动作或现在(或当时)的状态(变为从句时用一般时态)。例如:

I live in a room facing (=that faces) the south.

我住在一间朝南的房间里。

Those were the main problems confronting(=that confronted)us.

这些是我们当时面临的主要问题。

(2)过去分词作定语时,过去分词所表示的动作要么在谓语所表示的动作之前发生,要么没有一定的时间性。例如:

Is this the book recommended by your parents?

这是你的父母推荐的书吗?

She is a teacher loved by all the students.

她是一个深受学生爱戴的老师。

(3)分词短语还可以作非限定性定语(相当于一个非限定性定语从句),这时它和句子的其他部分用逗号隔开,常可译成并列句。例如:

The novel, written in 1963, tells us a story about a village teacher.

这部小说写于1963年,讲的是一个山村教师的故事。

This year he succeeded in passing the CET-4, indicating his rapid progress in English.

今年他通过了大学英语四级考试,说明他的英语进步很快。

2. 表语

(1)现在分词作表语,现在分词多表示主语所具有的特征。例如:

The film is very interesting.

这部电影真有趣。

The theory sounds quite convincing.

这个理论听起来很有说服力。

(2)过去分词作表语,过去分词多表示主语所处的状态。例如:

My mother looked disappointed.

我妈妈显得很失望。

The door remained locked.

门仍然锁着。

(3)有一些过去分词作表语时,构成的谓语很接近被动语态结构,注意两者的区别:表语结构表示主语的特点或所处的状态,而被动结构则表示一个动作。例如:

The store is now closed.

这家商店现在关门了。(表语结构)

The store is usually closed at ten o'clock.

这家商店通常10点关门。(被动结构)

That bridge is completed.

那座桥已修好了。(表语结构)

That bridge was completed in 1990.

那座桥是1990年建成的。(被动结构)

注意:如果是被动结构,句子的时态一般要与相应的主动结构一致;如果是表语结构,用一般时态的时候较多。

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Translate the Chinese in the brackets into English, using participle or participle phrases.

1. There are 18 weeks in the new semester (3月1日开始的).
2. Water (从这口井里取出来的) is not pure to drink.
3. The wall (漆成浅色的) made the room bright.
4. We met a group of youngsters (从学校回来的).
5. I really like the villa (建在湖中央的).

Ⅱ. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms of the verbs in the brackets.

1. Her words ______ me. I felt ______. Her words were ______. (offend)
2. The news ______ us. We were ______. The news was ______. (excite)
3. The story ______ the students. The students were ______ by the story. The story was ______. (confuse)
4. The film ______ Ann. Ann was ______. The film was ______. (amuse)
5. The speech ______ the listeners. The listeners were ______ with the speech. The speech was ______. (bore)

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. beginning on March 1
2. taken from the well
3. painted light color
4. returning from school
5. built in the middle of the lake

Ⅱ. 1. offended, offended, offended
2. excited, excited, exciting
3. confused, confused, confusing
4. amused, amused, amusing
5. bored, bored, boring



分词（二）

3. 状语

分词作状语通常表示时间、原因、结果、方式、条件、让步和伴随情况等。其分词的位置可放在句首、句尾或句子的主谓之间。分词作状语时，它的逻辑主语(隐含在句中，并不表示出来)应该和句子的主语一致。

(1)表示时间

Returning home, he began doing his homework at once.

他一回到家里就立刻开始写作业。

Seen from the high mountain, the small village looks very beautiful.

从高山上看这个小山村非常漂亮。

注意：如果两个动词的动作是同时发生的，常用 when 或 while 引导分词。例如：

Don't talk while attending the class.

上课时不要说话。

Be careful when crossing the street.

过马路时要小心。

(2)表示原因

Being so excited, we were not able to sleep that night.

由于太激动了，那天晚上我们都没睡着。

Born into a poor farmer family, my grandfather had no chance to go to school.

我的爷爷出身于贫穷的农民家庭，没有上学的机会。

Absorbed in the work, my father neglected food and sleep.

我爸爸全神贯注地工作，到了废寝忘食的地步。

(3)表示结果

The child fell, striking his head against the door and cutting it.

小孩摔了一跤，头撞门上碰破了。

(4)表示方式

Following the instructions, I finally put the toy parts together.

看着说明书，我总算把玩具零件组装到一起了。

Relying on our own efforts, we at last succeeded.

依靠自己的力量，我们终于成功了。

(5)表示条件

Compared with you, I still have a long way to go.

和你比起来，我还有很大差距。

Given more time, they could do the work better.

如果给他们更多的时间，他们能把事情做得更好。

(6)表示让步

Working even harder than before, he failed again in the final English exam.

虽然比以前努力了，但他又没通过英语期末考试。

Receiving the support from the teacher, the plan fell through.

尽管得到了老师的支持，但这个计划还是失败了。

(7)表示伴随

The students went out of the classroom, laughing and talking.

学生们有说有笑地走出了教室。

The teacher approached us smiling.

老师微笑着朝我们走来。

注意：当分词的逻辑主语与句子的主语不一致时，就采用一种结构，即独立结构(absolute construction)，在很多情况下表示时间、原因、条件或伴随的动作或情况。有时用 with 来引导独立结构。例如：

School being over, he continued to study in the classroom.

放学后，他还在教室里学习。(表示时间)

The Spring Festival being the most important holiday in China, almost all the stores were closed.

由于春节是中国最重要的节假日，所以春节期间几乎所有的商店都关门了。(表示原因)

Weather permitting, we will go out for a picnic tomorrow.

天气如果允许，明天我们就去野餐。(表示条件)

He stood at the gate with his hands crossed before him.

他双手抱臂站在大门口。(表示伴随情况)

4. 宾语补足语和主语补足语

(1)分词在 see, hear, get, have, feel, keep, find, notice, watch 等动词后面与一个名词或代词构成复合宾语，担当宾语补足语成分。例如：

She saw her English teacher coming into the dining-room.

她看见英语老师进了食堂。

I often catch him dozing off in class.

我经常发现他在课上打瞌睡。

You'd better have your hair cut now.

你最好现在就理发。

The professor keeps himself informed of the latest development in his research field.

这位教授不断使自己得到他研究领域的最新发展信息。

(2)在 see, hear, watch, notice, feel 等动词后面既可与现在分词构成复合宾语，也可与不定式构成复合宾语。其区别是：用现在分词时，表示动作正在发生(处于发生的过程中，还没有结束)；而用不定式时则表示动作发生了(动作的全部过程结束了)。例如：

Do you hear someone knocking at the door? (=Someone is knocking at the door, do you hear?)

有人敲门，你听见了吗？

Yes, I heard someone knock three times.

是的，我听见有人敲了三下。

(3)当谓语动词变为被动语态时，原主动语态中的宾语变为主语，原宾语补足语则变为主语补足语。例如：

We were kept waiting for quite a long time.

让我们等了很长时间了。

The exciting news was made known at last.

这个令人兴奋的消息最终被公布于众。

(三)分词的时态和语态

和不定式一样，分词也有时态和语态的变化。以动词 do 为例，详见下表：

	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	doing	being done
完成式	having done	having been done

1. 完成式

现在分词的完成形式主要用在状语中，表示这个动作在谓语动词所表示的动作之前发生。例如：

Having been there several times, she offered to be the guide.

这地方她已去过很多次，因此她主动要给我们做向导。

The guests having left, the family resumed their dinner.

客人走了之后，全家人又继续吃晚饭。

2. 被动式

现在分词的被动形式不仅表示被动的动作，而且还表示这个动作此时正在发生，或是与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生。这种被动形式主要用于作定语、状语和宾语补足语。例如：

That building being repaired is our Administration Building.

正在翻修的那座大楼是我们的行政大楼。(being repaired 表示正在进行的动作，作定语)

He found the film star being interviewed everywhere.

他发现这位影星被跟踪采访。(being interview 和 found 同时发生，作宾语补足语)

Being protected by the poor house, he felt he was quite safe.

有一个破房子作掩护，他感到很安全。(being protected 表示正在进行的动作，作状语)

3. 完成被动式

现在分词的完成被动式不仅表示被动的动作，而且表示这个动作在谓语动词所表示的动作之前发生。这种被动形式一般用来作状语，例如：

Having been given such a good chance, how could he let it slip away?

既然得到这样一个好机会，他怎么能轻易放过？

Having been told that some guests were coming, she was busy with preparing for the dinner at home.

听说有客人要来，她在家里忙着准备晚餐。

Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. Replace the relative or adverbial clause in each of the following sentences by a participle or a participle construction.

1. The British Museum has a right to one copy of any book that appears in Britain.
2. After he had put down his magazine, he walked over to the window and looked out.
3. The temple, which had been burnt in 1553, was never rebuilt.

4. The lady was accompanied by a servant who weighs at least 180 kilos.
5. Since I had worked hard all day, I was ready for bed by seven o'clock.
6. Any dutiable articles which are not declared to the Customs will be liable to confiscation.
7. Mr. Shaw has opened a savings account since he is planning to buy a house.
8. His grandmother sat down quickly, because she suddenly felt dizzy.
9. They were delayed by heavy trucks which were being loaded onto the ship.
10. If it is used economically, one tin can last for at least six weeks.

Ⅱ. Choose the one that best completes the sentence.

1. The dinner ______ now is for the members of the conference.
   A. prepared　　B. being prepared
   C. having prepared　　D. to prepare
2. Never ______ faith in himself, James Watt went on with his experiment.
   A. losing　　B. to lose
   C. lost　　D. to be lost
3. My coat looks rather shabby, so I ought to have it ______.
   A. clean and press　　B. cleaning and pressing
   C. cleaned and pressed　　D. cleaning and pressed
4. ______ the coffee, he washed the cup and put it away.
   A. Drank　　B. Drinking
   C. Having drunk　　D. Having been drunk
5. ______ from the moon, our Earth looks like a big bright disk.
   A. Seeing　　B. Seen
   C. To see　　D. Having seen
6. We are going to use the money ______ from the school children for medical research.
   A. collecting　　B. to collect
   C. collect　　D. collected
7. Mr. Johnson, ______ a good job out-of-town, told his wife they would have to move.
   A. having been offered　　B. having offered
   C. offering　　D. to offer
8. ______ such a good chance, he planned to learn more.
   A. To be given　　B. Having been given
   C. Having given　　D. Giving
9. ______ the oil-tanker continued her voyage to the Far East.
   A. The storm being over
   B. When the storm being over
   C. With the storm is over
   D. When the storm is being over
10. Often several oil wells are sunk, ______ in the ground.
    A. and each reaching the same supply of oil
    B. reaching the same supply of oil
    C. each reaching the same supply of oil

D. if reaching the same supply of oil

11. He listened in silence, ______.

A. with his eyes toward the ground

B. glance on the ground

C. staring to the ground

D. looking steadily with wide-open eyes the ground

12. ______ a fine day, we decided to go out on a picnic.

A. Having been　　B. It being

C. What　　D. Being

13. "Can you read?" Mary said ______ to the notice.

A. angrily pointing　　B. and point angrily

C. angrily pointed　　D. and angrily pointing

14. The salesman scolded the girl caught ______ and let her off.

A. to have stolen　　B. to be stealing

C. to steal　　D. stealing

15. ______ a reply, he decided to write again.

A. Not receiving　　B. Receiving not

C. Not having received　　D. Having not received

16. They arrived at their university very late, ______ the gate closely shut.

A. found　　B. to find

C. find　　D. finding

17. It was so cold that they kept the fire ______ all night.

A. to burn　　B. burn

C. burning　　D. burned

18. She's upstairs ______ letters.

A. writes　　B. is writing

C. write　　D. writing

19. The missing boys were last seen ______ near the river.

A. playing　　B. to be playing

C. play　　D. to play

20. The visiting Minister expressed his satisfaction with the talks, ______ that he had enjoyed his stay here.

A. having added　　B. to add

C. adding　　D. added

Key to Grammar Exercises

Ⅰ. 1. The British Museum has a right to one copy of any book appearing in Britain.

2. Putting/Having put down his magazine, he walked over to the window and looked out.

3. The temple burnt in 1553 was never rebuilt.

4. The lady was accompanied by a servant weighing at least 180 kilos.

5. Having worked hard all day, I was ready for bed by seven o'clock.

6. Any dutiable articles not declared to the Customs will be liable to confiscation.

7. Planning to buy a house, Mr. Shaw has opened a savings account.

8. Suddenly feeling dizzy, his grandmother sat down quickly.

9. They were delayed by heavy trucks being loaded onto the ship.

10. Used economically, one tin can last for at least six weeks.

Ⅱ. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. C

11. A 12. B 13. A 14. D 15. C 16. D 17. C 18. D 19. A 20. C

新视野大学英语(读写教程)1词汇便携记忆卡

Unit 1A

词汇

triumph /'traɪʌmf/ *n.* (尤指苦战后获得的)胜利,成功,成就

pledge /pledʒ/ *vt.* 发誓;作保证
n. (尤指公开或正式做出的)誓言,誓约;保证

Unit 1A

community /kə'mjuːnəti/ *n.* (1)(同住一地的人所构成的)社区;(2)群体;团体

explore /ɪk'splɔː/ *vt.* 探讨,研究(主题、思想等)
v. 勘探;探测;考察

fascinating /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/ *a.* 吸引人的;迷人的;使人神魂颠倒的

Unit 1A

overwhelm /ˌəʊvə'welm/ *vt.* (数量大得)使无法对付

available /ə'veɪləbl/ *a.* 可获得的;可利用的;现成的

sample /'sɑːmpl/ *vt.* (1)体验;(2)对……作抽样检验
n. 样本;样品;货样

assume /ə'sjuːm/ *vt.* 假定;假设;认为

Unit 1A

pose /pəʊz/ *vi.* (为照相或画像而)摆姿势
vt. 造成,导致(困难或危险)

routine /ruː'tiːn/ *n.* 例行公事;常规;惯例
/ˌruː'tiːn/ *a.* 常规的;例行的;惯常的

attain /ə'teɪn/ *vt.* 得到;获得;赢得

foundation /faʊn'deɪʃn/ *n.* 基础

resource /rɪ'zɔːs/ *n.* (1)资源;(2)自然资源

Unit 1A

pursue /pə'sjuː/ *vt.* (1)追求;致力于;(2)追赶;追逐

passion /'pæʃn/ *n.* (1)强烈的爱好;热爱;(2)强烈的情感;激情

unique /juː'niːk/ *a.* (1)特别的;极不寻常的;极好的;(2)不同的;独特的

Unit 1A

emerge /i'mɜːdʒ/ *vi.* (1)出现;为……所公认;(2)出现;露出

giant /'dʒaɪənt/ *a.* 巨大的;特大的

mate /meɪt/ *n.* 同事;同伴

roommate /'rʊːmˌmeɪt/ *n.* (尤指大学里的)室友

owl /aʊl/ *n.* 猫头鹰

Unit 1A

faculty /'fækltі/ *n.* (1)全体教员;(2)天赋;能力;本领

comprehensive /ˌkɒmprɪ'hensɪv/ *a.* 综合的;多方面的

facility /fə'sɪləti/ *n.* (为某种目的而提供的)设施,设备

Unit 1A

enthusiasm /ɪn'θjuːziˌæzəm/ *n.* 热爱;热情;热心

reap /riːp/ *vt.* 收获;获得
v. 收割(庄稼)

benefit /'benɪfɪt/ *n.* 好处;益处;裨益
vi. 受益;得到好处

opportunity /ˌɒpə'tjuːnəti/ *n.* 机会;时机

Unit 1A

virtual /'vɜːtʃʊəl/ *a.* (1)几乎相同的;实质上的;(2)虚拟的;模拟的

virtually /'vɜːtʃʊəli/ *ad.* (1)实际上;几乎;差不多;(2)虚拟地;模拟地

enrich /ɪn'rɪtʃ/ *vt.* 使丰富;充实;强化

glow /gləʊ/ *n.* (1)(某种)强烈的情感;(2)柔和稳定的光
vi. 发出柔和稳定的光

Unit 1A

confidence /ˈkɒnfɪd(ə)ns/ *n.* (1)信心;信赖;信任;(2)自信心

yield /jiːld/ *vt.* (1)产生(结果等)(2)出产;产生
vi. 屈从;让步

abundant /əˈbʌndənt/ *a.* 大量的;丰富的;充裕的

Unit 1A

responsibility /rɪˌspɒnsəˈbɪləti/ *n.* (1)(道德、社会)责任,义务;(2)责任;(3)职责;任务;义务

inherit /ɪnˈherɪt/ *vt.* 沿袭,秉承(信仰、传统或生活方式)
v. 继承(财产)

Unit 1A

inheritor /ɪnˈherɪtə/ *n.* (1)(生活或思想方式的)后继者,继承人;(2)遗产继承人

transmit /trænzˈmɪt/ *vt.* 传送;传递;传播

acquire /əˈkwaɪə/ *vt.* (1)学到,获得(知识、技能);(2)取得;获得

prosperous /ˈprɒsp(ə)rəs/ *a.* 富裕的;繁荣的;兴旺的

Unit 1A

短语

remind sb. of sb./sth. (1)使某人想起某人或某事;(2)使某人想起(相似的)人或事

get by 过活;过得去;勉强应付

make the most of sth. 最大限度地利用某物

reap the benefits (of sth.) 得享(某事物的)好处

Unit 1A

in advance 预先;提前

stand a chance (of doing sth.) 有(做成某事的)希望

over time 逐渐地;慢慢地

turn (sb./sth.) into sth. (使某人/某物)变成

all at once (1)同时;(2)一下子;突然

take pleasure in (doing) sth. 乐于做某事

Unit 1A

open the door to sth. 给……以机会;给……敞开方便之门

take delight in (doing) sth. (做)某事为乐

Unit 1B

词汇

participate /pɑːˈtɪsɪˌpeɪt/ *vi.* 参加;参与

incredible /ɪnˈkredəbl/ *a.* (1)极好的;极大的;(2)不可相信的;难以置信的

deny /dɪˈnaɪ/ *vt.* 否认;否定

undeniably /ˌʌndɪˈnaɪəbli/ *ad.* 不可否认地;无可争辩地

Unit 1B

depart /dɪˈpɑːt/ *v.* 离开(尤指动身去旅行);启程;上路

inquisitive /ɪnˈkwɪzətɪv/ *a.* (1)好学的;好问的;(2)过分好奇的;过于好问的;好打听的

Unit 1B

engage /ɪnˈgeɪdʒ/ *vt.* 吸引住(某人的兴趣、注意力)
vi. 参加,参与(活动)

despair /dɪˈspeə/ *vi.* 绝望;感到无望
n. 绝望

embrace /ɪmˈbreɪs/ *vt.* 欣然接受;乐意采纳
v. 抱;拥抱

Unit 1B

stimulate /ˈstɪmjʊˌleɪt/ *vt.* (1)激发;鼓励;激励;(2)刺激;促使;促进

intellectual /ˌɪntəˈlektʃuəl/ *a.* 智力的;脑力的

capacity /kəˈpæsəti/ *n.* (1)能力;才能;(2)容量;容积;容纳能力

bind /baɪnd/ *vt.* (1)使受(规则或协议)约束;(2)捆;绑

Unit 1B

assure /əˈʃʊə/ *vt.* 向……保证;使确信

assured /əˈʃʊəd/ *a.* 有把握的;自信的;肯定的

career /kəˈrɪə/ *n.* 职业;事业

curve /kɜːv/ *n.* 曲线;弧线

decent /ˈdiːsnt/ *a.* (1)可接受的;相当好的;像样的;(2)正派的;规矩的

boast /bəʊst/ *v.* 夸口;夸耀;吹嘘

Unit 1B

bond /bɒnd/ *n.* 纽带;联系;关系
vi. (与某人)培养一种特殊的关系

blossom /ˈblɒs(ə)m/ *vi.* 发展;成长;繁盛;兴旺

decade /ˈdekeɪd/ *n.* 十年;十年期

genuine /ˈdʒenjuɪn/ *a.* (1)真诚的;诚挚的;(2)真正的;非伪造的

Unit 1B

instinct /ˈɪnstɪŋkt/ *n.* 本能；直觉；天性
confident /ˈkɒnfɪd(ə)nt/ *a.* (1)有信心的；自信的；(2)确信的；有把握的
secure /sɪˈkjʊə/ *a.* (1)自信的；有把握的；(2)安全的
stereotype /ˈsteriəˌtaɪp/ *n.* 模式化的思想；旧框框
comprehend /ˌkɒmprɪˈhend/ *v.* 理解；领悟

Unit 1B

cultivate /ˈkʌltɪˌveɪt/ *vt.* (1)培养；养成；(2)耕；耕作；开垦
range /reɪndʒ/ *n.* 一系列
innocence /ˈɪnəs(ə)ns/ *n.* (1)涉世不深；天真；单纯；(2)清白；无罪
curiosity /ˌkjʊəriˈɒsəti/ *n.* 好奇心
amount /əˈmaʊnt/ *n.* 数额；数量

Unit 1B

flexibility /ˌfleksəˈbɪləti/ *n.* 灵活性
approach /əˈprəʊtʃ/ *vt.* 处理；应付
v. 接近；靠近
n. 方式；方法
enthusiastic /ɪnˌθjuːziˈæstɪk/ *a.* 热心的；热衷的

Unit 1B

enthusiastically /ɪnˌθjuːziˈæstɪkli/ *ad.* 热心地；热衷地
talent /ˈtælənt/ *n.* 天资；天赋；才能
evolve /ɪˈvɒlv/ *vt.* (1)逐步发展；逐渐演变；(2)进化；进化形成
potential /pəˈtenʃl/ *n.* 潜力；潜能
a. 可能的；潜在的

Unit 1B

bold /bəʊld/ *a.* 果敢的；敢于冒险的；大胆的
enormous /ɪˈnɔːməs/ *a.* 巨大的；庞大的
enormously /ɪˈnɔːməsli/ *ad.* 非常；极其

Unit 1B

短语

be about to do sth. 正要发生某事；即将做某事
go off 离开；走
open up (使)出现；(使)成为可能
take sb./sth. seriously 认真对待某人/某事
sign up (for sth.) 报名
get to sb. 使生气；使烦恼

Unit 1B

give sb. the benefit of the doubt 虽有怀疑但还是愿意相信某人；姑且相信某人
reduce sb. to sth. 使陷入(不利境地)
as long as 只要
feel like (doing)sth. 想要(做)某事
safe and sound 安然无恙

Unit 1B

take sb./sth. away 拿走；带走；使消失
be born to be/do sth. 天生适合做某事
sb. can't wait 某人急着/等不及（用于强调对即将发生的事感到兴奋和迫不及待）

Unit 2A

词汇

clutter /ˈklʌtə/ *n.* 杂乱的东西
await /əˈweɪt/ *vt.* (1)等待；等候；(2)(某事)将降临到……身上
vehicle /ˈviːɪkl/ *n.* 交通工具；车辆
efficiency /ɪˈfɪʃnsi/ *n.* 效率；效能

Unit 2A

embarrass /ɪmˈbærəs/ *vt.* (尤指在社交场合)使尴尬，使窘迫
embarrassment /ɪmˈbærəsmənt/ *n.* (1)让人难堪的人；使人为难的事；(2)尴尬；难堪；窘迫
rust /rʌst/ *v.* (使)生锈
n. 锈，铁锈

Unit 2A

blade /bleɪd/ *n.* 刀刃；刀片
tube /tjuːb/ *n.* (1)(膏状物等的）管状容器；(2)管子
paste /peɪst/ *n.* 糊状物；膏
vt. (用糨糊)粘贴
toothpaste /ˈtuːθˌpeɪst/ *n.* 牙膏

Unit 2A

polish /ˈpɒlɪʃ/ *n.* 上光剂；擦光剂
vt. (1)擦亮；擦光；(2)修改；润色
trash /træʃ/ *n.* 废物；垃圾
dump /dʌmp/ *vt.* (1)倾倒；把……倒空；(2)丢弃；扔掉

Unit 2A

match /mætʃ/ *v.* (1)(与……)属同一双;(使)成对;(2)(与……)相配,相称

mismatched /ˌmɪsˈmætʃt/ *a.* 不配对的

purple /ˈpɜːpl/ *a.* 紫色的 *n.* 紫色

closet /ˈklɒzɪt/ *n.* 壁橱

Unit 2A

charity /ˈtʃærəti/ *n.* (1)慈善事业;(2)慈善机构;慈善团体

band /bænd/ *n.* (1)圈;箍;带;(2)乐队;乐团

curl /kɜːl/ *v.* 盘绕;缠绕

curler /ˈkɜːlə/ *n.* 卷发夹

Unit 2A

item /ˈaɪtəm/ *n.* (尤指清单上、一群或一组事物中的)一项,一件,一条

emotional /ɪˈməʊʃn(ə)l/ *a.* (1)情绪激动的(尤指哭泣);(2)情绪(上)的;情感(上)的

bug /bʌg/ *n.* (1)热衷于某事的人;迷;(2)小虫子

Unit 2A

comic /ˈkɒmɪk/ *n.* (儿童)连环漫画册 *a.* 滑稽的;好笑的

fiction /ˈfɪkʃn/ *n.* (1)小说;(2)虚构的事;想象的事

romantic /rəʊˈmæntɪk/ *a.* (1)(书、剧本、电影)浪漫的,关于爱情的;(2)多情的;浪漫的

Unit 2A

strain /streɪn/ *vi.* 使劲拉;使劲推;绷紧 *vt.* 拉伤;扭伤;损伤 *n.* 焦虑;紧张

haul /hɔːl/ *vt.* 拖;拉

donation /dəʊˈneɪʃn/ *n.* (1)捐赠物(尤指捐款);(2)捐助(尤指钱)

Unit 2A

reverse /rɪˈvɜːs/ *vt.* 推翻,彻底改变(决定、判决、过程等) *n.* 相反情况;正相反 *a.* 相反的(顺序、局势、过程等)

token /ˈtəʊkən/ *n.* 象征;标志

Unit 2A

historical /hɪˈstɒrɪkl/ *a.* (1)描写历史事件的;基于史实的;(2)(有关)历史的

beloved /bɪˈlʌvɪd/ *a.* 钟爱的;挚爱的;宝贝的

stuff /stʌf/ *vt.* (1)填;塞;(2)填满;装满 *n.* 各种物品

sack /sæk/ *n.* 大口袋;粗布袋;麻袋

Unit 2A

curb /kɜːb/ *n.* 路缘 *vt.* 控制;抑制;约束

sore /sɔː/ *a.* 痛的;疼痛的

ridiculous /rɪˈdɪkjʊləs/ *a.* 愚蠢的;荒唐的;可笑的

toss /tɒs/ *vt.* 扔;掷;抛

strip /strɪp/ *vt.* (1)剥去;除去;(2)脱去(……的)衣服

Unit 2A

短语

make it (1)获得成功;(2)(尤指在困难情况下)准时到达,赶上

free of/from 无……的;摆脱了……的

catch oneself doing sth. 突然意识到自己在做某事

throw away 扔掉;丢弃

Unit 2A

stack /stæk/ *v.* (使)整齐地堆起;摞起 *n.* (叠放整齐的)一叠,一堆,一摞

plague /pleɪg/ *n.* (1)蝗灾/鼠灾等;(2)瘟疫;疫病

clumsy /ˈklʌmzi/ *a.* (1)(物体)笨重的;(2)笨拙的;不灵活的

Unit 2A

craft /krɑːft/ *n.* (指传统的手工)工艺;手艺

clip /klɪp/ *vt.* (1)(从报纸、杂志等上)剪下;(2)夹住;扣住 *n.* (电影、电视节目或新闻的)剪辑

Unit 2A

after all (1)终究;最终还是;(2)毕竟

reverse oneself (争论中)改变主意/立场

straighten up (1)把……弄整洁;(2)直起身

keep back (1)抑制,控制(感情);(2)隐瞒某事

with open arms 热烈地;欣然

Unit 2B

词汇

limp /lɪmp/ *a.* 软的；不强壮的
vi. （因一腿受伤而）跛行，一瘸一拐地走

surge /sɜːdʒ/ *vi.* （1）迅速涌动；蜂拥向前；（2）突然上涨；激增
n. （1）（情感的）突发；涌现；（2）（数量的）急剧增加

Unit 2B

breeze /briːz/ *n.* 微风；和风

shiver /ˈʃɪvə/ *vi.* （因寒冷或害怕而）颤抖，哆嗦，发抖

complain /kəmˈpleɪn/ *v.* 抱怨；不满；发牢骚

chill /tʃɪl/ *n.* 寒冷；寒气

chilly /ˈtʃɪli/ *a.* 寒冷的；冷得难受的

Unit 2B

stride /straɪd/ *vi.* 迈大步走；大踏步走
n. （1）大步；阔步；（2）进步；进展；发展

melt /melt/ *v.* （使）融化；（使）熔化
vi. 逐渐消失

melting /ˈmeltɪŋ/ *a.* 融化的；熔化的；溶解的

Unit 2B

shed /ʃed/ *n.* （1）工棚；厂房；库房；（2）棚屋；小屋；货棚

immense /ɪˈmens/ *a.* 巨大的

fatigue /fəˈtiːg/ *n.* 疲劳；疲乏；劳累

aboard /əˈbɔːd/ *prep.* 在（船，飞机，火车）上；上（船、飞机、火车）

Unit 2B

hut /hʌt/ *n.* （简陋的）小屋，棚屋，茅舍

barrel /ˈbærəl/ *n.* （中间鼓起的）桶

shell /ʃel/ *n.* （蜗牛或螃蟹等的）壳；贝壳

shellfish /ˈʃelˌfɪʃ/ *n.* 水生有壳动物；水生贝类动物

bundle /ˈbʌndl/ *n.* 捆；把；扎；束

eel /iːl/ *n.* 鳗；鳝

Unit 2B

portion /ˈpɔːʃn/ *n.* （数量或总数的）一部分，一份

migrate /maɪˈgreɪt/ *vi.* （1）（鸟或动物）迁徙；（2）（尤指为找工作）移居，迁移

migration /maɪˈgreɪʃn/ *n.* （1）（鸟或动物的）迁徙；（2）移居；迁移

Unit 2B

wrap /ræp/ *vt.* （用纸、布等）包，裹（某物）

unwrap /ʌnˈræp/ *vt.* 拆开，打开（包装）

suspicious /səˈspɪʃəs/ *a.* （1）感到怀疑的；认为有问题的；（2）怀疑的；猜疑的

suspiciously /səˈspɪʃəsli/ *ad.* （1）感到怀疑地；不信任地；（2）怀疑地；猜疑地

Unit 2B

pinch /pɪntʃ/ *n.* 一小撮
vt. 捏；掐；夹

vanish /ˈvænɪʃ/ *vi.* 突然不见；消失

slope /sləʊp/ *n.* 斜面；斜坡

cracker /ˈkrækə/ *n.* 薄脆饼干

peak /piːk/ *n.* （1）山顶；山峰；（2）高峰；顶点

Unit 2B

stretch /stretʃ/ *v.* （1）（使）延续；（使）延伸；（2）（使）变大；（使）变松；拉长；（3）伸开，伸展（肢体）

overtake /ˌəʊvəˈteɪk/ *v.* 追上；赶上；超过
vt. 超越；超过

anticipate /ænˈtɪsɪˌpeɪt/ *vt.* 预期；预料

reluctance /rɪˈlʌktəns/ *n.* 勉强；不情愿

Unit 2B

stoop /stuːp/ *vi.* 俯身；弯腰

restraint /rɪˈstreɪnt/ *n.* （1）安全装置；安全带；（2）抑制；克制；控制；（3）管制措施；限制；控制

scrape /skreɪp/ *v.* （使）摩擦，擦伤；刮坏
vt. （用小刀等）刮除

Unit 2B

delicate /ˈdelɪkət/ *a.* （1）易坏的；易碎的；脆弱的；（2）微妙的；需要谨慎处理的；（3）精巧的；精致的；精美的

grip /grɪp/ *vt.* 紧握；紧抓
n. 紧握；紧抓；握力

gradual /ˈgrædʒuəl/ *a.* 逐渐的；逐步的

Unit 2B

gradually /ˈgrædʒuəli/ *ad.* 逐渐地；逐步地

sway /sweɪ/ *vi.* 摇摆；摆动；摇晃

accompany /əˈkʌmp(ə)ni/ *vt.* 陪伴；陪同

pureed /ˈpjʊəreɪd/ *a.* 捣压成酱（泥、糊）的

tuna /ˈtjuːnə/ *n.* 金枪鱼

awkward /ˈɔːkwəd/ *a.* （1）笨拙的；不灵巧的；（2）令人尴尬的；使人难堪的

Unit 2B

sip /sɪp/ *n.* 一小口
v. 小口地喝;抿;呷
champagne /ˌʃæm'peɪn/ *n.* (法国)香槟酒

Unit 3A

response /rɪ'spɒns/ *n.* (1)回答;答复;(2)反应;响应
engineering /ˌendʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ/ *n.* 工程(设计)
dialect /'daɪəˌlekt/ *n.* 方言;地方话;土语
analyze /'ænəˌlaɪz/ *vt.* 分析;剖析
script /skrɪpt/ *n.* (戏剧、电影、电视节目、演讲等的)剧本,手稿

Unit 3A

estimate /'estɪˌmeɪt/ *vt.* 估计;估算
estimated /'estɪˌmeɪtɪd/ *a.* 据估计的
assignment /ə'saɪnmənt/ *n.* (1)作业;(2)任务
highway /'haɪˌweɪ/ *n.* 公路
inferior /ɪn'fɪəriə/ *a.* 差的;次的
inferiority /ɪnˌfɪəri'ɒrəti/ *n.* 低人一等;下级;次等

Unit 2B

短语
slow down (使)慢下来;(使)减速
make sense (1)有意义;表述清晰;易于理解;(2)明智;合乎情理
at least (1)至少;起码;(2)至少(指尽管没有更好的情况)
lay sth. out 铺开;展开

Unit 3A

device /dɪ'vaɪs/ *n.* (1)设备;仪器;装置;(2)(使做某事更容易一些的)特殊方法,手段
sophisticated /sə'fɪstɪˌkeɪtɪd/ *a.* (1)见多识广的;老练的;有鉴赏能力的;(2)复杂的;精密的;尖端的

Unit 3A

complex /'kɒmpleks/ *n.* 情结;夸大的情绪反应
a. 复杂的;难以理解的
compensate /'kɒmpənˌseɪt/ *v.* (1)补偿;弥补;(2)赔偿
lease /liːs/ *vt.* 租用;租借
n. (房子、汽车等的)租约,租契
focus /'fəʊkəs/ *n.* 焦点;重点
v. (把……)集中(于)

Unit 2B

hang up (1)挂起(衣服);(2)挂断电话
be supposed to do sth. 应该做某事
not that... but (that)... 不是……而是……
once in a while 偶尔;有时;间或
the small of one's back 后腰
not care for sb./sth. 不喜欢某人/某物

Unit 3A

undergraduate /ˌʌndə'grædʒʊət/ *n.* (在读的)大学(本科)生
adopt /ə'dɒpt/ *vt.* (1)采用;采纳;采取;(2)收养;领养
indispensable /ɪndɪ'spensəbl/ *a.* 不可缺少的;必不可少的

Unit 3A

competitive /kəm'petətɪv/ *a.* (1)竞争的;竞争性的;(2)竞争性强的;有竞争力的
peer /pɪə/ *n.* 同龄人;社会地位相同的人
pitch /pɪtʃ/ *n.* (1)(活动或情感的)程度,强度,高度;(2)场地
portable /'pɔːtəbl/ *a.* 手提式的;便携式的;轻便的

Unit 3A

词汇
campus /'kæmpəs/ *n.* (大学或学院的)校园
transform /træns'fɔːm/ *vt.* 使改观;使变形;使转化
fleet /fliːt/ *n.* 车队;机群;船队
typical /'tɪpɪkl/ *a.* 典型的;有代表性的
access /'ækses/ *n.* 享用权;享用机会
accessible /ək'sesəbl/ *a.* 易得到的;易使用的

Unit 3A

outline /'aʊtlaɪn/ *n.* (1)纲要;梗概;要点;(2)外形;轮廓
regulate /'regjʊˌleɪt/ *vt.* (1)控制;管理;(2)调整;校准;调节
bubble /'bʌbl/ *n.* (1)泡状物;(2)(液体中的)气泡,泡沫
budget /'bʌdʒɪt/ *n.* 预算

Unit 3A

mode /məʊd/ *n.* (1)(机器、设备的)运行方式,状态,模式;(2)方式;方法;做法
loan /ləʊn/ *vt.* (1)把(贵重物品)出借给(某人);(2)借给(尤指钱)
loaner /'ləʊnə/ *n.* 借用物
meantime /'miːntaɪm/ *ad.* 在此期间;与此同时

Unit 3A

amazing /ə'meɪzɪŋ/ *a.* 惊人的；了不起的
solve /sɒlv/ *vt.* 解决(问题)
solver /'sɒlvə/ *n.* 解决问题的人
intelligent /ɪn'telɪdʒ(ə)nt/ *a.* 有智慧的；悟性高的；聪明的

Unit 3A

短语

less than interesting/honest/helpful, etc. 一点也没有意思/一点也不诚实/一点也没有帮助等
add to sth. 增加；增添
visit with sb. 叙谈；闲谈

Unit 3A

take the lead (1)树立榜样；带头；(2)(赛跑或竞赛中)开始领先
account for (1)(在数量或比例上)占，占据；(2) 是……的原因；引起；导致；(3)解释；说明
fire off (1)匆忙发出(信息或指示)；(2)开(枪)；开(炮)

Unit 3A

keep up with (1)跟上；保持同步；(2)和(朋友)保持联系；(3)不断获知(某事的情况)
at a disadvantage 处于不利地位的
stand out (1)出色；(2)显眼；突出
set up 建立；设立；创立
in large part 多半；在很大程度上；在大多数地方

Unit 3B

词汇

addict /'ædɪkt/ *n.* (1)对……着迷的人；(2)吸毒上瘾的人
addiction /ə'dɪkʃn/ *n.* (1)入迷；嗜好；(2)(毒)瘾
positive /'pɒzətɪv/ *a.* (1)积极的；(2)肯定的；确定的
enable /ɪn'eɪbl/ *vt.* 使可能；使发生

Unit 3B

media /'miːdiə/ *n.* 新闻媒体；传媒；大众传播媒介(总称)
outlet /'aʊtˌlet/ *n.* (1)电视台；电台；出版公司；(2)(强烈感情的)发泄途径，发泄方法

Unit 3B

alternative /ɔːl'tɜːnətɪv/ *a.* (1)非传统的；另类的；(2)供替代的；供选择的
n. 供替代的选择；供选择的东西
source /sɔːs/ *n.* 来源；出处
practically /'præktɪkli/ *ad.* (1)差不多；几乎；(2)实用地；讲究实际地；实际可行地

Unit 3B

negative /'negətɪv/ *a.* (1)负面的；有害的；不良的；(2)不赞成的；反对的；(3)消极的
aspect /'æspekt/ *n.* 方面
epidemic /ˌepɪ'demɪk/ *n.* (1)(坏事的突然)盛行，泛滥；(2)(疾病的)传播，流行

Unit 3B

neglect /nɪ'glekt/ *n.* 疏忽
vt. 疏忽；玩忽；漏做
infant /'ɪnfənt/ *n.* 婴儿；幼儿
impact /ɪm'pækt/ *v.* 对……有作用或影响
/'ɪmpækt/ *n.* 作用；影响
involved /ɪn'vɒlvd/ *a.* (1)受影响的；牵扯在内的；卷入……的；(2)参与的

Unit 3B

agony /'ægəni/ *n.* (1)痛苦；煎熬；伤心；(2)剧痛
risk /rɪsk/ *n.* 危险(性)；风险
vt. 使冒毁坏(或破坏、失去贵重物品)的危险
concern /kən'sɜːn/ *vt.* (1)使担心；使忧虑；(2)涉及，关系到(某一主题)
n. 忧虑；担心；关切

Unit 3B

concerned /kən'sɜːnd/ *a.* (1)焦急的；担忧的；(2)(与某事)有关的，有牵连的
discipline /'dɪsəplɪn/ *n.* (1)训练；管教；(2)自制力；(3)(尤指大学的)专业，科目
structure /'strʌktʃə/ *n.* (1)条理性；(2)结构；构造；条理

Unit 3B

plunge /plʌndʒ/ *vi.* (1)(价格、比率等)暴跌，骤降；(2)迅速落下；跌落
decline /dɪ'klaɪn/ *vi.* 减少；变糟；衰退
v. 谢绝；(礼貌地)拒绝
n. (数量的)减少；(质量的)下降
cease /siːs/ *v.* 停止；终止；结束

Unit 3B

imaginary /ɪ'mædʒɪnəri/ *a.* 想象的；虚构的
attribute /ə'trɪbjuːt/ *v.* 把……归因于
personality /ˌpɜːsə'næləti/ *n.* 个性；性格
interaction /ˌɪntər'ækʃn/ *n.* (1)交流；(2)相互作用；相互影响
blog /blɒg/ *n.* 网络日志；博客

Unit 3B

release /rɪ'liːs/ *n.* (1)(化学物等的)释放；(2)释放；放出
vt. (1)释放，排放(物质)；(2)释放；放出
endorphin /en'dɔːfɪn/ *n.* 内啡肽(一种体内生成的化学物质，能止痛并让人更高兴)

Unit 3B

essential /ɪ'senʃl/ *a.* (1)极其重要的；必不可少的；(2)最基本的；本质的
sustain /sə'steɪn/ *vt.* 保持；维持；使持续
sustained /sə'steɪnd/ *a.* 持续的；持久的
arouse /ə'raʊz/ *vt.* 引起；激起；唤起
feedback /'fiːdbæk/ *n.* 反馈意见

Unit 3B

interact /ˌɪntər'ækt/ *vi.* (1)交流；交往；互相来往；(2)相互作用；相互影响
gamble /'gæmbl/ *v.* 打赌；赌博
n. 赌博；投机；冒险
gambler /'gæmblə/ *n.* 赌徒

Unit 3B

lever /'liːvə/ *n.* 控制杆；操纵杆
rational /'ræʃn(ə)l/ *a.* (1)基于理性的；合理的；(2)有理性的；理智的
spoil /spɔɪl/ *vt.* (1)毁掉；糟蹋；破坏；(2)宠坏；惯坏；溺爱
moderate /'mɒd(ə)rət/ *a.* 中等的；适中的；适度的
moderation /ˌmɒdə'reɪʃn/ *n.* 节制；克制

Unit 3B

multiple /'mʌltɪpl/ *a.* 包括/涉及多个人/物/事件等的；多的；多种的
schedule /'skedʒul/ *vt.* 把……安排在；排定
n. 日程表；计划表；活动安排

Unit 3B

短语

a wealth of sth. 丰富的某物
make use of sth. 利用某物；使用某物
give rise to sth. 引起；导致
charge sb. with (doing) sth. 指控；控告；起诉
keep sb. from (doing) sth. 不让某人做某事
care for 照顾；照看

Unit 3B

tell of 描述；叙述
as well (除……外)还
at risk 处境危险；受到威胁
nothing but 仅仅；只有；不过

Unit 4A

词汇

era /'ɪərə/ *n.* 时代；年代
victim /'vɪktɪm/ *n.* 受害者；牺牲者
survivor /sə'vaɪvə/ *n.* 生还者；幸存者
tragedy /'trædʒədi/ *n.* (1)悲剧性事件；惨剧；惨案；(2)悲剧(作品)
subsequent /'sʌbsɪkwənt/ *a.* 随后的；继……之后的

Unit 4A

associate /ə'səʊsiət/ *n.* 同事；(生意)伙伴
/ə'səʊsiˌeɪt/ *vt.* 联想；联系
congress /'kɒŋgres/ *n.* 国会；议会
congresswoman /'kɒŋgresˌwʊmən/
vt. 国会女议员(尤指美国众议院)
tender /'tendə/ *a.* 温柔的；体贴入微的；慈爱的

Unit 4A

sympathy /'sɪmpəθi/ *n.* 同情；同情心
shield /ʃiːld/ *vt.* 保护；保卫
n. 盾；盾牌
hail /heɪl/ *n.* (1)一阵弹雨/像雹子般袭来的石块等；(2)雹；冰雹
vt. 把……称赞为；把……誉为
bullet /'bʊlɪt/ *n.* 枪弹；子弹；弹头

Unit 4A

priest /priːst/ *n.* (基督教的)牧师，神父
remarkable /rɪ'mɑːkəbl/ *a.* 非凡的；不寻常的；显著的
humanity /hjuː'mænəti/ *n.* (1)人；人类(总称)；(2)仁慈；博爱；同情心；(3)人文学科
civilian /sɪ'vɪliən/ *a.* 平民的；百姓的；民用的；非军职的
/sə'vɪliən/ *n.* 平民；老百姓

Unit 4A

grace /greɪs/ *n.* (1)善意;礼貌;体谅;(2)优美;优雅
circumstance /'sɜːkəmstəns/ *n.* 情况;情形
respond /rɪ'spɒnd/ *vi.* 做出反应;回应
responder /rɪ'spɒndə/ *n.* 回应者;应答者
widow /'wɪdəʊ/ *n.* 寡妇;遗孀
solemn /'sɒləm/ *a.* 严肃的;郑重的;庄严的

Unit 4A

solemnly /'sɒləmli/ *ad.* 严肃地;郑重地;庄严地
sergeant /'sɑːdʒ(ə)nt/ *n.* 警佐;巡佐
commitment /kə'mɪtmənt/ *n.* (1)投入;忠诚;奉献;(2)承诺
automobile /'ɔːtəməˌbiːl/ *n.* 汽车

Unit 4A

distinct /dɪ'stɪŋkt/ *a.* (1)确实的;显著的;(2)有区别的;不同的;单独的;(3)清晰的;清楚的;明显的
military /'mɪlɪt(ə)ri/ *a.* 军用的;军事的;军队的
personnel /ˌpɜːsə'nel/ *n.* (公司、组织或军队中的)人员;员工;职员
jail /dʒeɪl/ *n.* 监狱;看守所

Unit 4A

confine /kən'faɪn/ *vt.* (1)监禁;禁闭;(2)使局限于
solitary /'sɒlət(ə)ri/ *a.* (1)单独的;无伴的;(2)单个的;唯一的
chamber /'tʃeɪmbə/ *n.* (1)(有某种用途的)室;(2)大厅;(尤指)会议厅
establish /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ *vt.* (1)建立(关系或联系);(2)建立;创立;设立

Unit 4A

harmony /'hɑːməni/ *n.* 融洽相处
reconcile /'rekənˌsaɪl/ *vt.* 调和;调解
v. (使)和解;(使)恢复友好关系
conflict /kən'flɪkt/ *vi.* 矛盾;冲突;抵触
/'kɒnflɪkt/ *n.* (意见等的)抵触,冲突,矛盾
conflicted /ˌkən'flɪktɪd/ *a.* (尤指情感)冲突的,矛盾的

Unit 4A

advocate /'ædvəkət/ *n.* 提倡者;拥护者;鼓吹者
/'ædvəˌkeɪt/ *vt.* 主张;拥护;鼓吹
grief /griːf/ *n.* (尤指因所爱之人去世而产生的)悲痛,极度悲伤
rage /reɪdʒ/ *n.* 盛怒;狂怒
v. 发怒;怒斥
vi. (战斗、争论)激烈进行;(暴风雨)肆虐

Unit 4A

association /əˌsəʊsi'eɪʃn/ *n.* (1)协会;社团;(2)关系;关联;交往
legislation /ˌledʒɪs'leɪʃn/ *n.* 法规;法律
authority /ɔː'θɒrəti/ *n.* (1)权力;当权;(2)专家;权威;(3)官方机构;政府部门
intense /ɪn'tens/ *a.* 剧烈的;强烈的

Unit 4A

involve /ɪn'vɒlv/ *vt.* (1)涉及;影响;(2)包含;需要;(3)鼓励……参与;允许……参加
fulfill /fʊl'fɪl/ *vt.* (1)履行;执行;符合;(2)实现;达到
fulfillment /fʊl'fɪlmənt/ *n.* (1)履行;实现;达到;(2)满足感;成就感

Unit 4A

短语

give one's life 捐躯;牺牲
ring out 发出响亮的声音
shield sb./sth. from sb./sth. 使……免受
with (good/a good) grace 有风度地;情愿地
be/get caught up in sth. 被卷入;陷入

Unit 4A

in the words of sb./in sb.'s words 用某人的话来说
reserve sth. for sb./sth. 保留;预留
relate to sth./sb. 理解;认同
make sense of sth. 理解,弄懂某事(尤指困难或复杂的事)
sum up 概括;总结;概述

Unit 4A

in need 在困难时;在贫困之中
count on 依靠;指望
call on 呼吁;号召

Unit 4B

词汇

aspiration /ˌæspɪ'reɪʃn/ *n.* 强烈愿望;志向;抱负
barely /'beəli/ ad. (1)勉强才能;(2)几乎不
lane /leɪn/ *n.* (1)车道;(2)(乡间的)小路
terror /'terə/ *n.* 恐惧;惊恐
awful /'ɔːfl/ *a.* 糟糕的;恶劣的;讨厌的
abolish /ə'bɒlɪʃ/ *vt.* 废止;废除;取消

Unit 4B

image /ˈɪmɪdʒ/ *n.* 印象；概念

slippery /ˈslɪpəri/ *a.* 滑的；湿滑的

concrete /ˈkɒŋkriːt/ *n.* 混凝土 *a.* 具体的

primitive /ˈprɪmətɪv/ *a.* (1)(设计)简单的；(2)原始的

crystal /ˈkrɪstl/ *n.* 水晶

Unit 4B

monster /ˈmɒnstə/ *n.* 妖怪；怪兽；怪物

roar /rɔː/ *vi.* 吼叫；呼啸 *n.* 吼叫声；咆哮声

limb /lɪm/ *n.* (1)大树枝；(2)肢；手臂；腿

current /ˈkʌrənt/ *n.* (河、湖或海的)水流，潮流 *a.* 现时的；当前的；现行的

submerge /səbˈmɜːdʒ/ *vt.* 使浸没；淹没

Unit 4B

slender /ˈslendə/ *a.* 修长的；苗条的；纤细的

streak /striːk/ *vi.* 快速移动

stiff /stɪf/ *a.* (肌肉)疼痛的，僵硬的，不灵活的

heal /hiːl/ *v.* (1)(在精神和情感上)(使)复原；(使)坚强起来；(2)(使)康复，复原

Unit 4B

reflect /rɪˈflekt/ *v.* 反射(光) *vt.* (1)映射；反射；(2)显示；反映

lean /liːn/ *vi.* (1)倚；靠；(2)屈身；倾斜

ignore /ɪgˈnɔː/ *vt.* (1)忽略；忽视；不顾；(2)假装没有注意到；无视

Unit 4B

heave /hiːv/ *v.* (用力)推，拉，提，举 *vi.* 强烈起伏

lord /lɔːd/ *n.* (1)主(祷告时对上帝或耶稣的称呼)；(2)(英国的)(男性)贵族

lower /ˈləʊə/ *a.* 较低的；较下的 *v.* 减少；降低

Unit 4B

acute /əˈkjuːt/ *a.* (1)严重的；(2)灵敏的；敏锐的

nightmare /ˈnaɪtˌmeə/ *n.* 噩梦；梦魇

Unit 4B

patrol /pəˈtrəʊl/ *n.* (1)巡逻队；巡查队；巡逻车队；(2)巡逻；巡查 *v.* 巡逻；巡查

slam /slæm/ *vt.* (1)猛放；用力移；猛击；(2)使劲关；把……砰地关上

halt /hɔːlt/ *n.* 停止；暂停

Unit 4B

collapse /kəˈlæps/ *vi.* (1)(因病或虚弱)突然倒下，昏倒；(2)倒塌；坍塌

badge /bædʒ/ *n.* 徽章；证章；徽牌

identify /aɪˈdentɪˌfaɪ/ *vt.* (1)是……的标志；显示出；(2)辨认，确认(某人)；(3)确认，识别(某物)

Unit 4B

短语

live in terror of sb./sth. 一直很害怕某人/某物

a string of 一连串，一系列(事件等)

turn off 不再听；不再想

lean on 依靠；依赖

beat sb. to it 抢在某人之前做

Unit 4B

yell /jel/ *v.* (尤因恐惧、愤怒或激动而)叫喊，大嚷大叫

backup /ˈbækʌp/ *n.* (1)后备人员；支援人员；备用设备；(2)备份

swell /swel/ *v.* (数量)逐渐增加；(使)增多，增大 *vi.* 肿，肿胀

Unit 4B

betray /bɪˈtreɪ/ *vt.* (1)流露(想掩饰的情感)；(2)背叛(信任你的人)；对……不忠；出卖

crack /kræk/ *v.* (使)裂开；(使)破裂 *n.* 裂缝；缝隙

moan /məʊn/ *v.* (1)呻吟；呜咽；(2)抱怨

grab /græb/ *vt.* 攫取；抓住

Unit 4B

pull over (使)(车辆和司机)停靠在路边

slip off/down 滑落；脱落

bring sth. to a halt 使停止；使停住；使暂停

cut through (在水中或空中)轻松地通过

fill up with (使)充满；(使)装满

Unit 4B

identify sb. as sb. 表明……的身份
catch up with 追上;赶上
break through (sth.) 冲破; 突破
hold on 紧紧抓住;紧紧抱住
let go (of sb./sth.) 放手;松开
be grateful for 对……表示感激

Unit 5A

substantial /səb'stænʃl/ *a.* (1)大量的;多的;(2)物质的;材料的
mechanism /'mekəˌnɪz(ə)m/ *n.* (1)机构;结构;机制;体制;(2)机械装置;机件;工作部件

Unit 5A

style /staɪl/ *n.* (个人的)行为方式,风格,作风
shuffle /'ʃʌfl/ *vi.* 拖着脚步走
commentator /'kɒmənˌteɪtə/ *n.* 实况解说员;实况播音员

Unit 5A

词汇

marathon /'mærəθ(ə)n/ *n.* 马拉松(长跑)
annual /'ænjuəl/ *a.* 一年一度的;每年的
route /ruːt/ *n.* (1)路线;(2)途径;方法
harsh /hɑːʃ/ *a.* (1)严厉的;残酷的;苛刻的;(2)恶劣的;艰苦的;严峻的

Unit 5A

contest /'kɒntest/ *n.* 比赛;竞赛
/kən'test/ *vt.* 竞争;争夺;角逐
distinction /dɪ'stɪŋkʃn/ *n.* (1)优秀;卓越;杰出;(2)差别;不同
amateur /'æmətə/ *a.* 业余爱好者的
n. 业余爱好
odd /ɒd/ *a.* 奇特的;古怪的;异常的

Unit 5A

alike /ə'laɪk/ *ad.* 两样都 (用于强调刚提及的两者)
a. 相同的;相像的
welfare /'welfeə/ *n.* (1)幸福;康乐;安康;(2)(政府或组织的)福利救济
insane /ɪn'seɪn/ *a.* (1)愚蠢的;疯狂的;(2)精神错乱的;精神病的

Unit 5A

endurance /ɪn'djʊərəns/ *n.* (忍)耐力
regardless /rɪ'gɑːdləs/ *ad.* 不管;不顾
super /suːpə/ *prefix* 过于;超
/'suːpə/ *a.* 极好的;了不起的
contract /'kɒntrækt/ *n.* 契约;合同;合约
/kən'trækt/ *v.* (使)签订合同;(使)立约
prominent /'prɒmɪnənt/ *a.* 重要的;知名的;显赫的

Unit 5A

invisible /ɪn'vɪzəbl/ *a.* 看不见的
assemble /ə'sembl/ *v.* 聚集;集合;收集
vt. 组装;装配
assembled /ə'sembld/ *a.* 聚集在一起
assert /ə'sɜːt/ *vt.* (坚决)主张;断言
react /ri'ækt/ *vi.* (做出)反应
apparent /ə'pærənt/ *a.* 显而易见的;明白的

Unit 5A

smash /smæʃ/ *vt.* 打破纪录
v. (1)打碎;砸碎;(使)粉碎;(2)(使)猛撞,猛击,猛掷
award /ə'wɔːd/ *vt.* 给予;授予
n. 奖;奖赏;奖金;奖品
prominence /'prɒmɪnəns/ *n.* 重要;著名
despite /dɪ'spaɪt/ *prep.* 尽管;虽然

Unit 5A

sponsor /'spɒnsə/ *n.* 赞助者;赞助商
vt. 赞助;资助
finance /faɪ'næns/ *vt.* 为……提供资金
n. (1)财政;金融;(2)(机构或个人的)财务情况
furnish /'fɜːnɪʃ/ *vt.* (1)提供;供应;(2)为(房屋或房间)配备家具

Unit 5A

publicity /pʌb'lɪsəti/ *n.* (报纸、电视等对某人或某物的)关注,报道
crush /krʌʃ/ *n.* 拥挤的人群
vt. 压碎;压坏;压扁
gear /gɪə/ *n.* (1)服装;用具;装备;(2)排挡;挡位

Unit 5A

dim /dɪm/ *v.* (1)(使)减弱;(使)变渺茫;(2)(使)暗下来;(使)变微弱
a. 阴暗的;昏暗的
stroke /strəʊk/ *n.* 中风
vt. 轻抚;轻摸
legend /'ledʒ(ə)nd/ *n.* (1)传奇人物;(2)传说;传奇(故事)

Unit 5A

magnificent /mæg'nɪfɪsnt/ *a.* 宏伟的；壮观的；华丽的
brilliant /'brɪljənt/ *a.* (1)极好的；(2)明亮的；光辉夺目的；灿烂的
individual /ˌɪndɪ'vɪdʒuəl/ *n.* 个人；个体
a. 单独的；个别的
inherent /ɪn'hɪərənt/ *a.* 本质的；内在的；基本的
inherently /ɪn'hɪərəntli/ *ad.* 本质地；内在地；基本地

Unit 5A

短语

up to 达到；至多
in attendance 出席（重要的或官方的活动）
might (just) as well 不妨；还不如；倒不如
at a time 每组；每次；一次

Unit 5A

leave sb./sth. behind (1)把……抛在后面；(2)不带；忘记拿走；留下
out loud 大声地
fall ill 生病
have no intention of doing sth. 不打算做某事；无意做某事
endear sb. to sb. 使受欢迎；使被喜爱

Unit 5A

give away (1)分送，送掉（不需要的东西）；(2)使露马脚；暴露
pass away 去世
to this day 直到现在；至今

Unit 5B

词汇

mold /məʊld/ *vt.* 塑造，影响（某人）
n. 模具；铸模
critical /'krɪtɪkl/ *a.* (1)非常重要的；关键的；(2)批判的；爱挑剔的；吹毛求疵的

Unit 5B

underline /ˌʌndə'laɪn/ *vt.* (1)强调；使突出；(2)在……之下画线（以示重要）
humble /'hʌmbl/ *a.* (1)谦虚的；谦卑的；(2)（社会阶层或地位）卑微的，低下的
generous /'dʒenərəs/ *a.* (1)宽宏大量的；(2)慷慨的；大方的

Unit 5B

emphasize /'emfəˌsaɪz/ *vt.* 强调；着重
mutual /mjuːtʃuəl/ *a.* (1)共有的；共同的；(2)相互的；彼此的
obligation /ˌɒblɪ'geɪʃn/ *n.* 义务；职责；责任
graceful /'greɪsfl/ *a.* (1)有风度的；得体的；(2)优美的；优雅的；雅致的
youngster /'jʌŋstə/ *n.* 孩童；年轻人

Unit 5B

nevertheless /ˌnevərðə'les/ *ad.* 然而；不过；尽管如此
abstract /'æbstrækt/ *a.* 纯理论上的；纯概念的；抽象的
n. 摘要；梗概
concept /'kɒnsept/ *n.* 概念；观念；想法
strategy /'strætədʒi/ *n.* 行动计划；计谋；策略
cooperation /kəʊˌɒpə'reɪʃn/ *n.* 合作；协作

Unit 5B

crucial /'kruːʃl/ *a.* 至关重要的；关键性的
overcome /ˌəʊvə'kʌm/ *vt.* 控制（感情）；克服（困难）
fundamental /ˌfʌndə'mentl/ *a.* (1)根本的；基本的；基础的；(2) 必不可少的；十分重要的
outcome /'aʊtˌkʌm/ *n.* 结果；结局；后果

Unit 5B

ambition /æm'bɪʃn/ *n.* (1)追求；夙愿；(2)抱负；雄心；野心
participation /pɑːˌtɪsɪ'peɪʃn/ *n.* 参加；参与
hazard /'hæzəd/ *n.* 危险；隐患
psychology /saɪ'kɒlədʒi/ *n.* 心理学
psychologist /saɪ'kɒlədʒɪst/ *n.* 心理学家

Unit 5B

considerable /kən'sɪd(ə)rəbl/ *a.* 相当大的
intensity /ɪn'tensɪti/ *n.* 强烈；剧烈
psychological /ˌsaɪkə'lɒdʒɪkl/ *a.* 精神的；心理的
emphasis /'emfəsɪs/ *n.* 重点；重要性
exclusive /ɪk'skluːsɪv/ *a.* 专用的；独有的；独享的
exclusively /ɪk'skluːsɪvli/ *ad.* 仅仅；单独地；专门地

Unit 5B

outlook /'aʊtˌlʊk/ *n.* (1)（对生活和世界的）看法，观点，态度；(2)前景；远景
demanding /dɪ'mɑːndɪŋ/ *a.* (1)（人）要求严格的；苛求的；要求过高的；(2)要求高的；需要技能的；费力的

Unit 5B

excessive /ɪk'sesɪv/ *a.* 过度的；过多的

drain /dreɪn/ *vt.* (1)使筋疲力尽；(2)使流走；使排出

draining /'dreɪnɪŋ/ *a.* 使人筋疲力尽的

consequence /'kɒnsɪkwəns/ *n.* 后果

rate /reɪt/ *n.* (1)(某事发生的)速率，速度；(2)比率；率

Unit 5B

accomplish /ə'kʌmplɪʃ/ *vt.* 完成；实现

accomplishment /ə'kʌmplɪʃmənt/ *n.* (1)成就；成绩；(2)完成；实现

adapt /ə'dæpt/ *v.* (使)适应；(使)适合 *vt.* 改造；改装

define /dɪ'faɪn/ *vt.* (1)使明确；规定；说明；(2)给……下定义；解释

Unit 5B

redefine /ˌriːdɪ'faɪn/ *vt.* 重新界定；重新定义

trait /treɪt/ *n.* (某人性格中的)特征，品质

extreme /ɪk'striːm/ *a.* (1)极大的；极度的；(2)极端的；偏激的；过分的 *n.* 极端(尤用于谈论两个相反的事物)

extremely /ɪk'striːmli/ *ad.* 极度；极其

pave /peɪv/ *vt.* 铺；铺砌；铺筑

Unit 5B

短语

the here and now 现时

early on 在初期；开始不久

free ride 白白得到的好处

blame sb. for sth. 责怪；指责；把……归咎于

place emphasis on sth. 重视

Unit 5B

cancel out 抵消

on the surface 表面上；从外表看；乍一看

in shape 健康状况良好

deal with sth. 处理；应付

the way of the world 大多数人的行为方式；世道；事情发生的规律

pave the way for sth. 为某事物铺平道路；为某事物创造条件

Unit 6A

词汇

numerous /'njuːmərəs/ *a.* 许多的；很多的

reliable /rɪ'laɪəbl/ *a.* 可信赖的；可靠的

contrast /kən'trɑːst/ *vt.* 使成对比；使成对照 *vi.* 形成对比 /'kɒntrɑːst/ *n.* 差异；差别

indicate /'ɪndɪˌkeɪt/ *vt.* (1)表明；显示；(2)表明(意向等)

Unit 6A

indicator /'ɪndɪˌkeɪtə/ *n.* 指示物；指示者

decrease /diː'kriːs/ *v.* (使)变小；(使)减少 /'diːkriːs/ *n.* 减少；减少的量

assess /ə'ses/ *vt.* (1)评价；评定；(2)估价；估计

alter /'ɔːltə/ *v.* (使)变化；(使)改变

stake /steɪk/ *n.* (1)赌注；风险；(2)(赛马、牌局等的)赌注，押金；(3)股份

Unit 6A

academic /ˌækə'demɪk/ *a.* 学术的

undermine /ˌʌndə'maɪn/ *vt.* 逐渐削弱；逐渐损害

significant /sɪg'nɪfɪkənt/ *a.* (1)相当数量的；显著的；(2)重要的；意义重大的

significantly /sɪg'nɪfɪkəntli/ *ad.* 重大地；显著地

interfere /ˌɪntə'fɪə/ *vi.* 介入；干涉；干预

Unit 6A

overall /ˌəʊvər'ɔːl/ *ad.* (1)一般地；总体上；(2)全部地；总共 *a.* 包括一切的；全部的

proof /pruːf/ *n.* 证明；证据

approximately /ə'prɒksɪmətli/ *ad.* 大致；近似

seemingly /'siːmɪŋli/ *ad.* (1)看样子；看来；(2)看上去；表面上；外观上

Unit 6A

consistent /kən'sɪstənt/ *a.* (1)稳定发展的；持续不变的；(2)(行为、态度、标准等)一贯的，一致的

toll /təʊl/ *n.* (1)严重的不良影响；(2)伤亡人数

given /'gɪvn/ *prep.* 考虑到；鉴于 *a.* 指定的；特定的

Unit 6A

indication /ˌɪndɪ'keɪʃn/ *n.* 象征；迹象；标示

compromise /'kɒmprəˌmaɪz/ *vt.* 损害 *vi.* 折中解决；让步 *n.* 妥协；和解

whereas /weər'æz/ *conj.* 但是；却；尽管

marginal /'mɑːdʒɪn(ə)l/ *a.* (1)勉强够格的；最低限度的；(2)小的；微不足道的；不重要的

Unit 6A

commit /kə'mɪt/ *vt.* (1)投入(钱、时间、人力等)；(2)犯(错误或罪行)

committed /kə'mɪtɪd/ *a.* 坚定的；尽心尽力的

withdraw /wɪð'drɔː/ *v.* 退出；不参加 *vt.* (从银行)提取

Unit 6A

striking /'straɪkɪŋ/ *a.* 引人注目的；显著的；吸引人的

generate /'dʒenəˌreɪt/ *vt.* (1)产生；创造；(2)产生（热、电等能量）

anew /ə'njuː/ *ad.* 再；重新

permanent /'pɜːmənət/ *a.* 长久的；永久的；永恒的

owing to /'əʊɪŋ tuː/ *prep.* 因为；由于

Unit 6A

abandon /ə'bændən/ *vt.* (1)放弃（信念、信仰或看法）；(2)抛弃；遗弃

appealing /ə'piːliŋ/ *a.* 有吸引力的；有趣的

myth /mɪθ/ *n.* (1)(许多人相信的)错误观点，荒诞说法；(2)(古代的)神话

Unit 6A

cut corners （为节省时间或金钱而）草草行事，偷工减料

bit by bit 逐渐地；一点一点地

burn the midnight oil 挑灯夜战；开夜车

drop out (1)退学；辍学；(2)退出；脱离

Unit 6A

erode /ɪ'rəʊd/ *v.* (1)(逐步)削弱，损害；(2)侵蚀；腐蚀

characteristic /ˌkærɪktə'rɪstɪk/
a. 典型的；独特的
n. 特征；特性；特色

intensive /ɪn'tensɪv/ *a.* 加强的；密集的

recreation /ˌrekri'eɪʃn/ *n.* 娱乐；消遣

Unit 6A

resolve /rɪ'zɒlv/ *vt.* (1)下决心，决意（做某事）；(2)解决（问题、困难）
n. 决心；决意

Unit 6A

in turn (1)相应地；(2)轮流地；依次地

contribute to 促成，造成（某事反生）

hold on to 继续感到；仍然相信

Unit 6A

surplus /'sɜːpləs/ *a.* 过剩的；剩余的；多余的
n. 剩余；过剩；剩余额；多余的量

accustomed /ə'kʌstəmd/ *a.* 习惯于做某事

depress /dɪ'pres/ *vt.* (1)降低；减少；(2)使沮丧；使忧愁；使抑郁

convention /kən'venʃn/ *n.* 习俗；惯例；常规

Unit 6A

短语

interfere with 妨碍；阻止

cut class 逃课

on the other hand 另一方面……；从一方面来说……，从另一方面来说……

take a/its toll on 对……产生不良影响

at risk (of) 处境危险；受到威胁

Unit 6B

词汇

soar /sɔː/ *vi.* (1)猛增；骤升；(2)急速升高

frank /fræŋk/ *a.* 坦率的；坦诚的；直言不讳的

vigorous /'vɪg(ə)rəs/ *a.* (1)体力旺盛的；热情满怀的；强有力的；坚决的；(2)强壮的；积极的；健壮的

Unit 6A

controversial /ˌkɒntrə'vɜːʃl/
a. 引起争论的；有争议的

conventional /kən'venʃ(ə)nl/
a. 常例的；因袭的；传统的

formative /'fɔːmətɪv/ *a.* 个性形成时期/阶段等

Unit 6A

to begin with (1)起初；开始的时候；(2)首先

in other words 换言之；换句话说

cut back on (1)削减；缩减；(2)(尤指为了健康而)少吃，少喝，减少

Unit 6B

absorb /əb'zɔːb/ *vt.* (1)经受；承受；(2)吸收；(3)吸引某人；使专心

tuition /tjuː'ɪʃn/ *n.* 学费

tremendous /trə'mendəs/ *a.* 巨大的；极快的；强有力的

relevant /'reləv(ə)nt/ *a.* 有关的；切题的

Unit 6B

spite /spaɪt/ *n.* 虽然;不顾;尽管……(仍……)
obstacle /'ɒbstəkl/ *n.* 障碍;阻碍;妨碍
collective /kə'lektɪv/ *a.* 集体的;共同的;共有的
collectively /kə'lektɪvli/ *ad.* 集体地;共同地
claim /kleɪm/ *vt.* 声称;断言;主张
n. 声称;断言;主张

Unit 6B

cite /saɪt/ *vt.* (1)引证;援引;(2)引用;引述
dropout /'drɒpaʊt/ *n.* 辍学者;退学者
evidence /'evɪd(ə)ns/ *n.* 证据;证明
exhaust /ɪɡ'zɔːst/ *vt.* (1)用完;耗尽;(2)使筋疲力尽

Unit 6B

advanced /əd'vɑːnst/ *a.* (1)高级的;高等的;(2)先进的
singular /'sɪŋɡjʊlə/ *a.* (1)奇异的;异常的;(2)单数的;单数形式的
financial /faɪ'nænʃl/ *a.* 财政的;金融的;财务的
furthermore /'fɜːðəmɔː(r)/ *ad.* 此外;而且;不仅如此

Unit 6B

endure /ɪn'djʊə/ *vt.* 忍耐;忍受
bulge /bʌldʒ/ *vi.* 鼓起;胀出
n. 凸起;鼓起部分
tutor /'tjuːtə(r)/ *n.* (1)家庭教师;私人教师;(2)(学院或大学里的)导师,助教
startle /'stɑːtl/ *vt.* 使(某人)吃惊;吓(某人)一跳

Unit 6B

abuse /ə'bjuːs/ *n.* 滥用
/ə'bjuːz/ *vt.* (1)虐待;凌辱;(2)滥用;妄用
authentic /ɔː'θentɪk/ *a.* (1)可靠的;真实的;(2)正宗的;原汁原味的
stress /stres/ *n.* 压力;忧虑;紧张
vt. 强调;着重

Unit 6B

readily /'redɪli/ *ad.* (1)乐意地;爽快地;(2)快速地;便利地
concede /kən'siːd/ *v.* (不得不)承认
mature /mə'tʃʊə/ *vi.* (1)变理智;(举止)变成熟;(2)成熟;长成
a. 成熟的;理智的;明白事理的

Unit 6B

startled /'stɑːtld/ *a.* 受到惊吓的;吓了一跳的;吃惊的
necessity /nə'sesəti/ *n.* (1)必需品;(2)必要;必要性
luxury /'lʌkʃəri/ *n.* (1)奢侈品;(2)奢华;奢侈
glimpse /ɡlɪmps/ *n.* 一瞥;飞快的一看

Unit 6B

tension /'tenʃn/ *n.* 紧张;焦虑;焦急
relieve /rɪ'liːv/ *vt.* (1)减轻,缓和,缓解(问题的难度或严重性);(2)减轻,缓和,缓解(疼痛或不快的感觉)
burden /'bɜːdn/ *n.* 重担;负担
convince /kən'vɪns/ *vt.* 使确信;使信服

Unit 6B

短语
be in the/a minority 占少数
as for 关于;至于
a matter of (doing) sth. 关乎……的事情
look back 回忆起;回顾
feel sorry for oneself 自我怜悯
be envious of 妒忌;羡慕

Unit 6B

prioritize /praɪ'ɒrɪˌtaɪz/ *v.* 确定优先次序;分清主次
aware /ə'weə/ *a.* 意识到的;知道的
influential /ˌɪnflu'enʃl/ *a.* 有影响力的
illustrate /'ɪləˌstreɪt/ *vt.* (1)(作为例证)说明(事实);(2)(用图片、图表、一连串数字等)说明,阐明

Unit 6B

convinced /kən'vɪnst/ *a.* 确信的;信服的
ensure /ɪn'ʃʊə/ *vt.* 确保;保证
responsible /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ *a.* (1)负责的;(2)有责任心的;可靠的;可信赖的
formal /'fɔːml/ *a.* (1)(教育或培训)正规的;(2)官方的;正式的

Unit 6B

catch/get/have a glimpse of 一瞥;飞快地看
relieve sb. of sth. 解除某人的负担

Unit 7A

词汇

fraud /frɔːd/ *n.* 欺诈;诈骗

corruption /kə'rʌpʃn/ *n.* (尤指有权势者的)贪污,贿赂,受贿,腐败

expel /ɪk'spel/ *vt.* 强迫(某人)离开;驱逐;开除

Unit 7A

facilitate /fə'sɪləteɪt/ *vt.* 促进;使便利

nerve /nɜːv/ *n.* (1)精神紧张;焦虑不安;神经质;(2)神经

frustrate /frʌ'streɪt/ *vt.* 阻挠;使烦恼;使灰心

frustration /frʌ'streɪʃn/ *n.* 懊丧;懊恼;沮丧

Unit 7A

plagiarism /'pleɪdʒəˌrɪz(ə)m/ *n.* 剽窃;抄袭

software /'sɒftˌweə/ *n.* (计算机)软件

plagiarize /'pleɪdʒəˌraɪz/ *v.* 剽窃;抄袭

Unit 7A

purchase /'pɜːtʃəs/ *n.* 购买(的东西)
vt. 购买

layer /'leɪə/ *n.* (1)(组织或体系中的)层,级别,阶层;(2)表层;层

exemplify /ɪg'zemplɪˌfaɪ/ *vt.* (1)作为……的范例;当作……的典型;(2)举例说明

Unit 7A

ultimate /'ʌltɪmət/ *a.* (1)最出色的;最大的;最糟糕的;(2)(目标等)最终的,首要的;(3)最终的;最后的

illegal /ɪ'liːgl/ *a.* 违法的

fake /feɪk/ *vt.* 仿造;伪造
n. 赝品;假货
a. 伪造的;冒充的

Unit 7A

launch /lɔːntʃ/ *vt.* (1)发动;发起;开始进行;(2)把(新产品、新书等)投放市场;出版;发行;(3)发射(武器或宇宙飞船)

campaign /kæm'peɪn/ *n.* (1)运动;(宣传)活动;(2)战役

Unit 7A

consumer /kən'sjuːmə/ *n.* 消费者

bribe /braɪb/ *n.* 贿赂
vt. 贿赂;收买

rip /rɪp/ *vt.* 撕掉;扯掉
v. 撕;扯;被撕裂;被扯开

accurate /'ækjʊrət/ *a.* 正确的;准确的

Unit 7A

browse /braʊz/ *v.* (1)(在计算机或因特网上)浏览(信息);(2)(在商店里)随便看看
vi. 随意翻阅;浏览

locate /ləʊ'keɪt/ *vt.* (1)找出……的准确位置;(2)位于某处/位于某处附近等

Unit 7A

eliminate /ɪ'lɪmɪˌneɪt/ *vt.* (1)消除;剔除;根除;(2)(在比赛或竞选中)淘汰

attach /ə'tætʃ/ *vt.* 系;绑;贴;固定;连接;附上

attached /ə'tætʃt/ *a.* 连接的;附加的

satisfactory /ˌsætɪs'fækt(ə)ri/ *a.* 令人满意的

Unit 7A

exaggerate /ɪg'zædʒəˌreɪt/ *v.* 夸大;夸张;言过其实

principle /'prɪnsəpl/ *n.* (1)道德原则;行为准则;(2)原则;原理;基本的观念

morality /mə'ræləti/ *n.* 道德;道德观

extensive /ɪk'stensɪv/ *a.* (1)广阔的;大量的;大规模的;(2)广泛的;全面的

Unit 7A

appropriate /ə'prəʊpriət/ *a.* 恰当的;合适的

web /web/ *n.* (1)万维网;(2)蜘蛛网

conscious /'kɒnʃəs/ *a.* (1)关注的;有意识的;注重的;(2)注意到的;意识到的;(3)清醒的;有知觉的;神志清醒的

cope /kəʊp/ *vi.* (成功地)应付,对付

Unit 7A

confront /kən'frʌnt/ *vt.* (1)对质;当面对证;(2)面对;对抗;与(某人)对峙;(3)正视;处理;面对

reveal /rɪ'viːl/ *vt.* 揭示;揭露;透露

applaud /ə'plɔːd/ *vt.* 称赞;赞许
v. (为……)鼓掌

Unit 7A

awareness /ə'weənəs/ *n.* 认识；意识

imply /ɪm'plaɪ/ *vt.* 暗示；暗指

absolute /'æbsəluːt/ *a.* (1)绝对的；不会改变的；(2)完全的；纯粹的；(3)十足的；绝对的

induce /ɪn'djuːs/ *vt.* 劝诱；诱导

descend /dɪ'send/ *v.* 下来；下降；走下

Unit 7A

chaos /'keɪɒs/ *n.* 混乱；紊乱；无序状态

affirmative /ə'fɜːmətɪv/ *a.* (1)积极的；乐观的；(2)肯定的

durable /'djʊərəbl/ *a.* (1)持久的；(2)耐用的

Unit 7A

短语

turn in 上交

not to mention sth. 更不用说某事了

rip off (1)盗窃；(2)敲……的竹杠

if this/that is the case 如果是这样/那样的话

cope with (成功地)对付，处理

Unit 7A

launch a campaign 发起一场运动

make a complaint about sth. 因……提出投诉

the good old days 过去的好日子

be confined to sb./sth. 局限于某人/某事

descend into 陷入……状况

Unit 7B

词汇

element /'elɪmənt/ *n.* (1)基本部分；要素；(2)元素

lump /lʌmp/ *vt.* 无奈地接受；勉强同意
n. (不定型的)块

inhabitant /ɪn'hæbɪtənt/ *n.* 居民

Unit 7B

encounter /ɪn'kaʊntə/ *vt.* (1)遭遇，遇到(尤指问题或反对)；(2)偶然碰到(某人)
n. (1)遭遇；经历；(2)相遇；邂逅

automatic /ˌɔːtə'mætɪk/ *a.* (1)不自觉的；无意识的；不假思索的；(2)自动的；自动化的

Unit 7B

bump /bʌmp/ *vt.* (尤指身体部位)碰上，撞上
n. (撞击造成的)肿块

prompt /prɒmpt/ *vt.* (1)引起，激起；(2)促使；激励
a. 迅速的；立刻的；及时的

Unit 7B

chase /tʃeɪs/ *n.* 追逐；追赶；追捕
v. 追逐；追赶；追捕

reluctant /rɪ'lʌktənt/ *a.* 勉强的；不情愿的

elevator /'eləveɪtə/ *n.* 电梯

switch /swɪtʃ/ *v.* 转换；转变；改变
n. 开关；电闸

Unit 7B

beep /biːp/ *v.* (使)汽车喇叭鸣响；按响

horn /hɔːn/ *n.* (车辆的)喇叭

subway /'sʌbˌweɪ/ *n.* 地铁

herd /hɜːd/ *n.* (1)人群；(2)兽群；牧群

commute /kə'mjuːt/ *vi.* 长途上下班；通勤

commuter /kə'mjuːtə/ *n.* 每天长途上班的人；通勤者

Unit 7B

elbow /'elbəʊ/ *vt.* 用肘挤开(某人)
n. 肘

intimidate /ɪn'tɪmɪˌdeɪt/ *vt.* 恐吓；威胁

pregnant /'pregnənt/ *a.* 怀孕的；妊娠的

nuisance /'njuːsns/ *n.* 讨厌或麻烦的人/事物/情况

trend /trend/ *n.* 趋势；趋向；倾向

Unit 7B

traditional /trə'dɪʃn(ə)l/ *a.* 传统的；基于传统的

minor /'maɪnə/ *a.* 小的；不很重要的；不很严重的

ignorant /'ɪgnərənt/ *a.* (1)粗鲁的；不礼貌的；(2)无知的；愚昧的

counsel /'kaʊnsl/ *vt.* (1)忠告；辅导；(2)建议

counselor /'kaʊns(ə)lə/ *n.* 顾问；辅导员

Unit 7B

disgraceful /dɪs'greɪsfl/ *a.* 可耻的；丢脸的；很差劲的

insult /'ɪnsʌlt/ *n.* 辱骂；侮辱；冒犯
/ɪn'sʌlt/ *vt.* 侮辱；冒犯

target /'tɑːgɪt/ *n.* (1)(攻击的)目标，对象；(2)(试图达到的)目标，指标

Unit 7B

staff /stɑːf/ *n.* 全体职员；员工；全体工作人员

hostile /ˈhɒstaɪl/ *a.* 怀有敌意的；敌对的；不友善的

threaten /ˈθretn/ *vt.* (1)威胁；恐吓；(2)威胁到；危及

threatening /ˈθretnɪŋ/ *a.* 威胁(性)的；恐吓(性)的

Unit 7B

executive /ɪɡˈzekjʊtɪv/ *n.* 主管；经理

temper /ˈtempə/ *n.* (1)坏脾气；暴躁脾气；(2)情绪；心情；怒气

norm /nɔːm/ *n.* (1)标准；准则；规范；(2)社会准则

random /ˈrændəm/ *a.* 随意的；任意的；随机的

Unit 7B

live with 忍受；容忍

show up (1)显露；显现出来；(2)到达

pass sth. on to sb. 传递(某物)

point to 提到

a variety of sth. 种种

Unit 7B

agency /ˈeɪdʒ(ə)nsi/ *n.* (1)机构；(尤指政府内的)局，部，处；(2)代办处；代理处；经销处；中介处

perceive /pəˈsiːv/ *vt.* (1)察觉；注意到；发觉；(2)(以某种方式)看待，理解

Unit 7B

compassionate /kəmˈpæʃnət/ *a.* 充满怜悯同情的

volunteer /ˌvɒlənˈtɪə/ *v.* 自愿(做某事)；自告奋勇；自愿效劳 *n.* 志愿者；自愿参加者

optimistic /ˌɒptɪˈmɪstɪk/ *a.* 乐观的；乐观主义的

prevail /prɪˈveɪl/ *vt.* (1)占优势；占上风；(2)存在；盛行；流行

Unit 8A

词汇

gender /ˈdʒendə/ *n.* 性别

variable /ˈveəriəbl/ *a.* 易变的；多变的

contradiction /ˌkɒntrəˈdɪkʃn/ *n.* 矛盾；不一致

intimate /ˈɪntɪmət/ *a.* 亲密的；密切的

Unit 7B

offensive /əˈfensɪv/ *a.* 无礼的；冒犯的；令人恼火的

verbal /ˈvɜːbl/ *a.* (1)与言辞有关的，用言辞的；文字上的；(2)口头的；非书面的

slap /slæp/ *vt.* 用手掌打；掴 *n.* 一巴掌；一掴

Unit 7B

短语

mind one's own business 别管闲事

out of the way 不碍事

crop up (突然)发生，显现

cut in line 插队

give chase 追赶

play a role in (doing) sth. 在某事中起某种作用

Unit 8A

magnetic /mæɡˈnetɪk/ *a.* (1)有吸引力的；有魅力的；(2)有磁性的；有磁力的

sensitive /ˈsensətɪv/ *a.* (1)善解人意的；体恤的；(2)敏感的；容易生气的

deliberate /dɪˈlɪb(ə)rət/ *a.* 故意的；有意的；蓄意的

comparison /kəmˈpærɪsn/ *n.* 比较

Unit 7B

curse /kɜːs/ *vi.* 咒骂；诅咒 *n.* 骂人的话；咒骂

complaint /kəmˈpleɪnt/ *n.* 投诉；意见

punch /pʌntʃ/ *vt.* 用拳猛击 *n.* 重拳猛击；揍

utility /juːˈtɪləti/ *n.* (1)公用事业(如煤气、电力等)；(2)效用；实用

Unit 7B

correspond with 相联系；相关

cut both ways (1)对双方具有同等或同样的效果；(2)有利有弊

in a... fashion 以……的方式

go beyond sth. 超出；超过

all but 除……外全部

get lost 滚开；别来烦我

Unit 8A

ritual /ˈrɪtʃuəl/ *n.* (1)例行公事；老规矩；老习惯；(2)正式仪式；典礼

motion /ˈməʊʃn/ *n.* (1)运动；移动；(2)(手或头的)示意动作；手势

sequence /ˈsiːkwəns/ *n.* (1)一连串；连续；(2)顺序；次序；先后

Unit 8A

deficiency /dɪ'fɪʃnsi/ *n.* (1)不足;缺乏;(2)缺点,毛病

narrative /'nærətɪv/ *n.* 叙述;记叙

retreat /rɪ'tri:t/ *vi.* (1)后退;离开;退避;(2)撤退

steer /stɪə/ *v.* 掌舵;驾驶 *vt.* 引导;指导

Unit 8A

rigid /'rɪdʒɪd/ (1)(因强烈的感情而)僵硬的,僵直的;(2)(方法、体制等)严格死板的,僵化的;(3)顽固的;不通融的

farewell /ˌfeə'wel/ *n.* 告别

abrupt /ə'brʌpt/ *a.* 突然的;出其不意的

abruptly /ə'brʌptli/ *ad.* 突然地;出其不意地

Unit 8A

nurture /'nɜ:tʃə/ *n.* (儿时所受的)教育;教养;培育 *vt.* (1)发展(计划、想法等);培养(感情等);(2)养育;培育

genetic /dʒə'netɪk/ *a.* 基因的;遗传学的

tendency /'tendənsi/ *n.* 倾向;较大的可能性

Unit 8A

steering /'stɪərɪŋ/ *n.* (汽车、船等的)转向装置,操纵装置

intact /ɪn'tækt/ *a.* 完好无损的;未受损伤的

mission /'mɪʃn/ *n.* (1)重要任务;使命;(2)职责;天职;使命

evident /'evɪd(ə)nt/ *a.* 明显的;明白的

utter /'ʌtə/ *vt.* 讲;说出

Unit 8A

panic /'pænɪk/ *n.* 惶恐;惊恐;惊慌 *v.* (使)恐慌;(使)惊慌失措

splash /splæʃ/ *vi.* 哗啦哗啦地使水飞溅

scare /skeə/ *vt.* 吓唬;使惊恐;使害怕

scared /skeəd/ *a.* 惊恐的;害怕的;担忧的

Unit 8A

masculine /'mæskjʊlɪn/ *a.* 属于男性的;男子气概的

feminine /'femənɪn/ *a.* 女性的;优雅的;娇柔的

tend /tend/ *vi.* 易于做某事;往往会做某事

restrain /rɪ'streɪn/ *vt.* (1)克制,控制,忍住(情绪、行为);(2)阻止;制止;抑制

restrained /rɪ'streɪnd/ *a.* 克制的;自制的;拘谨的

Unit 8A

inevitable /ɪn'evɪtəbl/ *a.* 必然发生的;难以避免的

inevitably /ɪn'evɪtəbli/ *ad.* 必然发生地;难以避免地

microphone /'maɪkrəˌfəʊn/ *n.* 麦克风;话筒;传声器;扩音器

spill /spɪl/ *vi.* (人群)涌出 *vt.* (意外地)使溢出,使泼洒,使溅出

Unit 8A

spontaneous /spɒn'teɪniəs/ *a.* 自然发生的;一时冲动的;自发的

spontaneously /spɒn'teɪniəsli/ *ad.* 自然发生地;一时冲动地;自发地

Unit 8A

短语

in... terms 谈及;就……而言;在……方面

in comparison 相比之下;比较起来

make up for 弥补;补偿

at the time 当时

on a mission 执行任务

Unit 8A

elaborate /ɪ'læb(ə)ˌrət/ *a.* (1)精心制作的;(2)详尽的;复杂的 /ɪ'læbəˌreɪt/ *vi.* 详尽说明;阐述

drama /'drɑ:mə/ *n.* (1)戏剧性事件;(2)戏剧;电视剧;广播剧

Unit 8A

transparent /træns'pærənt/ *a.* (1)直率的;坦诚的;(2)透明的;清澈的

relief /rɪ'li:f/ *n.* (1)宽慰;宽心;轻松;(2)(病痛的)减轻,缓解

process /'prəʊses/ *n.* 过程;进程 *vt.* (1)加工(食品或其他物质);(2)处理,办理(文件)

Unit 8A

pull away 开始驶离;开走

in a new/bad/different, etc. light 从新的/不利的/不同的等角度看

look sb. in the eye 正视某人

to sb.'s relief 使某人感到欣慰的是

be born with sth. 生来就有某种疾病/性格等

Unit 8B

词汇

privilege /'prɪvəlɪdʒ/ *n.* (1)荣幸;光荣;(2)特权;特殊待遇

co-worker /'kəuˌwɜːkə/ *n.* 同事;同僚

framework /'freɪmwɜːk/ *n.* (1)体系;体制;参照标准;准则;(2)(建筑物、车辆或物体的)构架,框架,结构

Unit 8B

superficial /ˌsuːpə'fɪʃl/ *a.* (1)浅薄的;肤浅的;(2)表面(上)的

scarcely /'skeəsli/ *ad.* 几乎不;几乎没有

variation /ˌveərɪ'eɪʃn/ *n.* 差异;变化;变动

visible /'vɪzəbl/ *a.* (1)看得见的;可见的;(2)清晰的;明显的;引人注目的

Unit 8B

philosophy /fɪ'lɒsəfi/ *n.* (1)人生哲学;生活/工作准则;(2)哲学

boundary /'baʊnd(ə)ri/ *n.* (1)界限;范围;(2)分界线;边界

poetry /'pəʊɪtri/ *n.* 诗;诗歌

affection /ə'fekʃn/ *n.* 喜爱;慈爱;挚爱

alliance /ə'laɪəns/ *n.* 结盟团体;同盟

Unit 8B

diverse /daɪ'vɜːs/ *a.* 各种各样的;形形色色的

subtle /'sʌtl/ *a.* 细微的;微妙的;难以察觉的

constitute /'kɒnstɪˌtjuːt/ *v.* (1)被视为;被算作;(2)组成;构成

forth /fɔːθ/ *ad.* 向前;往外

Unit 8B

arbitrary /'ɑːbɪtrəri/ *a.* 任意的;专横的;武断的

mood /muːd/ *n.* (1)氛围;基调;(2)心情;心境;情绪

ceremony /'serəməni/ *n.* (1)礼仪;礼节;(2)典礼;仪式

complicated /'kɒmplɪˌkeɪtɪd/ *a.* (1)难懂的;难处理的;(2)结构复杂的

Unit 8B

wit /wɪt/ *n.* (1)机智;(2)(说话)风趣

ideal /aɪ'dɪəl/ *n.* 理想 *a.* 理想的;最适宜的

inner /'ɪnə/ *a.* 内心的;个人的;隐秘的

loyalty /'lɔɪəlti/ *n.* 忠诚;忠实;忠贞

enhance /ɪn'hɑːns/ *vt.* 提高;改进;增强

Unit 8B

casual /'kæʒuəl/ *a.* (1)漫不经心的;随随便便的;不放在心上的;(2)非正式的;随便的;(3)感情不深的;疏远的

casually /'kæʒuəli/ *ad.* 漫不经心地; 随随便便地;非正式地

Unit 8B

keen /kiːn/ *a.* (1)非常强烈的;(2)渴望的;迫切想要的;(3)热衷的;着迷的

compatible /kəm'pætəbl/ *a.* (1)能共存的;协调一致的;(2)(计算机设备或软件)兼容的;(3)合得来的;意气相投的

Unit 8B

integrate /'ɪntɪˌgreɪt/ *v.* (1)(使)融入(某群体或社会);(使)成为一体;(2)(使)合并;(使)结合

integrated /'ɪntɪˌgreɪtɪd/ *a.* 融合的;整体的;综合的;互相协调的

significance /sɪg'nɪfɪkəns/ *n.* (尤指对将来的)重要性,意义

Unit 8B

worship /'wɜːʃɪp/ *v.* 敬奉(神) *vt.* 景仰;十分喜爱

ally /'ælaɪ/ *n.* 盟友;支持者 *vt.* 与……结盟

committee /kə'mɪti/ *n.* 委员会

client /'klaɪənt/ *n.* 客户;顾客

Unit 8B

compatibility /kəmˌpætə'bɪləti/ *n.* (1)共存;(2)(计算机设备或软件的)兼容;(3)和睦相处

corresponding /ˌkɒrɪ'spɒndɪŋ/ *a.* (1)类似的;相同的;(2)相应的;相关的

Unit 8B

vital /'vaɪtl/ *a.* 极其重要的;必不可少的

conversely /'kɒnvɜːsli/ *ad.* 相反地;另一方面

guarantee /ˌgærən'tiː/ *vt.* (1)使必然发生;确保;(2)保证

gratitude /'grætɪˌtjuːd/ *n.* 感激(之情)

extend /ɪk'stend/ *vt.* (1)伸出；舒展；
(2)提供；给予；表示
v. 持续；延长，推延(期限)

profound /prə'faʊnd/ *a.* (1)(影响)深刻的，极大的；
(2)(感情)强烈的，深切的，
严肃的

profoundly /prə'faʊndli/ *ad.* (影响)深刻地，极大地；
(感情)强烈的，深切的

miracle /'mɪrəkl/ *n.* 意外的幸运事；不可思议的事；奇迹

短语

shower sb. with sth. 大量给予

a lack of 没有；不足；缺乏

come into being 诞生；出现；存在

back and forth 来回地

apply to (对……)适用；(对……)有效

a range of 一系列

not so much... as... 与其说是……不如说是……

debt of gratitude/thanks 恩情；人情债

feel/be at home (1)舒适自在；不拘束；
(2)驾轻就熟；应用自如

[General Information]
书名=14421170
SS号=14421170